NTT DoCoMo

Manual for FOMA® SA800i '06.2

Quick search/ Contents/Precautions
Before using SA800i
Kids' mode
Making/receiving calls
Making/receiving Video-phone calls
Phonebook
Sounds/Displays/ Lights
Safety settings
Camera
i-mode/ i-motion
Mail
i-αppli
GPS function
Burglar alarm
Displaying/editing/ managing data
Other convenient functions
Network service
Data communication
Character input
Appendix/External devices linkage/ Troubleshooting
Index/ Quick reference manual

i-mode®

DoCoMo W-CDMA System

Thank you for choosing "FOMA SA800i" mobile terminal.

Both before and during the use of FOMA SA800i mobile terminal, be sure to thoroughly read this manual and instruction manuals that come with the battery pack and other devices, to ensure you are able to correctly use FOMA SA800i mobile terminal. Contact "DoCoMo Information Center" on the back of this manual for details.
FOMA SA800i mobile terminal will be your trusted partner. Treat it with care, for long-term use.

Before using FOMA mobile terminal

- Since FOMA terminal uses radio waves, it may not function in locations where it is difficult for radio waves to reach, such as tunnels, underground and inside buildings, in areas where radio wave signals are weak, or outside the service area. FOMA terminal may not be able to receive or transmit signals, even when you are high up in a tall building or condominium and nothing blocks your view outside, in some cases. Also, communication might be interrupted even when the signal meter on FOMA terminal indicates a good radio wave condition, and even when you are not moving.
- Use FOMA terminal in a way that does not disturb others in public places, crowded locations or quiet places.
- Since FOMA terminal uses radio waves to communicate, there is a possibility that third parties may attempt to intercept your calls. The W-CDMA system automatically performs a confidential communication function for all calls, so even if someone should somehow be able to tap a call, the signals are modified so that the eavesdropping party will hear only noise.
- FOMA terminal encodes voice communication as digital signal. When you are operating FOMA terminal while moving to a location subject to weaker radio wave signals, the transmitted digital signal may not be correctly decoded and as a result the decoded voice may differ somewhat from the actual voice.
- Keep a separate written record of the data you register in FOMA terminal. If the data should be erased, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.
- The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the use of SSL. Neither DoCoMo nor the certifier as listed below makes any representation and warranty as for the security in the use of SSL, and assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.
  Certifier: VeriSign Japan K.K., Betrusted Japan Co., Ltd., GeoTrust Japan, inc.
- This FOMA terminal supports FOMA plus area.
- FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DoCoMo.

Before using Instruction manual (this manual)

New users of FOMA terminals are recommended to read this manual in the following order. It provides you with the basic understandings for preparation and operations to use FOMA terminals.

1. Place the battery pack and charge it. (→P41, 42)
2. Turn the power on, make the initial settings, and check your phone number. (→P48, 49, 52)
3. Check the functions of the keys on the terminal. (→P28)
4. Check the meaning of the icons etc. on the screen. (→P30)
5. Check the operation procedures of the menus. (→P34)
6. Check the operation to make/answer a call. (→P57)

- Note that in this "Manual for FOMA SA800i", "FOMA SA800i" is usually referred to as "FOMA terminal".
- Descriptions in this manual are based on the default settings. Contents displayed on screens may differ from the description on this manual, depending on setting changes. (Descriptions for operation procedures are based on the condition under Kids' mode OFF.)
- The images or illustrations provided in this manual are for information purposes only and may differ from the actual screens.
- Unauthorized copying of all or part of this manual is prohibited.
- The contents of this manual may be subject to change without the prior notice.

How to read/refer to this manual

In this manual, operations are described with illustrations or marks, to use FOMA terminals properly.

To refer to this manual

You can search the appropriate page for desired information of functions or services as below:

Refer to the next page for more details.

From Index →P546

Start to search from the function name on the screen of FOMA terminal, or from the names of functions/services which you know.

From Quick search →P4

Search from the frequently-used or convenient functions with easy words.

From Side index on the top page →Top page

Refer to the side index of the top page to search.

From Contents →P6

Search from the terms of contents with categorized functions.

From Features →P8

Start to search from the featured new/convenient functions of FOMA terminals.

From Menu list →P508

The menus displayed on the menu screen of FOMA terminal are given in a list.

From Quick reference manual →P556

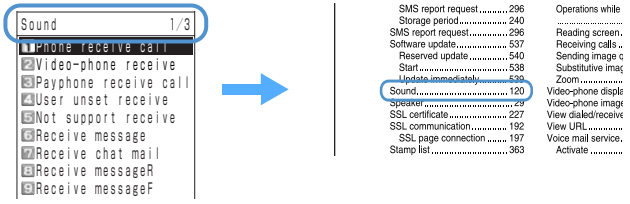
The basic functions are explained briefly. Cut out from the manual, to take it with you.

Describes how to search Sound setting information as an example.

From Index

→P546

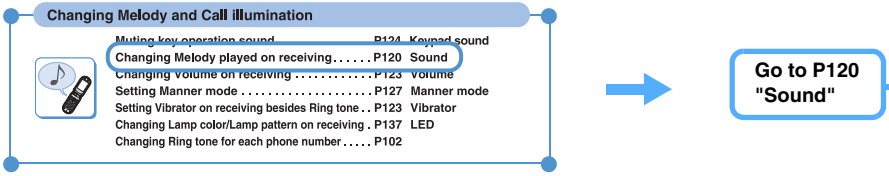
Start to search from the function name on the screen of FOMA terminal, or from the names of functions/ services which you know.



From Quick search

→P4

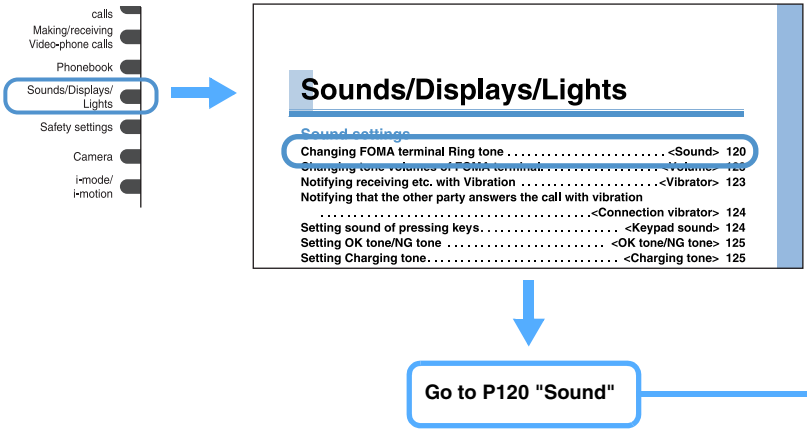
Search from the frequently-used or convenient functions with easy words.



From Side index on the top page

→Top page

Search the page of the function desired to set by the following order; "Top page" → "Top page of each chapter" → "Detailed information page". You can find the detailed list of contents on the top page of each chapter.



Name of function: Function names in the Index are based on this name.

The default setting is shown here. Refer to "Menu List" for the list of default setting. →P508

General notices for using each function

Search each chapter and function from this Side index.

Instructions and operations for each article

This is a typical screen for the operation in the step. Refer to the screen of your FOMA terminal. (Numbers, settings or optional entries in this figure are just an example.)

Options displayed on the screen and the details

Useful information for using each function

Page number

Sound

Changing FOMA terminal Ring tone

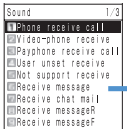
You can set the Ring tones of receiving calls/mails, confirmation tone in operating FOMA terminal or Location provide notify/check tone.

- When an i-motion is set as Ring tone, an image and sound of the i-motion plays on receiving. (Chaku-motion)

Changing Ring tones or Chaku-motion

Default	Phone receive call/Video-phone receive call Payphone receive call/User unset receive call /Not Support receive call	: ジッパ・ディー・ドゥー・ダー (Zip-A-Dee-Doo-Dah) : パターン4 (Pattern 4)
	Receive message/Receive MessageR/F Receive chat mail	: クリスタル (Crystal) : 木琴 (Xylophone)

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press 2.**



2 **Press one of 1 to 9.**

Phone receive call : Setting for incoming phone calls
Video-phone receive : Setting for incoming video-phone calls
Payphone receive call : Setting for receiving calls from payphone
User unset receive : Setting for receiving user unset calls
Not support receive : Setting for receiving international phone calls or calls via every forwarding service from fixed-line phone (Caller ID may be displayed depending on phone companies the call goes through.)
Receive message : Setting for receiving mails
Receive chat mail : Setting for receiving Chat mails
Receive messageR : Setting for receiving MessageR
Receive messageF : Setting for receiving MessageF

Information

- Some i-motions, such as Video only i-motion containing no sound data, cannot be set as Ring tones.
- When setting an i-motion including image and sound as Ring tone, Receiving screen is changed to the i-motion automatically. However, Sound only i-motion data (i-motion without video, such as vocals of singers etc.) set as Ring tone is not displayed as Receiving screen, but the set image is displayed.
- When several settings of Ring tones conflict, priority is set as follows:
  ① Ring tone set in individual settings in Phonebook
  ② Ring tone set in group settings in Phonebook
  ③ Ring tone set in Sound
  However, if you subscribe to Multinumber service and set Additional number as the dialing number, the setting follows the Ring tone setting of the Additional number. →P453
- When i-motion with image and sound is set as Ring tone, the i-motion is displayed on receiving calls, having a priority over the still image of the caller set as Phonebook basic information. However, registered still image is displayed if the i-motion is Sound only (i-motion without video, such as vocals of singers etc.).

120

Sounds/Display/Lights

Sound

- The page shown is an example. Contents may differ from the actual page.

Quick search

Use this index to search from the desired function or operation.

Using convenient functions during a call

Notifying/not notifying your Caller ID . . . . . P51 CallerID notification
Facing to your mobile phone while talking . . P87 Hands free
Adjusting volume of the other party's voice. . P72 Earpiece volume
Holding calls . . . . . P59 Call-on-hold

Handling a call when you cannot answer

Recording the other party's message . . . . . P80 Record message
Recording the message on Voice mail . . . . . P441 Voice mail
Holding calls to answer . . . . . P74 On-hold

Changing Melody and Call illumination

Muting key operation sound . . . . . P124 Keypad sound
Changing Melody played on receiving . . . . . P120 Sound
Changing Volume on receiving . . . . . P123 Volume
Setting Manner mode . . . . . P127 Manner mode
Setting Vibrator on receiving besides Ring tone . . P123 Vibrator
Changing Lamp color/Lamp pattern on receiving . P137 LED
Changing Ring tone for each phone number P102

Changing/reading display

Changing Stand-by display . . . . . P129 Stand-by display
Displaying Calendar on Stand-by display. . . . P130 Clock/Calendar
Setting Time. . . . . P50 Time and date setting
Changing Font size P110, 221, 287, 292
Referring to meanings of Marks (Icons) on screen . . . P30

Making full use of Mail

Sending Deco-mails ..... P245 Deco-mail
Sending images ..... P253 Melody/Still image/ Movie image/i-motion mail
Sorting and saving mails automatically ..... P271 Auto sort
Confirming/changing E-mail address P235
Using Chat mail ..... P288 Compose/send Chat mail

Making full use of Camera

Changing shooting size P175
Changing Shutter sound P180
Turning Light on P174
Displaying shot images P356

Using FOMA terminal with security settings

Hiding Phonebook data ..... P153 Secret mode
Rejecting calls with no CallerID notified .... P155 Reject calls by reasons for User unset
Rejecting calls from numbers not registered in Phonebook ..... P157 Reject calls from unregistered numbers
Locking Side Keys ..... P152 Side key operation set to Valid/Invalid
Setting the special security for kids ..... P54 Kids' mode

Other convenient functions

Using as Burglar alarm ..... P346 Burglar alarm
Starting frequently used functions with simple operation ..... P423 Shortcut menu
Using as Calculator ..... P430 Calculator
Scanning QR codes or JAN codes ..... P181 Bar code reader
Transferring information with Infrared communication P391
Using as alarm clock. ..... P406 Alarm
Using GPS P321
Changing to Hiragana screen for kids P49

Refer to "Before using Instruction manual (this manual)" on the back of the cover page, for viewing operations and functions.
Frequently used operation procedures can be referred in Quick manual →P556

Terms of contents

Before using FOMA mobile terminal . . . . . Back of the cover page
Before using Instruction manual (this manual) . . . . . Back of the cover page
How to read/refer to this manual 1
Quick search. 4
Features of FOMA SA800i 8
Making full use of FOMA SA800i! 10
Precautions (ALWAYS FOLLOW THESE DIRECTIONS) 12
Handling instructions 21
Intellectual property rights 24
Basic package and optional accessories 26

Before using SA800i 27

Names and functions of parts Reading display Selecting Menu Using UIM (FOMA card) Inserting/removing battery pack Charging Battery level Power ON/OFF Time and date setting CallerID notification Profile Select language etc.

Kids' mode 53

Kids' mode Changing Password(number)

Making/receiving calls 57

Making calls Redial International call Answering calls Any key answer Open to talk Closing action Received calls On-hold Public mode (Drive mode) Recording message etc.

Making/receiving Video-phone calls 85

Making Video-phone calls Answering video-phone calls Chara-den Setting images to send Display settings for video-phone calls etc.

Phonebook 97

Registering to Phonebook Edit Group Searching Phonebook Secret Direct call etc.

Sounds/Displays/Lights 119

Sound Vibrator Manner mode Stand-by display Display light LED etc.

Safety settings 141

Security codes Changing security code PIN/PIN2 code All lock Self mode PIM lock Keypad dial lock Close lock Secret mode Call rejection etc.

Camera 159

Shooting still image Shooting movie Settings for Shooting Bar code reader etc.

i-mode/i-motion 187

i-mode Displaying sites Change i-mode password Connect to Internet Bookmark i-mode setting MessageR/F Certificate operation i-motion Downloading i-motion etc.

Mail 233

Composing/sending i-mode mail Deco-mail Attaching files Saving i-mode mail
Receiving i-mode mail Checking new message Replying to i-mode mail i-motion mail
Playing/saving melody Mail setting Chat mail Composing/sending SMS etc.

i-αppli 299

Downloading Starting i-αppli i-αppli To function i-αppli stand-by display etc.

GPS function 321

Positioning location GPS software Location provide Notifying location etc.

Burglar alarm 345

Burglar alarm

Displaying/editing/managing data 353

Playing still/movie image Editing still/movie image Chara-den Playing melody
Managing folder/data Infrared communication Voice recorder etc.

Other convenient functions 401

Multiaccess Multitask Alarm Schedule Shortcut menu Profile
Voice memo in stand-by/on the line Duration/Cost Calculator Text memo
Resetting settings Deleting all data Jpn dictionary

Network service 439

Voice mail Call waiting Call forwarding Nuisance call barring service
Check Caller ID request status Dual network English guidance Service dialing no.
Arrival act Remote access etc.

Data communication 453

Data communication Connecting to PC Installation of communication configuration file
Communication settings using/not using FOMA PC setting software AT command etc.

Character input 487

Character input Editing Common phrases/Emoticons Copying characters Input code
Registering to user dictionary Download dictionary Input prediction 2-touch Keyboard etc.

Appendix/External devices linkage/Troubleshooting 507

Menu list List of characters assigned to keys Input code list
Combination of Multiaccess/Multitask functions Optional and related devices
Data link software Movie player software Troubleshooting Error messages list
Warranty and After-sales service Software update Scanning function
SAR certification information etc.

Index/Quick reference manual 545

Features of FOMA SA800i

FOMA is the name of DoCoMo's service based on W-CDMA format, which is recognized as one of the systems compliant with the global standard for the third generation wireless communications (IMT-2000).

Amazing because it's i-mode!

i-mode is the online service providing useful information from i-mode Menu sites (programs) or i-mode compatible sites, or transferring mails easily using i-mode terminals.

i-mode →P187

You can use online services such as weather report or news provided by IP (information service provider) or various i-mode compatible sites from Menu List of i-mode Menu.

i-mode mail →P234

Up to 5,000 characters of an E-mail can be transferred between i-mode terminals or Internet mail addresses.

i-shot →P238

Images shot by i-mode terminals with camera can be sent by attaching to mails.

i-motion →P230

You can enjoy image/voice/sound data downloaded from i-motion compatible sites to i-mode terminals.

i-motion mail →P238

i-motions saved to i-mode terminals can be sent by attaching to E-mails.

SA800i main features

Video-phone →P85

You can talk to the other party in a distance watching each other's face. Set the caller's voice come out from the speaker, or switch to Out-camera to show surrounding landscapes to the other party.

Chara-den →P90, 375

You can display a preset or downloaded character instead of the self image during video-phone call. You can add face expressions or movements to the character by operating keys.

Deco-mail →P245

Deco-mail allows you to compose and send more expressive E-mail messages with varieties of font color/size/background color, as well as inserting Deco-mail pictures or images shot by the camera. Also Deco-mail can be easily composed using received Deco-mail or templates downloaded from sites.

i-αppli/i-αppliDX →P299

You can download various i-αppli from sites for your use, or set to Stand-by display etc. Also i-αppliDX allows you to broaden the use of i-αppli by operating in conjunction with the data in Phonebook, mails, etc. in i-mode terminals.

Wide variety of network services

- Voice mail service (charged)*1→P441
- Call forwarding service*1 →P444
- Call waiting (charged)*1 →P443
- SMS (Short Message)*2 →P293
- Dual network service (charged)*1 →P447

*1 Optional registration is required. *2 Optional registration is not required.

Safety settings

You can set the terminal security code to protect privacy, or All lock/Self-mode not to be revealed or connected by third parties without permission.

Other convenient functions

GPS function→P321

Retrieves location information of FOMA terminals by using radio waves transmitted from GPS satellites. Following services are available with retrieved location information.

- **Displaying map or searching surrounding information of the present location.**
  FOMA terminal can send retrieved location information to display a map, or search surrounding information easily.
- **Sending present location or favorite places by mails**
  Location information can be attached to mail messages. Also, i-mode users who received the mail can confirm the location with maps.
- **Registering the Location information onto Phonebook or images**
  You can add location information of such as shops to Phonebook etc. to confirm the shop location with maps. Also, you can add location information to shot still images to confirm later with maps.
- **Using GPS compatible i-αppli (GPS software)**
  Useful i-αppli is available to use location information.

High-qualified camera functions →P159

FOMA terminal has CMOS camera with approximately 320K effective pixels (approximately 310K maximum effective pixels for shooting), and the available still image is up to the VGA size. You can shoot with frame decorations or special effects, or shoot continuously.
And the recordable movie image with FOMA terminal is up to the QCIF size.

Bar code reader →P181

Scan bar codes (JAN code, QR code) with built-in camera of FOMA terminal, and you can register the data to Phonebook or compose i-mode mail with scanned data. QR codes on image/melody data can also be scanned.

Multitask →P404

Multitask allows you to activate several functions at the same time and to perform operations by switching the screen. For example, you can confirm Phonebook entries during a call, or compose E-mail with referring to a memo, etc.

Kids' mode →P54

Under Kids' mode, 2 security codes having different levels of authority can be used separately by parents and kids, which enable parents to restrict functions or setting changes available for kids. The setting to change the screen to Hiragana or easy words is also available. This is the recommended mode for your kids.

Burglar alarm →P345

Use FOMA terminal as Burglar alarm. The auto-dialing to the specified numbers is available when ringing Burglar alarm.

Melody →P381

FOMA terminal contains PCM format melodies with 64 chords to set to Ring tone of phone/mail. PCM format melodies with surrounded-sound can be downloaded from sites.

Infrared communication →P391

Phonebook data, mails, images, melodies and other data can be exchanged between FOMA terminals and mobile phones.

Flash™→P193

Enjoy Flash movies and animations on i-mode sites with FOMA terminals. And also download Flash animation and set it to Stand-by display.

Direct call →P115

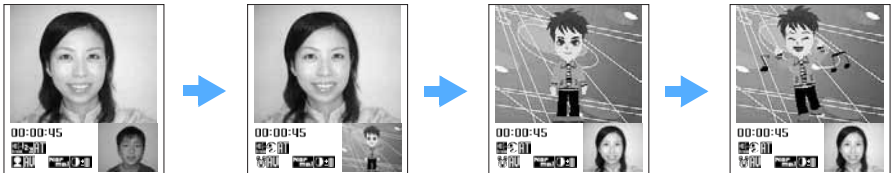
Register persons whom you contact frequently to make calls or send mails quickly with easy operation. You can select and display the list of Received calls/Redials or Received/Send mails between the registered persons.

Making full use of FOMA SA800i!

This section introduces various functions of FOMA SA800i with screen images.

Chara-den →P90

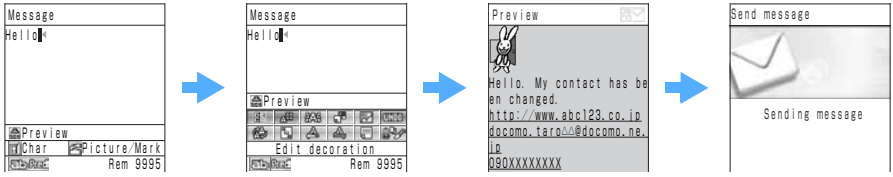
Allows to switch images on Video-phone call for sending easily. By using Chara-den, characters substituting for your self-image, you can answer a call with various actions or face expressions.



Images of you and the other party | **A character substituting for you** | **Switching screens for you and the other party** | **Expressing feelings with character actions**

Deco-mail →P245, 250

Allows to send colorful and enjoyable mails easily, by changing font color or background color, and inserting pictures in Deco-mail picture or the ones shot with In-camera.



Entering message | **Palette** | **Preview** | **Sending Deco-mail**

Direct call →P115

Registers persons whom you contact frequently, to make calls or send mails quickly with easy operation.

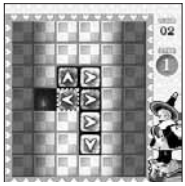
Registering a Phonebook entry as Direct call contact | **Press ⊂⊃ to display Direct call screen.** | **Easy operation, requiring only to select the other party and the function**

Preinstalled application: MagicArrow →P307

"MagicArrow" preinstalled in FOMA terminals is a puzzle game, which you can play by moving the colored panels with arrows on it, to erase the 3 or more panels of same color in a row.

In ENDLESS mode, erase the panels placed in random one after another.

©2005 Shift
Presented by BANDAI
NETWORKS CO., LTD



In PUZZLE mode, erase all panels within the times indicated in the right field.

©2005 Shift
Presented by BANDAI
NETWORKS CO., LTD

• The screen shown are examples.

Preinstalled application: じかんわり (Class schedule) →P307

Preinstalled application " じかんわり (Class schedule)" in FOMA terminal allows you to register the school grade, subjects and homeworks, and check the class schedule on Stand-by display anytime.

And also, register times for private tutoring school or appointments with friends into " 放課後の予定 (After-school schedule)", to notify the schedule by alarm.

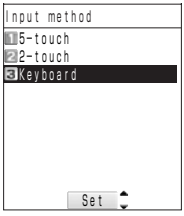
Class schedule screen

Registering screen for After-school schedule

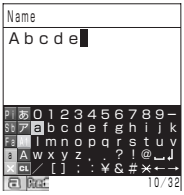
• The screen shown are examples.

Keyboard input method (Character input) →P504

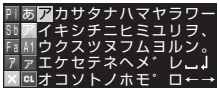
Select the characters displayed on the screen by moving the cursor, and enter the characters by pressing the displayed keyboard.



Setting the input method to Keyboard.



Move the cursor to select characters.



Katakana (two-byte/ Full Mark) mode

Alphabet (one-byte/Half Mark in small letter) mode/Numeric (one-byte/Half Mark) mode

Select the keyboard icon and change the input mode, to switch the keyboard on the screen.

Precautions (ALWAYS FOLLOW THESE DIRECTIONS)

■ Before using your FOMA terminal, read the following precautions to ensure safe use and handling. Keep this manual carefully after reading.

■ These precautions are intended to protect you and others around you. Read and follow the cautions carefully to avoid injury, damage to the person or the property.

■ The following signs differentiate the levels of danger or damage that may occur if the product is not used under the specified guidelines.

⚠ DANGER	This sign denotes that high potential for death or serious injury may be caused by improper use.
⚠ WARNING	This sign denotes that potential for death or serious injury may be caused by improper use.
⚠ CAUTION	This sign denotes that bodily injury or damage to property may be caused by improper use.

■ The following symbols show specific directions.

Don't	This symbol denotes that the action is prohibited.
No assembly	This symbol denotes that disassembling the terminal or its component is not allowed.
Avoid water	This symbol denotes that using the terminal or its components near water or getting the device wet is not allowed.
No wet hands	This symbol denotes that using the terminal or its components with wet hands is not allowed.

Do	This symbol denotes that an instruction must be obeyed at all times.
Unplug	This symbol denotes that the terminal must be unplugged.

■ "Precautions" contains the following 6 descriptions:

Handling FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter (including battery charger) and UIM (FOMA card) (Common) 13
Handling FOMA terminal. 14
Handling battery pack 16
Handling optional devices (AC adapter/DC adapter/desktop holder/In-car holder) 18
Handling UIM (FOMA card) 19
Handling mobile phone near electronic medical devices 20

Handling FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter (including battery charger) and UIM (FOMA card) (Common)

⚠ DANGER

Use battery pack and adapter (including battery charger) that are specified by the DoCoMo group companies with your FOMA terminal.
Not using the terminal specified by the DoCoMo group companies may cause FOMA terminal, battery pack and other parts to leak, heat, burst, catch fire or malfunction.

Battery pack SA02
Desktop holder SA02
FOMA AC adapter 01
FOMA DC adapter 01
FOMA domestic/overseas AC adapter 01

* Contact DoCoMo shop etc. for more information on other compatible products.

Do not get the terminal wet. Contact with water or other liquids may cause heating, electric shock, fire, malfunctions or injury. Take care where and how you use the terminal.

Do not disassemble or remodel the terminal. Also, do not solder the device or components.
It may cause a fire, injury, electric shock or malfunction.
Also battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.

Do not use or leave the battery pack in locations subject to high temperature, such as near a fireplace, heating appliances, in direct sunlight or inside a car on a hot day.
It may cause the terminal deformation/ malfunction or battery pack leak/ overheat/explosion/catching fire/ performance loss/shorter life.
Also the part of a case may be heated and cause burns.

⚠ WARNING

Do not throw the terminal or give hard shock to the terminal.
It may cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite, and the terminal to malfunction or catch fire.

Do not put the battery pack, FOMA terminal, the adapter (including battery charger) or UIM (FOMA card) into microwave ovens or other heating appliances or high-pressure containers.
It may cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite, FOMA terminal or the adapter (including battery charger) to heat, smoke, ignite, or damage circuits.

Do not use the terminal in an environment liable to cause it to explode or catch fire, such as a gas station.
Explosions or fire may be caused if the terminal is used in areas where dust or flammable gas such as propane or gasoline vapors are generated.

Do not make electrically conductive material, such as metal piece or pencil lead, contact to the charging terminals or the external connection port. Also do not put electrically conductive material into the terminal.
It may cause fire or malfunction from short-out.

Operate following procedures immediately when your terminal acts differently from usual, such as strange smell, heat generation, discoloration, or deformation while using, charging, storing.
1. Remove the power plug from an outlet or a socket.
2. Turn off the power of FOMA terminal.
3. Remove battery pack from FOMA terminal.
The continued use in those conditions may cause overheat, explosion, catching fire or leak of battery pack.

⚠ CAUTION

Do

Store the terminal out of the reach of infants.
The card or adapter can be accidentally swallowed or cause injuries.

Don't

Do not store the terminal in extremely humid, dusty or hot areas.
It may cause malfunction.

Do

Children using the terminal should be instructed by adults. Do not allow them to use the terminal without adult supervision.
It may cause injuries.

Don't

Do not leave the terminal on unstable or tilted surfaces.
May fall and cause malfunction or injuries.

Do

The temperature of FOMA terminal or the battery pack/adapter (including the battery charger) may become higher for charging or repeating/continuously using in, shooting/playing movies, video-phone, i-mode or i-αppli.
If you touch on the heated part for a long time, your skin may get reddish, itchy or irritated depending on the physical constitution or condition.
Be careful especially when using FOMA terminal on the adapter (including battery charger) for a long time.

Handling FOMA terminal

⚠ WARNING

Don't

Do not use the terminal while driving a vehicle.
According to the amendment of Road Traffic Law, the punishment has been charged by use of mobile phone while driving vehicle since November 1st, 2004. Even when you use Hands free kit, park your vehicle at the safe area and use your mobile phone. While driving, activate Public mode or Voice mail service.

Do

Be sure to keep FOMA terminal away from your ear when you talk with the Hands free function set.
It may cause hearing loss.

Do

Be sure to keep FOMA terminal away from your ear when you ring Burglar alarm.
It may cause hearing loss.

Do

Turn off the power of FOMA terminal near high-precision electronic control equipment or electronic equipment using low-power signals.
It may affect electronics devices and cause mechanical error or malfunction.
* Examples of electronic equipment to avoid:
Hearing aids, implanted pacemakers or defibrillators, other electrical medical equipment, fire alarms, automatic doors, other automatic control equipment.
Users wearing implanted pacemakers or defibrillators or other electrical medical equipment should check with the manufacturer or sales outlet about the effect of radio waves on the terminal.

Do

If you have heart disease, be careful of settings of such as the vibrator and the ring tone volume for incoming calls.
It may affect heart function.

⚠ WARNING

Do

Turn off the power of FOMA terminal in areas where use is prohibited, such as in airplanes and hospitals.
Using in these areas may cause electrical equipment or medical electrical equipment malfunction or failure.
If the function which automatically turns on the power is set, release the setting before turning off the power.
When using the terminal in a medical facility, follow the regulations and instructions of the facility.
With prohibited act, such as using the terminal in an airplane, you may be punished by law.

Don't

When you use electro-medical apparatuses, do not keep the terminal in your chest pocket or inside pocket.
Using your FOMA terminal near medical electronic equipment may cause the failure on the equipment.

Do

If you hear thunder while using the terminal outdoors, turn off the power immediately, and move to a safe place.
The terminal may be subject to lightning strike and could cause electric shock.

Don't

Do not point the infrared data port toward your eyes and transfer the signals.
It may affect your eyes. In addition, pointing to another infrared device to send may cause mechanical error or malfunction on the device.

Don't

Do not bring the light emitting part close to human eyes, with the part lit on.
Visual loss may be caused. Also a strong light dazzles or surprise may cause accidents leading to injury.

Don't

Do not put FOMA terminal at the place where impact by blowing up of the air-bag is expected, such as dashboard near the air-bag.
In case air-bag is blown up, FOMA terminal may hit people and may cause injury, or may cause damage on the terminal.

Don't

Do not point flash and light towards drivers of vehicles.
It may cause accidents from dizzy eyes.

⚠ CAUTION

Don't

Do not put liquids such as water, metal pieces or flammable materials into UIM (FOMA card) slot of FOMA terminal.
It may cause fire, equipment failure or electric shock.

Don't

Do not leave the lens of the built-in camera exposed to a strong light such as direct sunlight for a long time.
A light collection effect from the lens may cause a fire.

Don't

Do not swing the FOMA terminal by holding the strap or other parts of the terminal.
It may cause equipment damage or failure, or injury of yourself or others.

Handling FOMA terminal (continued)

⚠ CAUTION

Do not bring magnetic cards etc. close to FOMA terminal or shut them in the terminal.
Magnetic data stored in cash cards, credit cards, telephone cards and floppy disks may be erased if the storage medium is placed near the terminal.

Occasionally, using FOMA terminal in some types of vehicle may cause the vehicle's electronic malfunction or failure.
In this case, do not use FOMA terminal not to hamper safe driving.

Do not use Flash/Light for other purposes than camera shooting.
Flash/Light is turned off with ending camera. It gets dark suddenly and accidents may be caused.

Do not inhale or put the crystalline liquid leaking from the broken display in your mouth or on your skin.
If the liquid gets into your eyes or mouth, rinse with clean water and see a doctor immediately.
If the liquid adheres to skin or cloth, use alcohol etc. to wipe off and wash with soap.
It may cause loss of eyesight or skin problems.

Take care not to catch fingers into the hinge part (connection) when opening FOMA terminal.
Injury or accident may result.

Handling battery pack

■ Confirm the battery type to match according to the description on the battery pack label.

Description	Battery type
Li-ion	Lithium ion battery

⚠ DANGER

Do not connect a wire or other metal materials to the battery pack terminals. Do not carry or store the battery pack together with a necklace or other metal materials.
It may cause the battery pack to leak, heat, damage or ignite.

If the battery fluid contacts eyes, do not rub but flush your eyes with clean water and see a doctor immediately.
Battery fluid in the eyes may cause blindness.

⚠ DANGER

Do not bring the battery pack into fire.
It may cause the battery pack to leak, heat, damage or ignite.

Do not nail, hit with a hammer or step on the battery pack.
It may cause the battery pack to leak, heat, damage or ignite.

Do not force to attach the battery pack on FOMA terminal or the battery pack charger. Always connect the battery pack after confirming the right side to attach.
It may cause the battery pack to leak, heat, damage or ignite.

⚠ WARNING

If the battery pack leaks liquid or gives off a strange smell, stop using and move the battery pack away from flame immediately.
The liquid from leaking battery fluid may ignite or explode.

If the battery pack is not fully charged after the specified time, stop charging it.
It may cause the battery pack to leak, heat, damage or ignite.

If the battery fluid contacts your skin or clothes, flush the contacted area thoroughly with clean water immediately.
The fluid may damage your skin.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not discard used battery packs together with other garbage.
Ignition or environmental destruction may be caused. Bring used battery pack to DoCoMo shops etc. with the terminals taped for insulation, or follow the instruction of the municipality collecting used battery.

Handling optional devices (AC adapter/DC adapter/desktop holder/In-car holder)

⚠ WARNING

Always use DC adapter or In-car adapter with a negative-ground vehicle. Never plug it into a positive-ground vehicle.
Fire may result.

Do not touch the adapter (including battery charger) cord or outlets with wet hands.
Electric shock may result.

Do not short out with the charging terminals connected to an output or a cigarette lighter socket.
Also, do not touch the charging terminals with a part of your body such as a hand or a finger.
Fire, malfunction, electric shock, or injuries may result.

Only use with the specified power source and voltage.
Fire or malfunction may result if using with incorrect voltage. When using FOMA terminal overseas, use FOMA domestic/overseas AC adapter 01.
AC adapter:
AC100V (Connect to 100V AC outlet for internal household use only)
FOMA domestic/overseas AC adapter:
Between AC100V and 240V (Connect to AC outlet for household use)
DC adapter:
12V or 24V DC (specific for negative-ground vehicle)

Do not touch FOMA terminal or adapter (including charger), if you hear thunder while using.
The terminal may be subject to lightning strike and could cause electric shock.

If the DC adapter/In-car adapter fuse blows, be sure to replace with the specified fuse.
Applying wrong fuse may cause fire or terminal malfunction. For the specified fuse, see each manuals of the terminal.

Do not use AC adapter and desktop holder in a bathroom or other highly humid area.
Electric shock may result.

Remove the plug out of outlet or cigarette lighter socket, if water or other liquid get into the adapter.
Electric shock, smoke or fire may result.

When you connect AC adapter to an outlet, be careful of contacts with metal materials such as metal straps, and insert firmly.
It may cause electric shock, short-circuit or fire.

Do not use the adapter (including battery charger) cord or power cord if it gets damaged.
Electric shock, heat or fire may result.

Wipe off any dust around the plug.
Fire may result.

Connect FOMA terminal to In-car holder firmly.
Removal of the equipment by sudden braking etc. may cause an accident or the equipment malfunction.

⚠ WARNING

Remove the plug of adapter out of the wall outlet or cigarette lighter socket when not using for a long period of time.
Electric shock, fire or malfunction may result.

Do not force to pull the power plug out when the plug is not removed.
It may cause damage, electric shock or malfunction.

Place the desktop holder or AC adapter on a stable surface while charging. Do not cover or wrap the desktop holder or AC adapter with a cloth, blanket, etc.
Otherwise, FOMA terminal may come off the holder, or the optional devices may be heated, resulting in fire or troubles.

Do not use outlets or wiring accessories beyond rated specification.
It may cause heating or firing with plugging too many leads into a single socket.

⚠ CAUTION

Remove the plug of the adapter out of the wall outlet or the cigarette lighter socket when cleaning the terminal.
Electric shock may result.

Do not place heavy objects on the adapter (including battery charger) cord.
May cause electric shock or fire.

When you unplug the adapter (including battery charger) out of the wall outlet or cigarette lighter socket, do not pull the code but hold the plug.
Pulling the cord may damage the code itself, possibly leading to electric shock or fire.

Handling UIM (FOMA card)

⚠ CAUTION

Be careful when you remove IC part of UIM (FOMA card).
Your hands or fingers may be injured.

Handling mobile phone near electric medical devices

■ The following safety precautions conform to "Guidelines regarding the protection of electronic medical equipment from radio waves emitted by mobile phones" (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference Japan).

⚠ WARNING

Do

Implanted devices such as pacemakers and defibrillators must be distant at least 22 cm away from the FOMA terminal.
The Signal of FOMA terminal may affect the operation of implanted pacemakers and defibrillators.

Do

Turn off the power of FOMA terminal in crowded trains or other public places for the people with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators.
The Signal of FOMA terminal may affect the operation of implanted pacemakers or defibrillators.

Do

Obey the following rules inside medical facilities:

- Do not bring FOMA terminal into operating rooms (ORs), intensive care units (ICUs) or coronary care units (CCUs).
- Turn off the power of FOMA terminal in hospital wards.
- Turn off the power of FOMA terminal also in hospital lobbies and corridors if electronic medical devices are around.
- If the medical facility has specified zones where use or possession of mobile devices is prohibited, follow those instructions.
- If the function to turn on the power automatically is set, release the setting before turning off the power.

Do

When using electronic medical devices other than implanted pacemakers and defibrillators outside medical facilities (such as in home-care), check with the manufacturer about the affection of the signal to the devices.
The Signal of FOMA terminal may affect the performance of electrical medical devices.

Handling instructions

General

- Do not wet FOMA terminal.
  - FOMA terminal, battery pack and adapter (including battery charger) are not waterproof. Do not use FOMA terminal in bathrooms, other high-humidity areas, or in the rain. Also sweat may corrode the inner components and cause malfunction when carrying FOMA terminal near your body.
    Note that malfunctions proved to be caused by water are not covered by the warranty, and may not be possible to repair. Since these malfunctions are not covered with warranty, repair, if possible, is to be done with owner's expense.
- Clean FOMA terminal with a dry, soft cloth.
  - Some FOMA terminal models may use the special coating on the display for higher visibility. When cleaning FOMA terminal, rubbing it roughly with a dry cloth may scratch the display. Be careful to handle FOMA terminal, and use a soft and dry cloth for cleaning (such as a cloth for eyeglasses). Drops of water or dirt left on the display may cause stains or removal of the coating.
  - The printing may disappear or color may fade for wiping with alcohol, paint thinner, benzine or detergent.
- Clean connecting terminals occasionally, with a dry cotton swab.
  - Dirty connecting terminals may cause loose contact with FOMA terminal, resulting in powering off. Also results in poor charging, so clean connecting terminals with a dry cloth or cotton swab etc.
- Do not place FOMA terminal near the air outlet of an air-conditioner.
  - A rapid change in humidity may cause dew condensation, leading to internal corrosion and malfunction.
- Do not place FOMA terminal in a place where excessive force is applied.
  - Damage and malfunction of LC display or internal PCB caused by cramming into a brimming bag or putting in a pocket and sitting on FOMA terminal is out of the coverage of the warranty.
- Read the respective instructions attached to the battery pack and the adapter (including battery charger) carefully.

Handling FOMA terminal

- It is normal for FOMA terminal to be warmed up when using or charging. Keep using FOMA terminal.
- Avoid extremely high or low temperature.
  - Use FOMA terminal at temperature between 5 and 35 ℃ and at humidity between 45 and 85 %.
- FOMA terminal may affect fixed-line telephones, TVs or radios nearby. Use FOMA terminal as far as possible from these appliances.
- Keep a separate written record of the data you register in FOMA terminal.
  - Note that DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for accidentally erased data.
- Do not sit down with FOMA terminal in a back pocket. Do not place FOMA terminal at the bottom of a bag or anywhere it will encounter excessive force.
  - Malfunction or damage may result.
- Do not fold FOMA terminal with the strap caught between the folding parts.
  - Malfunction or damage may result.

- Do not put seals on the surface of LC display or Keypad.
  - Pressing keys when folding FOMA terminal may cause false operation or malfunction of FOMA terminal.
- Hold the strap with your hand through it.
  - Otherwise, it may fall and cause disorder.
- Use normally with the earphone/microphone jack, or the external connection port covered with the cap.
  - Dust or water may cause malfunction.
- Do not scratch or rub the display with metal materials.
  - Display may be damaged.
- Do not leave the camera in direct sunlight.
  - May cause color degradation or burn-in of the CCD.

Handling battery pack

- The battery pack is a consumable.
  - Replace the battery pack when operation length becomes extremely short on a full charge. Note that the battery pack's life will vary depending on type of use. Purchase a new battery pack of the specified type.
- Charge the battery within the temperature range area (5 to 35 ℃).
- Always charge before using FOMA terminal for the first time or after a long-term nonuse.
- The operation time provided by the battery pack may vary depending on the operating environment and battery pack's deterioration.
- Dirty metallic parts (terminals) of the battery pack may cause loose contact with the terminal port, and may result in powering off, etc. Wipe the dirty terminals with dry cloths or cotton swab.
- Do not discard old battery packs together with general household garbage.
  - Bring used battery packs with terminals taped for insulation, to DoCoMo shops etc., or follow the local municipality instruction for segregation.
- Store the battery pack in a cool place away from direct sunlight.
  - Store battery pack with run out, detached from FOMA terminal or the adapter (including battery charger), and wrapped with a plastic bag which comes with the battery back when not using for a long time.

Handling adapter (including battery charger)

- Do not charge the battery in the following places:
  - Where the ambient temperature is less than 5 ℃ or more than 35 ℃.
  - In excessive humidity, dust or vibrations.
  - Near fixed-line phones, TVs or radios.
- It is normal for the adapter (including battery charger) to become warm while charging. Keep charging.
- When using the DC adapter for charging, keep the vehicle engine running.
  - Otherwise, the vehicle's battery may possibly be dead.
- Do not give strong impact. Also do not deform the charging terminals.
  - May cause malfunction.
- When using an outlet with a mechanism preventing unplugging, follow the handling instructions for that outlet.

Handling UIM (FOMA card)

- Do not force to remove UIM (FOMA card).
- Do not place an excessive pressure when inserting UIM (FOMA card) into the terminal.
- It is normal for UIM (FOMA card) to get warm in use. Keep using.
- Note that DoCoMo will not be responsible for malfunctions occurring as the result of using UIM (FOMA card) by inserting it to another IC card reader/writer.
- Always keep IC device part of FOMA terminals clean.
- Clean UIM (FOMA card) with a soft, dry cloth.
- Keep a separate record of the data you register in UIM (FOMA card).
  - Note that DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for accidentally erased data.
- To preserve the environment, bring the used UIM (FOMA card) to DoCoMo shops etc.
- Avoid extremely high or low temperature.
- Do not scratch, touch carelessly, short-circuit the IC.
  - It may cause data loss or malfunction.
- Do not drop or apply a shock on UIM (FOMA card).
  - It may cause malfunction.
- Do not bend or apply weight on UIM (FOMA card).
  - It may cause malfunction.
- Do not put any stickers etc. on UIM (FOMA card).

Camera

- If you use FOMA terminal to commit nuisance act and bother people, you may be penalized according to applicable laws or regulations (nuisance prevention ordinance etc.).

Please be considerate of the privacy of other individuals when taking and sending images with camera-equipped mobile phones.

Intellectual property rights

Copyrights and portrait rights

It is prohibited to reproduce, alter, or publicly transmit recorded pictures or sounds, or copyrighted text, images, music or software downloaded from Internet sites with FOMA terminal, without the copyright holder's authorization, except for the case permitted by copyright law to copy or quote for personal use.
Note that shooting photos or movies at some demonstrations, performances or exhibitions may be restricted even for personal use.
Also, it may infringe on the portrait rights to take pictures of others with FOMA terminal or to disclose the pictures to general public through Internet sites, etc., without their consent.

Trademarks

Company and product names mentioned in this manual are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.

- "FOMA", "mova", "i-motion", "i-mode", "i-αppli", "i-melody", "i-anime", "mopera U", "mopera", "WORLD CALL", "WORLD WING", "Public mode", "i-motion mail", "i-αppliDX", "i-shot", "i-area", "Short mail", "Dual Network", "FirstPass", "i-αppli search", "V-Live", "visualnet", "Security Scan", "sigmarion", "musea", "DoPa", "Pake-Houdai", "Deco-mail", "Chaku-motion (Movie ring tone)", "Chara-den", "QUICKCAST", "イマドコサーチ (Searching position)", "e-billing", "MessageF", "トクだねニュース便 (Convenient News)", "My DoCoMo", "Kids' mode", "Multinumber", and "FOMA", "i-mode", "i-αppli" logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DoCoMo.
- Windows is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the US and other countries. (The official name for Windows is Microsoft® Windows® operating system.)
- Java and all Java-related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the US and other countries.
- "Multitask" is a trademark of NEC Corporation.
- Catch Phone (Call waiting service) is a registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- NetFront is a trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.
- Jv-Lite is a trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other country.
- Macromedia, Flash and Macromedia Flash are trademarks or registered trademarks of Macromedia, Inc. in the US and other countries.
- QR code is a registered trademark of Denso Wave Inc.
- McAfee and VirusScan are registered trademarks or trademarks of McAfee, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries.
  All other registered and unregistered trademarks herein are the sole property of their respective owners.
  Copyright© 2004 Networks Associates Technology, Inc. All Rights Reserved.
- Adobe and Reader are trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the US or other countries.
- QuickTime is a registered trademark of Apple Computer, Inc. within US and other countries.
- Other company and product names mentioned in this manual are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.

- The following abbreviations of operating systems (Japanese versions) are used in this manual:
  - Windows XP indicates Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.
  - Windows 2000 indicates Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.
  - Windows Me indicates Microsoft® Windows® Millennium Edition operating system.
  - Windows 98 indicates Microsoft® Windows® 98 Professional operating system.
  - Windows 98SE indicates Microsoft® Windows® 98 Second Edition operating system.
  - Windows NT Server indicates Microsoft® Windows NT® Server Network operating system Version 4.0.
  - "Windows XP, 2000, Me or 98" may be used jointly to indicate these operating systems.
  - Windows 98 is written as a general term of both Windows 98 and Windows 98SE.

Others

- Contains Macromedia® Flash™ Player technology by Macromedia, Inc.,
  Copyright© 1995-2006 Macromedia, Inc. All rights reserved.
  Macromedia, Flash and Macromedia Flash are trademarks or registered trademarks of Macromedia, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- NetFront by ACCESS CO., LTD is installed in this product to provide Internet function.
  Copyright© 1996-2006, ACCESS CO., LTD.
- This product contains JV-Lite2 by ACCESS CO., LTD. as JAVA Virtual Machine technology.
  Copyright© 2000-2006, ACCESS CO., LTD.
- This product contains a module developed by Independent JPEG Group.
- Advanced Wnn v2 is used for input method for Japanese language which is a product of OMRON SOFTWARE Co., LTD. "Advanced Wnn v2"© OMRON SOFTWARE Co., Ltd. 2003-2006 All Rights Reserved.
- This product is licensed based on MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License. The use of MPEG-4 Video Codec function is allowed for personal and nonprofit use only in the following cases:
  - Shooting movies and i-motions that conform to MPEG-4 Visual Standard (hereinafter referred to as MPEG-4 Video),
  - Playing MPEG-4 Videos recorded personally by consumers not engaged in profit activities,
  - Playing MPEG-4 Video supplied from the provider licensed from MPEG-LA.
  - For further utilization such as promotion, in-house use or profit-making business, please contact MPEG LA, LLC in U.S.
- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations;

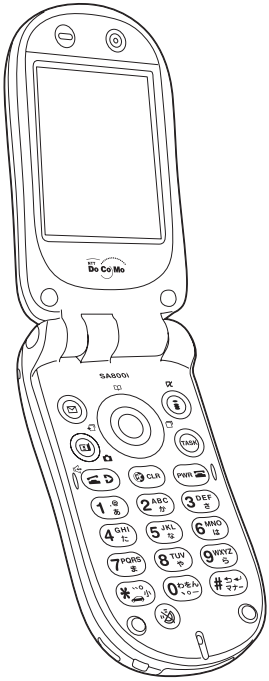
4,901,307	5,600,754	5,267,261	5,506,865	5,710,784
5,504,773	5,416,797	5,568,483	5,228,054	5,778,338
5,109,390	5,490,165	5,414,796	5,544,196	
5,535,239	5,101,501	5,659,569	5,337,338	
5,267,262	5,511,073	5,056,109	5,657,420	

- SAMURAI INC. and NTT DoCoMo, Inc. owns copyright to the designs of following data:
  Images preinstalled in FOMA terminal
  "青空(Blue sky)", "マーガレット(Marguerite)", "4 つ葉のクローバー (Four-leaf clover)", "ながれ星 (Shooting stars)"

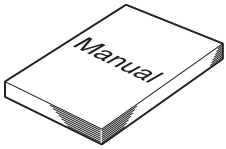
Basic package and optional accessories

<Basic package>

FOMA SA800i
(including the rear cover SA02 and the written warranty)



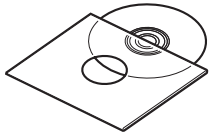
Instruction manual



かんたん操作ガイド
(Manual for Kids)

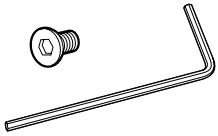
* Quick Reference Manual is appended on P556.

CD-ROM for FOMA SA800i

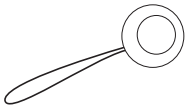


<Sample>

Screw/Driver for fixing battery pack

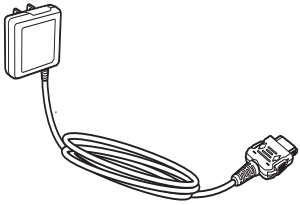


Strap for Burglar alarm

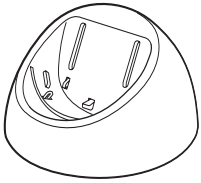


<Optional accessories>

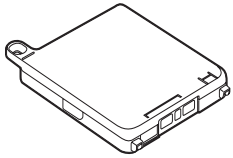
FOMA AC adapter 01
(including written warranty and instruction manual)



Desktop holder SA02
(including instruction manual)



Battery pack SA02
(including instruction manual)



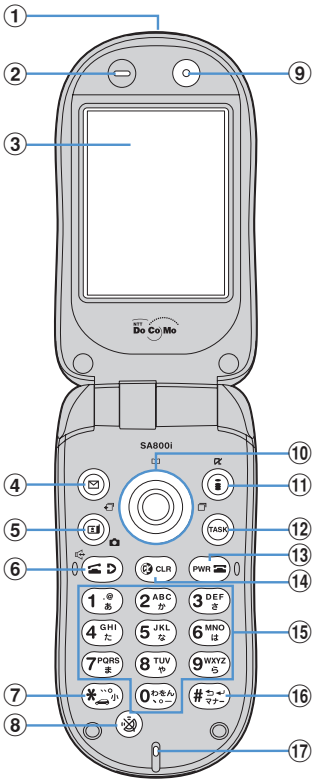
Other optional accessories ➔P528

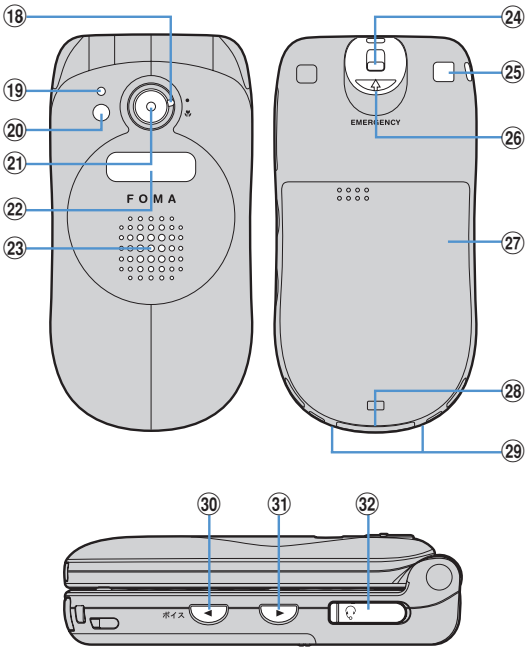
Before using SA800i

Names and functions of parts 28
Reading display 30
Selecting Menu 34
When forgetting key operation . . . . . <Functions guide> 38
Using UIM (FOMA card) 39
Inserting/removing battery pack 41
Charging mobile phone 42
Checking remaining battery level . . . . . <Battery level> 47
Turning the power ON/OFF . . . . . <Power ON/OFF> 48
Switch languages on Screen . . . . . <Select language> 49
Initial setting . . . . . <Initial setting> 49
Setting time and date . . . . . <Time and date setting> 50
Set time by using GPS . . . . . <GPS time setting> 51
Notifying your phone number to the other party . . . . <CallerID notification> 51
Checking your own phone number . . . . . <Profile> 52

Names and functions of parts

Names and functions of parts are as below.





Size (mm)	Weight (g)
Height 97 × Width 50 × Depth 27 (when folded)	Approx. 122 (when the battery pack attached)

① **Infrared data port**
Used for data exchange with Infrared communication. →P391

② **Earpiece**
Voice of the other party comes out here.

③ **Display →P30**

④ **Mail/Left flexible key (✉)**
Displays Mail menu.→P241
Hold down the key for over a second to display Compose mail screen. →P242

⑤ **Video-phone start (📹)/Camera key (📷)**
Makes Video-phone calls. →P87
Hold down the key for over a second to display the screen to shoot still images. →P166

⑥ **Voice-call start/Hands free/Direct Call key (📞)**
Makes Voice-phone calls. →P58
Press the key during a video-phone call to change the mode to Hands free. (Hold down the key during a voice-call for over a second.) →P58, 87
Displays Direct Call screen. →P115

⑦ **✳/Public mode (Drive mode) key(✳)**
Enter "✳", small letters, or voiced sound symbol. →P489
Hold down the key for over a second to change to Public mode (Drive mode). →P77

⑧ **GPS key (🛰)**
Displays GPS menu. →P322
Hold down the key for over a second to position the present location. →P324

⑨ **In-camera →P160**
Shoots a self image, or sends a self image with Video-phone.

⑩ **Cursor key (✣)**
Center key (●)
Starts the operation, or selects menu items. →P32
Hold down the key for over a second to set Side keys Valid/Invalid. →P152

Phonebook/Up cursor key (○)
Displays Phonebook search screen. →P107
Selects the upper items. →P32
Hold down the key for over a second to add a new entry to Phonebook. →P99, 104

Down cursor key (○)
Selects the lower items. →P32

Received calls/Left cursor key (○)
Displays Received calls. →P70
Selects the items to the left. →P32
Hold down the key for over a second to display Received address history. →P281

Redial/Right cursor key (○)
Displays Redials. →P60
Selects the items to the right. →P32
Hold down the key for over a second to display Sent address history. →P281

⑪ **i-mode/Right flexible (i)/i-αppli key (ｱﾌﾟﾘ)**
Displays i-mode menu. →P195
Hold down the key for over a second to display i-αppli folder list screen. →P304

⑫ **Task menu key (TASK)**
Displays Task menu. →P404

⑬ **Power/On-hold/End key (PWR)**
Hold down the key for over 2 seconds to turn the power ON/OFF. →P48
Terminates a call. →P58, 87
Holds a call by pressing when receiving a call. →P74
Ends to display menu, etc.

⑭ **Clear key (CLR)**
Deletes entered characters, or returns to the previous screen.

⑮ **Keys (1 to 0)**
Enters phone numbers.
Enters characters or numerics.

⑯ **#/Manner mode/Linefeed key (#)**
Enter "#". →P489
Hold down the key for over a second to set Manner mode. →P127
Press the key on character input screen to feed a line. →P489

⑰ **Mouthpiece/Microphone**
Sends your voice through Mouthpiece.
Use it as a microphone while shooting movies or recording sound.
- Do not cover here. The other party may not receive your voice clearly, or sounds may not be recorded properly.

⑱ **Close-up switch lever**
Switches the mode between Close-up/Normal. →P177

⑲ **Incoming-call/Charge/Shoot lamp**
Lights on (blinks) while receiving calls, shooting images, or charging.

⑳ **Flash/Light**
Adds light intensity while shooting. →P174

㉑ **Out-camera →P160**
Shoots still images/movies, or sends images of such as landscapes during a Video-phone call.

㉒ **Backside-display →P33**

㉓ **Speaker**
Ring tone comes out here.
Voice of the other party comes out here in Hands free function.

㉔ **Burglar alarm strap hole →P346**

㉕ **Strap hole**

㉖ **Burglar alarm lever**
Burglar alarm rings. →P347

㉗ **Rear cover**

㉘ **External connection port**
Charges by connecting AC adapter (optional).
Connects to PC with FOMA USB connection cable (optional).

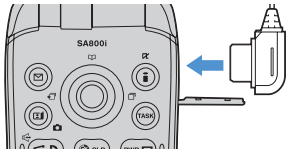
㉙ **Charging terminals**
Used for charging with Desktop holder (optional).

㉚ **Side key (ボイス(Voice)) →P30**

㉛ **Side key (○) →P30**
Hold down ○ for over a second to enter "+".

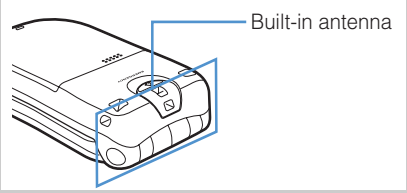
㉜ **Earphone/Microphone jack**
Used by inserting Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with a switch (optional).
- Conventional Earphone/Microphone can be used with an Earphone jack convert adapter (optional).

Connecting to the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with a switch



Information

- Operation procedure is indicated based on Key illustration described in this section.
- Refer to "Inserting/removing UIM (FOMA card)" or "Inserting/removing battery pack", for the details of the inside of the rear cover. →P39, 41
- The antenna is built-in to FOMA terminal. Do not cover the built-in antenna with your hands during a call or using i-mode.



Operations available with Side keys

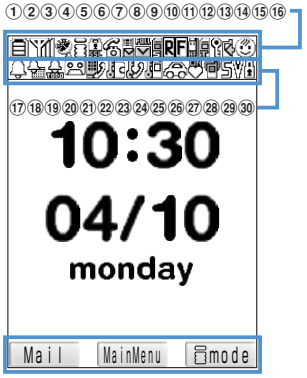
Main operations with pressing Side keys (▷ and ▷) of FOMA terminals are as below.

Status	Operation	Operation result
Opening FOMA terminal		
Stand-by display	Hold down ▷ for over a second.	Enters "+" to make an international call.
	Press ▷.	Notifies Time, Missed calls or Receiving mails with sound/voice.
Displaying sites	Press ▷ or ▷.	Scrolls screens.
Playing Ring tone/Notification sound*		Stops Ring tone/Notify tone.
Alarm sound*		Stops Alarm sound.
During a video-phone, Shooting still/movie images		Adjusts Brightness.
Displaying images, playing Movie/i-motion, Melody		Displays/plays the previous/next data.
When FOMA terminal is folded		
—	Press ▷.	Switches Backside-display.
—	Press ▷.	Notifies Time, Missed calls or Receiving mails with sound/voice.

* Operations when FOMA terminal is folded are the same as when opened.

Reading display

Displays the current mode or various Marks (Icons) on the screen, to indicate the status of FOMA terminal such as battery level.



Icon field
Displays the status or settings of FOMA terminal.

Soft key field
Operations available with Left/Right flexible keys are displayed.

Information

- Displays only one function (status) with the highest priority even when activating multiple functions (status) of the same field.
- The 2nd line (⑰ to ㉚) of the Icon field is not displayed while playing animations or i-motions. Press 2 CLR to stop playing to see icons.

Display icon list

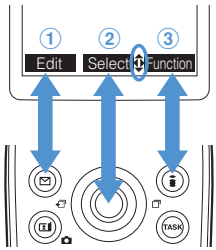
	Icon	Description
①		Battery level →P47
		Charging
		Not charging normally.
②		Radio wave condition level →P48
		Outside the service area or under poor radio wave condition.
		Under Self mode →P149
③		Positioning/providing/notifying location →P321
		Periodic notification is set. →P336
		Location provide is set. →P328
		Periodical notification and Location provide are set.
④		Connecting to i-mode →P195
	/	In packet communication (Stand-by)/(Connecting) →P454
		In packet communication (Sending)
⑤		Displaying SSL page/using software downloaded from SSL →P197
⑥		During a voice-call →P57
		During a video-phone call →P85
		In 64K data communication →P454
		In Infrared communication →P391
⑦		Mail is stored in the i-mode Center. (Mail mark is colored orange with mail box full.) →P256
		MessageR is stored in the i-mode Center. (R Mark is colored orange with mail box full.) →P222
		MessageF is stored in the i-mode Center. (F Mark is colored orange with mail box full.) →P222
⑧		Inbox full →P266
		Unread i-mode mail is saved in Inbox →P256
		Unread i-mode mail and SMS are saved in Inbox →P256, 294
		Unread SMS is saved in Inbox →P294
⑨		UIM (FOMA card) (SMS) is full →P297

	Icon	Description
⑩		Unread MessageR is saved. (Icon is colored orange with MessageR box full.) →P222
⑪		Unread MessageF is saved. (Icon is colored orange with MessageF box full.) →P222
⑫		In USB hands free →P67
		USB connection status (Data communication mode) →P456
⑬		Terminal link (inserting a UIM other than UIM (FOMA card))
⑭		Under Secret mode (Icon is colored orange when editing Secret data.) →P153
⑮		You have Missed call.→P80
⑯		Under Kids' mode →P54
⑰		Alarm is set. →P406
⑱		Schedule alarm is set. →P414
⑲		ToDo alarm is set. →P419
⑳	/	Record message is set. (The numeric indicates the number of messages and the Icon is colored orange when the storage is full.) →P80
㉑	/	Voice mail is stored in the Center (The numeric indicates more than 2 messages are stored.) →P441
㉒		Under PIM lock →P149
㉓		Under Keypad dial lock →P151
㉔		Under All lock →P147
		Under Close lock →P152
㉕		Under Public mode (Drive mode) →P77
㉖	/	Under Manner mode (OFF as time's passed/Duration mode) →P127
㉗	(red)	Under Manner mode (Silent vibrator) →P127
		Under Manner mode (Sleep) →P127
	(green)	Under Manner mode (Original manner) →P127
㉘		Phone receive call volume is set to OFF. →P123
㉙		Phone receive call vibrator is set. →P123
㉚		Side key operation is set to Invalid. →P152

Soft key

Operations or settings are available by Soft keys displayed on the lower field of Stand-by display/a screen during operation.
You can use Left flexible key (㊉), Right flexible key (ⓘ) and Center key (●) to execute Soft key function.

- Available Soft key functions differ depending on the operation.



Executing Soft key ① function

Press ㊉.

Executing Soft key ② function

Press ●.

The marks such as "▲" or "▼" on the right of Soft key ② indicates the existence of selectable items above/below/right/left. Press the cursor key (✣) to select an item, and press ●.

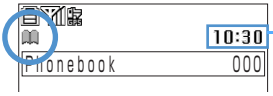
Executing Soft key ③ function

Press ⓘ.

- In this manual, Soft key functions are described with [ ] like ㊉ [Edit] or ⓘ [Function], when instructed to operate Soft key ① or ③.

Task icon

Indicates the icon of currently activated or operated function. (Task icon)
Multiple task icons are displayed while activating multiple functions. →P404



For example, Task icon indicating Phonebook is displayed while displaying Phonebook.

Displaying the current time

Task icon list

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	Dialing		Displaying Phonebook
	Dialing/receiving/during a voice-call		Displaying Calendar
	Making/receiving/during a video-phone call		Displaying Redial, Received calls, Sent/ Received address, Missed calls, Rejected calls history
	Schedule alarm		Activating Snap photo
	ToDo alarm		Activating Shoot movie
	Alarm		Activating Bar code reader
	Viewing Mail/Message, setting mails		Activating Calculator
	Composing Mail/SMS		Activating Jpn dictionary
	Checking new message, Receiving/sending i-mode mail, Receiving MessageR/F		Activating Voice recorder
	Checking SMS, receiving/sending SMS		Activating Record message
	Under i-mode, setting i-mode		Activating Record voice memo in stand-by
	Displaying Bookmark		Playing Record message during a call
	Activating i-αppli software		Activating Text memo

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	Activating GPS function		Activating Dial memo
	Displaying Profile		Playing VoiceMemo-STBY
	Displaying Data box		Exchanging data with Infrared communication (stand-by)
	Displaying "My picture" folder		Updating Software (stand-by)
	Displaying "i-motion" folder		Updating pattern definitions
	Displaying "Melody" folder		Setting
	Displaying "Chara-den" folder		Activating Direct Call
	Displaying Original data		Activating Chat mail

Information

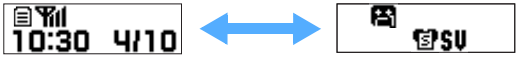
- FOMA terminal screens are manufactured with highly advanced technology, however, some dots may be always or never lights up. Please be forewarned this phenomenon is not malfunction.

Reading Backside-display

Radio wave condition, battery level, time or status of FOMA terminal are indicated on Backside-display. You can also check the status of receiving calls/mails.

1 Press ▷ with FOMA terminal folded.

- Press to switch icons each time. When no icon appears on Status screen, the screen is not switchable.



Clock screen　　Status screen

Icon list (Clock screen)

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	Battery level →P47		Under Self mode →P149
	Charging		Connecting i-mode →P195
	Charging disorder		Unread i-mode mail/SMS is saved. →P256, 294
	Radio wave condition level →P48	R	Unread MessageR is saved. →P222
圏外	Outside the service area or under poor radio wave condition.	F	Unread MessageF is saved. →P222

Icon list (Status screen)

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	You have Missed call. →P80		Under Manner mode (Time's passed OFF) →P127
	Record message is saved. (The numeric indicates the number of messages.) →P80		Under Manner mode (Silent vibrator) →P127
	Voice mail is saved. (The numeric indicates the number of messages.) →P441		Under Manner mode (Sleep) →P127
PIM	Under PIM lock →P149		Under Manner mode (Original manner) →P127
DIAL	Under Keypad dial lock →P151		Phone receive call volume is set to OFF. →P123

See next page

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	Under Kids' mode →P54		Phone receive call vibrator is set. →P123
	Under Public mode (Drive mode) →P77		Alarm is set. →P406
	Under Manner mode (Duration mode) →P127		

Information

- Backside-display is turned off when FOMA terminal is opened.
- When a call is received, if the phone number is saved in Phonebook, the registered name is displayed. →P99

Selecting Menu

Select and then set/activate a function from the menus. You can select the function by pressing keys on Keypad, or by pointing the cursor and press ● on the menu screen.

- Menu items colored gray cannot be selected.
- Press PWR to return to Stand-by display, to quit selecting/setting.
- Press CLR to return to the previous screen.

Selecting a function from Menu

Press ● on Stand-by display to display Main menu. Select an icon, and Menu/folder list of the item is displayed. Select an item from the list to set.

- Press ✉, i, or ⊛ on Stand-by display, and each menu is displayed. Set each item with the same operation as Main menu.
  - ✉ : Displays Mail menu.
  - i : Displays i-mode menu.
  - ⊛ : Displays GPS menu.
- Menu definition on Menu is available to display. →P137

<ex> Change Ring tone

1 Press ● on Stand-by display.

Displays Main menu with 12 icons.

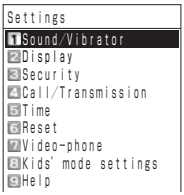
- Press ✣ (up and down, left and right of cursor key) and select.
- The figure of the icon of selected items is changed.

ex : Data box

Not selected → **Selected**

2 Press ● to select Settings, and press ●.

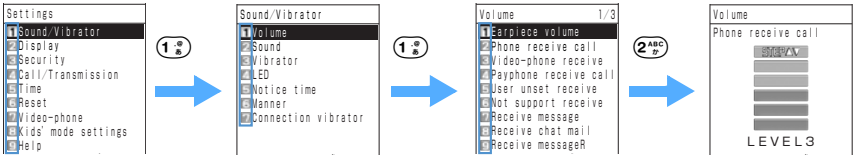
Sound setting screen is displayed.



3 Press 1 "Sound/Vibrator", press 1 "Volume" and press 2 "Phone receive call".

Volume setting screen is displayed.

- Numbers on the top of items framed with ☐ indicate the numbered key.



■ Selecting with cursor key

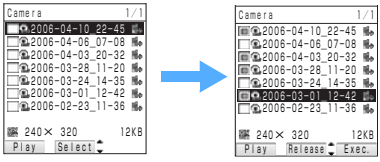
Press ● (Up/Down cursor) to select an item, and press ●.

- Selected items are highlighted.

4 Press ● to adjust volume and press ●.

Selecting multiple items

When selecting multiple items such as Delete option, select a file and press ● to change ☐ to ▣. Select all files to delete in the same way, then execute the operation.

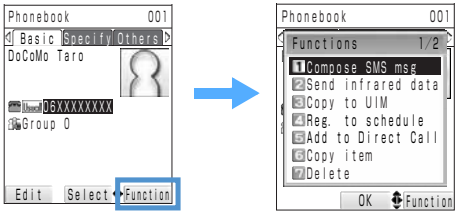


- When selecting multiple items, select the data and press ✉ to confirm the contents.

Selecting a function from Function menu

When displaying Menu screen or activating functions, "Function" may be displayed as Soft key. Press (i) (Right flexible key) to operate the function.

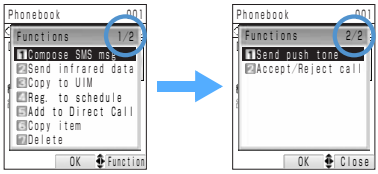
1 Press (i) while Soft key "Function" is displayed on the screen.



Displays Function menu.

■ **For multiple pages in Function menu etc.**

Press (◯) to display the next page, or press (◯) to display the previous page.



The next/previous page is displayed.
"Current page/Total pages" is displayed on the upper right of the screen.

2 Press a key on Keypad, or press (◯) to select and press (●).

Information

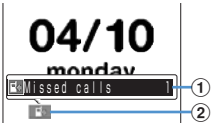
- Alternatively, press (i) to display the next page. Press (i) on the last page to close Function menu.

Displaying information from Notify icon < Notify icon>

When you have missed calls or received mails, Notify icons appear on Stand-by display, to enable you to see the information quickly.

- When you have missed calls or received mails from senders/callers registered in Direct call, Direct call icon is displayed. →P117

<ex> Missed calls



① **Notification**
② **Notify icon**

1 Press (●).

Missed calls list is displayed.

- If there are multiple notification, press (◯) to select one of them.
- If there are multiple Notify icons, press (◯) to select one of them. When both Notify icon and Direct Call icon are displayed, select one of the icons by pressing (◯).
- When only Notify icons or Direct Call icon are displayed, display the notification by pressing (◯), select an icon and press (●).

Icon list

- The chart below indicates the case when a single information is notified.

Icon	Notifying information	Screen after selected/operated
	Missed calls 1	Displays Missed calls screen. If Dialed/Received calls setting is set to "OFF", a message is displayed.
	Voice mail received	Displays Check screen for Play voice message.
	Record message 1	Displays Record message list screen.
	New mail 1	Displays folders in where the current i-mode mail/SMS are saved.
	MessageR 1	Displays MessageR list screen.
	MessageF 1	Displays MessageF list screen.
	Alarm 1	Displays unchecked Alarm list.
	Schedule alarm 1	Displays the schedule screen. (The list is displayed for 2 or more ToDo.)
	ToDo alarm 1	Displays ToDo. (The list is displayed for 2 or more ToDo.)
	Missed location/ No response 1	Displays location history.
	Update complete	Displays a message for completing Software update.
	Check update	Displays the reason not to complete updating software or other information.
	Auto start failed	Displays a message failed to start i-αppli automatically.

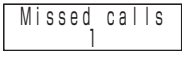
Displaying information with FOMA terminal folded

Displays the information of Notify icon on Backside-display and notifies the information with voice.

- Voice notification is not played under Manner mode. Under Original manner mode, the volume of voice notification follows the setting in the Original manner.

<ex> Missed calls

1 Press ▷ (ボイス (Voice)) with FOMA terminals folded.



The number of Missed calls is displayed and notified with voice.

- If there are multiple Notify icons, displays or notifies with voice each time ▷ is pressed.

Information

- Notify icons are not displayed when answering the call or stopping the alarm.
- Icons disappear when selecting and confirming the details of Notify icons.
- Main menu is not displayed by pressing ● when displaying notifying information. Press ○ or CLR to clear notifying information and press ●.
- The setting not to notify information with voice is also available. →P437
- The volume of voice notification follows Phone receive call setting in Volume setting. →P123

Operation procedure description

Operation procedure is given as below in this manual.

<ex1>

1 Press ● ▶Press Settings ▶ Press 1あ.

Operation procedure of <ex1> is as follows:

Press ● (Center key operation) on Stand-by display at first.
Press ◆ to select Settings, and press ●.
Press 1あ (1st selection of Menu) at the last.

<ex2>

2 Press i [Function] ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 3DEFさ "Sort files".

Operation procedure of <ex2> is as follows.

Press i (Right Soft key operation) at first.

- Displays the function of Soft key within [ ] when pressing Right/Left flexible keys.

Press ○ to display the next page.
Press 3DEFさ (Select "3Sort files") at the last.

Information

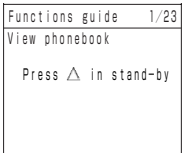
- Function of Center key is omitted and indicated as "●" only.
- Operation procedure to press PWR, to close Menu after setting is omitted.
- Confirmation message may appear depending on the setting. The message disappears after approximately 5 seconds, and also you can clear the message by pressing ●. (Omitted from the operation step.)

Functions guide

When forgetting key operation

- For details, refer to each operation procedure given in this manual.

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 9WXYZら ▶ Press 8TUVや.



2 Press ◆ to display Functions guide.

Press the key each time to switch items.

- Press ● to close.

Using UIM (FOMA card)

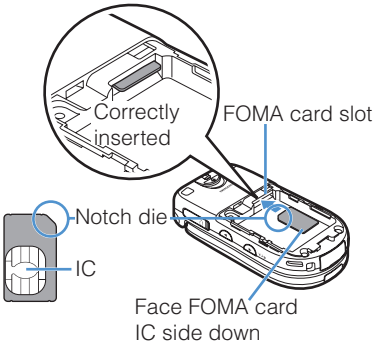
User's information such as phone number is saved in UIM (FOMA card).

Inserting/removing UIM (FOMA card)

- Turn the power off, remove the battery pack and hold closed FOMA terminal in your hand, to insert/remove UIM (FOMA card). →P41

Inserting

1 Insert UIM (FOMA card) slowly all the way in FOMA card slot, as the figure below.

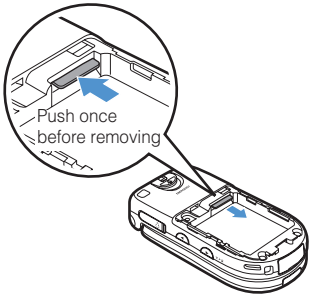


- UIM (FOMA card) is fixed as the position shown in the left figure when properly inserted.

Removing

1 Press UIM (FOMA card) attached into the slot lightly.

2 Pull out UIM (FOMA card) along to the horizontal direction of the arrow in the figure below.



Information

- Be cautious not to lose removed UIM (FOMA card).
- Be careful not to force to insert or remove UIM (FOMA card), or FOMA terminal (FOMA card slot) or UIM (FOMA card) may be damaged.

UIM security codes

2 security codes of PIN and PIN2 codes are used for the UIM (FOMA card).

PIN code : You can set to enter the code every time the power is turned on, for privacy protection.

PIN2 code : Enter the code for the personal authorization on i-mode/Internet sites.

- Both codes are set to "0000" by default, however, they can be changed to any 4 to 8-digit number.
- Enter PUK when PIN/PIN2 code is locked. →P146

UIM (FOMA card) operation restrictions

UIM (FOMA card) operation restrictions provide protection for user's data or files.
When downloading data or files from i-mode sites or Internet sites with UIM (FOMA card) attached, UIM (FOMA card) operation restrictions are automatically set to downloaded items.

- You cannot display or play data/files with UIM (FOMA card) operation restrictions, when another UIM (FOMA card) is attached or UIM (FOMA card) is removed.
- Data types with restricted operation by UIM (FOMA card) are as below:
  - Images
  - Melody
  - i-motion
  - Frame/Stamp
  - Chara-den
  - Screen memo
  - i-αppli
  - Original data
  - Deco-mail template
  - Images inserted in Deco-mail text
  - Files attached to i-mode mail
  - Files attached to MessageR/F
  - Flash movie

Information

- Operations of following data are not restricted by UIM (FOMA card); data or files retrieved by Infrared or Data link software, and images shot by FOMA terminal built-in camera or edited images without file restriction.
- Operations of images/i-αppli/Chara-den/Melody preinstalled in FOMA terminal are not restricted, however, to be restricted when deleted once and downloaded again.
- When setting data with restricted operation by UIM (FOMA card) to Stand-by display/Call or Receive display/Ring tone, and starting FOMA terminal with another UIM (FOMA card) attached or UIM (FOMA card) removed, the setting returns to default.

The settings saved in UIM (FOMA card)

The following settings are saved in UIM (FOMA card). If you switch UIM (FOMA card), the settings saved in the inserted one become valid.

- 表示言語選択 (Select language)
- PIN code
- PIN2 code
- Enter PIN code
- i-mode setting (Certificate)
- SMS message validity
- SMS input char. type
- SMS Center

Functional differences between UIM (FOMA card)

Functions of 2 types (green and blue) of UIM (FOMA card) are different as below:

Item	UIM (FOMA card) (green)	UIM (FOMA card) (blue)
Number of digits of a phone number able to be registered to UIM (FOMA card) Phonebook	Up to 26 digits	Up to 20 digits
Client certificate to use FirstPass	Available	Unavailable
WORLD WING Service	Available	Unavailable
Service dialing no.	Available	Unavailable

WORLD WING

WORLD WING is the DoCoMo FOMA international roaming service. Replace the green UIM (FOMA card) to FOMA terminals or mobile phones for international use (W-CDMA or GSM method), and you can make/receive a call with the same phone number overseas.

WORLD WING is available to use without additional application.

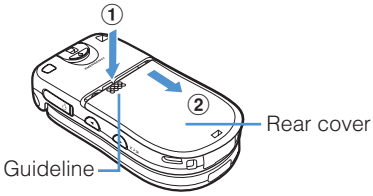
* If the user has applied FOMA service before August 31, 2005, and not yet subscribed to WORLD WING service, the additional application is required for the use of WORLD WING.
* WORLD WING may not be available depending on the billing plan.

Inserting/removing battery pack

- Turn the power off before exchanging or removing the battery pack.

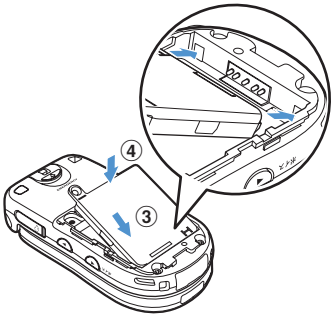
Inserting

1 Hold down and slide the guideline, on the rear cover to remove.



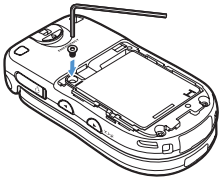
Hold down the rear cover to the direction of ①, slide to ② and remove.

2 Fit the battery pack in, with the printing surface on top.



To fit the metal terminals of the battery pack and FOMA terminal, hold down the battery pack to the direction of ③, and fit in to ④.

3 Fix the battery pack with a special screw.

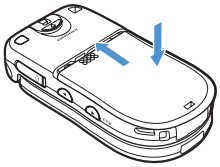


Use the provided driver to tighten the screw for fixing battery pack.

- Insert the screw for fixing battery pack onto the screw hole firmly and rotate the screw. Do not force to tighten up.

See next page

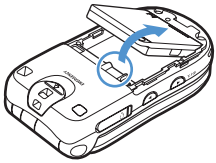
4 Attach the rear cover.



Mount the tab of the rear cover to fit to the groove with approximately 3 mm gap, and slide the rear cover until the click sound is heard.

Removing

1 Remove the rear cover, a special screw and then the battery pack.



Insert your finger into the gap next to the screw hole, pick up along to the arrow direction and remove the battery.

- Follow the same procedure of attaching, to remove the rear cover.
- Follow the same procedure of fixing, to remove the special screw.

Information

- The metal terminals of FOMA terminal may be damaged when forcing to mount the battery pack.
- Fold FOMA terminal when you mount or remove the battery pack.
- You can use the terminal without fixing Battery pack with the screw.

Charging mobile phone

- The battery pack is not charged full by default. Be sure to use specified AC adapter (optional) or DC adapter (optional) to charge the battery before using FOMA terminal.

Reminder for charging

Effective usage of the battery pack

Use the battery pack exclusive for FOMA terminals.

- For details on handling the battery pack, refer to the battery pack manual.
- In the extremely low, or high temperature such as in a closed car, battery power reduces, allowing shorter time for use. Also the battery pack life would be shortened. Use in normal temperature, as far as possible.
- Battery pack life is limited. When the battery pack is charged, but not recovered the original power or the battery lasts only for limited time, the battery pack life is expired. Purchase a new battery pack of the specified type.
- The battery pack life is approximately 1 year. However, life span may be shortened depending on usage frequency.

Li-ion

To promote environmental conservation, be sure to return your used battery pack to NTT DoCoMo sales outlets, our corporate agencies or the shops that collect used battery in your community.

Charging

- Do not charge the battery for an extended period (several days) with FOMA terminal powered on. When charging for an extended period with FOMA terminal powered on, the power is supplied from the battery pack of FOMA terminal after completing charge. As the battery is consumed, Alarm may be sounded after using the terminal for a short period of time. In this case, charge with the correct procedure again. Before charging the battery again, remove FOMA terminal from AC adapter/Desktop holder/DC adapter (optional) and reconnect it.
- Charge the battery when you have not used the terminal for a long time.
- With FOMA terminal powered on while charging, phone calls or mails can be received. However, charging time is to be longer.
- The battery pack cannot be directly charged. Be sure to charge it with mounting to FOMA terminal.

Charging time/Available time for use (estimate)

Charging time

- The period of time is for charging an empty battery pack with FOMA terminal powered off.

FOMA AC adapter 01	FOMA DC adapter 01
Approx. 90 minutes	Approx. 90 minutes

Available time for use (estimate)

- Available time for use depends on the usage environment.

Continuous stand-by time (stationary)	Continuous stand-by time (moving)	Continuous call time (during a voice call)	Continuous call time (during a video-phone call)
Approx. 370 hours	Approx. 270 hours	Approx. 140 minutes	Approx. 90 minutes

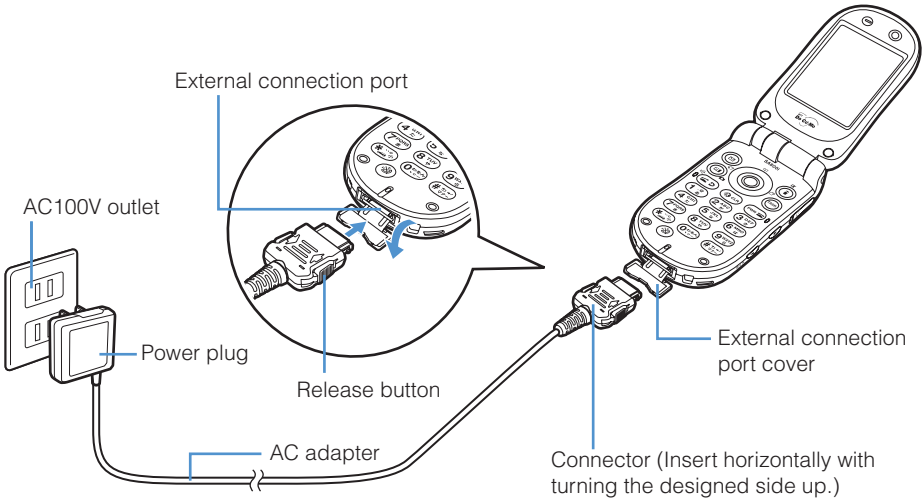
- Continuous call time indicates the approximate call time under a condition that FOMA terminal can send or receive radio wave normally.
- The continuous stand-by time is approximate time that the user moves with FOMA terminals folded in normal radio wave condition. In addition, calling (data communication)/stand-by duration may be reduced to half, depending on the charging status, function setting status (setting Power off act to "ON", etc.), usage environment such as temperature, or the radio wave condition of the usage location (out of service area or poor radio wave condition). Calling (data communication)/stand-by duration is reduced by using i-mode communication.
- When composing i-mode mails, starting i-αppli, in data communication, using Camera or executing Multi-access, the call (communication)/stand-by time is reduced.

Charging with AC/DC adapter

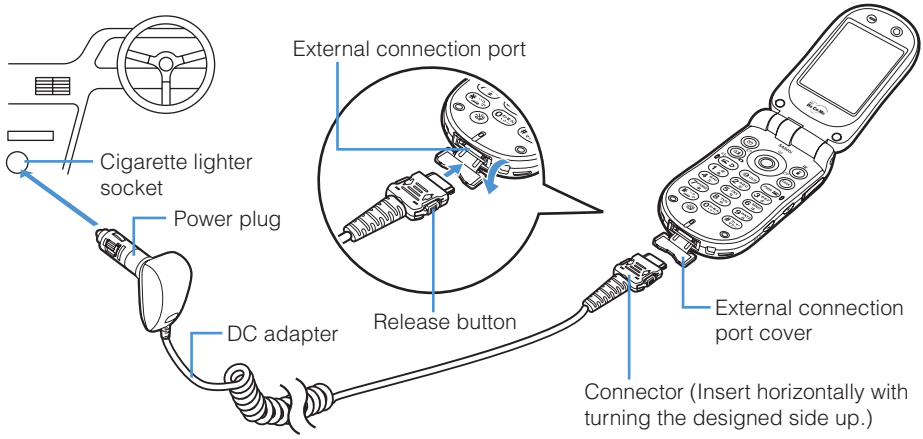
Charge with optional AC adapter, DC adapter or Desktop holder.

- Be sure to also read the manual of FOMA AC adapter 01 (optional) or DC adapter 01 (optional).
- Fit in the battery pack to FOMA terminal.

<Charging with AC adapter>



<Charging with DC adapter>



1 **Open the cover of the external connection port of FOMA terminal.**

2 **Insert the connector of AC adapter or DC adapter with the arrow mark on top into External connection port of FOMA terminal.**

- Insert horizontally until it clicks.

3 **Unfold the power plug of AC adapter and insert it into AC outlet.**
For DC adapter, insert the plug into Cigarette lighter socket of a car.

The charge starts with a sound and the charging lamp lights up.

4 **Remove the charger plug of AC adapter from AC outlet after completing charge.**
For DC adapter, remove the plug from Cigarette lighter socket.

5 **Be sure to press the release buttons and pull out the connecter horizontally, to remove the connecter from FOMA terminal.**

- Do not force to pull, or it may cause damage.

6 **Close the cover of External connection port of FOMA terminal.**

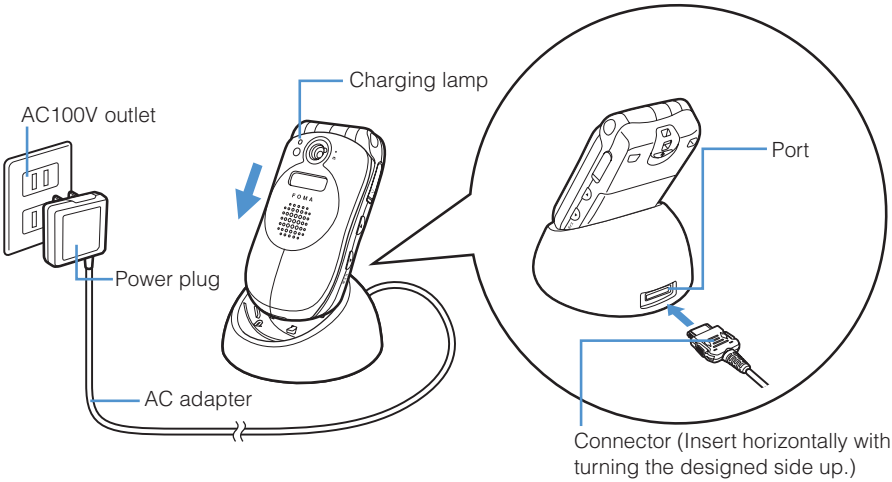
Information

- Red lamp lights up while charging. The lamp is turned off after completing charge.
- Charge lamp may not light up immediately after starting charging. If the lamp does not light up after a few minutes, disconnect FOMA terminal from AC adapter (or desktop holder) or DC adapter then reconnect to start charging.
- FOMA terminal, battery pack and AC adapter may become warm while charging but that phenomenon is normal.
- Connect AC adapter to AC 100V outlet.
- Do not use DC adapter when the vehicle's engine is not running. It may cause the car battery to be discharged.
- Do not force to remove/insert the connector.
- The fuse (2A) of the DC adapter is a consumable part. Contact your nearest automotive supply stores for replacements.
- Always use DC adapter with a negative-ground vehicle. Never plug it into a positive-ground vehicle.
- Data saved/registered in FOMA terminal remains about 1 month with the battery pack removed or battery empty. The data may be lost after 1 month. For data may be lost due to failure, repair or other handling of FOMA terminal, it is recommended to maintain a separate record of the data registered in your FOMA terminal. In case that saved or registered data is lost, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss.

Charging with the desktop holder

Charge FOMA terminal with the desktop holder (optional).

- Be sure to read the manual of Desktop holder SA02 (optional) .



1 Insert the connector of AC adapter (optional) into the port of the desktop holder.

2 Insert the power plug of AC adapter into AC outlet.

3 Set FOMA terminal on the desktop holder as illustrated.

The charge starts with a sound and the charging lamp lights up.

- Insert the connector until it clicks.

4 Pull out the FOMA terminal to the direction of the arrow and remove from the desktop holder after completing charging.

Information

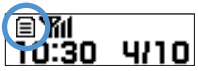
- Set FOMA terminal on a desktop holder firmly.
- Connect AC adapter to AC 100V outlet.
- Do not pinch the strap etc. when setting FOMA terminal to a desktop holder.
- The battery cannot be charged using the desktop holder alone.
- FOMA terminal, battery pack and AC adapter may become warm during charging but that phenomenon is normal.
- Place the desktop holder on the flat surface to use. Fold FOMA terminal when setting on/removing from the desktop holder.
- Remove AC adapter from the outlet when not using for an extended period of time.

Checking remaining battery level

The icon is displayed to indicate remaining battery level.

- The remaining battery level on the screen only indicates an approximate level.

(Battery level 3) : Enough for use
(Battery level 2) : Lower
(Battery level 1) : Hardly remained



Checking on backside display

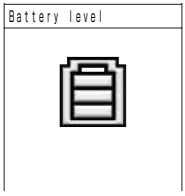
(Battery level 3) : Enough for use
(Battery level 2) : Lower
(Battery level 1) : Hardly remained

Checking remaining battery level with sound and display

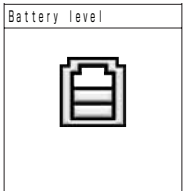
- Checking sound is not heard under charging, Manner mode or setting Keypad sound to "OFF".

1 **Press** ● ▶ **Press** Settings ▶ **Press** 9WXYZ ▶ **Press** 5JKL.

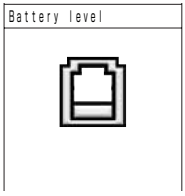
Battery level is displayed and you hear charging sound.



Battery level 3



Battery level 2

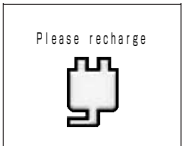


Battery level 1

Beep sounds 3 times (Battery level 3) : Enough for use
Beep sounds twice (Battery level 2) : Lower
Beep sounds once (Battery level 1) : Hardly remained

When battery is run out

- No Alarm tone rings under Manner mode or Public mode (Drive mode).



When the battery is almost run out, a message appears on the screen and Alarm tone rings.

- After the message appears, the power is turned off in approximately one minute.
- Press any key to stop Alarm tone.

Information

- When the battery is about to run out during a call, a message appears and the call is disconnected in approximately 20 seconds, with the power off.
- If the battery is almost run out while downloading data, download may be aborted with Alarm tone.
- When the battery is run out with Alarm tone, editing data (Phonebook, Schedule, ToDo, Text memo, Profile and Location service clients) are temporarily saved.

Power ON/OFF

Turning the power ON/OFF

Turning the power ON

1 Hold down PWR for over 2 seconds.

Stand-by display

Displays the animation, and then Stand-by display.

- Displays the reception level icon on the screen. See the icon for an approximate measure.
  (Good) → → (Poor) → (Out of service area)

Information

- When " 圏外 (out of service area)" is displayed, you are outside the service area or in a place where the radio waves are hard to reach. Move to a place in good radio wave condition.
- Enter PIN code screen is displayed in Enter PIN code is set to "ON". Stand-by display appears after entering PIN code.
- Even in displaying , calls/transmissions may be disconnected.
- Radio wave condition is not settled when making a call while moving. As the digital communication features, the connection may be terminated without notice. It is recommended to make a call in a place where is displayed.
- When UIM (FOMA card) is not mounted, a message appears notifying to that you need insert UIM (FOMA card). Turn the power off, mount UIM (FOMA card) correctly, then turn the power on again.

Turning the power OFF

1 Hold down PWR for over 2 seconds on Stand-by display.

- Location is provided by Power off act, even after turning the power off, following this step.

Turning the power off completely <Complete power OFF>

- When executing Complete power OFF, Location provide by Power off act is not available.

1 Enter the terminal security code on Stand-by display and press PWR for over 2 seconds.

2 Press 1 ･@ あ "Yes".

- Press 2 ABC か "No" to cancel.

Information

- If you have made the setting or operate as below while turning the power off, the power may be turned on automatically.
  - Power off act* (except under Complete power OFF) →P331
  - Burglar alarm →P347
  - Auto power ON →P406
  - Alarm start setting →P411

  * The power is on only temporarily and turned off after a while.
- Enter Password(number) under Kids' mode.

Select language

Switch languages on Screen

Default	日本語 (Japanese)

Select the language to display function names or messages on the screen.

1 Press ● ▶ Press 設定 ▶ Press 9WXYZ ▶ Press 6MNO.

2 Press 3DEF "English".

- When selecting English, the function name "Select language" is displayed as "表示言語選択 (Select language)".
- 2ABC"日本語（かんたん）(Simple Japanese for kids)" is not available except under Kids' mode.

Restoring the language from English to Japanese

①Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 9WXYZ.
②Press 6MNO "表示言語選択 (Select language)".
③Press 1 "日本語 (Japanese)".

Information

- Select language setting is recorded in UIM (FOMA card) inserted in FOMA terminal. Removing or inserting different UIM (FOMA card) may change the setting of Select language.

Initial setting

Initial setting

The following settings are configured when turning the power on for the first time; Time and date setting, Change security code, Change Password(number), Keypad sound, CallerID notification or Kids' mode.

- Initial setting is not displayed by resetting.
- You cannot configure the initial settings under Keypad dial lock/All lock/Close lock.

1 Press ●.

2 Set time and date.

- Setting procedure →P50

See next page

3 **Change the terminal security code.**

- Setting procedure →P144
- The default setting is "0000".

4 **Change Password(number).**

- Setting procedure →P56
- The default setting is "1111".

5 **Set Keypad sound.**

- Setting procedure →P124

6 **Change CallerID notification setting.**

- Setting procedure →P51

7 **Set Kids' mode.**

- Setting procedure →P54

8 **Check the status of Location provide setting and press ●.**

9 **Press 1 "Start next time" or 2 "Not start".**

- To start Initial setting every time the power is turned on, press 1 "Start next time".

Information

- If the setting is aborted by pressing PWR etc., functions for the completed settings are active.

Time and date setting

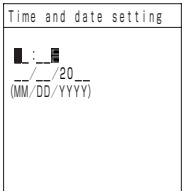
Setting time and date

Sets the time and date of FOMA terminal. Time and date setting is displayed on the screen or Backside-display after setting.

- Time and date can be entered between 0:00, January 1st, 2000 and 23:59, December 31st, 2099.

<ex> Setting as 10:30, April 10th, 2006

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 5 ▶ Press 1.**



2 **Enter time, date and the last 2 digits of the year, and press ●.**

The time and date is set.

- Press keys as "1030041006" here.
- When month or date is a digit between 1 to 9, enter 0 for preceding. (ex : For September, enter "09".)
- Alternatively, press ◎ to highlight, and press keys or ◎ to set time and date.

Information

- Following functions are not available until the time and date is set:
  - SSL session (Authentication)*
  - i-αppli auto start
  - Starting i-αppliDX
  - Starting the browser from i-αppli
  - Shooting still image/movie
  - Recording with Voice recorder
  - Periodical notification
  - etc.

  * Some sites are available without setting time and date.
- Time and date is to be displayed by setting time and date in the following functions.
  - Redial
  - Received calls
  - Record message
  - Calling/Stand-by voice memo
  - Received/Sent addresses
  - etc.
- The set time and date is saved even when exchanging the battery pack or when the battery is run out. However, the time and date is reset by leaving the battery being run out for an extended period of time. In that case, make the setting again.

GPS time setting

Set time by using GPS

Default	OFF

Synchronize the time of FOMA terminal correctly by using GPS.

- The correction is not available out of service area or under Self mode.

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 5 JKL な ▶ Press 2 ABC か.**

2 **Press 1 あ "ON".**

Positioning starts, and the time is to be corrected. (Positioning icon does not appear.)

- Press 2 ABC か "OFF" not to set.

Information

- When GPS time setting is set to "ON", time of FOMA terminal is automatically corrected by every positioning such as Position location.
- Positioning for GPS time setting is not saved to Location history.

CallerID notification

Notifying your phone number to the other party

Display the phone number of your FOMA terminal (Caller ID) on the other party's screen in making a call.

- Caller ID is an important information. Be careful when you notify your Caller ID information in making a call.
- CallerID notification is not available to be set when "圏外 (out of service area)" is displayed.

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press 5 JKL な ▶ Press 2 ABC か.**

2 **Press 1 あ "Activate".**

- Press 2 ABC か "Deactivate" not to notify.

3 **Enter the network security code and press ●.**

Checking current setting

Press ● ▶ Press Network ▶ Press 5 JKL な ▶ Press 1 あ.

See next page

Information

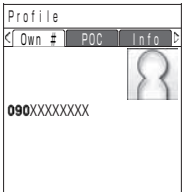
- If the guidance message requests to notify Caller ID, change the setting to notify Caller ID, and call again. →P62
- Caller ID is notified when the phone of the other party is applicable to Caller ID notification.

Profile

Checking your own phone number

Check the phone number (Phone number of your FOMA terminal) registered in UIM (FOMA card).

1 Press ● ▶ Press 0わをん.



Displays the phone number registered in UIM (FOMA card).

- Only Own phone number is displayed by default.

Information

- Alternatively, press ● ▶ Press Profile, to confirm the profile.
- You can also register your private information other than phone number in your FOMA terminal. →P424
- Press i ▶ Press Menu ▶ Select "ENGLISH" and press ● ▶ Press 4 "Options" ▶ Press 1 "Mail settings" ▶ Select "Confirm Mail Address", and press ●.

Kids' mode

Using Kids' mode . . . . . <Kids' mode> 54
Changing Password(number) . . . . . <Change Password(number)> 56

Using Kids' mode

A security code for parents (Terminal security code →P144) and a security code for kids (Password(number) →P56) are both valid under Kids' mode. For your kids' safety use, you can set restriction in setting changes for some security functions, to be available by parents' security code and unavailable by kids' security code. It is recommended to set Kids' mode on when kids use FOMA terminal.

Setting Kids' mode <Kids' mode setting>

Default	ON

You can restrict functions, or make the settings of Burglar alarm for your kids.

- When setting Kids' mode, set Enter PIN code as "OFF".

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 8TUV や.

2 Press 1 あ "Kids' mode".

■ Changing the setting of each function

①Select a function and press ●.

②Change the setting.

3 Press 1 あ "ON".

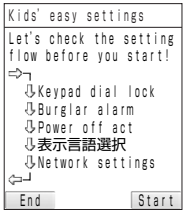
- Press 2ABC か "OFF" to release.

4 Enter the terminal security code and press ●.

Kids' mode is set to ON and is displayed on the screen.

- If selecting "OFF" in Step 3, no further operation is needed.

5 Press 1 あ "Start".



- Press 2ABC か "End" to end.

6 Press i [Start].

- Press ✉ [End] to end.

7 Set each function.

- Press ● on the function guide screen to make the setting. For displaying other function guide screens, press [i] [Next] or [✉] [Return].

■ Setting Keypad dial lock

- Setting procedure →P151

■ Setting Burglar alarm

- Setting procedure →P348

■ Setting Power off act

- Setting procedure →P331

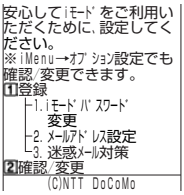
■ Setting 表示言語選択 (Select language)

- Setting procedure →P49

■ Making Network settings

Connect to the specified site to use the mail service safely and make the following settings:

- iモードパスワード変更 (Change i-mode Password)
- メールアドレス設定 (Set Mail Address)
- メール受信／拒否設定 (Reject/receive mail settings) (dispayed as "迷惑メール対策 (Spam Email Prevention)" on this site)



- For detailed operation after connecting to the site, refer to "i-mode User's Manual" handed when applying for i-mode service.

•The screen shown is an example.

- For ending Kids' easy settings, press [i] [End].

When setting Kids' mode...

- Some functions are unavailable to use or require to enter the terminal security code/Password(number)* under Kids' mode. →P508
  * Deleting all of mails/Redials/Received calls, or deleting mail folders is also available.
- The functions indicated below are released when setting Kids' mode. (The previous settings return when setting back to the normal mode.)
  - Public mode (Drive mode)
  - Secret mode
  - Auto power ON/OFF
- キッズiモード (Kids' i-mode) →P189
- キッズiメニュー (Kids' iMenu) →P190

Kids' mode

Changing Password(number)

Default	1111

You can change Password(number) for use under Kids' mode.

- Enter a 4-digit number for Password(number).
- The same number as the terminal security code cannot be set.

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 3 ▶ Press 2 ▶ Press 2.

2 Press 1 "Change".

- Press 2 "Not change" to cancel.

3 Enter the current Password(number) and press ●.

- The entered number is masked with "✱".
- The terminal security code is also valid for this operation.

4 Enter a new Password(number) and press ●.

5 Enter the new Password(number) entered in Step 4 again, and press ●.

Password(number) is changed.

Information

- Password(number) required for authentication can be substituted by the terminal security code.
- Set an easy number for kids to remember as Password(number).

Making/receiving calls

Making calls

Making calls 58
Calling back previously dialed numbers. . . . . <Redial> 60
Setting whether to notify your phone number for each call 62
Sending push tone quickly. . . . . <Pause> 62
Using international calls. . . . . <WORLD CALL/Prefix> 63
Making calls with specified sub-address . . . . . <Sub-address> 65
Setting Alarm tone in reconnecting interrupted calls
. . . . . <Reconnect control> 66
Suppressing ambient noise to make the voice clear. . . . <Noise reduction> 66
Using Hands free compatible devices. . . . . <In-car hands free> 67

Receiving calls

Answering calls. 67
Setting to answer calls by pressing any key on Keypad
. . . . . <Any key answer> 68
Starting calls by opening FOMA terminal . . . . . <Open to talk> 69
Ending/holding calls by folding FOMA terminal . . . . . <Closing action> 69
Using Received calls. . . . . <Received calls> 70
Adjusting volume of the other party's voice during a call . <Earpiece volume> 72
Enabling to talk in small voice . . . . . <Whisper> 73
Blocking nuisance calls . . . . . <Echo> 73
Using Dial memo . . . . . <Dial memo> 73

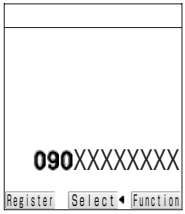
Unable to answer calls/Missed calls

Putting calls On-hold when calls cannot be answered immediately . <On-hold> 74
Setting On-hold tone. . . . . <On-hold tone> 75
Setting Call-on-hold tone . . . . . <Call-on-hold tone> 76
Using Public mode (Drive mode). . . . . <Public mode (Drive mode)> 77
Using Public mode (Power OFF)
. . . . . <Public mode (Power OFF)> 78
Confirming Missed calls. . . . . <Missed calls> 80
Recording voice/video messages when you cannot answer calls
. . . . . <Record message> 80
Playing/deleting Record message 84

Making calls

Following instructions describe how to make a voice-call and the procedures common in making a voice-call and video-phone call.

1 Enter a phone number including the area code, on Stand-by display.



- Enter the area code first, even when calling within the same city.
- 3 to 80-digit numbers are valid as a phone number.
- Press CLR to correct the phone number.
- To reenter the phone number from the top, hold down CLR for over a second, or press PWR to return to Stand-by display.

Calling a fixed-line phone	: Area code-prefix-number
Calling a mobile phone	: 090-XXXX-XXXX/080-XXXX-XXXX
Calling a PHS	: 070- XXXX-XXXX

2 Press .

Signal tone is heard and the call is connected.

- The busy signal tone is heard, while the other party's line is busy. Press PWR to end the call and try to call later.
- Alternatively, press ● ▶ Press 1 "Dial phone call", to make a call.
- If the guidance message requires Caller ID notification, try to call again after setting the Caller ID. →P51, 62
- If the other party's mobile phone or PHS is turned off or in an area where radio waves are hard to reach, a guidance message informs that the connection cannot be made.
- Hold down for over a second, and Hands free is activated immediately after the call is connected.
- Hold down for over a second during a call, and you can change the mode to Hands free.

3 Press PWR to end a call.

Information

- A call can be disconnected by folding FOMA terminal while connected, when Closing action is set to "Disconnect". →P69
- You may not be able to make a call while executing other functions. →P404
- Do not cover built-in antenna while dialing/calling. →P29
- When a different screen is displayed during a call, press CLR to return to the phone-calling screen.
- <Selecting Multinumber>
  Subscription to Multinumber service enables you to make a call by selecting a phone number from the registered Multinumber. →P449

Functions available after entering phone number

You can make a call with various functions after a phone number is entered on Stand-by display.

1 Enter a phone number including the area code, on Stand-by display.

2 Press (i) [Function].

- Following operations are also available by entering a phone number during a call.

Setting Caller ID notification

①**Press 1 "Caller ID".**
②**Press 1 "Notify no callerID" or 2 "Notify callerID".**
- Press 3 "Delete callerID" to release the setting.

Adding IDD prefix

①**Press 2 "Add number".**
②**Press one of 1 to 3.**

Prefix	: Select the Prefix code registered in the Prefix list and press ●.
Int'l access code	: The prefix code registered as IDD prefix is added.
Multinumber	: Multinumber →P449

Quoting Phonebook

Also available after entering the numbers during a call. (Delete unnecessary numbers after quoting.)
①**Press 3 "Quote phonebook".**
②**Select a Phonebook entry and press ●.**
③**Select a phone number and press ●.**

Quoting history

Also available after entering the numbers during a call. (Delete unnecessary numbers after quoting.)
①**Press 4 "Quote history".**
②**Press one of 1 to 4.**
③**Select a history and press ●.**
④**Press ●.**

Holding a voice-call during a call <Call-on-hold>

Hold voice-phone calls.

1 Press ● during a call.

A call is held, with on-hold tone played on the other party's side.
- Press ● again or press C to release on-hold.

Information

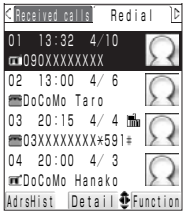
- Requires the call cost to the caller while a call is on-hold.
- You can hold a call by folding FOMA terminal during the call, when Closing action is set to "Hold".
- The melody played while on-hold can be changed. →P76

Calling back previously dialed numbers

Saves previously dialed numbers as Redial and enables you to make calls from Redial.

- Up to 30 calls can be saved. The oldest call is deleted when exceeding 30 calls.
- When the same number is in the 30 calls, only the latest call is saved.

1 Press ○.



Redial list screen

Redial list screen is displayed.

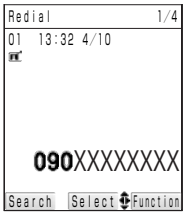
- Displays the other party's phone number, date and time of dialing.
- Displays the name when the other party's phone number matches the phone number registered in Phonebook.
- Press ○ to display Received calls.

Not displaying the image registered in Phonebook

Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 6MNO "Photo display OFF".

- Press 6MNO "Photo display ON" to display.

2 Select a Redial history and press ●.



Redial detail screen

Redial detail screen is displayed.

Not displaying the image registered in Phonebook as background

Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 6MNO "Transp display OFF".

- Press 6MNO "Transp display ON" to display.

Sending Push tone during a call

- Displaying Redial during a call →P404

Select a history of Redial and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 7PQRS "Send push tone".

Icons displayed on Redial

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	Dialed voice-calls		Dialed with 付加番号2 (Additional number 2) of Multinumber
	Dialed video-phone calls		Dialed international calls with 付加番号1 (Additional number 1) of Multinumber
	Dialed international calls		Dialed international calls with 付加番号2 (Additional number 2) of Multinumber
	Dialed with 付加番号1 (Additional number 1) of Multinumber		

3 Press ⌐.

- Press ⓜ to make a video-phone call.
- Press ● to use various functions. →P215

Sending i-mode mails from Redial

- When both a phone number and an E-mail address are registered in Phonebook, the E-mail address is specified as destination. If no E-mail address is registered, the registered phone number is specified as destination.

1 Press ○.

2 Select a party to send a mail and press (i) [Function].

3 **Press 1 "Compose message".**

- Following operations : →P242 "Composing and sending i-mode mail" Step 4 to 6

Information

- Press i [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Compose message" when composing a mail from Redial detail screen.
- Redial is not deleted even if the power is turned off.
- If the other party's phone number is registered in several Phonebook entries, the priority to display the registered information such as the name is set as follows:
  ① Phonebook entries registered for Direct Call
  ② Phonebook entries in which the phone number is registered as Normal use
  ③ The reading of the name in alphabetical order
  ④ In numerical order of Phonebook number
- Select a phone number registered as Multinumber. →P449
- When entering a phone number and dialing from the additional number of Multinumber, "✳591#" (付加番号1 (Additional number 1)) or "✳592#" (付加番号2 (Additional number 2)) is displayed in Redial.
- Redial is not displayed when View dialed/received is set to "OFF".

Deleting Redial

1 **Press ○.**

2 **Select a Redial history and press i [Function] ▶ Press 2 "Delete".**

3 **Press 1 "Delete".**

■ **Deleting by option**

①Press 2 "Delete option".
②Select a Redial history and press ●.
- Press ● to release.

③Press i [Exec.]

■ **Deleting all**

①Press 3 "Delete all".
②Enter the terminal security code and press ●.

4 **Press 1 "Yes".**

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Information

- Press i [Function] ▶ Press 2 "Delete", to delete on Redial detail screen.

Setting whether to notify your phone number for each call

Allows your phone number (Caller ID) to be displayed on the screen of the other party in making each call.

- Caller ID is important information. Be careful when notifying your Caller ID information in making a call.

Adding "186" or "184" when dialing

Add "186" before the phone number to notify your Caller ID, or add "184" not to notify.

Sending your Caller ID to notify

Press 1 8 6 + The other party's phone number + (in video-phone).

Not sending your Caller ID

Press 1 8 4 + The other party's phone number + (in video-phone).

Information

- CallerID notification can also be set in following operations.
  - Setting Caller ID notification from Function for each call →P59
  - Setting Caller ID notification from NW service menu collectively →P51
  - Setting the phone number in Phonebook →P99
- Caller ID is notified when the phone of the other party is applicable to Caller ID notification.
- Caller ID may not be able to be displayed with a code "186" added before the phone number, depending on the telecommunication companies overseas.
- If the guidance message requires Caller ID notification, try to call again after setting Caller ID notification.
- When a call is made with "186" or "184" added, "186" or "184" is recorded in Redial.

Pause

Sending push tone quickly

By sending push tone, you can send messages to pagers*, to operate the answering system at home, to reserve tickets, etc.

- Push tone (DTMF) signal can be sent, by separating a phone number at the point entering pause (P).

1 Enter a phone number on Stand-by display, and hold down # for over a second at the point to put pause (P) in.

"P" is entered.

- Pause cannot be entered at the beginning or continuously.

2 Enter the rest of the numbers and press .

3 Press ● when a call is connected.

Numbers after "P" are sent as push tone.

Information

- The push tone may not be received depending on the device of the other party.

WORLD CALL/Prefix

Using international calls

"WORLD CALL" is an international call service available for DoCoMo mobile phone subscriber.

- "WORLD CALL" subscription is usually included in FOMA service subscription. (Except for the subscribers who reject to apply the service.)
- Neither subscription fee nor monthly fee is required.
- For some billing plans, the service is unavailable.
- You can call the parties in approximately 220 countries and regions around the world.
- "WORLD CALL" fee is charged as the monthly bills for FOMA services.
- **Changes of the procedure to make international calls**
  "MY LINE" service is not applicable to mobile telephone communications, including "WORLD CALL" service. However, along with the introducing of "MY LINE" service, the dialing procedure for international communications using a mobile phone has been changed. Note that the previous dialing procedure (excluding prefix "010" from the procedure described below) can no longer be used.
- Contact "DoCoMo Information Center" on the back of this manual for details.
  - To use international call company services other than DoCoMo, contact each telecommunication company for details.

Dialing the phone number and making an international call

1 Enter 009130 - 010 - Country code - Area code - phone number on Stand-by display.

- Omit "0" in an area code starting with 0, and dial the number. (However, "0" may be needed in calling some countries and areas, such as Italy.)

2 Press ( ).

- Press (PWR) to end a call.

- "International video-phone calls" to the parties using specific overseas 3G mobile phone terminals can be made by pressing (i) after dialing in the way described above.
  - Visit DoCoMo's Internet site for more information about the connectable areas and telecommunication companies.
  - The image of the other party displayed on FOMA terminal may be distorted or connection may not be established depending on the terminal at the other party of the international video-phone line.

* Pocket Bell service was renamed to "QUICK CAST" from January, 2001.

Making international calls easily <Auto assist>

Default	ON

When Auto assist setting is "ON", entered "+" is converted into "009130010" prefix code for international calls and an international call can be made.

- However, when dialing with the Japanese country code "81" after "+", it is not converted into "009130010" even under Auto assist setting "ON".

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 4GHI ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 3DEF ▶ Press 1.@.

2 Press 1.@. "ON".

- Press 2ABC "OFF" not to set.

Making international calls using Auto assist

1 Hold down 0 for over a second on Stand-by display.

"+" is entered.

2 Enter the country code - area code - phone number.

3 Press ⌐.

Confirmation screen of the number to dial is displayed.

4 Press 1.@. "Dial w/auto assist".

- Press 2ABC "Dial w/o auto asst" not to add automatically, or press 3DEF "Cancel" to cancel.

Setting other numbers than WORLD CALL < IDD prefix>

Default	Title: WORLD CALL Prefix: 009130010

- The default prefix is "009130010" for international calls.
- Only 1 prefix code can be registered as an IDD prefix setting.

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 4GHI ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 3DEF ▶ Press 2ABC.

2 Press 1.@. "WORLD CALL".

■ Returning the set number back to default

①Press ✉ [Reset].
②Press 1.@. "Yes".

- Press 2ABC "No" to cancel.

3 Press 1.@. "Prefix name", enter a name and press ●.

- Up to 10 two-byte (Full Mark)/21 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

4 Press 2ABC "Prefix code", enter a number and press ●.

- Up to 10 digits can be entered.

5 Press i [Register].

Setting Prefix

You can register different prefix codes for other use than making international calls.

- Up to 5 entries can be registered.

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 4GHI ▶ Press 6MNO.**

2 **Select [Unregistered] and press ●.**

- Select already registered Prefix and press ● to edit Prefix. Press i [Detail] to confirm registered contents.

■ **Deleting Prefix**

①Select a Prefix entry and press ✉ [Delete].
②Press 1@ "Delete".
- When you press 2ABC "Delete all", enter the terminal security code and press ●.

③Press 1✱ "Yes".
- Press 2ABC "No" to cancel.

3 **Enter a name to register and press ●.**

- Up to 9 two-byte (Full Mark)/18 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

4 **Enter a prefix code and press ●.**

- Up to 10 digits can be entered.

5 **Press i [Register].**

Making calls using Prefix

1 **Enter a phone number on Stand-by display and press i [Function] ▶ Press 2ABC ▶ Press 1@ "Prefix".**

2 **Select a Prefix entry, and press ●.**

- Prefix is added at the beginning of the number. Press C (📹 in video-phone) to make a call.

Sub-address

Making calls with specified sub-address

Default	ON

The numbers after "＊" can be set as Sub-address.
Setting Sub-address allows you to call the specified phone or communication device.

- Can be used in order to make the call be received on specified communication devices via ISDN line or when selecting the contents on "V-Live" movie distribution service.

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 4GHI ▶ Press 7PQRS.**

See next page

2 Press 1 "ON".

- Press 2 "OFF" not to set.

Making calls with specified Sub-address

1 Enter a phone number including the area code, on Stand-by display.

2 Press * to enter "✳", and enter Sub-address.

3 Press .

- Press in video-phone calls.

Information

- Even if Sub-address is set to "ON", numbers cannot be recognized as Sub-address if entering "✳" at the beginning of the phone number or "✳" is included in the number added by Prefix. It is also same when entering "✳" after Pause.

Reconnect control

Setting Alarm tone in reconnecting interrupted calls

Default	High alarm

Voice-calls/Video-phone calls that were interrupted due to poor radio wave condition are reconnected in the area under good radio wave condition. Set Alarm tone for reconnecting.

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 4 ▶ Press 3 ▶ Press 2.

2 Press 1 "High alarm" or 2 "Low alarm".

- Press 3 "OFF" not to set.

Information

- The duration of interruption allowing reconnection depends on using condition or radio wave condition. Approximately 10 seconds are maximum. (Call cost is required even while the call is interrupted.)
- No sound is heard on the other party's side when the call is interrupted.
- The call may be cut off without Alarm tone, depending on using condition or radio wave condition.

Noise reduction

Suppressing ambient noise to make the voice clear

Default	ON

This setting can suppress the ambient noise and make the voice clearer to the other party.

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 4 ▶ Press 3 ▶ Press 3.

2 Press 1 "ON".

- Press 2 "OFF" not to set.

Using Hands free compatible devices

Connect FOMA terminal to Hands free devices to In-car hands free kit 01 (optional), car navigation system, etc. to dial/receive voice-calls with Hands free devices.

- Refer to the instruction manual for operations of each hands free compatible device. When you use In-car hands free kit 01 (optional), FOMA In-car hands free connection cable 01 (optional) is required.

Information

- Use Hands free function with Stand-by display on the screen.
- Arrival act on receiving calls, such as display or Ring tone etc., follows the settings of FOMA terminal.
- Hands free compatible devices play sounds unless they are muted, even if Manner mode is set or Ring volume is set to "OFF" on FOMA terminal.
- Arrival act under Public mode (Drive mode) follows the setting of Public mode (Drive mode).
- Arrival act of Record message follows the setting of Record message.
- The action when folding FOMA terminal during a call follows Closing action setting, if Ring tone is set to sound from FOMA terminal. If a hands free compatible device is set to sound Ring tone, the call continues even after the FOMA terminal is folded, regardless of Closing action setting.

Answering calls

The common procedures to make a voice-call/video-phone call is described below.

1 Press ● or (▭) when receiving a call.

Ring tone sounds and Incoming call lamp blinks.

- Hold down (▭) for over a second during a call, and you can change the mode to Hands free.
- You can answer a call by pressing any other key when Any key answer setting is "ON". →P68

2 Press (PWR) to end a call.

Information

- A call can also be disconnected by folding FOMA terminal. Set Closing action to "Hold", not to disconnect the call by folding FOMA terminal. →P69
- Following information are displayed on the screen depending on the dialing conditions of the other party or the setting of FOMA terminal.
  - When the number is not registered in Phonebook, the phone number of the other party is displayed.
  - When the phone number of the other party is registered in Phonebook, the number, name, and still image/movie image (if registered in phonebook) are displayed.
  - When the phone number of the other party is not notified, the reason for hiding Caller ID is displayed . →P155
  - When the call is forwarded by Call forwarding, the information of the forwarding source is displayed.
  - When the call is received on 付加番号 (Additional number) of Multinumber, the additional number is displayed.

Operations while receiving calls

Following operations are available by pressing (i) [Function] while receiving a call.

Call rejection : Disconnects received calls without answering. The received calls are saved in Rejected calls.
Call forwarding : Forwards incoming calls to the registered forwarding destination. →P444
Voice mail : Forwards incoming calls to Voice mail center. →P441
Record message : Records the message of the incoming call in FOMA terminal.

When you hear signal tone (Call waiting ring tone) while talking

With the subscription to one of the services of Voice mail/Call waiting/Call forwarding, the signal tone is heard when another call is received during a call and following operations are available.

Voice mail service* : Forwards calls to Voice mail center. →P441
Call waiting : Holds the current call and answer a new incoming call. →P443
Call forwarding service* : Forwards calls to the registered forwarding destination. →P444

* Available when Set arrival act is set to "Activate service" and Arrival act is set to "Answer".

When FOMA terminal is folded

Ring tone sounds and Incoming call lamp blinks. The message "Receiving" is displayed on Backside-display.

- The phone number or the registered name etc. in Phonebook are displayed (when Backside notify is set to "ON").
- The reason for unsent Caller ID is displayed when the phone number is not notified (when Backside notice is set to "ON").

Information

- Calls from parties not registered in Phonebook can be rejected. Also you can set to mute for the set duration before Ring tone starts. →P156, 157
- By setting Call rejection for the parties registered in Phonebook, calls from specified parties can be rejected. →P154

Any key answer

Setting to answer calls by pressing any key on Keypad

Default	ON

Set to be able to answer incoming calls not only pressing (C) or (●), but also keys (0 to 9), cursor keys (◆), (2), (✉), (*), (#), or (R).

1 Press (●) ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press (4) ▶ Press (1).

2 Press (1) "ON".

- Press (2) "OFF" not to set.

Information

- Any key answer function is valid only for voice-calls. However, it is invalid when receiving voice-calls during a call.
- Any key answer function is valid for the operation from approximately 3 seconds after receiving a call.

Open to talk

Starting calls by opening FOMA terminal

Default	OFF

Set to receive a call by opening folded FOMA terminal.

- Substitutive image is displayed in answering a video-phone call by Open to talk.

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 4 GHI た ▶ Press 2 ABC か ▶ Press 1 @ あ.

2 Press 1 @ あ "ON".

- Press 2 ABC か "OFF" not to set.

Closing action

Ending/holding calls by folding FOMA terminal

Default	Phone call : Disconnect Video-phone : Disconnect

Set to end or hold Voice-call/Video-phone call by folding FOMA terminal.

- This function is not applied to 64K data communication or packet communication.

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 4 GHI た ▶ Press 2 ABC か ▶ Press 2 ABC か.

2 Press 1 @ あ "Phone call" or 2 ABC か "Video-phone call".

3 Select the action in folding and press ●.

Disconnect : Disconnects a call by folding FOMA terminal.

Hold : Puts a call on hold by folding FOMA terminal. (Returns to the connected call by opening FOMA terminal.)

Substitutive image : Puts a call on hold and sends Substitutive image instead of the self image (only for video-phone).

Information

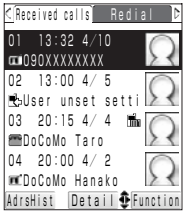
- A call continues with FOMA terminal folded regardless of Close action setting, when Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with a switch (optional) is connected.

Using Received calls

The information of incoming calls, such as phone number, is saved as Received calls.

- Up to 30 received calls are saved. The oldest call is deleted when exceeding 30 calls.

1 Press ●.



Received calls list screen

Displays Received call list screen.

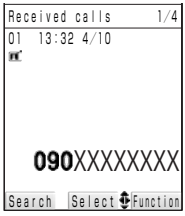
- Displays the phone number of the other party, date and time of dialing.
- Displays the name when the number of the other party matches the phone number registered in Phonebook.
- The reason for unsent Caller ID is displayed when the phone number is not displayed. →P155
- Press ● to display Redial list.

Not displaying the image registered in Phonebook

Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 6 "Photo display OFF".

- Press 6 "Photo display ON" to display.

2 Select a Received calls history and press ●.



Received calls detail screen

Displays Received calls detail screen.
If a missed call is selected, Ringing time is displayed on the screen.

Not displaying the image registered in Phonebook as background

Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 6 "Transp display OFF".

- Press 6 "Transp display ON" to display.

Sending Push tone during a call

- Displaying Received calls during a call →P404

Select a history of Received calls and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 7 "Send push tone".

Icons displayed on Received calls

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	Received voice-call		Missed 64K data communication
	Missed voice-call		Missed 64K data communication (confirmed)
	Missed voice call (confirmed)		New Recorded message
	Received international call		Received on 付加番号1 (Additional number 1) of Multinumber
	Received video-phone call		Received on 付加番号2 (Additional number 2) of Multinumber
	Missed video-phone call		Received international calls on 付加番号1 (Additional number 1) of Multinumber
	Missed Video-phone call (confirmed)		Received international calls on 付加番号2 (Additional number 2) of Multinumber
	Received 64K data communication		

3 Press ⌐.

- Press 📹 to make a video-phone call.
- Press ● to use various functions. →P215

Sending i-mode mails from Received calls

- When both the phone number and the E-mail address are registered in a Phonebook entry, the E-mail address is specified as the destination. If no E-mail address is registered, phone number is specified as the destination.

1 **Press ⊙.**

2 **Select a party to send a mail and press ⓘ [Function].**

3 **Press 1 "Compose message".**

- Following operations : →P242 "Composing and sending i-mode mail" Step 4 to 6

Types of Received calls

Displays Missed calls and Calls without sound in Received calls.
Up to 30 calls rejected according to Call rejection setting are saved besides received calls. The oldest call is deleted when exceeding 30 calls.
Operation to display is as follows:

1 **Press ⊙ ▶ Press ⓘ [Function].**

2 **Select a type of Received calls and press ●.**

View missed calls : Displays the list of missed calls only.
View calls w/o snd : Displays received calls hung up within the time set in Set mute seconds.
View rejected call : Displays received calls from the other party set to Call rejection and other rejected calls. ✋ (rejected on each receiving) or ⊘ (rejected by setting) is displayed on each history.
- Enter the terminal security code and press ●.

Information

- Press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Compose message", to compose mails from the Received calls detail screen.
- Received calls are not deleted even when the power is turned off.
- The phone number other than Dial-in number may be displayed if the other party uses Dial-in method.
- If the phone number of the other party is registered in several Phonebook entries, the priority to display the registered information such as the name is set as follows:
  ① Phonebook entries registered for Direct call
  ② Phonebook entries in which the phone number is registered as Normal use
  ③ The reading of the name in alphabetical order
  ④ In numerical order of Phonebook number
- Received calls are not displayed when View dialed/received set to "OFF".
- Select a phone number that is registered as Multinumber. →P449

Deleting Received calls <Delete received calls>

1 **Press ⊙.**

2 **Select a history from Received calls and press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press 2 "Delete".**

3 **Press 1 "Delete".**

■ Deleting by option

①Press 2 "Delete option".
②Select a history from Received calls and press ●.
- Press ● to release.

③Press ⓘ [Exec.]

See next page

■ Deleting all

①Press 3 "Delete all".

②Enter the terminal security code and press ●.

4 Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Information

- Press i [Function] ▶ Press 2 "Delete", on Received calls detail screen to delete Received calls.
- Rejected calls are not deleted even if all of the received calls deleted.

Earpiece volume

Adjusting volume of the other party's voice during a call

Default	LEVEL3

You can adjust the volume of the voice of the other party that sounds from FOMA terminal at 5 levels between LEVEL 1 and LEVEL 5 during a voice-call/video-phone call.

1 Press ○ during a call.

During a voice-call

During a Video-phone call

2 Press ○ to raise volume and ○ to decrease.

- Volume can be adjusted continuously by keeping to hold down.

Information

- The volume level that is set during a call remains after the call is finished.
- Earpiece volume setting remains after turning off the power.

Adjusting volume during Standing-by

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press 1.

2 Press ○ to raise volume and ○ to decrease.

- Volume can be adjusted continuously by keeping to hold down.

3 Press ●.

Whisper

Enabling to talk in small voice

Set so that regular volume can be heard on the other party when you talk in a small voice.

1 Press (i) [Function] during a call.

2 Press 2ABC か "Whisper".

"Whisper" is displayed on the screen during a call.

■ Releasing Whisper

Press (✉) [Release].

Information

- Whisper function is unavailable under Manner mode or while connecting to hands free compatible devices.

Echo

Blocking nuisance calls

You can block nuisance calls by sending the voice back to the other party.

- The other party cannot hear your voice.

1 Press (i) [Function] during a call.

2 Press 3DEF さ "Echo".

"Echo" is displayed on the screen during a call.

■ Releasing Echo

Press (✉) [Release].

Information

- Echo function is available only for incoming calls. (Cannot be used in calls you made.)

Dial memo

Using Dial memo

Make notes of such as phone number during a call. You can refer to and make a call on Dial memo anytime.

- Up to 5 data can be registered. The oldest data is deleted when exceeding 5.
- Up to 26 digits can be registered for each Dial memo.
- Registered data are not deleted even when the power is turned off.

Registering a Dial memo

1 Enter the number to note during a call.

- Press C CLR when entering a wrong number.

2 Press (✉) [Register] ▶ Press 3DEF さ "Register dial memo".

Using Dial memo

1 Press ● ▶Press Memo menu ▶ Press 7PQRS.

Making calls

Select data and press ⊂⊃.

- Press ☎ to make a video-phone call.

Deleting a Dial memo

①Select data and press i [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Delete".
②Press 1 "Delete".

- When you press 2ABC "Delete all", enter the terminal security code and press ●.

③Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2ABC "No" to cancel.

Sending Push tone

- Displaying Dial memo during a call →P404

Select data and press i [Function] ▶ Press 2ABC "Send push tone".

2 Select data and press ●.

Dial memo detail screen is displayed.

Information

- Press i [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Delete", to delete from Dial memo detail screen.
- Press i [Function] ▶ Press 2ABC "Send push tone", to send push tone from Dial memo detail screen.
- Press ● on Dial memo detail screen, to make a voice-call/video-phone call or to register to Phonebook. →P215

On-hold

Putting calls On-hold when calls cannot be answered immediately

If you are not able to answer the call immediately, put incoming calls on-hold.

- Call cost is charged on the other party while a call is on-hold.

1 Press PWR when receiving a call.

Holding a phone call

Holding a video-phone call

Beep sound is heard and a call is put on-hold. The other party hears on-hold message.

- On-hold image is sent to your FOMA terminal and the other party when a video-phone call is received.

2 Press ⊂⊃ when you are ready to answer.

- Press ☎ when receiving video-phone calls, to answer with self image.
- Press ⊂⊃ or ● when receiving video-phone calls, to answer with substitutive image.

Information

- The guidance message for On-hold is editable.
- On-hold tone is not heard under Manner mode or when Ring tone volume is set to "OFF". On-hold tone is heard when Ring tone volume is set to other than "OFF" in Original manner mode.
- When Any key answer is "ON", you can release on-hold of voice-call by pressing any key other than ⓒ. →P68
- The call is disconnected if you press ⓟ or the other party hangs up during on-hold.
- Press ⓘ [Function] during a call, to connect to Voice mail center or to forward the call, if you subscribe Voice mail/Forwarding service. However, Voice mail service is not applicable to Video-phone.

On-hold tone

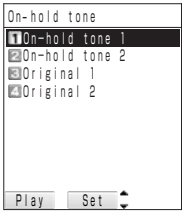
Setting On-hold tone

Default	On-hold tone 1

Sets On-hold tone played on the other party during on-hold in voice-call/video-phone. You can also record your own message and set the recorded voice as On-hold tone.

- Up to 2 messages and 12 seconds for each message can be recorded.

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press 2 ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 7.



On-hold tone list screen

2 Press one of 1 to 4.

On-hold tone 1 : "Tadaima denwa ni derukoto ga dekimasen. Sonomama omachi-ni naruka shibaraku tattekara okakenaoshi kudasai. (I cannot take your call right now. Please hold the line or call back later. Thank you.)" (Preinstalled On-hold tone in FOMA terminal)

On-hold tone 2 : "Tadaima denwa ni derukoto ga dekimasen. Moushiwake arimasen-ga mamonaku demasu-node yoroshikereba sonomama omachi kudasai. (I cannot take your call right now. Please hold the line if you do not mind. I will be available to answer the call soon.)" (Preinstalled On-hold tone in FOMA terminal)

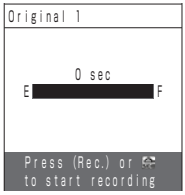
Original 1, Original 2 : Recorded On-hold tone

- Press ⓜ [Play] to confirm On-hold tone. Press ● to set while playing.
- You can record any message as "Original 1" and "Original 2". The setting is not available before recording.

Recording On-hold tone

1 Select "Original 1" or "Original 2" on On-hold tone list screen.

2 Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Record".



3 Press ●.

Recording starts. Start talking to the mouthpiece.

- Recording is available for up to 12 seconds.

4 Press ●.

Stops recording. Recording automatically stops if the maximum duration is run out.

- is displayed on On-hold tone list screen when the recording is completed.
- Press ✉ [Play] to confirm the recorded On-hold tone.

Deleting recorded On-hold tone

- Returns to the default setting if "Original 1" or "Original 2" set is deleted.

1 Select "Original 1" or "Original 2" and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 2 "Delete".

2 Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Call-on-hold tone

Setting Call-on-hold tone

Default	Call-on-hold tone 1

Sets Call-on-hold tone to play during Call-on-hold in Voice-calls/Video-phone calls.

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press 2 ▶ Press ▶ Press 8.

2 Press one of 1 to 4.

Call-on-hold tone 1 : "グリーンスリーヴス (Green sleeves)" (Preinstalled Call-on-hold tone in FOMA terminal)

Call-on-hold tone 2 : "愛の挨拶 (Sault d'amour)" (Preinstalled Call-on-hold tone in FOMA terminal)

Original 1, Original 2 : Recorded Call-on-hold tone

- Press [Play] to confirm Call-on-hold tone.
- You can record any message as "Original 1" and "Original 2". The setting is not available before recording. Operation to record/delete is the same as that of On-hold tone operation. →P76

Public mode (Drive mode)

Using Public mode (Drive mode)

Public mode is the auto-answer service with a high-regard for the manner in public places. When setting Public mode, the guidance plays to the caller indicating unavailability to answer the call since the receiver is driving or in a public place (on a train, bus, in a theater, etc.), then the call is disconnected.

- Setting/releasing Public mode is only available on stand-by. (You can also set/release the mode when "圏外 (Out of service area)" is displayed.)
- You can make a call as usual under Public mode.
- This function is not available during data communication.
- When receiving the call with "User unset" while activating Notify callerID service, Caller ID request guidance plays. (Request guidance for Public mode does not play.)
- Unable to set Public mode under Kids' mode.

Using Public mode (Drive mode)

1 Hold down * for over a second on Stand-by display.

After Public mode is set, is displayed on Stand-by display.

- The guidance "Tadaima untenchu moshikuwa keitaidenwa no riyou wo hikaenakereba naranai basho ni irutame denwa ni deraremasen. Nochihodo okakenaoshi kudasai. (I cannot answer the call right now since I am driving or in a public place where use of mobile phone is restricted.)" plays to the caller.
- Public mode setting is prior to Manner mode setting.

■ Releasing Public mode (Drive mode)

Hold down * for over a second on Stand-by display.

After Public mode is released, is removed.

Setting Public mode (Drive mode)

No Ring tone plays when you have incoming calls to your FOMA terminal. Notify icon is displayed on the screen and the call is recorded in Received calls.

The guidance plays to the caller indicating that you are driving or in a public place where use of mobile phone is restricted, and the call is disconnected.

Relations with each network service under Public mode (Drive mode)

Each network service operates as follows in Public mode.

Service	On receiving voice-calls	On receiving video-phone calls
Voice mail service	The guidance plays to the caller indicating that you are driving or in a public place where use of mobile phone is restricted and the call is forwarded to the Voice mail center.	Disconnects the call without connecting to the Voice mail center.
Call forwarding service	The guidance plays to the caller indicating that you are driving or in a public place where use of mobile phone is restricted and the call is forwarded to the forwarding destination. The guidance to the caller follows the guidance setting of Call forwarding service. When setting forwarding guidance to "ON", the guidance of Public mode plays. When setting forwarding guidance to "OFF", no guidance plays.	The guidance that you are in Public mode is not displayed and the call is forwarded to the forwarding destination. The call is disconnected when the phone of the forwarding destination is not applicable to Video-phone.
Call waiting	The guidance of Public mode plays and the call is disconnected.	When Public mode is set, the image guidance of Public mode plays to the caller and the call is disconnected.
Nuisance call barring service	When registering the caller as the caller to reject, the guidance of failure in connection plays to the caller and the call is disconnected.	When registering the caller as the caller to reject, the image guidance of failure in connection plays to the caller and the call is disconnected.
Caller ID request	• If the caller does not notify Caller ID, the guidance plays to request to send Caller ID and the call is disconnected. • If the caller notifies Caller ID, the guidance of Public mode plays and the call is disconnected.	• If the caller does not notify Caller ID, the image guidance plays to request to send Caller ID and the call is disconnected. • If the caller notifies Caller ID, the image guidance of Public mode plays and the call is disconnected.

Information

• The sound below is not available under Public mode (Drive mode):
- Ring tone for Voice/Video-phone call - Mail/Message ring tone - Alarm/confirming sound

Public mode (Power OFF)

Using Public mode (Power OFF)

Public mode (Power OFF) is the auto-answer service with a high-regard for the manner in public places. When setting Public mode (Power OFF), the guidance plays to the caller indicating unavailability to answer the call since the receiver is in a public place (in a hospital, on an airplane, priority seat on trains, etc.), then the call is disconnected.

Using Public mode (Power OFF)

1 Dial "✳25251".

Public mode (Power OFF) is set. (Nothing is changed on Stand-by display.)

- After setting Public mode (Power OFF), the guidance "Tadaima keitaidenwa no dengen wo kiru hitsuyou ga arubasho ni irutame denwa ni deraremasen. Nochihodo okakenaoshi kudasai. (I cannot answer the call right now since I am in a public place where use of mobile phone is restricted.)" plays to the caller.

Releasing Public mode (Power OFF)

Dial "✳25250".

Public mode (Power OFF) is released.

Confirming the setting of Public mode (Power OFF)

Dial "✳25259".

You can confirm the setting of Public mode (Power OFF).

Setting Public mode (Power OFF)

The setting is held until dialing "✳25250" and releasing Public mode (Power OFF). The setting is not released only by turning the power on.

Public mode (Power OFF) guidance also plays when you are out of service area or under poor radio wave condition.

The guidance plays to the caller that you are in a public place where use of mobile phone is restricted and the call is disconnected.

Relations with each network service under Public mode (Power OFF)

Each network service operates as follows in Public mode (Power OFF).

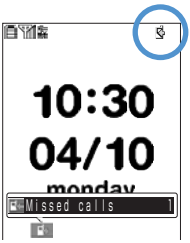
Service	On receiving voice-calls	On receiving video-phone calls
Voice mail service	The guidance plays to notify that you are in a place that mobile phones should be turned off, and forward the call to the Voice mail center.	Disconnects the call without connecting to Voice mail center.
Call forwarding service	The guidance that you are in a place that mobile phones should be turned off, and forward the call to the forwarding destination. The guidance to the caller follows the guidance setting of Call forwarding service. When setting forwarding guidance to "ON", the guidance of Public mode plays. When setting forwarding guidance to "OFF", no guidance plays.	The image guidance that you are in Public mode does not play and the call is forwarded to the forwarding destination. The call is disconnected when the phone of the forwarding destination is not applicable to Video-phone.
Nuisance call barring service	When registering the caller as the caller to reject, the guidance of failure in connection plays to the caller and the call is disconnected.	When registering the caller as the caller to reject, the image guidance of failure in connection plays to the caller and the call is disconnected.
Caller ID request service	• If the caller does not notify Caller ID, the image guidance plays to request to send CallerID and the call is disconnected. • If the caller notifies Caller ID, the guidance of Public mode (Power OFF) plays and the call is disconnected.	• If the caller does not notify Caller ID, the image guidance plays to request to send Caller ID and the call is disconnected. • If the caller notifies Caller ID, the image guidance of Public mode plays and the call is disconnected.

Missed calls

Confirming Missed calls

Only Missed calls out of received calls are displayed on View missed calls.

Confirming on Stand-by display



If you have Missed calls, /Notify icons/notify information are displayed.

- Press ● to display Missed calls list.
- is on the screen until you check all missed calls.

Displaying Missed calls

1 Press ○ or ○.

Redial list screen or Received calls list screen is displayed.

2 Press i [Function] ▶ Press 3 DEF "View missed calls".

Missed calls list screen is displayed.

- The operations on Missed calls are the same as that of Received calls. →P70

Confirming on backside display

- Set Side key operation to valid for confirming.

1 Press ボイス (Voice)) with FOMA terminal folded.

The number of Missed calls is displayed on Backside-display and voice-announcement plays.

Information

- Press i [Function] ▶ Press 3 DEF "View missed calls", to display missed calls on Redial detail screen or Received calls detail screen.

Record message

Recording voice/video messages when you cannot answer calls

Allows the caller to leave a voice/video message after the answer message is played, when you cannot answer a call. Records video message in video-phone.

- Up to 4 messages and approximately 20 seconds for each message can be recorded.

Record message and Voice mail service

The differences between Record message and Voice mail service are as follows.

Item	Record message	Voice mail service
Recordable number/ duration of messages	Up to 4 messages, approx. 20 seconds for each	Up to 20 messages, 3 minutes for each
Retention period of messages	Unrestricted	Up to 72 hours
Where messages are stored in	FOMA terminal	Voice mail center
Recordable place and condition	Recordable when the receiver is in the service area and the power is turned on.	Recordable when the receiver is in or out of service area and the power is turned on or off.

Setting Record message <Set record message>

Default	OFF

1 Press ● ▶ Press Memo menu ▶ Press 1.

2 Press 1 "ON".

- Press 2 "OFF" to release. No further operation is needed.

3 Press i [Define].

Record message is set and 📼 is displayed on Stand-by display.

- Setting Answer time →P82
- Setting Answer message →P83

Information

- Recorded messages may be lost due to failure, repair, modifications, or other handlings of FOMA terminal. In case the recorded data is erased, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data. We recommend you to make notes of recorded messages for your record.
- Answer message and the other party's voice cannot be heard under Manner mode or with FOMA terminal folded.
- If there are already 4 recorded messages, Voice memo cannot be set. Answer time or Answer message cannot be set either.

Setting Record message

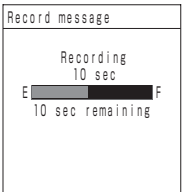
Operations are as follows when a call is received under setting of Record message.

1 A call is received.

Answer message plays to the other party after preset Answer time is passed.

See next page

2 The other party's message is recorded.



In Voice-phone call

In Video-phone call

Displays "Recording" and starts recording.

- The other party's voice is heard from the earpiece of the FOMA terminal while recording, in voice call. Once recording starts, it is counted as 1 recorded item regardless of recorded duration.
- Records video and sound in Video-phone.

3 When the recording is completed, the call is disconnected.

(The number means the items of unconfirmed messages), Notify icon and notify information are displayed on Stand-by display.

- After 4 messages are recorded, the icon color is changed into orange.
- Select notification (Record message) and press ● to display Record message list screen.

Information

- An incoming call can be answered while playing Answer message or recording voice/video message. Press ☎ to answer Voice-call/Video-phone (sending substitutive image to the other party) in the usual way, and press 📹 to answer Video-phone with sending self image. The voice/video message recorded before receiving the call is not saved.
- Record message function cannot be operated with 4 messages already recorded. In that case, Ring tone keeps playing. When activating Voice mail/Call forwarding service, the call is connected to each service.
- An incoming call is rejected while the message is recorded, and the recording continues. Rejected calls are saved in Received calls.
- Record message function is not available under Public mode (Drive mode).

Setting duration before playing Answer message <Answer time>

Default	8 sec

You can set the period of time from receiving a call to activating Answer message.

1 Press ● ▶ Press Memo menu ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press 1.

2 Enter Answer time and press ●.

- The duration can be set between 0 to 120 seconds.

3 Press i [Define].

Information

- If setting Voice mail service/Call forwarding service and Record message simultaneously, set Answer time of Record message shorter than the duration of the other service.

Setting Answer message <Answer message>

Default	Standard

Set Answer message. You can record your own voice and set as Answer message.

- Up to 2 Answer messages and 12 seconds for each can be recorded.

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Memo menu ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press 2.**

2 **Press one of 1 to 4.**

Standard : "Tadaima denwa ni derukoto ga dekimasen. Pi- to iu hasshinon no ato ni niju byo inai de onamae renrakusaki nado wo ohanashikudasai. (I cannot answer the call right now. Leave your name and contact information within 20 seconds after hearing the beep sound.) " (Preinstalled Answer message in FOMA terminal)

Drive : "Tadaima unten chu no tame denwa ni derukoto ga dekimasen. Pi- to iu hasshinon no ato ni niju byo inai de onamae renrakusaki nado wo ohanashikudasai. (For driving, I cannot answer the call right now. Leave your name and contact information within 20 seconds after hearing the beep sound.) " (Preinstalled Answer message in FOMA terminal)

Original 1, Original 2 : Recorded Answer message

- Press ✉ [Play] to confirm Answer message.
- You can record any message as "Original 1" and "Original 2". The setting is not available before recording. Operation to record/delete is the same as that of On-hold tone operation. →P76

3 **Press i [Define].**

Setting Answer message image for Record message in video-phone

Set an image to display while playing Answer message or recording video message.

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 7 ▶ Press 6 ▶ Press 2.**

2 **Press 1 "My picture".**

- Press 2 "OFF" not to set. No further operation is needed.

3 **Select a still image and press ●.**

Information

- Default image ("伝言メモ(テレビ電話) (Record message (video-phone))") is displayed if no Video-phone image is set as Answer message.

Playing/deleting Record message

Playing Record message

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Memo menu ▶ Press 2ABC か .**

2 **Select a message and press ●.**

The message is played.
- Press ◎ to adjust volume while playing.
- Press ● to stop.

Information

- Select a message and press i [Function], to make a voice-call/video-phone call or to register a phone number in Phonebook.
- The message cannot be played immediately after disconnecting a call. Wait until Stand-by display returns.
- Video-phone record message is played from the speaker.

Deleting Record message

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Memo menu ▶ Press 2ABC か .**

2 **Select a message and press i [Function] ▶ Press ◎ ▶ Press 1 あ "Delete".**

3 **Press 1 あ "Delete".**
- When you press 2ABC か "Delete all", enter the terminal security code and press ●.

4 **Press 1 あ "Yes".**
- Press 2ABC か "No" to cancel.

Information

- Press i [Function] ▶ Press ◎ ▶ Press 1 あ "Delete", to delete Record message while playing.

Making/receiving Video-phone calls

Video-phone 86
Making video-phone calls. 87
Answering video-phone calls. 89
Using Chara-den 90
Setting an image to send to the other party 91
Customizing display settings for Video-phone call 94
Changing Video-phone settings 96

Video-phone

Video-phone function is available between terminals that support DoCoMo Video-phone. You can send or receive a still image or Chara-den etc. as Substitutive image, besides your self image.

DoCoMo Video-phone specifications are conforming to "3G-324M*1, an international standard prepared by 3GPP*2". Note that the connection with the video-phones in different system cannot be established.

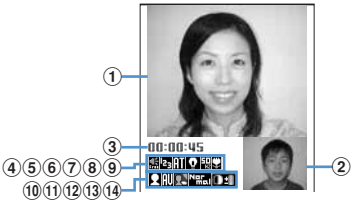
- The following two connection speeds are provided for Video-phone:
  - 64K: Connects at 64 kbps connection speed.
  - 32K: Connects at 32 kbps connection speed.*3

*1 3G-324M
An international standard for the 3rd generation mobile video-phone

*2 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project)
Area Standardization Organization established to develop the standard technology specification for 3rd generation mobile communications systems (IMT-2000).

*3 SA800i does not support 32K Video-phone.

Reading Video-phone screen

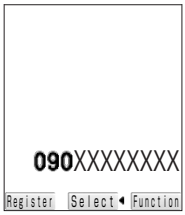


①	Main screen	Displaying the image of the other party (Default)	⑧	Reduce flicker	50Hz, 60Hz
②	Sub-screen	Displaying your self image (Default)	⑨	Close-up	Close-up mode
③	Call duration	Displaying the duration of a call	⑩	Sending image type	Me (Self image), Chara-den Subst Img (other than Chara-den), Call-on-hold, On hold, Recording message, Recoding Voice memo call, Playing file
④	Hands free	Calling under Hands-free			
⑤	Sending DTMF	Sending DTMF	⑪	Sound/Video	Image and Sound, Video only Sound only
	Chara-den Action	Body action, Body parts action	⑫	Special effect	Sepia, Monochrome, 4 colors (Red etc.)
⑥	White balance	Auto, Fine weather, Cloudy weather, Lamp light, Fluor (neut. white), Fluor (daylight)	⑬	Sending image quality	Normal, Prefer motion speed, Prefer image quality
⑦	Light	Lighting, Unavailable	⑭	Brightness	Adjusting Brightness within the range of , ,

Making video-phone calls

- International video-phone calls are available using DoCoMo international call service "WORLD CALL".

1 Enter a phone number including the area code on Stand-by display.



- Include the area code even when calling within the same city.
- 3 to 80-digit number are valid as a phone number.
- Press CLR to correct the phone number.
- If you want to reenter the phone number from the top, hold down CLR for over a second, or press PWR and return to Stand-by display.

Calling a fixed-line phone	: Area code-prefix-number
Calling a mobile phone	: 090-XXXX-XXXX/080-XXXX-XXXX
Calling a PHS	: 070- XXXX-XXXX

Selecting the outgoing image in making video-phone calls

①Press i [Function] ▶ Press 5 "Video-phone image".
②Press 1 "Me" or 2 "Chara-den".

2 Press ☎.

Signal tone is heard and a call is connected.

- The busy signal tone is heard and "Busy" is displayed, while the other party's line is busy. Press PWR to end the call and try to call later.
- Alternatively, press ● ▶ Press 2 "Dial video-phone", to make a call.
- Call cost starts to be charged from the time when "Connecting v-phone" is displayed on the screen.
- Hold down ☎ for over a second, and Hands free is activated immediately after the video-phone call is connected.

3 After connecting video-phone, press ☎ to talk with your hands free.

The other party's camera image and is displayed.

- Connect Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with a switch (optional) if Hands free is not set.
- The substitutive image etc. may be displayed due to the setting of the other party.

Switching Substitutive image and camera image

Press ☎.

Switching In-camera and Out-camera

Press ✉ [Cam Sw].

- You can switch the mode to Close-up mode in Out-camera. →P177

Displaying images in Data box

- Images smaller than QCIF image size can be displayed.

①Press i [Function] ▶ Press 6 "Play file", during a video-phone call.
②Select data, and press ●.

4 Press PWR to end a call.

Messages when video-phone call is failed

FOMA terminal displays the reasons for the failure of connection of Video-phone as a message. Messages vary depending on the other party's terminal model or subscribing network services.

Message	Description
Check the number and retry	You have dialed the phone number not used.
Busy	The other party is on the other phone call, 64K data communication or packet communication.
Disconnected due to outside of service/power off	The other party is out of service area or turned off the power.
Select ON for Caller ID notification	Displayed when you call without Caller ID notification. (When dialing to the services such as V-Live or Visual net)
Failed to connect	Displayed for other cases above.

Putting a video-phone On-hold <Call-on-hold>

1 Press ● during a video-phone call.

Puts a video-phone on-hold.

■ **Releasing On-hold**

Press (i-mode).
Restarts the call with Self image.
Press ●.
Restarts the call with the image sent before holding.
Press (Mail).
Sends Substitutive image.

Information

- Communication fee is charged not as call cost but as digital communication fee even when using a still image or Chara-den as Substitutive image.
- Video-phone cannot be made to Emergency call number (110,119 and 118). However, FOMA terminal calls back as Voice-call when Voice call auto switch is set to "ON". →P96
- Video-phone call cannot be made to the terminal not supporting the Video-phone function, or to the terminal (even being compatible with video-phone function) turned off or located outside the service area. If you set the Voice call auto switch function to "ON" and attempt to make a video-phone call to an unsupported terminal, the other party will abort the communications before connected. For this case, the terminal redials Voice-call automatically. The redialing function may not work as descried above if you attempt video-phone calls with inapplicable conditions such as at ISDN-sync 64 kbps or via PIAFS access points, with ISDN video-phones incompatible with 3G-324M (as of February, 2006), or dial a wrong phone number. Note that the communication fee may be required in some cases.
- FOMA terminal SA800i is not compatible with 32K video-phone. Video-phone call cannot be made with devices such as PHS etc. that 32K video-phone can only be connected depending on the network environment. When Voice call auto switch is set to "ON", Video-phone is automatically switched to voice-call.
- The connection may be able to continue even when a communication of either voice or video is cut off during a video-phone call and A (Sound only) or V (Video only) is displayed.
- Depending on the radio wave condition during a video-phone call, the image may be displayed as mosaic.
- A new voice-call/video-phone call cannot be made during a video-phone call. Also, i-mode connection, sending/receiving i-mode mail, or MessageR/F are not available. However, SMS can be received during video-phone calls.
- Hands free function is available under Manner mode.
- Put FOMA terminal away from your ear when Hands free is set. Rapid increase of the volume may cause the damage of your ear. FOMA terminal should be 20 to 40 cm away from yourself.

Answering video-phone calls

- You can display the substitutive image instead of camera image on receiving video-phone calls.

1 Press (i) when receiving a video-phone call.

The message "Receiving video-phone" and the phone number etc. (or reason for not notifying Caller ID) are displayed.

- Press (PWR) to hold the call when you receive a new call.

Answering Video-phone with the substitutive image

Press (●) or (↔).

The substitute image is sent to the other party, instead of your self image.

2 Press (↔) to switch the mode to Hands free.

Image of the other party is displayed on the screen.

- Connect Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with a switch (optional) if Hands free is not set.

Switching Substitutive image and camera image

Press (i).

Switching In-camera and Out-camera

Press (✉) [Cam Sw].

- You can switch the mode to Close-up mode in Out-camera. →P177

3 Press (PWR) to end a call.

Operations while receiving calls

Press (i) [Function] for following operations during video-phone calls.

Call rejection : Rejects and disconnects a call. The call is saved in Rejected calls.

Call forwarding : Forwards a call to registered forwarding destination. →P444

Record message : Records voice/video of the other party.

Information

- Video-phone calls is not connected to Voice mail center and calls are disconnected after Ringing time has passed even when activating Voice mail service.
- An incoming video-phone call is not forwarded to the incompatible devices with the 3G-324M standard, even when activating Call forwarding service. Confirm the specifications of the destination device before setting the forwarding destination.
- If an incoming video-phone is from the number registered in Nuisance call barring service, the call is disconnected after the call rejection guidance with image.
- Arrival act, such as Ring tone, Vibrator etc., is not operated if the other party has dialed 32K video-phone. Also the call is not recorded in Received calls.
- Substitutive image turns to be "カメラオフ(テレビ電話)(Camera off (Video-phone))" under PIM lock (Multimedia).
- When having a video-phone call , and when the image size of the other party's terminal is set to Sub-QCIF, the image of the other party is not displayed properly.

Using Chara-den

During a video-phone, a character can be sent instead of the camera image. You can puppeteer the character with keys. Some Chara-den can move their mouth, reacting to the voice from Mouthpiece.

• Chara-den →P375

Preinstalled Chara-den by default

• Chara-den can also be downloaded. →P214

ブンブン (Dimo)
(Boon Boon (Dimo))
©BVIG

ナオキ (Naoki)

ハルカ (Haruka)

Setting Substitutive image <Send Substitutive image>

Default	ブンブン (Dimo) (Boon Boon (Dimo))

• Camera image sending is required to be set to "OFF", when using selected Chara-den in making Video-phone calls. →P96
• Images smaller than QCIF image size is available to be set.

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 7PQRS ▶ Press 6MNO ▶ Press 1.@.

2 Press 1.@ "My picture" or 2ABC "Chara-den".

• Press 3DEF "OFF" not to set. No further operation is needed.

3 Select an image or Chara-den, and press ●.

• Press ✉ [Play] to confirm an image or Chara-den.

4 Enter a phone number including the area code on Stand-by display, and press ☎.

5 Press ☎ after Video-phone call is connected.

Sends Substitutive image.

Display with Chara-den

Switching Chara-den

1 Press [Function] ▶ Press 4 "Chara-den setting", while sending Chara-den.

2 Press 1 "Sw to Chara-den".

3 Select a Chara-den, and press ●.

Switching Chara-den action

1 Press ◎ while sending Chara-den.

Switches Body action and Body parts action.

- Alternatively, press [Function] while sending Chara-den ▶ Press 4 "Chara-den setting" ▶ Press 3 "Change action", to switch.

Operating Chara-den

1 Press keys while sending Chara-den.

■ Confirming Action

- Action list cannot be displayed when selected Chara-den is incapable of making actions.

①Press [Function] ▶ Press 4 "Chara-den setting", while sending Chara-den.
②Press 2 "Action list".

Information

- Chara-den cannot be operated when sending push tone (DTMF).
- If Chara-den or a still image set as Substitutive image is deleted, the image returns to the default. (When "ブンブン (Dimo) (Boon Boon (Dimo))" is deleted, Substitutive image is to set to "カメラオフ（テレビ電話） (Camera off (Video-phone))".)

Setting an image to send to the other party

Set the image which is to be sent onto the other party during a video-phone call.

- When the other party's camera image is set to be displayed on Main screen, the image can be confirmed on Sub screen.
- The following functions are not available when sending a still image or Chara-den as Substitutive image:
  - Sending image quality
  - Special effect
  - White balance
  - Adjusting Brightness
  - Light
  - Zoom
  - Reduce flicker

Setting quality of outgoing image

Default: Normal

Sets the quality of an outgoing image.

1 Press [Function] ▶ Press ◎ ▶ Press 2 "Sending image qual", during a video-phone call.

See next page

2 Press one of 1 to 3.

Normal : Sets as standard quality in both image/movement of the image.
Prefer motion spd : Sets priority to motion smoothness over image quality.
Prefer img quality : Sets priority to image quality over motion smoothness.

Applying special effects onto outgoing images

Default: No effect

Apply special effects onto outgoing images. The image with special effects is displayed on the other party's screen.

1 Press i [Function] ▶ Press 7 ▶ Press 1 "Special effect", during a video-phone call.

2 Press one of 1 to 7.

No effect : Does not apply any special effect onto an image.
Sepia : Makes an image tanned-yellowish like an old picture.
Monochrome : Makes an image in black and white.
Red : Makes an image red-tinged.
Green : Makes an image green-tinged.
Blue : Makes an image blue-tinged.
Purple : Makes an image purple-tinged.

Adjusting White balance

Default: Auto

Adjust White balance of outgoing images. White balance can be changed according to the light environment of the location.

1 Press i [Function] ▶ Press 7 ▶ Press 2 "White balance", during a video-phone call.

2 Press one of 1 to 6.

Auto : Adjusts White balance automatically.
Fine weather : Sets images to be adapted to fine weather lighting.
Cloudy weather : Sets images to be adapted to cloudy weather lighting.
Lamp light : Sets images to be adapted to the light condition under lamp light.
Fluor (neut. white) : Sets images to be adapted to fluorescent (neut. white) lighting.
Fluor (daylight) : Sets images to be adapted to fluorescent (daylight) lighting.

Adjusting Brightness

Default	Brightness: ±0 Light: OFF

Sets brightness of the outgoing image to be displayed on the other party's screen.
- The eleven levels of the brightness of the screen is available between −5 and +5.

1 Press ▲ or ▼ during a video-phone call.

The value of ☀±0 is changed.
- The screen becomes brighter each time when pressing ▲.
- The screen becomes darker each time when pressing ▼.

Turning light on

You can make an outgoing image brighter with the light turned on when using Out-camera.

1 Press i [Function] ▶ Press 7PQRS ▶ Press 3DEF "Light", during a video-phone call.

2 Press 1 "ON".

- Press 2ABC "OFF" to turn the light off.

Switching display magnification <Zoom>

Default	Normal

Switches display magnifications of the outgoing image sending to the other party.
- Switch In-camera/Out-camera to return to the default zooming.

1 Press ◀ or ▶ during a video-phone call.

is displayed and magnification is switched.
- The image becomes larger each time when pressing ▶.
- The image becomes smaller each time when pressing ◀. (The reduced screen cannot be displayed.)

Sending push tone (DTMF)

Sends push tone (DTMF) during a video-phone call.

1 Press keys during a video-phone call.

The number is displayed and sent.
- Press i [Function] ▶ Press ▶ ▶ Press 4GHI "Send DTMF tone" and press keys when sending Chara-den.

Changing an outgoing image sent while playing Answer message or during on hold <Video-phone image>

Default	Record message image: 伝言メモ（テレビ電話）(Record message (Video-phone)) On-hold image: 応答保留（テレビ電話）(On-hold (Video-phone)) Call-on-hold image: 通話中保留（テレビ電話）(Call-on-hold (Video-phone))

You can change Record message image/On-hold image/Call-on-hold image.

- The images of Record message/On-hold/Call-on-hold are also displayed on your FOMA terminal when they are displayed on the other party's terminal.
- Images smaller than QCIF image size are available to be set.

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 7PQRS ▶ Press 6MNO.**

2 **Press one of 2ABC to 4GHI.**

3 **Press 1 "My picture".**

- Press 2ABC "OFF" not to set. No further operation is needed.

4 **Select an image, and press ●.**

Customizing display settings for Video-phone call

Sets an image to display during a video-phone call.

Setting the quality of receiving video image

Default	Normal

Sets the quality of receiving images of video-phone calls.

1 **Press i [Function] ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 3DEF "Receiving img qual", during a video-phone call.**

2 **Press one of 1 to 3DEF.**

Normal : Sets the standard quality in both image/movement of the image.
Prefer motion spd : Sets priority to motion smoothness over image quality.
Prefer img quality : Sets priority to image quality over motion smoothness.

Information

- To reduce flicker in receiving images, press i [Function] ▶ Press 7PQRS ▶ Press 4GHI "Reduce flicker" and select the setting item.

Setting the image of Main/Sub screen

Default	Main screen: Other party's image Sub screen : Self image Display: Both

This section describes the settings on Main/Sub screen.

Switching image of Main/Sub screen

1 Press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press 3 "Disp position chg", during a video-phone call.

Your FOMA terminal camera image is displayed on Main screen, and the other party's camera image is displayed on Sub screen.

- The image of Main/Sub screen is switched each time to operate Step 1.

Setting the display of Mail/Sub screen

1 Press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press 1 "V-phone display", during a video-phone call.

2 Press one of 1 to 3.

Both : Displays the image on both of Main/Sub screen.
Other : Displays only the image of the other party.
Me : Displays only the self image of your side.

Changing Main screen size

Default	Large view

Changes display size of Main screen. If the image is too rough, return to Normal view size.

1 Press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press 2 "Normal view", during a video-phone call.

Main screen is changed into the normal view size.

- Press 2 "Large view" to change into the large view size.

Setting the lighting of display screen

Default	ON

Sets continuous lighting ON/OFF of the display during a video-phone call.

1 Press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 1 "Display light", during a video-phone call.

2 Press 1 "ON".

- Press 2 "OFF" not to set. The setting follows Display light setting when "OFF" is set.

Changing Video-phone settings

Default	Camera image sending: ON　Voice call auto switch: OFF Video-phone display: Both Display screen size: Large view　Sending image quality: Normal

Sets the action when failed to connect video-phone calls, or sets the image displayed in video-phone calls.

- "Voice call auto switch" in Video-phone settings allows to ensure the access to the other party. Voice call auto switch is the function to automatically switch the call type to voice-call and redial, when the other party's terminal is not supporting the Video-phone function or not receiving video-phone calls while using the mova service through the Dual Network Service.

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 7PQRS.

2 Select an item and press ●.

Camera image sending : Sets the sending image when making a video-phone call.
- Press 1 "ON" or 2ABC "OFF". When pressed "OFF", set Substitutive image. Following operations: →P90 "Setting Substitutive image" Step 2 to 3

Voice call auto sw : Sets to call back with Voice-call automatically.
- Press 1 "ON" or 2ABC "OFF".

Video-phone display : Changes the display setting during a video-phone call.
- Press one of 1 to 3DEF.

Display screen size : Changes the display size of Main screen.
- Press 1 "Large view" or 2ABC "Normal view".

Sending image quality : Sets the image quality of sending images.
- Press one of 1 to 3DEF.

Video-phone image : Changes the image to send to the other party. →P90, 94

Information

- May not be able to redial depending on the condition of the receiver, the network, etc., even when Voice call auto switch is set to "ON".
- The voice-call cost fee is required, when redialing with voice-call under Voice call auto switch setting "ON".
- SA800i is not compatible with 32K video-phone. A call is switched into a voice-call under Voice call auto switch "ON", when the other party, such as PHS etc., restricts the video-phone only to 32K video-phone connection due to network environment.

Phonebook

Phonebooks supported by FOMA terminal 98
Registering entry in FOMA terminal phonebook . . <Register to phonebook> 99
Registering entry into UIM (FOMA card) Phonebook
. . . . . <Register to UIM (FOMA card) Phonebook> 104
Registering entry to Phonebook from Redial or Received calls. 105
Editing Group . . . . . <Edit Group> 105
Making calls using Phonebook . . . . . <Search phonebook> 107
Editing saved Phonebook entries . . . . . <Edit Phonebook> 111
Copying Phonebook 111
Deleting Phonebook entry . . . . . <Delete Phonebook> 113
Protecting Phonebook entry with Secret . . . . . <Secret> 113
Checking the number of registered Phonebook entry . . <Memory status> 114
Using simple dialing to make calls . . . . . <Two-touch dial> 114
Contacting to the specified parties easily . . . . . <Direct Call> 115

Phonebooks supported by FOMA terminal

You can use FOMA terminal phonebook and UIM (FOMA card) phonebook in your FOMA terminal.

- UIM (FOMA card) phonebook is available to use in other FOMA terminal by inserting UIM (FOMA card).

Differences between FOMA terminal phonebook and UIM (FOMA card) phonebook

Icon	Item	FOMA terminal phonebook	UIM (FOMA card) phonebook
		Basic	
	No. of entries (Phonebook number)	Up to 500 entries can be registered. (000 to 499 as Phonebook number)	Up to 50 entries can be registered.
	Name	Up to 16 two-byte (Full Mark)/32 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.	Up to 10 two-byte (Full Mark)/21 one-byte (Half Mark) *1 characters can be entered.
	Reading	Up to 32 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.	Up to 12 two-byte (Full Mark) Kana (25 one-byte (Half Mark)*2 alphanumeric or mark characters) can be entered.
	Phone number	Up to 3 phone numbers can be registered for each phonebook entry. Up to 26 digits can be entered. Select the icon of Phone number type from 8 icons.	Only 1 phone number can be registered for each phonebook entry. Up to 26 digits *3 can be entered.
	E-mail address	Up to 3 E-mail addresses can be registered for each phonebook entry. Up to 50 one-byte (Half Mark) alphanumeric characters and marks can be entered. The icon of E-mail type can be selected from 5 icons.	Only 1 E-mail address can be registered for each phonebook entry. Up to 50 one-byte (Half Mark) alphanumeric characters and marks can be entered.
	Group	Select one from 20 groups. Up to 10 two-byte (Full Mark)/21 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered as a group name.	Select one from 10 groups. Up to 10 two-byte (Full Mark)/21 one-byte (Half Mark)*1 characters can be entered as a group name.
	Image	JPEG/GIF/3GP files (Video only i-motion) and Flash movies in "Data box" can be displayed.*4	Unavailable
	Location info	Longitude/Latitude/Datum/Accuracy/Positioning time and date can be registered.	Unavailable
	Select Chara-den	Chara-den in "Data box" can be selected.	Unavailable
	Secret	Phonebook entries can be displayed only under Secret mode by setting Secret to "ON".	Unavailable
	Secret code	Secret code can be added when sending a mail to the other party setting Secret code.	Unavailable
		Specify	
	Individual phone receive call	Ring tone/Vibrator/Incoming-call lamp can be set.	Unavailable
	Individual video-phone receive	Ring tone/Vibrator/Incoming-call lamp can be set.	Unavailable
	Individual receive mail	Ring tone/Vibrator/Incoming-call lamp/Notice time can be set.	Unavailable
	Individual message	Individual message can be set.	Unavailable

Icon	Item	FOMA terminal phonebook	UIM (FOMA card) phonebook
Others			
URL	Internet site	Up to 256 one-byte (Half Mark) alphanumeric characters and marks can be entered.	Unavailable
	Free memo	Up to 100 two-byte (Full Mark)/200 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.	Unavailable
	Blood type	Blood type can be selected.	Unavailable
	Birthday	Birthday can be entered in one-byte (Half Mark) number.	Unavailable
	Star sign	Star sign can be selected. Displayed automatically by entering the birthday.	Unavailable
ZIP	Zip code	Up to 7-digit numbers can be entered.	Unavailable
	Address	Up to 50 two-byte (Full Mark)/100 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.	Unavailable
HOBBY	Hobby	Up to 10 two-byte (Full Mark)/20 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.	Unavailable

*1 Only up to 10 characters can be registered when two-byte (Full Mark)/one-byte (Half Mark) characters are mixed or one-byte (Half Mark) Kana is included.
*2 Only up to 12 characters can be registered when two-byte (Full Mark)/one-byte (Half Mark) characters are mixed.
*3 Some UIM (FOMA card) may support only up to 20-digit numbers.
*4 Images may not be able to be displayed due to image size etc.

Displaying names

When receiving a voice-call

Name/Phone number/Image registered in Phonebook are displayed on the screen when receiving voice-calls/video-phone calls, and also displayed in Redials or Received calls etc.

- When the other party called without Caller ID, registered information is not displayed.
- Names etc., registered in UIM (FOMA card) phonebook, may not be displayed while reading UIM (FOMA card) or right after the power is turned on.

Information

- If you register an E-mail address or a phone number in Phonebook, a name is displayed on received/sent address history in sending/receiving i-mode mail or SMS.

Register to phonebook

Registering entry in FOMA terminal phonebook

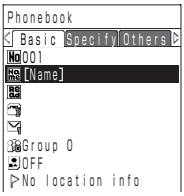
You can register the basic information, such as phone number and E-mail address, and other information including address and birthday etc. Also can specify the individual Ring tone and message. Refer to the operations to specify the basic information, Ring tone, and additional information as follows.

- Available number of entries are up to 500. Up to 3 phone numbers and 3 E-mail addresses can be registered for each Phonebook entry.

1 Hold down ● for over a second.

See next page

2 Press 1 "Phone".



Phonebook registration screen

Phonebook registration screen is displayed.

- Press 2 "UIM", and the entry is registered in UIM (FOMA card). →P104

3 Register basic information.

Entering Name

① **Select Name and press ●.**
② **Enter the name and press ●.**

- Up to 16 two-byte (Full Mark)/32 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.
- Kanji, Hiragana, Katakana, alphanumeric characters, marks, pictograms, and emoticons can be entered.
- Be sure to enter the name. Otherwise the data cannot be registered.
- Reading of the name is displayed automatically on Reading when entering a name.
- When entering the name in alphanumeric characters, the reading is displayed the same as the name. Also pictures or some marks entered in Name are not displayed in the reading.

Entering Reading

You can correct the readings entered automatically.

① **Select Reading and press ●.**
② **Enter the reading and press ●.**

- Up to 32 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

Entering Phone number

① **Select and press ●.**
② **Enter the phone number and press ●.**

- Up to 26 digits including "✳", "#", "+" and "P" can be entered.

③ **Select the Phone number type and press ●.**

- is displayed on the screen after entering a phone number. Up to 3 phone numbers can be set.
- Select a phone number for normal use when registering more than 2 phone numbers.

Setting E-mail address

① **Select and press ●.**
② **Enter the E-mail address and press ●.**

- Up to 50 one-byte alphanumeric characters and marks can be entered.

③ **Select the E-mail type and press ●.**

- is displayed on the screen after entering an E-mail address. Up to 3 E-mail addresses can be set.
- Select an E-mail address for normal use when registering more than 2 E-mail addresses.

Setting Group

"Group 0" is set automatically when not selected.

① **Select** and **press** ●.

② **Select the Group and press** ●.

- 0 to 19 can be selected as a group number.

Setting Image

1 item can be registered.

① **Select** and **press** ●.

② **Press one of** 1 **to** 5.

My picture : Select data from My picture folder in Data box and press ●.

i-motion : Select data from i-motion folder in Data box and press ●.
- Video only i-motion is configurable.

Snap photo : Starts the function of Still image shooting.
- Shoot a still image and press ●.

Shoot movie : Starts the function of movie shooting.
- Shoot a movie and press ●.

OFF : Avoid registration of images.

- When Preview screen is displayed, set the position or the size etc. of the image displayed on receiving, and press ●.

Adding Location information

Select **and press** ●.

- Following operations: →P343 "Adding location information" Step 4

Setting Chara-den

Sets to display a character as a substitutive image in connecting video-phone calls.

① **Select** and **press** ●.

② **Press** 1 **"Chara-den".**
- Press 2 "OFF" not to set Chara-den.

③ **Select a Chara-den and press** ●.
- Press [Play] to confirm the Chara-den.

Setting Secret

The setting is only available under Secret mode.

① **Select** and **press** ●.

② **Press** 1 **"ON".**
- Press 2 "OFF" to release.

Setting Secret code

When the other party sets Secret code on the E-mail address, set Secret code to the Phonebook entry. Registered Secret code is automatically added when composing i-mode mails.

- The setting is unavailable if the E-mail address is not set.

① **Select** and **press** ●.

② **Enter the terminal security code and press** ●.

③ **Press** 1 **"Set secret code", select an E-mail address, and press** ●.
- Press 2 "View secret code" to confirm Secret code.
- Press 3 "Release" to release Secret code setting.

④ **Enter a 4-digit number and press** ●.
- You cannot set to "0000".

See next page

⑤ **Press 1 "Yes".**
- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

■ **Setting Phonebook number**

① **Select No and press ●.**

② **Enter the Phonebook number and press ●.**
- Numbers can be entered also by pressing ○.

4 Press ○ ▶ Set individual settings such as Ring tone.

① **Select the type and press ●.**

: Sets Individual phone receive call.

: Sets Individual v-phone receive.

: Sets Individual receive mail.

: Sets Individual message.

② **Press 1 "ON".**
- Press 2 "OFF" to release.

③ **Set each item.**

: Select Ring tone.
- Following operations: →P120 "Changing FOMA terminal Ring tone" Step 3 to 4

: Select Vibrator.
- Following operations: →P123 "Notifying receiving etc. with Vibration" Step 3 to 4

: Select Incoming-call lamp.
- Following operations: →P137 "Setting the color of incoming-call lamp" Step 3 to 4

: Set Notice time. (only for Individual receive mail)
- Enter Notice time and press ●.

- Individual answer message →P83 "Setting Answer message" Step 2

④ **Press ○ [Define].**

5 Press ○ ▶ Register other information.

■ **Setting URL of Internet sites etc.**

① **Select URL and press ●.**

② **Enter the URL and press ●.**
- Up to 256 one-byte (Half Mark) alphanumeric characters and marks can be entered.

■ **Setting Free memo**

① **Select and press ●.**

② **Enter a memo and press ●.**
- Up to 100 two-byte (Full Mark)/200 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

■ **Setting Blood type**

① **Select and press ●.**

② **Press one of 1 to 5.**

■ **Setting Birthday**

① **Select and press ●.**

② **Enter the birthday and press ●.**
- Star sign is entered automatically when entering the birthday.

Setting Star sign

You can change the star sign entered automatically.

① **Select ☆ and press ●.**

② **Select a star sign and press ●.**

Setting Zip code

① **Select ZIP and press ●.**

② **Enter the zip code and press ●.**

Setting Address

① **Select ⌂ and press ●.**

② **Enter the address and press ●.**

- Up to 50 two-byte (Full Mark)/100 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

Setting Hobby

① **Select HOBBY and press ●.**

② **Enter the hobby and press ●.**

- Up to 10 two-byte (Full Mark)/20 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

6 Press i [Register].

Information

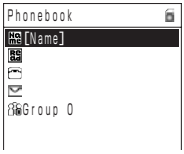
- Press i [Function] ▶ Select "New to phonebook" and press ● ▶ Press 1 "Phone" to register a new entry from Search phonebook screen.
- When you register the E-mail address of i-mode terminal, domain name ("@docomo.ne.jp") can be omitted. (Other than i-mode terminal, enter the entire E-mail address including the domain name after "@".)
- It may take time to display the image depending on the size and the quantity of the image data registered in Phonebook.
- If registered with "184" or "186" added, the phone number cannot be used as the address for SMS. Also, if the E-mail address is registered as "184 or 186 + Phone number of FOMA terminal @docomo.ne.jp", the address is unavailable for i-mode mail.
- Do not add Secret code directly to the E-mail address in a Phonebook entry. Enter Secret code in Secret code setting.
- When receiving incoming calls or mails from the other party in Secret setting, the operation follows the individual settings only under Secret mode.
- It is recommended to keep a separate written record of all the information you register in Phonebook. You can save the data in your PC using data link software and the FOMA USB connection cable (optional). →P528
- The data registered in your FOMA terminal may not be transferred to new FOMA terminal depending on the model, when changing the model and transferring the data at DoCoMo shop.
- Phonebook data may be lost due to FOMA terminal malfunction, repairs, changes of the model or other reasons. Also the data remains for about 1 month after the battery pack is removed or runs out, but may be lost after this period of time. DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for accidentally erased data.

Registering entry into UIM (FOMA card) Phonebook

- Up to 50 entries can be registered.

1 Hold down ● for over a second.

2 Press 2ABC "UIM".



3 Set items.

Entering Name

① **Select Name and press ●.**
② **Enter the name and press ●.**

- Up to 10 two-byte (Full Mark)/21 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered. (Only up to 10 characters can be registered when two-byte (Full Mark) and one-byte (Half Mark) characters are mixed or one-byte (Half Mark) Kana is included.)
- Kanji, Hiragana, Katakana, alphanumeric characters, marks, pictograms, and emoticons can be entered.
- Be sure to enter the name. Otherwise the data cannot be registered.
- Reading of the name is displayed automatically on Read when entering a name.
- When entering the name in alphanumeric characters, the reading is displayed the same as the name. Also pictures or some marks entered in name are not displayed in the reading.

Entering Reading

You can correct the readings entered automatically.

① **Select Read and press ●.**
② **Enter the reading and press ●.**

- Available characters to enter is up to 12 two-byte (Full Mark) Kana or 25 one-byte (Half Mark) alphanumeric or marks. (Only up to 12 characters can be registered when two-byte (Full Mark) and one-byte (Half Mark) characters are mixed.)

Entering Phone number

① **Select ☎ and press ●.**
② **Enter the phone number and press ●.**

- Up to 26 digits including "✳", "#", "+" and "P" can be entered.

Setting E-mail address

① **Select ✉ and press ●.**
② **Enter the E-mail address and press ●.**

- Up to 50 one-byte (Half Mark) alphanumeric characters and marks can be entered.

Setting Group

"Group 0" is set without any settings.

① **Select Group and press ●.**
② **Select the Group and press ●.**

- 0 to 9 can be selected as a group number.

4 Press [i] [Register].

- is displayed in Phonebook registered in UIM (FOMA card).

Information

- Press [i] [Function] ▶ Select "New to phonebook" and press [●] ▶ Press [2 ABC] "UIM" to register a new entry from Search phonebook screen.
- Phone number may be limited to enter only up to 20 digits in some UIM (FOMA card).

Registering entry to Phonebook from Redial or Received calls

1 Press [▷] or [◁].

Redial list screen or Received calls list screen is displayed.

■ Registering from Address history

Press [▷] or [◁] ▶ Press [✉] [AdrsHist].

2 Select a phone number or an E-mail address and press [●].

3 Press [●] ▶ Select "New to phonebook" and press [●].

- Following operations: →P99 "Registering entry in FOMA terminal phonebook" Step 2 to 6, →P104 "Registering entry into UIM (FOMA card) Phonebook" Step 2 to 4

■ Adding data to the registered Phonebook entry

① Press [●] ▶ Select "Add to phonebook" and press [●].

② Select a Phonebook entry and press [●].

- Following operations: →P111 "Editing saved Phonebook entries" Step 2 to 4

Edit Group

Editing Group

You can change Group name or Group icon in Phonebook, or set Ring tone/Message/Chara-den for each group of FOMA terminal phonebook.

- Only a Group name can be edited in UIM (FOMA card) phonebook.
- The Group name "Group 0" cannot be edited.

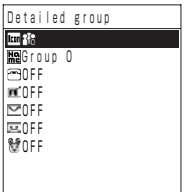
1 Press [▽].

- Press [●] when Search group screen is displayed.

2 Press [i] [Function] ▶ Select "Edit group" and press [●].

See next page

3 Select the Group and press ●.



Editing UIM (FOMA card) phonebook group

Press i [UIM].

Resetting to the default

① Press ✉ [Reset].
② Press 1 "Reset".
- When pressing 2 "Reset all", enter the terminal security code and press ●.

③ Press 1 "Yes".
- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

4 Set items.

Setting Icon group

① Select Icon and press ●.
② Select the icon and press ●.

Setting Group name

① Select Name and press ●.
② Enter the name and press ●.
- Up to 10 two-byte (Full Mark)/21 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered. (Only up to 10 characters can be registered as group title of UIM (FOMA card) phonebook when two-byte (Full Mark) and one-byte (Half Mark) characters are mixed or one-byte (Half Mark) Kana is included.)

Setting group settings such as Ring tone

① Select the type and press ●.

: Sets Phone receive group.
: Sets v-phone receive group.
: Sets Receive mail group.
: Sets Message group.

② Press 1 "ON".
- Press 2 "OFF" to release.

③ Set each item.

: Select Ring tone.
- Following operations: →P120 "Changing FOMA terminal Ring tone" Step 3 to 4

: Select Volume.
- Press 1 "Specify" ▶ Adjust Volume and press ●.

: Select the image. (Not available for Receive mail group)
- Press 1 "My picture" or 2 "i-motion" and select data.

: Select Vibrator.
- Following operations: →P123 "Notifying receiving etc. with Vibration" Step 3 to 4

: Select Incoming-call lamp.
- Following operations: →P137 "Setting the color of incoming-call lamp" Step 3 to 4

: Set Notice time. (Available only for Receive mail group)
- Enter Notice time and press ●.

- Individual answer message →P83 "Setting Answer message" Step 2

④ Press i [Define].

■ Setting Chara-den

① Select and press ●.

② Press 1 "Chara-den".

- Press 2 "OFF" not to set Chara-den.

③ Select a Chara-den and press ●.

- Press [Play] to confirm the Chara-den.

5 Press [Save].

Information

- When Vibrator/Incoming-call lamp settings are set to "Melody link", vibration and flashing link to Ring tone. However, if setting Ring tone to "Melody" to which no vibrator pattern is registered, "Pattern1" is activated.
- If the volume is set to "Not specify", operation follows each volume setting of FOMA terminal.
- Individual ring tone setting is prior to Group ring tone setting, if both are different.

Search phonebook

Making calls using Phonebook

You can make calls using Phonebook search.

- Following searches are available:

Search method	descriptions
Search column	Searches the column on the list categorized in order of Japanese syllabary (A line, Ka line.....alphabet, and numbers).
Search name	Searches by name.
Search reading	Searches by reading.
Search phonebook no.	Searches by phonebook number.
Search group	Searches by group name.
Search phone no.	Searches by phone number.
Search E-mail	Searches by E-mail address.
Search number type	Searches on the list of categorized icons of phone number type.
Quick search	Searches easily by pressing keys.

1 Press .

Search phonebook screen (Search column)

The screen shows Search phonebook screen of previously searched method.

See next page

2 Select the search method and search a Phonebook entry.

Search method can be selected from following methods:

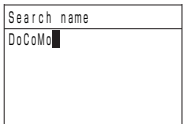
- Operations vary depending on Search phonebook screen

Press [Search] ▶ Select the Search method and press ●.
Press [Function] ▶ Select "Switch search" and press ● ▶ Select the search method and press ●.

Search column

Press ◎ and select from "ア (A)" to "ワ (Wa)" line, Alphabet, Number, and None line.

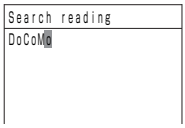
- Phonebook can be displayed also by pressing keys. ("ア (A)" line: 1, "カ (Ka)" line: 2 .... "ワ (Wa)" line: 0, Alphabet: *, numbers: #)



Search name

Enter the name and press ●.

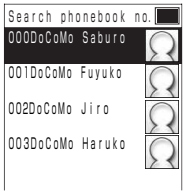
Enter the top few characters of the name, then all of the appropriate Phonebook entries are displayed. (Not all of characters for name is necessary to be entered.)



Search reading

Enter the reading and press ●.

- Enter the top few characters of the reading, then all of the appropriate Phonebook entries are displayed. (Not all of characters for reading is necessary to be entered.)

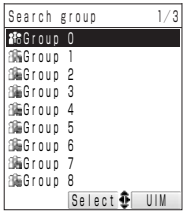


Search phonebook no.

- Unable to search UIM (FOMA card) phonebook.

Enter 3-digit of Phonebook number. (ex: 003 etc.)

- Phonebook number is displayed at the upper right corner and appropriate Phonebook entry is selected.



Search group

- Press [UIM] each time to switch UIM (FOMA card) phonebook and FOMA terminal phonebook.

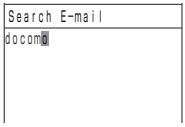
Select the Group and press ●.

- Press ◎ to display next/previous groups.

Search phone no.

Enter the phone number and press ●.

- You can search by entering the top few numbers of the phone number.



Search E-mail

Enter the E-mail address and press ●.

- You can search by entering top few characters of E-mail address.

Search number type

- UIM (FOMA card) phonebook is categorized as type.

Press and select the phone number type.

- You can also switch the phone number type to display by pressing keys.

3 Select a Phonebook entry and press ●.

Phonebook detail screen

Phonebook detail screen is displayed.

Using URL

Press [Function] ▶ Press 7PQRS "URL".

- Following operations: →P417 "Using URL" Step ②

Registering as Direct Call

① Press [Function] ▶ Press ▶ Press 3DEF "Add to Direct Call".

- Press 3DEF "Rel. Direct Call" to release.

② Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2ABC "No" to cancel.

Sending Push tone during a call

- Displaying Phonebook during a call →P404

① Press [Function] ▶ Press ▶ Press ▶ Press 2ABC "Send push tone".

② Select a phone number and press ●.

4 Select a phone number and press .

- Press to make video-phone calls.

Composing message

① Select an E-mail address and press ●.

② Press 1 "Compose message".

- Following operations: →P242 "Composing and sending i-mode mail" Step 4 to 6

Composing SMS message

① Press [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Compose SMS msg".

② Select a phone number and press ●.

- Following operations: →P293 "Composing and sending SMS (Short Message)" Step 4 to 5

Registering Birthday in Schedule

① Press [Function] ▶ Press 4GHI "Reg. to schedule".

② Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2ABC "No" to cancel.

Adding to Direct Call

① Press [Function] ▶ Press 5JKL "Add to Direct Call".

- Press 5JKL "Rel. Direct Call" to release.

② Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2ABC "No" to cancel.

Copying the phonebook data

① Press [Function] ▶ Press 6MNO "Copy item".

② Select an item and press ●.

Quick search

You can make a Quick search by pressing keys. Switch Search result screen in order of Count and Kana.

- The number of calls is registered in FOMA terminal and determines the call count.

1 Hold down keys for over a second on Stand-by display.

- By holding down the following keys, Phonebook is displayed in order of the call counts within those categories.

1: "ア (A)" line, 1	2: "カ (Ka)" line, A to C, 2
3: "サ (Sa)" line, D to F, 3	4: "タ (Ta)" line, G to I, 4
5: "ナ (Na)" line, J to L, 5	6: "ハ (Ha)" line, M to O, 6
7: "マ (Ma)" line, P to S, 7	8: "ヤ (Ya)" line, T to V, 8
9: "ラ (Ra)" line, W to Z, 9	0: "ワ (Wa)" line, N, 0

Switching Count and Kana

Press [Switch].

Deleting the call counts

① Press [Function] ▶ Press ▶ Press ▶ Press "Reset count".
② Enter the terminal security code and press .
③ Press "Yes".

- Press "No" to cancel.

Displaying image registered in Phonebook <Photo display ON/OFF>

Default	Photo display ON

Sets whether to display images on Search phonebook screen.

1 Press [Function] on Search result screen ▶ Press ▶ Press "Photo display ON".

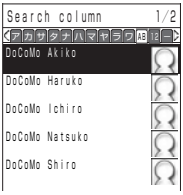
- Press "Photo display OFF" not to display images.

Changing Font size on Search result screen <Font size>

Default	Standard

1 Press [Function] on Search result screen ▶ Press ▶ Press "Font size".

2 Press one of to .



Small : 16 dots

Standard : 20 dots

Large : 24 dots

Editing saved Phonebook entries

- Editing is unavailable under Keypad dial lock.

1 Press ✉ [Edit] on Phonebook detail screen.

2 Edit each Phonebook data item.

- Setting each phonebook item: →P99, 104

3 Press i [Register].

4 Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" not to overwrite, enter a new Phonebook number and press ●. Phonebook number is not required to be entered in editing UIM (FOMA card) phonebook.

Information

- Phonebook with Secret setting "ON" can be edited only under Secret mode.
- Delete the first phone number or E-mail address in Phonebook which has several phone numbers or E-mail addresses, and the confirmation screen is displayed to select the entry as Normal use in the rest of entries. When only 1 item is left, the left phone number or E-mail address is to be "Normal use" automatically.

Copying Phonebook

You can copy Phonebook data between FOMA terminal phonebook and UIM (FOMA card) phonebook.

Copying Phonebook from FOMA terminal to UIM (FOMA card)

- Following items are to be copied:

Item	Description
Name	Copies up to 10 two-byte (Full Mark)/21 one-byte (Half Mark) characters. The characters over 25 one-byte (Half Mark) are not copied. Also, up to 10 characters are copied when two-byte (Full Mark) and one-byte (Half Mark) characters are mixed or one-byte (Half Mark) Kana is included.
Reading	Copies up to 25 one-byte (Half Mark) characters. The characters over 25 one-byte (Half Mark) are not copied. Also, up to 12 characters are copied when one-byte (Half Mark) Kana is included.
Phone number	Copies only the phone number registered as the first. The icon is changed to ☎.
E-mail address	Copies only the E-mail address registered as the first. The icon is changed to ✉.
Group	When the same group name exists in UIM (FOMA card), Phonebook data is copied into the same group. If there is no same Group name, Phonebook data is copied into Group 0.

1 Select a Phonebook entry and press i [Function] ▶ Press ◎ ▶ Press 2 "Copy to UIM".

See next page

2 Press 1 "Copy".

- When there are some items that cannot be copied, the message is displayed to confirm whether to copy only the available items.

■ Copying by option

① **Press 2 "Copy option".**
② **Select a Phonebook entry and press ●.**
- Press ● to release.

③ **Press i [Exec.]**

■ Copying all

Press 3 "Copy all".

3 Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Information

- Press i [Function] ▶ Press 3 "Copy to UIM" to copy data from Phonebook detail screen to UIM (FOMA card) phonebook.
- Unable to copy the items (Images/Individual phone receive call/Birthday etc.), other than name/reading/phone number/E-mail address/group.

Copying Phonebook from UIM (FOMA card) to FOMA terminal

- Following items are to be copied:

Item	Description
Name	Copied.
Reading	Two-byte (Full Mark) character is changed into one-byte (Half Mark) characters and copied.
Phone number	Copied to the first phone number.
E-mail address	Copied to the first E-mail address.
Group	When the same group name exists in FOMA terminal, Phonebook data is copied into the same group. If there is no same Group name, Phonebook data is copied into Group 0.

1 Select a Phonebook entry and press i [Function] ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 2 "Copy to Phone".

2 Press 1 "Copy".

■ Copying by option

① **Press 2 "Copy option".**
② **Select a Phonebook entry and press ●.**
- Press ● to release.

③ **Press i [Exec.]**

■ Copying all

Press 3 "Copy all".

3 Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Information

- Press i [Function] ▶ Press 3 "Copy to Phone" to copy data from Phonebook detail screen to FOMA terminal phonebook.

Delete Phonebook

Deleting Phonebook entry

1 **Select a Phonebook entry and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press ◎ ▶ Press 4GHI "Delete".**

2 **Press 1 "Delete".**

■ Deleting by option

① **Press 2ABC "Delete option".**

② **Select a Phonebook entry and press ●.**

- Press ● to release.

③ **Press (i) [Exec.]**

■ Deleting all

① **Press 3DEF "Delete all".**

② **Enter the terminal security code and press ●.**

- If both FOMA terminal phonebook and UIM (FOMA card) phonebook have the same phonebook data, select the data to delete and press ●.

3 **Press 1 "Yes".**

- Press 2ABC "No" to cancel.

Information

- Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 7PQRS "Delete" to delete from Phonebook detail screen.
- When "Accept/Reject call" is set to the Phonebook entry to delete, the terminal security code is required.

Secret

Protecting Phonebook entry with Secret

You cannot search or display Phonebook with Secret except under Secret mode in order to protect your privacy.

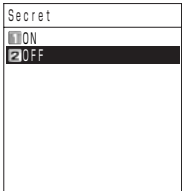
- Secret setting can be set or released only under Secret mode.
- Unable to set Secret on the Phonebook data added in UIM (FOMA card) phonebook or as Direct Call.

1 **Set Secret mode.**

- Setting procedure: →P153

2 **Select a Phonebook entry and press ● ▶ Press ✉ [Edit].**

3 **Select 🔑 and press ●.**



See next page

4 Press 1 "ON".

- Press 2 "OFF" to release.

5 Press i [Register].

6 Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No", enter the Phonebook number and press ●, to register as a new entry.

Information

- Names in Redial or Received calls are not displayed other than under Secret mode when Secret setting is on.
- Individual Arrival act is not executed except under Secret mode, even if Arrival act for individual or Group is set in a Phonebook set with Secret.

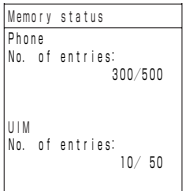
Memory status

Checking the number of registered Phonebook entry

Displays the set number of Secret mode or registered Phonebook in FOMA terminal/UIM (FOMA card) phonebook.

- The number of Phonebook entries which is set to Secret is displayed only under Secret mode.

1 Press i [Function] on Search phonebook screen ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 1 "Memory status".



Memory status of Phonebook in FOMA terminal/UIM (FOMA card) is displayed.

Two-touch dial

Using simple dialing to make calls

You can make calls easily with Phonebook number (0 to 99) in FOMA terminal phonebook.

- When several phone numbers are registered, the phone number set as normal use is connected.

<ex> Making calls to the phone number of Phonebook number 3

1 Enter the Phonebook number (3) on Stand-by display, and press ☎.

- "0" is unnecessary to be dialed before Phonebook number.
- Enter Phonebook number and press ☎ in video-phone.

Information

- Alternatively, enter the Phonebook number and press ● ▶ Press 1 "Dial phone call" or 2 "Dial video-phone" to make a call.

Contacting to the specified parties easily

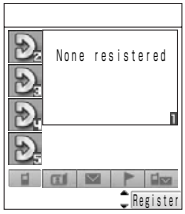
Register frequent contact persons to make calls or send mails easily. Select and display the list of Received calls/Redials or Received/Send mails between only registered entries.

Registering the party as Direct Call

Register the data in Phonebook beforehand to add the entry as Direct Call. →P99

- Up to 5 entries can be registered.
- Unable to register to UIM (FOMA card) phonebook or phonebook entries with Secret setting "ON".

1 Press ▷ on Stand-by display.



Direct Call screen

Direct Call screen is displayed.

2 Press [Register].

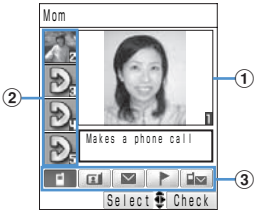
3 Select a Phonebook entry and press ●.

4 Press 1 "Yes".

- D1 is displayed on the phonebook data when Direct Call is set as Direct Call 1.
- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Making a call/sending a mail with Direct Call

1 Press ▷ on Stand-by display.



① The selected party
② The registered party
③ Function icon

2 Press one of 1 to 5 to select a party.

- Alternatively, press ○ to select a party.

See next page

3 Select a function icon.

■ **Making calls**

① **Select** [icon] **and press ●.**

② **Select a phone number and press ● or ▷.**

■ **Making a video-phone call**

① **Select** [icon] **and press ●.**

② **Select a phone number and press ● or ▷.**

■ **Composing a message**

① **Select** [icon] **and press ●.**

② **Select an E-mail address or a phone number and press ●.**

- Following operations: →P242 "Composing and sending i-mode mail" Step 4 to 6

■ **Sending a mail with the pasted location information URL**

- Location URL: →P325

① **Select** [icon] **and press ●.**

② **Select an E-mail address or a phone number and press ●.**

③ **Paste the location information.**

- Following operations: →P243 "Pasting Location information URL" Step ②

④ **Press 1 "Yes".**

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.
- Following operations: →P242 "Composing and sending i-mode mail" Step 4 to 6

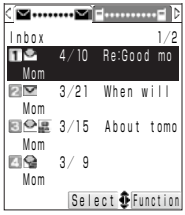
Displaying Direct Call or mail history <Direct Call box>

You can display Redial, Received calls or sent/received mails of registered parties only as Direct Call.

<ex> Displaying Direct Call (mail)

1 Select the party on Direct Call screen.

2 Select [icon] and press ●.



Direct Call box (mail)

Direct Call box (mail) is displayed.

- Press ◎ and you can switch "mail" and "phone" of Direct Call box.
- The following icons are displayed on the screen of Direct Call box (phone):
  - ⇦: Received
  - ⇨: Dialed

3 Select a mail and press ●.

Message screen is displayed.

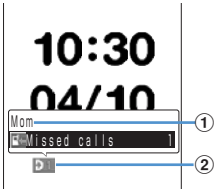
Information

- Definitions of icons displayed, or operation procedures of functions available on Direct Call box (mail) or the detail screen is the same as Redials/Received calls/Inbox/Outbox.
- A message appears to confirm whether to display mails in folders with security on Direct call box. Press 1 to display and enter the terminal security code. Press 2 "No" not to delete.

Displaying the information from Direct Call icon <Direct Call icon>

Notifies the information of Missed calls/Record message/Mails from the party registered as Direct Call with Direct Call icon. Direct Call box also can be displayed from Direct Call icons. For Record message, Recorded message list is displayed.

<ex> Notifying the missed call from the party registered as Direct call 1



① Registered name
② Direct call icon

- D1 : From the party registered as Direct Call 1
- D2 : From the party registered as Direct Call 2
- D3 : From the party registered as Direct Call 3
- D4 : From the party registered as Direct Call 4
- D5 : From the party registered as Direct Call 5

1 Press ●.

Displays Direct Call box (phone).

- If there are multiple notify information, press ◇ to select the information.
- If there are multiple Direct Call icons, press ◇ to select the icon.
- Not the Direct Call icon but the normal Notify icon is displayed under PIM lock (Phonebook).

Change/release the registered party as Direct Call

Deleting the registered party

1 Select the party on Direct Call screen, and press i [Check].

2 Press i [Function] ▶ Press 2 "Change Direct Call".

3 Press 1 "Yes".

- Following operations: →P115 "Registering the party as Direct Call" Step 3 to 4
- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Releasing the registered party

1 **Select the party on Direct Call screen, and press ⓘ [Check].**

2 **Press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press 3DEF "Rel. Direct Call".**

3 **Press 1 "Yes".**

- Press 2ABC "No" to cancel.

Editing the data of the registered party

1 **Select the party on Direct Call screen, and press ⓘ [Check].**

2 **Press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Edit".**

- Following operations: →P111 "Editing saved Phonebook entries" Step 2 to 4

Sounds/Displays/Lights

Sound settings

Changing FOMA terminal Ring tone . . . . . <Sound> 120
Changing tone volumes of FOMA terminal. . . . . <Volume> 123
Notifying receiving etc. with Vibration . . . . . .<Vibrator> 123
Notifying that the other party answers the call with vibration
. . . . . .<Connection vibrator> 124
Setting sound of pressing keys . . . . . .<Keypad sound> 124
Setting OK tone/NG tone . . . . . .<OK tone/NG tone> 125
Setting Charging tone. . . . . <Charging tone> 125
Informing with Alarm that a call is about to be terminated. . . .<Quality alarm> 125
Setting duration of Mail ring tone etc.. . . . . <Notice time> 126
Sounding Ring tone only through Earphone . . . . . .<Output ring tone to:> 126
Making FOMA terminal mute . . . . . <Manner mode> 127
Customizing Manner mode . . . . . <Original manner mode> 127

Displays/Lights settings

Changing Stand-by display . . . . . <Stand-by display> 129
Setting Call/receive display . . . . . <Call/receive display> 132
Setting Backside-display 132
Setting Display/Keypad light . . . . . <Display light> 134
Setting color design of screen. . . . . <Taste> 135
Changing design of Main menu 135
Setting the color of incoming-call lamp . . . . . <LED> 137

Changing FOMA terminal Ring tone

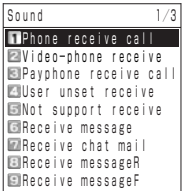
You can set the Ring tones of receiving calls/mails, confirmation tone in operating FOMA terminal or Location provide notify/check tone.

- When an i-motion is set as Ring tone, an image and sound of the i-motion plays on receiving. (Chaku-motion)

Changing Ring tones or Chaku-motion

Default	Phone receive call/Video-phone receive call	: ジッパ・ディー・ドゥー・ダー (Zip-A-Dee-Doo-Dah)
	Payphone receive call/User unset receive call /Not Support receive call	: パターン4 (Pattern 4)
	Receive message/Receive MessageR/F	: クリスタル (Crystal)
	Receive chat mail	: 木琴 (Xylophone)

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press 2.



2 Press one of 1 to 9.

Phone receive call : Setting for incoming phone calls

Video-phone receive : Setting for incoming video-phone calls

Payphone receive call : Setting for receiving calls from payphone

User unset receive : Setting for receiving user unset calls

Not support receive : Setting for receiving international phone calls or calls via every forwarding service from fixed-line phone (Caller ID may be displayed depending on phone companies the call goes through.)

Receive message : Setting for receiving mails

Receive chat mail : Setting for receiving Chat mails

Receive messageR : Setting for receiving MessageR

Receive messageF : Setting for receiving MessageF

3 Press one of 1 to 3.

i-motion : Notifies with a movie/i-motion.

Melody : Notifies with a melody.

OFF : Ring tone does not play. No further operation is needed.

4 Select data, and press ●.

- Press ✉ [Play] to confirm data.

Information

- Some i-motions, such as Video only i-motion containing no sound data, cannot be set as Ring tones.
- When setting an i-motion including image and sound as Ring tone, Receiving screen is changed to the i-motion automatically. However, Sound only i-motion data (i-motion without video, such as vocals of singers etc.) set as Ring tone is not displayed as Receiving screen, but the set image is displayed.
- When several settings of Ring tones conflict, priority is set as follows:
  ① Ring tone set in individual settings in Phonebook
  ② Ring tone set in group settings in Phonebook
  ③ Ring tone set in Sound
  However, if you subscribe to Multinumber service and set Additional number as the dialing number, the setting follows the Ring tone setting of the Additional number. →P449
- When i-motion with image and sound is set as Ring tone, the i-motion is displayed on receiving calls, having a priority over the still image of the caller set as Phonebook basic information. However, registered still image is displayed if the i-motion is Sound only (i-motion without video, such as vocals of singers etc.).

Changing opening/closing tone of FOMA terminal <Opening tone/Closing tone>

Default	Opening tone : オープントーン1 (Opening tone 1) Closing tone : クローズトーン1 (Closing tone 1)

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press 2.

2 Press ○ ▶ Press 2 "Opening tone" or 3 "Closing tone".

3 Press 1 "Melody".

- Press 2 "OFF" not to sound. No further operation is needed.

4 Select a melody data, and press ●.

- Press ✉ [Play] to confirm the melody. (FOMA terminal vibrates by pressing ✉ [Play] if Vibrator is set to Phone receive call. No vibration is activated in opening/closing FOMA terminal.)

Changing tones for GPS function

Default	Position location : ハープ (Harp) Notify location/Periodic notify/Loc. provide/notify : モールス信号 (Morse) Loc. provide/check : ファンファーレ (Fanfare)

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press 2.

2 Press ○ once or twice, select an item and press ●.

Position location : Setting in positioning present location
Notify location : Setting in completion of notifying present location
Periodic notify : Setting in executing Periodic notify
Loc. provide/notify : Setting when location information is required (When GPS service setting is "許容 (Allow)")
Loc. provide/check : Setting when location information is required (When GPS service setting is "毎回確認 (Confirm request)")

3 Press 1 "Melody".

- Press 2 "OFF" not to sound. No further operation is needed.

See next page

4 Select a melody and press ●.

- Press ✉ [Play] to confirm the melody.

List of Preinstalled Melody

Following melodies are preinstalled and available with your FOMA terminal (Stored in the folder named "Preinstalled").

Title	Composer	Title	Composer
パターン1-4 (Pattern 1 to 4)	−	演歌 (Enka (Japanese ballad))	−
ジッパ・ディー・ドゥー・ダー (Zip-A-Dee-Doo-Dah)	Allie Wrubel	クリスタル (Crystal)	−
イエロー・サブマリン (Yellow Submarine)	John Lennon & Paul McCartney	木琴 (Xylophone)	−
ツァラトストラはかく語りき (Also Sprach Zarathustra)	Richard Strauss	ハープ (Harp)	−
オー・ハッピー・デイ (Oh Happy Day)	−	オルガン (Organ)	−
アイ・ゴット・リズム (I Got Rhythm)	George Gershwin	ファンファーレ (Fanfare)	−
ウィリアムテル序曲 ("William Tell" Overture)	Gioacchino Rossini	モールス信号 (Morse)	−
エンターテイナー (The Entertainer)	Scott Joplin	黒電話 (Old ring tone)	−
山の音楽家 (Ich Bin Ein Musikante)	−	教会の鐘 (Church bell)	−
アルプス一万尺 (Yankee Doodle)	−	学校のチャイム (School chime)	−
マイムマイム (Mayim Mayim)	−	波うちぎわ (Sound of the surf)	−
越天楽 (Etenraku (Japanese traditional music))	−	水のしずく (Waterdrop)	−
ロックンロール (Rock'n'roll)	−	にわとり (Cock-a-doodle-doo)	−
サンバ (Samba)	−	パトカー (Police siren)	−
レゲエ (Reggae)	−	調理中 (Sound for cooking)	−
ボサノバ (Bossa nova)	−	メールを受信しました (Receive a mail.)	−
アイリッシュ (Irish music)	−	You've got a Mail!	−
タンゴ (Tango)	−	アラーム音 (Alarm tone)	−
ハワイアン (Hawaiian music)	−	オープントーン1, 2*1 (Opening tone 1, 2)	−
テクノ (Techno)	−	クローズトーン1, 2*2 (Closing tone 1, 2)	−

Recording patent No.: T-05A0194

*1 Can be set only as Opening tone.
*2 Can be set only as Closing tone.

Volume

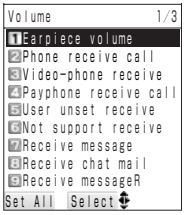
Changing tone volumes of FOMA terminal

Default	All tones: LEVEL3

You can set volume of Ring tone for receiving calls/mails and the sound for operating FOMA terminal.

- 5 levels from LEVEL1 (min.) to 5 (max.) and OFF (mute) can be set in Volume. Step tone, increasing/decreasing volume stepwise can be set for some tomes.
- Earpiece volume cannot be set to "OFF" nor Step tone.

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press 1.



2 Select an item, and press ●.

- Description of items →P120, 121, 124, 125

■ Adjusting volume settings of all items in one operation

- Earpiece volume cannot be set with "Set All".

①Press ✉ [Set All].
②Press ◆ to adjust volume, and press ●.
③Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

3 Press ◆ to adjust Volume and press ●.

- Press ✉ [STEP ↓] for setting the volume to decrease stepwise. Press ⓘ [STEP ↑] for setting the volume to increase stepwise (Step tone).

Vibrator

Notifying receiving etc. with Vibration

Default	All tones: OFF

You can set FOMA terminal to notify receiving a phone/video-phone call, mail, MessageR/F, etc. with Vibrator.

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press 3.

2 Select an item and press ●.

- Description of items →P120, 121

See next page

3 Press one of 1 to 8.

Melody link : Vibrates following the pattern of the melody set as Ring tone.
- Melody link may not be available for some melodies.

Pattern 1 to 6 : Vibrates following preinstalled patterns in FOMA terminal.

OFF : Does not vibrate. No further operation is needed.

- Press [Check] ▶ Press ●, to confirm the vibration.

4 Press one of 1 to 3.

- Press [Check] ▶ Press ●, to confirm the vibration.

Information

- Vibration under Manner mode follows the settings in Vibrator.
- If setting "Melody link" to Vibrator when the setting of Sound is "OFF" or "Melody" without preset pattern, the vibration follows "Pattern 1".
- Be careful not to drop FOMA terminal down from tables by vibration.
- When several settings of Vibrator conflict, priority is set as follows:
  ① Vibration set in individual settings in Phonebook
  ② Vibration set in group settings in Phonebook
  ③ Vibration set in Vibrator

Connection vibrator

Notifying that the other party answers the call with vibration

Default	OFF

Sets FOMA terminal to vibrate when the other party answers the call.

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press 7.

2 Press 1 "ON".

- Press 2 "OFF" not to set.

Keypad sound

Setting sound of pressing keys

Default	Sol-fa

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press 2 ▶ Press ▶ Press 1.

2 Press one of 1 to 3.

- Press [Play] to confirm the sound.
- Press 4 "OFF" not to sound.

Information

- When this function is set to "OFF", the sound of confirming battery level is also muted.

OK tone/NG tone

Setting OK tone/NG tone

Default	OK tone: ON NG tone: ON

Sets whether to sound tones in setting/operating functions properly or improperly with FOMA terminal.

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press 2.**

2 **Press ○ ▶ Press 4 "OK tone" or 5 "NG tone".**

3 **Press 1 "ON".**

- Press 2 "OFF" not to sound.

Charging tone

Setting Charging tone

Default	Charging tone 1

Sets whether to sound Charging tone when starting or finishing charging.

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press 2 ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 6.**

2 **Press 1 "Charging tone 1" or 2 "Charging tone 2".**

- Press ✉ [Play] to confirm the sound.
- Press 3 "OFF" not to sound.

Information

- Charging tone is muted under Manner mode, Public mode (Drive mode), calling on the line, connecting i-mode or turning power off, etc.

Quality alarm

Informing with Alarm that a call is about to be terminated

Default	High alarm

Informs with Alarm during a call, before the connection would be terminated under the poor radio wave condition.

- In sudden deterioration of the signal quality, the call may be disconnected with no alarm.

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 4 ▶ Press 3 ▶ Press 1.**

2 **Press 1 "High alarm" or 2 "Low alarm".**

- Press 3 "OFF" not to sound.

Notice time

Setting duration of Mail ring tone etc.

Default	All: 5 seconds

Sets duration of Ring tone for Receive message etc. or notifying sound of GPS function.

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press 5.**

2 **Press one of 1 to 9.**

3 **Enter Notice time, and press ●.**

- The duration can be set as following range:
  - Receive message/chat mail/messageR/F: 1 to 30 seconds
  - Position location/Notify location/Periodic notify/Loc. provide/notify: 0 to 30 seconds
  - Loc. provide/check: 0 to 20 seconds

Output ring tone to:

Sounding Ring tone only through Earphone

Default	Earphone & speaker

Sets Ring tones not to sound through the speaker in connecting to Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with a switch (optional).

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 4 ▶ Press 4.**

2 **Press 1 "Earphone only".**

- To sound Ring tone also from the speaker, press 2 "Earphone & speaker".

Information

- Ring tones sound through the speaker regardless of Ring tone output setting when Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with a switch (optional) is disconnected.

Manner mode

Making FOMA terminal mute

Default	OFF

You can set to mute Ring tones or confirm sounds not to annoy the people around.

1 Hold down (#) for over a second on Stand-by display.

Manner mode is set, and is displayed on Stand-by display.

Releasing Manner mode

Hold down (#) for over a second on Stand-by display.

Under Manner mode (Silent vibrator)

- Mutes Ring tone/Keypad sound/Alarms/GPS tone etc. and notifies with vibration. Also, sensitizes microphone perception so that a call can be made in a small voice.
- Mutes Ring tone/Alarms/GPS tone and notifies with vibration. If the setting of Vibrator is "OFF", vibrations are performed in "Pattern 1" and "Medium" in strength level.

Information

- The detail of Manner mode can be changed.
- Shutter sound of Camera cannot be muted even under Manner mode. Changing volume is not allowed either.
- Confirmation message may be displayed to confirm whether to sound tones temporally under Manner mode when sounding is required to execute an operation. Select an item to operate, and press ●.

Original manner mode

Customizing Manner mode

Default	Manner mode : Silent vibrator Clock timer mode: Continuous mode

Changes the setting of Manner mode. You can set Clock timer mode to activate/deactivate Manner mode on specified time, and customize the volume of Ring tone or vibration etc. (Original manner)

Setting Manner mode type and Clock timer mode

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press 6.

See next page

2 Press one of 1 to 3.

• Manner mode types and description are as follows:

Type	Volume	Vibrator	Mic sensitivity	Blackout alarm
Silent vibrator	OFF	ON (follows Vibrator setting)	High	OFF
Sleep	OFF	OFF	High	OFF
Original manner	Can be set individually	Can be set individually	Can be set individually	Can be set individually

3 Set Clock timer mode.

■ Setting/releasing manually

①Press 1 "Continuous mode".
②Hold down # for over a second on Stand-by display.
is displayed on Stand-by display.
• Manner mode is active until you release manually.

■ Setting/releasing automatically at specified time

①Press 2 "Duration mode".
②Enter time to start, and press ●.
③Enter time to end, and press ●.
④Hold down # for over a second on Stand-by display.
is displayed on Stand-by display.
• Manner mode is set automatically from Start time to End time. Displays and on Stand-by display under Manner mode.

■ Releasing automatically after passing set duration

①Press 3 "OFF as time's passed".
②Enter duration, and press ●.
• The duration can be set from 1 to 999 minutes.
③Hold down # for over a second on Stand-by display.
and are displayed on Stand-by display.
• Releases Manner mode automatically after the preset duration passes.

Setting Original manner mode

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press 6.

2 Select "Original manner", and press i [Edit].

3 Press one of 1 to 4.

Volume : Sets Volume.
• Following operations : →P123 "Changing tone volumes of FOMA terminal" Step 2 to 3
• To return to Original manner mode setting screen, press i [Complete].

Vibrator : Sets Vibrator.
• Following operations : →P123 "Notifying receiving etc. with Vibration" Step 2 to 4
• To return to Original manner mode setting screen, press i [Complete].

Mic sensitivity : Sets Mic sensitivity. Small voice can be heard clearly to the other party with setting to High.
• Press one of 1 to 3.
• Mic sensitivity is set to Medium when Manner mode is not set.

Blackout alarm : Sets whether to sound Alarm when the battery level becomes low.
- Press 1 "ON" or 2 "OFF".

4 Press i [Save].

Stand-by display

Changing Stand-by display

You can change the image on Stand-by display to an image/i-motion downloaded from i-mode sites, or to a still image/movie shot with FOMA terminal. Also, monthly calendar or clock etc. can be set to Stand-by display.

Displaying image <Wallpaper>

Default	ながれ星 (Shooting stars)

Displaying still images

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 2 ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press 1.

2 Press 1 "My picture".
- Press 3 "OFF" not to display. No further operation is needed.

3 Select a folder, and press ●.

4 Select an image, and press ●.

- Press ✉ [Play] to confirm the image.
- Set the position and the size and press ●, when the preview is displayed.

Setting position

Press ✣ to set.
- Position of image shifts by 1 dot each time the key is pressed.
- Each time holding down the key for over a second, the position shifts by 10 dots.

Changing size

- Resizing is not allowed if the size of image is equal to the size of screen.

Press i [Size].
- The size changes as ① → ② → ③ → ① by pressing each time.
  ①Scales the image to fit to vertical line of an image.
  ②Scales the image to fit to horizontal line of an image.
  ③Returns to the original image size.

Displaying movie/i-motion

- Movie/i-motion are played each time Stand-by display is displayed. After playing movie/i-motion, the first frame is displayed.
- The movie/i-motion does not play under Public mode (Drive mode).
- Some i-motions, such as Sound only i-motion data (i-motion without video, such as vocals of singers etc.) cannot be set as Stand-by display.

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 2ABC ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press 1.

2 Press 2ABC "i-motion".

- Press 3DEF "OFF" not to display. No further operation is needed.

3 Select a folder, and press ●.

4 Select a movie/i-motion data, and press ●.

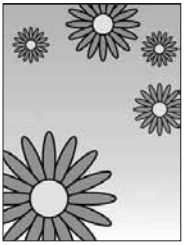
- Press ✉ [Play] to confirm the image.

5 Press 1 "Large" or 2ABC "Normal".

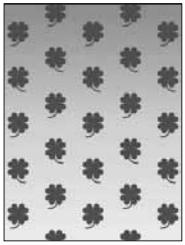
- Adjust Volume and press ●, when Volume adjusting screen is displayed.

Preinstalled images in FOMA terminal

青空
(Blue sky)



マーガレット
(Marguerite)



4つ葉のクローバー
(Four-leaf clover)

ながれ星
(Shooting stars)

Information

- Chara-den/frame/stamp cannot be set as Wallpaper.
- Phone To (AV phone To)/Mail To/Web To functions cannot be used from i-motion set as Stand-by display.
- The appearance of Animation GIF/Flash movie downloaded from i-mode sites and set as Stand-by display may be different from that on i-mode sites.
- If the image set as Stand-by display is deleted, the default image is displayed.

Displaying Clock or Calendar <Clock/Calendar>

Default	Digital clock (L)

Displays a clock/calendar/today's schedule on Wallpaper of Stand-by display.

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 2ABC ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press 3DEF.

2 Set Clock or Calendar.

Setting Digital clock

①**Press** 1 **"Digital clock".**
②**Press** 1 **"Digital clock (S)" or** 2 **"Digital clock (L)".**
- Pressing 1 "Digital clock (S)" allows to adjust the position to display by pressing ●.

③**Press** ●**.**

Setting Analog clock

①**Press** 2 **"Analog clock".**
②**Press** 1 **"Analog clock (S)" or** 2 **"Analog clock (L)".**
- Pressing 1 "Analog clock (S)" allows to adjust the position to display by pressing ●.

③**Press** ●**.**

Setting World clock

Setting [USA] New York

①**Press** 3 **"World clock".**
②**Press ● and select the city.**
- Country name (abbreviation with 3 alphabets), city name, date, time, and time difference from Japan are displayed.
- Press [DST] to display summertime with the mark ⏣ beside the time if the country set adopts Summer time system. (Press the key again to return to the previous screen.)

③**Press** ● **▶ Press** ●**.**

Setting Calendar

①**Press** 4 **"Calendar".**
②**Press one of** 1 **to** 5**.**

1-month calendar : Displays a calendar of the present month.
- Press ● to adjust the position.

1-month calendar (S) : Displays a calendar of the present month.
- Press ● to adjust the position.

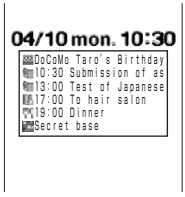
2-month calendar : Displays calendars of the present and next month.
- Press ● to adjust the position.

3-month calendar : Displays calendars of the present/last/next month.

4-month calendar : Displays calendars of following 4 months including the present month.

③**Press** ●**.**

Setting One-day schedule



One-day schedule (with background)

One-day schedule (without background)

Displays up to 7 items registered to Calendar, such as Birthday/ToDo/Schedule/Image, following the priority preset, in addition to Date/ the day of the week/Time.
- About the priority →P413

①**Press** 5 **"One-day schedule".**
- Press [Switch] to display/undisplay a background behind the schedule.

②**Press** ●**.**

Not setting Clock/Calendar

Press 6 **"OFF".**

See next page

Information

- Clock/Calendar cannot be set when Time and date is unset.

Call/receive display

Setting Call/receive display

Default	Phone dial call	: 発信（音声）(Dial (voice))
	Phone receive call	: 着信（音声）(Receive (voice))
	Video-phone dial	: 発信（テレビ電話）(Dial (Video-phone))
	V-phone receive	: 着信（テレビ電話）(Receive (Video-phone))
	Payphone/User unset call/Not support receive	: 着信（番号表示なし）(Receive (ID unsent))

Sets images displayed when making/receiving calls in Voice-call/Video-phone.

- i-motion with Sound only (i-motion without video such as vocals of singers) cannot be set as Receiving image.

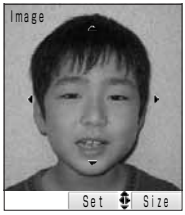
1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 2ABC ▶ Press 2ABC.

2 Press one of 1 to 7PQRS.

3 Press 1 "My picture" or 2ABC "i-motion".

- i-motion cannot be set as Dialing screen.
- Select "OFF" and press ● not to display an image. No further operation is needed.

4 Select an image and press ●.



- Set the position and the size and press ● when the preview is displayed. →P129

Information

- Some i-motions may not be set as Receiving images.
- When setting an i-motion including image and sound as Receiving display, Ring tone is changed to the i-motion automatically. However, setting Video only i-motion data (i-motion without sound) as Receiving display does not affect the setting of Ring tone.
- When the i-motion with only sound (without images, like the singing voice of the singer) is set to Ring tone, if Flash movie is set for Receive display, Ring tone returns to the default.
- When several settings of Receiving images conflict, priority is set as follows.
  ① The image of the caller set in Phonebook basic information
  ② The image set in group settings in Phonebook
  ③ The image set in Call/receive display (May become first priority when i-motion with image and sound is set.)

Setting Backside-display

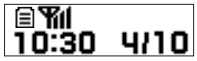
Information such as a name of a caller can be displayed on Backside-display while FOMA terminal is folded. You can select the size of the clock to display.

Setting to display time on Backside-display <Backside-display time>

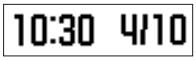
Default	Clock (S)

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 2 ▶ Press 3.

2 Press 1 "Clock (S)" or 2 "Clock (L)".



Clock (S)



Clock (L)

Displaying information about callers on receiving calls <Backside notice>

Default	ON

The other party's name and phone number are displayed on Backside-display when receiving calls.

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 2 ▶ Press 4.

2 Press 1 "ON".

- Press 2 "OFF" not to display.

Information

- The name of the caller registered in Phonebook with Secret setting "ON" is not displayed, except under Secret mode.

Setting the color of Backside light <Backside light color>

Default	Body color "trico": color 4 "mint": color 5 "aqua": color 6

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 2 ▶ Press 5.

2 Select a color, and press ●.

- Color can be selected from color 1 to 11.

Setting the display on Backside-display <Backside-display>

Default	OFF as time's passed

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 2 ▶ Press 6.

2 Press 1 "Continuous displaying" or 2 "OFF as time's passed".

Continuous displaying : Always displays Backside-display.

OFF as time's passed : Backside-display turns off in approximately 60 seconds.

Setting Display/Keypad light

Default	Screen/Key light: ON Lighting time: 10s

Sets to turn on the light of the screen and keys when operating or unfolding FOMA terminal. The duration of lighting can be specified.

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 2 ▶ Press 7 ▶ Press 1.

2 Set items.

■ Setting Screen/Key light

①Press 1 "Screen/Key light".

②Press 1 "ON".

- Press 2 "OFF" not to light up.

■ Setting Lighting time

①Press 2 "Lighting time".

②Enter duration, and press ●.

- The duration can be set from 1 to 60 seconds.

3 Press i [Save] ▶ Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Setting screen to light up at all times <Continuous lighting>

Default	Video-phone: ON Everything else: OFF

The screen always lights up while in video-phone calls or connecting i-mode regardless of lighting time setting.

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 2 ▶ Press 7 ▶ Press 2.

2 Press one of 1 to 5.

Charger connected : Lights up continuously while connecting AC adapter (optional) or DC adapter (optional) even after preset duration in Power saver elapsed.

Video-phone : Lights up continuously during a Video-phone call.

i-mode : Lights up continuously while displaying i-mode sites or Screen memo.

Mail : Lights up continuously while displaying Message screen, Deco-mail preview screen or Chat mail screen.

i-αppli : Lights up continuously while executing i-αppli.

3 Press 1 "ON".

- Press 2 "OFF" not to light up continuously.

Setting duration until screen turns off <Power saver>

Default	30 sec

Screen turns off after specified duration elapsed.

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 2 ▶ Press 7 ▶ Press 3.

2 Press one of 1 to 6.

Information

- Screen turns off when the preset duration in Power saver elapsed, even before the time set in Display time is up.
- Turn on the Display light before dialing, when it has been turned off.

Taste

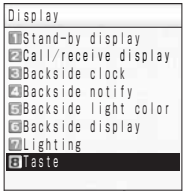
Setting color design of screen

Default	Standard

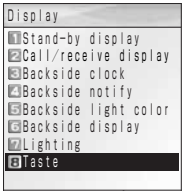
1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 2 ▶ Press 8.

2 Press 1 "Standard" or 2 "Blue".

The color design of screen is changed.



Standard



Blue

Changing design of Main menu

Sorts Main menu icons or changes the icon design.

- Changing or sorting icons is available on Mail menu, GPS menu, and i-mode menu also.

Sorting Menu icons

1 Display the menu.

2 Press i [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Sort icons".

See next page

3 Select an icon, and press ●.

■ Resetting the icons

①Press ✉ [Reset].
②Press 1 "Yes".
- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

4 Press ● to select the destination to move, and press ●.

- To sort other icons, repeat the operation from Step 3 to 4.

5 Press i [Save].

Changing Menu icons

Default	シンプル (Simple)

The available icons are as follows; "Set of icons" to edit 1 screen as a whole, and "Single icon" to edit one by one.

- You can create Set of icons or Single icon with the function of Creating Menu icon (→P359), or download them from the site " どこでもSANYO (Dokodemo SANYO)" (→P196).
- Following Set of icons are preinstalled for each menu in FOMA terminal.

シンプル (Simple)

ポップ (Pop)

1 Display the menu.

2 Press i [Function] ▶ Press 2 ▶ Press 1 "Change menu icon".

■ Resetting the icons

①Press 2 "Release menu icon".
②Press 1 "Yes".
- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

3 Select a set of icons, and press ● ▶ Press ●.

- Press ✉ [Play] to confirm the icon.
- Press i [Function] ▶ Press 1 "File property", to display icon information.

■ Setting Single icon

①Select Single icon, and press ●.
②Select an icon, and press ●.
- Press 1 "Yes" to edit the icon in a row. Press 2 "No" to end.

Displaying Menu definition

Default	Define menu ON

Menu definition is displayed in approximately 3 seconds after selecting each menu. Setting applies to all menus.

1 **Display the menu.**

2 **Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 3DEF "Define menu ON".**

- Press 3DEF "Define menu OFF" not to display.

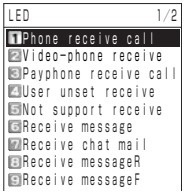
LED

Setting the color of incoming-call lamp

Default	Pattern: Phone receive call, Video-phone receive, Payphone receive call, User unset receive, Not support receive, Receive message, Receive chat mail, Receive messageR/F: Melody link Position location, Notify location, Periodic notify, Loc. provide/notify, Loc. provide/check: Pattern 1 Color: All Color 7

You can set the color and the pattern to blink LED on receiving calls/mails and notifying/confirming location information.

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press 4GHI.**



2 **Select an item, and press ●.**

- Description of items →P120, 121

3 **Press one of 1 to 5JKL.**

Melody link : Blinks following the pattern of the melody set as Ring tone.
- Melody link may not be available for some melodies.
- Cannot be selected in Position location, Notify location, Periodic notify, Location notify/provide, Location provide/check.

Pattern 1 to 3 : Blinks following Preinstalled patterns in FOMA terminal.

OFF : Does not blink. No further operation is needed.
- Cannot be selected in Periodic notify/Loc. provide/notify/Loc. provide/check.

See next page

4 Select a color, and press ●.

- Color can be selected from color 1 to 11, and ALL combined.
- "ALL combined" changes the color every 1 second.
- You can confirm the color with LED while selecting the item.

Setting Notice LED

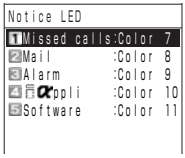
Default	OFF

LED blinks approximately every 4 seconds and notifies Missed calls/Receiving mails/Alarm etc.

- Displays the newest when several notifications exist.
- Notifies the presence of mails in the i-mode Center by priority.

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press 4 ▶ Press ▶ Press 1.

2 Press 1 "ON".



- Press 2 "OFF" not to set. No further operation is needed.

3 Press one of 1 to 5.

Missed calls : Notifies Missed calls, Voice mail, and Record message.

Mail : Notifies when receiving i-mode mails/SMS/MessageR/F, or mails being held in the Center.

Alarm : Notifies when Schedule alarm/ToDo alarm/Alarm not responded, or Periodic notify is failed.

i-αppli : Notifies when i-αppli auto start is failed.

Software : Notifies the result of Software update etc.

4 Select a color and press ●.

- Color can be selected from color 1 to 11, and ALL combined.
- "ALL combined" changes the color in every blink.
- You can confirm the color with LED while selecting the item.
- Select "OFF" and press ●, not to illuminate LED.

5 Press i [Save].

Information

- Missed calls and received mails are notified according to the following priority:
  ① The setting for individual settings in Phonebook
  ② The setting for group settings in Phonebook
  ③ The setting for Notice LED

Setting Call illumination

Default	OFF

Sets to blink LED during calls.

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press 4 ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 2.**

2 **Press 1 "ON".**

- Press 2 "OFF" not to set. No further operation is needed.

3 **Select a color and press ●.**

- Color can be selected from color 1 to 11, and ALL combined.
- "ALL combined" changes the color every 1 second.
- You can confirm the color with LED while selecting the item.

Safety settings

Security code

Security codes for FOMA terminal 142
Changing the terminal security code . . . . . <Change security code> 144
Setting PIN/PIN2 code. . . . . <UIM (FOMA card)> 144
Unlocking PIN/PIN2 code 146

Restricting mobile phone operations and functions

Various Lock functions. 146
Preventing unauthorized use. . . . . <All lock> 147
Preventing making/receiving calls . . . . . <Self mode> 149
Preventing displaying Phonebook or Schedule. . . . . <PIM lock> 149
Preventing Keypad dial. . . . . <Keypad dial lock> 151
Preventing inadvertent use of Side keys
. . . . . <Side key operation set to Valid/Invalid> 152
Invalidating Side key operation while FOMA terminal is folded. <Close lock> 152
Setting display of Redial or Received calls . . . . . <View dialed/received> 153

Restricting dialing/receiving calls and sending/receiving mails

Displaying information set as Secret . . . . . <Secret mode> 153
Receiving only the calls from specified numbers
. . . . . <Accept call for specified phonebook> 153
Rejecting only the calls from specified numbers
. . . . . <Reject call for specified phonebook> 154
Rejecting calls without Caller ID notification
. . . . . <Reject calls by reasons for User unset> 155
Muting Ring tones of calls from unregistered phone number
. . . . . <Set mute seconds> 156
Rejecting calls from unregistered numbers
. . . . . <Reject calls from unregistered numbers> 157

Other "Safety settings"

Other "Safety settings". 158

Security codes for FOMA terminal

Security code is required to use some of the convenient functions in FOMA terminal. There are several types of security code, such as the terminal security code for using some terminal functions, the Network security code for network services, and i-mode password etc. Use these codes properly for each usage, to make the most of FOMA terminal.

Notes on using security codes

- When setting security codes, avoid using numbers such as "birthday", "a part of phone number", "house number or room number", "1111", "1234", since those numbers are easily guessed by others. Be sure to keep a separate note of the set security codes.
- Note that never to reveal security codes to others. DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss that others causes by abusing your security codes.
- DoCoMo will never contact you to ask your security codes.
- If you forget your security codes, contact DoCoMo shop with your official identifications (driver's license, etc.), FOMA terminal and UIM (FOMA card).
  Contact "DoCoMo Information Center" on the back of this manual for details.

Terminal security code

Default terminal security code is set to "0000". Change the code to a number you like. Under Kids' mode, the code is recommended to be used as the security code for parents, since it is valid for setting change in security functions etc. →P144

- Note that, if you forget the terminal security code, contact DoCoMo shop with your FOMA terminal*, currently used UIM (FOMA card) and an ID to identify the subscriber (ex. driver's license).
  * If the mobile phone terminal has not been purchased by the subscriber, sales outlets may not accept your request.

Password(number)

Password(number) is the security code to be used under Kids' mode. Password(number) is recommended to be used as the security code for kids, since it is invalid for setting change in security functions etc. Default Password(number) is set to "1111". Change the code to the numbers you like. If you forget your Password(number), it can be reset by entering the terminal security code in Change Password(number). →P56

- Password(number) required for authentication can be substituted by the terminal security code.

Network security code

The network security code, 4-digit, is required when using ドコモe サイト (DoCoMo e-site) for various applications or using other network services. The code you set when subscribing FOMA terminal can be changed by yourself. Users who have "My DoCoMo ID/Password" of "My DoCoMo", the general support site for PCs, can make inquiries to change the network security code from PCs.From i-mode, you can change the code on "各種手続き (Various applications)" in "ドコモe サイト (DoCoMo e-site)" by yourself.

* Refer to the back of this manual for information about "My DoCoMo" or "DoCoMo e-site".

i-mode password

"i-mode password", 4-digit code, is required for such transactions as registering/deleting of sites in My Menu, applying to/canceling message service or i-mode pay sites.
In addition, other passwords may be required by individual IP (information service provider).
Default i-mode password is set to "0000". Change the password to the number you like.
To change the password through i-mode, access iMenu → ENGLISH → 4 GHI "Options" → 2 ABC "Change i-mode Password".

PIN code/PIN2 code

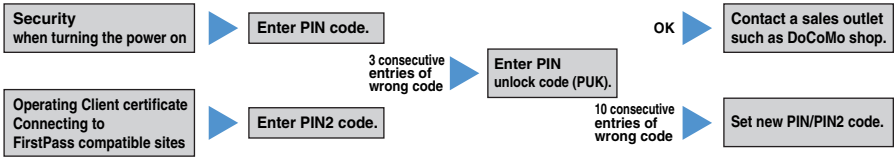
The "PIN code" and "PIN2 code" are set for the security of UIM (FOMA card). Default security codes are set to "0000". Change the code to the number you like. →P144
PIN code is 4 to 8-digit number for preventing malicious use by others, which is required to be entered every time when inserting UIM (FOMA card) and powering on FOMA terminal. You can make/receive calls or operate the terminal after entering PIN code.
PIN2 code is a security code (4 to 8-digit) used when using/requesting the issue of Client certificate or resetting Total calls cost.

- When inserting currently used UIM (FOMA card) to FOMA terminal newly purchased, use the previous PIN/PIN2 code.

PIN unlock code (PUK)

PUK is the 8-digit code to release PIN/PIN2 code being completely locked. You cannot change PUK.

- UIM (FOMA card) is locked, after 10 consecutive entries of wrong PUK.



Authentication password

This password is required when sending/receiving all items through Infrared communication. (4-digit)
Sender and receiver must enter the same password for the Infrared communication before starting communication.

Information

- To prevent tampering, change the terminal security code/PIN code/PIN2 code/i-mode password after subscribing. Be sure to keep a separate note of the set security codes.
- Avoid using numbers to be guessed easily, such as the last 4 digits of the phone number etc., and do not let others know Authentication password.

Changing the terminal security code

Default	0000

Change the terminal security code to use FOMA terminal safely.

- Enter 4 to 8-digit number as the terminal security code.
- The same number as Password(number) cannot be set.

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 3DEF ▶ Press 2ABC ▶ Press 1.**

2 **Press 1 "Change".**

- Press 2ABC "Not change" to cancel.

3 **Enter the current terminal security code, and press ●.**

- The entered terminal security code is masked with "✱".

4 **Enter a new terminal security code, and press ●.**

5 **Enter the same terminal security code as in Step 4, and press ●.**

The terminal security code is changed.

Information

- Setting/Using some functions of FOMA terminal may require the terminal security code. Note that the terminal security code is different from the network security code or i-mode password.

Setting PIN/PIN2 code

For preventing unauthorized use, you can set FOMA terminal to be disabled until PIN code is entered after powering FOMA terminal on.

- Enter 4 to 8-digit number for PIN/PIN2 code.

Setting to require entry of PIN code when powering FOMA terminal on < Enter PIN code >

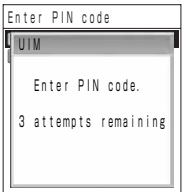
Default	OFF

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 3DEF ▶ Press 9WXYZ.**

2 **Enter the terminal security code, and press ●.**

3 **Press 3DEF "Enter PIN code".**

4 **Press 1 "ON".**



- Press 2 "OFF" not to set.

5 **Enter PIN code, and press ●.**

- The entered numbers are masked with "✱".

Changing PIN/PIN2 code <Change PIN/PIN2 code>

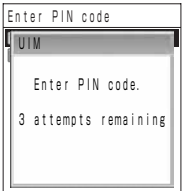
Default	PIN code: 0000 PIN2 code: 0000

- PIN code cannot be changed unless "Enter PIN code" is set to "ON".

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 3 ▶ Press 9.**

2 **Enter the terminal security code, and press ●.**

3 **Press 1 "Change PIN code" or 2 "Change PIN2 code".**



4 **Enter the current PIN (or PIN2) code, and press ●.**

- The entered numbers are masked with "✱".

5 **Enter a new PIN (or PIN2) code, and press ●.**

6 **Enter the same PIN (or PIN2) code as in Step 5, and press ●.**

The PIN (or PIN2) code is changed.

Information

- Settings in "Change PIN code", "Change PIN2 code" and "Enter PIN code" are saved in UIM (FOMA card). When inserting currently used UIM (FOMA card) to FOMA terminal newly purchased, the current settings are effective.

Unlocking PIN/PIN2 code

FOMA terminal automatically locks PIN/PIN2 code, if wrong codes are entered 3 times consecutively. When PIN/PIN2 code is locked, unlock the code and set a new PIN/PIN2 code.

- Note that, if you forget the PUK or if PIN/PIN2 code is completely locked, contact sales outlets such as DoCoMo shop with your UIM (FOMA card) and an ID to identify the subscriber (ex. driver's license).

1 Enter the 8-digit PIN unlock code (PUK) and press ●, when "Enter PUK" is displayed.

2 Enter a new PIN (or PIN2) code and press ●.

- The entered numbers are masked with "✱".

3 Enter the same PIN (or PIN2) code as in Step 2 and press ●.

The PIN lock is released and a new PIN (or PIN2) code is set.

Information

- Locking PIN2 code does not affect making/receiving calls or sending/receiving mails, etc.
- PUK is specified in the FOMA contract document (duplicate copy for customers). Do not lose the FOMA contract document.
- If wrong PUK are entered 10 times consecutively, PIN/PIN2 code is completely locked. Note that, if PIN/PIN2 code is completely locked, you are required to contact sales outlets such as DoCoMo shop with your FOMA terminal, locked UIM (FOMA card) and an ID to identify the subscriber (ex. driver's license).

Various Lock functions

Use lock functions to prevent other people from browsing/using data in your FOMA terminal. The following lock functions are available.

Types of lock function	Description
All lock	Sets to prohibit unauthorized use. All functions except for turning the power on/off and making the emergency calls (110, 119 and 118), cannot be used.
Self mode	Disables making/receiving calls, sending/receiving mails, and using communication functions.
PIM lock	Disables displaying/editing personal information, such as Phonebook or Schedule.
Keypad dial lock	Disables dialing calls by pressing keys.
Side key operation set to Valid/Invalid	Sets to invalidate the side key operation when FOMA terminal is folded, to prevent inadvertent operations.
Close lock	Sets to invalidate key operation by locking FOMA terminal when closed.
Secret mode	Displays Phonebook and Received calls with Secret setting. The name registered in Phonebook is not displayed except under Secret mode, but only the phone number is displayed.

Information

- Emergency calls (110, 119 and 118) can be made even if lock functions are set.

All lock

Preventing unauthorized use

Default	OFF

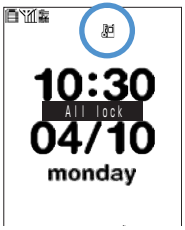
You can set FOMA terminal unable to be operated.

- Emergency calls (110, 119 and 118) and an operation to turn FOMA terminal on/off can be made. (Enter the emergency call number on Authentication screen and press .) Burglar alarm is also available to ring.

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 3 ▶ Press 5.

2 Press 1 "ON".

3 Enter the terminal security code and press ●.



All lock is set to ON, and "All lock" and are displayed on Stand-by display.

Operations under All lock

Restrictions are as follows.

- When setting a still image etc. as Stand-by, Stand-by display setting returns to default. By releasing All lock, preset Stand-by display returns.
- Incoming calls are rejected and Ring tone does not sound.
- i-mode mails/SMS/MessageR/F can be received but Mail/Message ring tone is not heard.
- Alarm is not activated under All lock.
- Notify icons are not displayed. By releasing All lock, receiving mails/calls/messages or Alarm notify icons, etc. are displayed.
- The phone numbers registered as Urgent contacts which are dialed on ringing Burglar alarm are acceptable even under All lock.
- Location provide is available even under All lock.

Setting Remote all lock <Remote all lock >

Default	OFF

All lock can be set when the terminal receives the specified number of calls from phone numbers or payphones, within a specified period (monitoring duration).

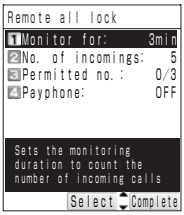
1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 3 ▶ Press 6.

See next page

2 Press (1) "ON".

- Press (2) "OFF" to release.

3 Enter the terminal security code and press ●.



- No further operation is needed when "OFF" has been selected in Step 2.

4 Set items.

Setting Monitoring duration

①Press (1) "Monitor for :".
②Enter duration and press ●.

- The duration can be set from 1 to 10 minutes.

Setting number of incomings

①Press (2) "No. of incomings :".
②Enter number and press ●.

- The number can be set from 3 to 10 times.

Entering permitted phone numbers

- Up to 3 entries can be registered.

①Press (3) "Permitted no. :".
②Select [Unregistered] and press ●.
③Enter a phone number and press ●.
④Press (i) [Complete].

Setting remote access from payphones

①Press (4) "Payphone :".
②Press (1) "ON".

- Press (2) "OFF" not to set.

5 Press (i) [Complete].

Activating All lock by remote access

1 Make calls to the FOMA terminal, from a specified phone number or a payphone.

2 Disconnect the call after confirming the phone ringing.

- Repeat Step 1 to 2 specified times within a specified time period.

3 Disconnect the call after confirming the answer message.

All lock is set.

Releasing All lock

1 Enter the terminal security code on Stand-by display and press ●.

Information

- FOMA terminal is powered off when failed to release All lock 5 consecutive times. Turn the power on and enter the proper terminal security code.
- All lock is not released by turning the power off.

Self mode

Preventing making/receiving calls

Default	OFF

Communication functions, such as making/receiving calls, sending/receiving mails, i-mode, or Infrared communication, can be set to be disabled.

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 3 DEF さ ▶ Press 4 GHI た.

2 Press 1 あ "ON".

- Press 2 ABC か "OFF" to release.

3 Press 1 あ "Yes".

Self mode is set to ON. 圏外 is displayed on Stand-by display.

- "圏外(Out of service area)" or is not displayed.
- Press 2 ABC か "No" to cancel.

Information

- Voice Mail service and Call forwarding service are available under Self mode.
- Self mode is released when making emergency calls (110, 119 and 118) under Self mode.

PIM lock

Preventing displaying Phonebook or Schedule

Default	OFF

You can set your personal information such as Phonebook or Schedule etc. to be undisplayable, for protecting privacy.

- "Phonebook" setting is unavailable when Reject calls from unregistered numbers is set to "ON" for calls from unregistered numbers.
- The following items can be set: The setting is available by each item or multiple items at once.

Item	Functions unable to use	Unshown notification*
Multimedia	Data box, Original data, Camera, Voice recorder	—

Item	Functions unable to use	Unshown notification*
Phonebook	Phonebook, Direct Call	All Direct Call notices are displayed as normal notices. (The notification of Direct Call received before setting PIM lock is not displayed.)
Redialed/Sent addresses	Redial and Sent addresses	—
Received calls/Received addresses	Received calls and Received addresses	Missed calls
Mail	Mail, Sent addresses, Received addresses	New message
i-mode	i-mode, Software update, Update pattern definitions	MessageR/F, Completed Software update (with details)
i-αppli	i-αppli	Failed i-αppli auto-start
GPS	GPS (Location provide is available.)	Failed notice/No answer
Profile	Profile	—
Calendar	Calendar, Schedule, and ToDo	Schedule alarm, ToDo alarm
Text memo/Dial memo	Text memo and Dial memo	—
Record message/Voice memo	Record message and Voice memo while calling/Stand-by	Record message
Alarm	Alarm	Alarm

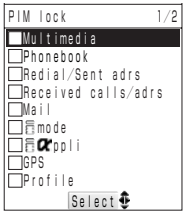
* Notices are displayed when each PIM lock is released.

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 3DEF ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 2ABC.

2 Press 1 "ON".

- Press 2ABC "OFF" to release.

3 Enter the terminal security code and press ●.



- If you select "OFF" in Step 2, no further operation is needed.

4 Select an item and press ●.

- Press ● to release.

5 Press i [Complete].

PIM lock is set to ON and is displayed on Stand-by display.

When PIM lock is ON

- When "Multimedia" is set and still image etc. is set as Stand-by, Stand-by display setting returns to default. By releasing Multimedia, preset Stand-by display returns.
- When "Phonebook" is set, names are not displayed in Redial, Received calls, Received/Sent addresses, etc.

- When "Multimedia" and "Phonebook" are set, images are not displayed in Redial, Received calls, and Received/Sent addresses.
- When "Multimedia" is set, file names and titles are displayed as "***".
- When "Redial/Sent addresses" is set, Redial/Sent addresses are deleted. When "Receiving calls/Received addresses" are set, Received calls/addresses are deleted. When "Mail" is set, Received/Sent addresses are deleted. The history is saved after setting PIM lock to ON.
- When "Calendar" is set, monthly schedule screen of Calendar can be displayed.

Information

- Release All lock and then release PIM lock, when both lock functions are set.

Keypad dial lock

Preventing Keypad dial

Default	OFF

You can set making calls with Keypad dialing to be disabled.

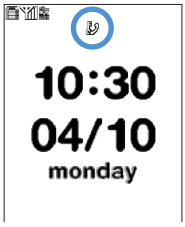
- Emergency calls (110, 119 and 118) can be made.

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 3 DEF さ ▶ Press 8 TUV や.**

2 **Press 1 @ あ "ON".**

- Press 2 ABC か "OFF" to release.

3 **Enter the terminal security code and press ●.**



Keypad dial is locked and is displayed on Stand-by display.

When Keypad dial lock is ON

- Calls cannot be made from following status.
  - Dial input
  - Received calls
  - Profile
  - Bar code reader
  - Screen memo
  - Notify icon
- Following functions are unavailable.
  - New entry/Edit/Delete to FOMA terminal phonebook/UIM (FOMA card) phonebook
  - Phone To/AV Phone To/Mail To function (Phone To from Phonebook can be used)
  - Copying Phonebook data using UIM (FOMA card)
  - Sending/receiving Phonebook data using Infrared communication
  - Using Network service with dial key entry
- Sending i-mode mail or SMS may be restricted.

See next page

Information

- When Keypad dial lock is on, data of Redial and Received calls before locked are deleted. However, Redial and Received calls after setting Keypad dial lock are saved.

Side key operation set to Valid/Invalid

Preventing inadvertent use of Side keys

Side key operation can be set to be invalid while FOMA terminal is folded, in order to prevent inadvertent use in your bag, etc.

1 Hold down ● for over a second on Stand-by display.

Side key operation is set to be invalid and is displayed on Stand-by display.

■ Enabling Side key operation

Hold down ● for over a second on Stand-by display.

Close lock

Invalidating Side key operation while FOMA terminal is folded

When Close lock is set to "ON", Close lock is set as FOMA terminal is folded.

Setting Close lock

Default	OFF

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 3 DEF ▶ Press 7 PQRS.

2 Press 1 "ON".

- Press 2 ABC "OFF" to release.

3 Enter the terminal security code and press ●.

Close lock is set to "ON", and is displayed on Stand-by display.

Activating Close lock

1 Fold FOMA terminal while displaying Stand-by display.

Close lock is set to ON, and "Close lock" is displayed on Stand-by display.

■ Releasing Close lock

Enter the terminal security code on Stand-by display and press ●.

When Close lock is set

- Keys except PWR are locked.
- Functions except the followings are not executed.
  - Receiving calls
  - Making emergency calls
  - Receiving mails
  - Periodic notify
  - Location provide
  - Burglar alarm
  - Alarms
  - Reserved update

- When still images are set as Stand-by, Stand-by display setting returns to default. By releasing Close lock, preset Stand-by display returns.

Information

- FOMA terminal is powered off when failed to release Close lock 5 consecutive times. Turn the power on again and enter the correct terminal security code.
- Close lock is not released by turning the power off.

View dialed/received

Setting display of Redial or Received calls

Default	ON

You can set whether or not to display Redial, Received calls, or Received/Sent addressed.

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 3 DEF さ ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 1 @ あ.**

2 **Press 1 @ あ "ON".**

- Press 2 ABC か "OFF" not to display.

3 **Enter the terminal security code and press ●.**

Secret mode

Displaying information set as Secret

Default	OFF

Phonebook, Schedule, and ToDo set as secret can only be displayed under Secret mode.

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 3 DEF さ ▶ Press 3 DEF さ.**

2 **Press 1 @ あ "ON".**

- Press 2 ABC か "OFF" to release. No further operation is needed.

3 **Enter the terminal security code and press ●.**

Secret mode is set to ON, and 🔑 is displayed on display.

Information

- Secret mode is released when powering FOMA terminal off.

Accept call for specified phonebook

Receiving only the calls from specified numbers

Sets to accept only from the specified phone numbers in FOMA terminal phonebook.

- This function is valid to calls from the other party notifying Caller ID. Setting "Caller ID request service" together with this function is recommended.
- It cannot be set together with Reject call for specified phonebook.

Specifying the phone number to be accepted to receive

1. **Select a phone number to set Accept call, on Phonebook detail screen.**
2. **Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 2ABC "Accept/Reject call".**
3. **Enter the terminal security code and press ●.**
4. **Press 1 "Accept call".**
   - Press 3DEF "Not set" to release.

Setting to receive only the calls from specified phone numbers

Default	OFF

1. **Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 3DEF ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 3DEF.**
2. **Enter the terminal security code and press ●.**
3. **Press 1 "Registered no."**
4. **Press 1 "ON Accept call".**
   - Press 3DEF "OFF" to release.

Information

- When Accept call is set, the phone number is displayed with in Phonebook detail screen.
- Calls from phone numbers, to which Accept call is not set, are saved as Rejected calls.
- Making calls to the phone number not set to Accept call is allowed.
- i-mode mails and SMS can be received regardless of the settings of this function.
- Call rejection setting for other phone numbers than "Registered no." can be set together.

Reject call for specified phonebook

Rejecting only the calls from specified numbers

Sets to reject only the calls from specified phone numbers in FOMA terminal phonebook.

- This function is valid to calls from callers notifying Caller ID. Setting "CallerID request service" together with this function is recommended.
- It cannot be set together with Accept call for specified phonebook.

Specifying the phone number to be rejected to receive

1. **Select a phone number to set Reject call, on Phonebook detail screen.**
2. **Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 2ABC "Accept/Reject call".**
3. **Enter the terminal security code and press ●.**

4 **Press 2ABC か "Reject call".**

- Press 3DEF さ "Not set" to release.

Setting to reject only the calls from specified phone numbers

Default	OFF

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 3DEF さ ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 3DEF さ.**

2 **Enter the terminal security code and press ●.**

3 **Press 1 あ "Registered no."**

4 **Press 2ABC か "ON Reject call".**

- Press 3DEF さ "OFF" to release.

Information

- When Reject call is set, the phone number is displayed with ✋ in Phonebook detail screen.
- Calls from the phone numbers set to Reject call are saved as Rejected calls.
- Calls to the phone numbers set to Reject call can be made.
- i-mode mails and SMS can be received regardless of the settings of this function.
- Call rejection setting for other phone numbers than "Registered no." can be set together.

Reject calls by reasons for User unset

Rejecting calls without Caller ID notification

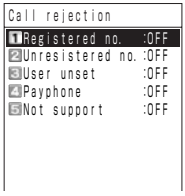
Default	User unset : OFF Payphone: OFF Not support: OFF

Sets Arrival act of receiving user unset calls by reasons for User unset.

- Setting "CallerID request service" together with this function is recommended.

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 3DEF さ ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 3DEF さ.**

2 **Enter the terminal security code and press ●.**



See next page

3 Press one of 3 DEF to 5 JKL.

User unset : When the caller selects to make calls without notifying Caller ID.

Payphone : When the call was made from a payphone.

Not support : When the call was made from a caller unable to send Caller ID; e.g. call received from overseas or from fixed-line phone via forwarding services. (Note that Caller ID may be sent for some telecommunications company.)

4 Press 1 @ あ "ON".

- Press 2 ABC か "OFF" not to set.

Information

- Calls from a caller with a set reason for Reject call are saved as Rejected calls.

Set mute seconds

Muting Ring tones of calls from unregistered phone number

Default	OFF

You can set the duration until ringing/vibrating etc. starts on Receiving calls from unregistered phone number or unset Caller ID.

- This function is effective to unwanted calls such as one-ring phone scam.
- This function is not available when "Unregistered no." in Call rejection is set to "ON".

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 4 GHI た ▶ Press 5 JKL な ▶ Press 1 @ あ.

2 Press 1 @ あ "ON".

- Press 2 ABC か "OFF" to release. No further operation is needed.

3 Enter the number and press ●.

- The number can be set from 1 to 99 seconds.

Setting not to display calls disconnected during mute seconds on Received calls

Default	ON

You can set the calls not to be displayed in Received calls when the caller disconnects the call during the set mute seconds. Notify icons are also not displayed.

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 4 GHI た ▶ Press 5 JKL な ▶ Press 2 ABC か.

2 Press 2 ABC か "OFF".

Call without sound (Mute calls) are not displayed in Received calls.

- Press 1 @ あ "ON" to display Calls without sound on Received calls.

Viewing Calls without sound

- Since Calls without sound are listed on Received calls when View calls without sound is set to "ON", FOMA terminal cannot display only Calls without sound.

1 Press i [Function] on Received call list screen ▶ Press 4 GHI た "View calls w/o snd".

Information

- Mute seconds setting is valid even under Manner mode.
- Under PIM lock (Phonebook), this function is valid even for the phone numbers registered in Phonebook.
- This function also works when a call is received from the caller with Secret setting, except under Secret mode.

Reject calls from unregistered numbers

Rejecting calls from unregistered numbers

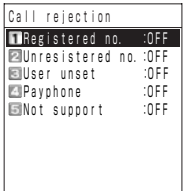
Default	OFF

You can set the terminal not to receive calls from phone numbers not registered in Phonebook.

- This function is valid to calls from callers notifying Caller ID. Combination of settings of "User unset", "Payphone" and "Not support" in Call rejection and "Caller ID Request Service" is recommended.
- This function cannot be set when "Set mute seconds" is set to "ON".

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 3DEF ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 3DEF.

2 Enter the terminal security code and press ●.



3 Press 2ABC "Unregistered no.".

4 Press 1 "ON".

- Press 2ABC "OFF" to release.

Information

- i-mode mails and SMS can be received regardless of the settings of this function.
- This function does not work when a call is received from the caller with Secret attribute setting, under Secret mode OFF.
- User unset calls are always rejected when Reject calls from unregistered numbers is set to "ON", regardless of the settings of "Use unset", "Payphone", and "Not support" in Reject call.

Other "Safety settings"

In addition to functions described in this chapter, you can use the following "Safety settings" with your FOMA terminal.

- For the setting to prevent spam mails, refer to "i-mode User's Manual".

Purpose	Functions/Services	Page
Rejecting "unwanted call" such as harassing phone calls or malicious cold-calls	Nuisance call barring service	P446
Rejecting calls without Caller ID notification	Caller ID request service	P447
Receiving only specified Mails	Receive Option	P284
Changing E-mail addresses	Change E-mail Address	Refer to "i-mode User's Manual".
Confirming E-mail addresses	Check address	
Restricting Mail size	Restrict mail size	
Receiving only mails sent from the specified domains	Receive mail from specified domains	
Receiving/rejecting only mails between i-mode terminals	Receive/Reject only i-mode mail	
Rejecting unsolicited Ad mails	Reject Unsolicited Ad mail	
Rejecting the 200th and later i-mode mails sent from an i-mode terminal in a day	Restrict the number of mails from mass i-mode mail senders	
Receiving/rejecting only mails sent from the specified E-mail address	Receiving/Rejecting mails from specified address	
Invalidating mail function temporarily	Suspend mail service	
Rejecting SMS	Reject all SMS/Reject SMS without Caller ID Reject International SMS Reject all SMS/Reject SMS without Caller ID	
Registering/checking the safety of users by using i-mode in the event of disaster	i-mode Disaster Message Board service	
Performing safe and reliable data communications by using the electronic authentication service "FirstPass" (FirstPass compatible sites only)	FirstPass	P197
Updating software of FOMA terminal when needed	Software update	P537
Protecting FOMA terminal from data having potential risks of system failure	Scanning function	P542

Camera

Before using Camera 160
Shooting still images . . . . . <Shoot still image> 166
Shooting movies . . . . . <Shoot movies> 171
Changing settings for shooting 173
Using Bar code reader . . . . . <Bar code reader> 181

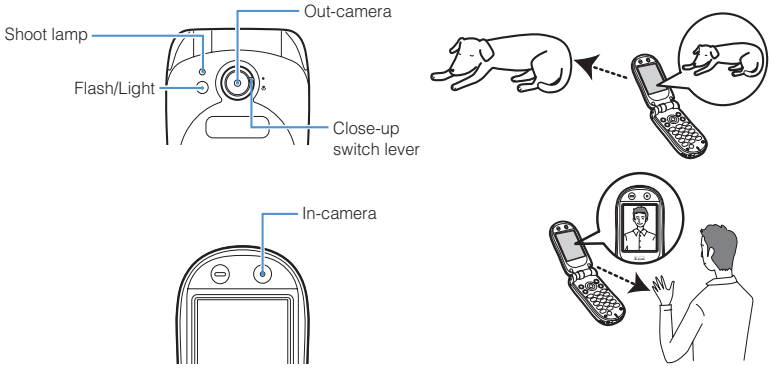
Before using Camera

You can shoot still images or movie images with Camera of FOMA terminal

Features of Camera of FOMA terminal

Containing 2 built-in cameras, Out-camera and In-camera, with FOMA terminal

Use Out-camera to shoot another person or scenery, and In-camera to shoot yourself.



Shooting still images or movies image

- You can display/play shot still images/movie images or play recorded sounds on FOMA terminal, can send to other FOMA terminals or mobile phones of other providers through i-mode mails or Infrared communication, and can send to PC by using FOMA USB connection cable (optional). →P253, 391, 528
- Shot still images or movie images can be set as images for Phonebook or Stand-by display etc. →P360, 369
- Location information positioned by FOMA terminals can be added to shot still images. →P180

Scanning bar code

- Bar code reader of Camera scans bar codes (JAN code, QR code).

Using camera

Adopting CMOS camera for Out-camera and In-camera

- In spite of the state-of-the-art technology in manufacturing cameras, there may be some pixels and lines always displayed lighter or darker. Also note that more noises such as white lines may be seen, especially when images have been shot at places in low light level.
- If you shoot or save images after placing FOMA terminals in a hot place for a long time, quality of images may be degraded.
- When the lens is exposed to direct sunlight for a long time, the internal color filter may become discolored and images may be correspondingly discolored as well.

Notes in shooting images

- Images shooting/shot with FOMA terminal camera may differ from actual subjects in color and brightness, depending on conditions. Note that some subjects may be distorted by shooting with wide lens.
- Also note that shooting in extremely dark places may cause blue or white dots on images.
- If FOMA terminal moved with jiggling hands while shooting, shot images may be blurred. Shoot with your hands gripping FOMA terminals tightly, or use Auto timer function of FOMA terminal placed on stable places. Images may easily be blurred, especially at places without enough light intensity. Also blurred images are caused by moving subjects.
- You cannot mute the shutter sound even under Manner mode, Drive mode, or connected to Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with a switch (optional). Also the volume of the shutter sound cannot be changed.
- Fingerprints or skin oils on camera cause images out of focus. Use a soft cloth to remove blots before shooting images.
- Be sure not to place fingers, hair or straps on the lens when shooting.
- FOMA terminal houses flash light*. Do not use flash in front of people's eyes. It may cause impaired eyesight.
  * Flash is equipped to aid shooting at dark places, but is not provided with light intensity as high as strobe light of general cameras.
- Do not point Flash/Light to people's eyes. Also, do not see the flashing light directly when the light is on. It may cause impaired eyesight.
- If a picture is taken under the fluorescent lighting condition, image flickers may be seen on the screen, not due to malfunction but fluorescent flicker.
- Do not cover Microphone with your hand or finger while shooting movies. Also note that the sound quality of microphone may be degraded according to the sound volume or surrounding environment of shooting.

Copyrights and portrait rights

The data shot/recorded by FOMA terminal may not be reproduced/changed/edited without any permission of right holders. Prohibited with the copyright low besides personal use. Also note that some cases of personal use may be prohibited.
Using or changing personal portrait or name without any permission may invade portrait rights.

Please be considerate of the privacy of other individuals when taking and sending images with camera-equipped mobile phones.

Shooting still images

Still image up to the VGA size can be shot with FOMA terminal built-in camera.
Shot still images are saved in JPEG format.
Following operations are available in shooting still images.

- Setting of image size/quality →P175
- Continuous mode →P168
- Shooting with 5 settings of shooting environment and subject (Scene select) →P176
- Shooting with frame (Shoot with frame) →P170
- Close-up shooting →P177
- Shooting with Special effect added→P178
- Shooting with Auto timer →P177
- Shooting with date stamp inserted →P180
- Inserting Location information →P180
- Adjusting White balance →P178
- Changing Shutter sound →P180
- Auto save of shot image →P179
- Reducing flicker of screen →P181
- Shooting with using Light/Flash →P174
- Zoom →P173
- Adjusting Brightness →P174

Image size/quality of still image (estimates)

Still image size/quality available in SA800i are as follows.

Image size (horizontal × vertical)	Camera	Image quality		
		Normal	Fine	Super fine
Sub-QCIF (128×96)	In-camera	Approx. 9 KB	Approx. 10 KB	Approx. 20 KB
	Out-camera			
QCIF (176×144)	In-camera	Approx. 9 KB	Approx. 10 KB	Approx. 20 KB
	Out-camera			
Stand-by display (240×320)	In-camera	Approx. 20 KB	Approx. 30 KB	Approx. 50 KB
	Out-camera			
CIF(288×352)	In-camera	Approx. 20 KB	Approx. 30 KB	Approx. 50 KB
CIF(352×288)	Out-camera			
VGA (480×640)	Out-camera	Approx. 50 KB	Approx. 100 KB	Approx. 150 KB

Savable number of still image (estimates)

Number of still images that can be saved in SA800i is as follows.

- Up to 1,024 still images can be saved in SA800i. However, the maximum number may vary according to settings in image size/quality, data quantity saved in Data box, etc.
- Savable image numbers are rough estimates.

Image size (horizontal × vertical)	Image quality		
	Normal	Fine	Super fine
Sub-QCIF (128×96)	Approx. 1,024 sheets	Approx. 1,024 sheets	Approx. 1,024 sheets
QCIF (176×144)	Approx. 1,024 sheets	Approx. 1,024 sheets	Approx. 1,024 sheets
Stand-by display (240×320)	Approx. 1,024 sheets	Approx. 850 sheets	Approx. 512 sheets
CIF (288×352) or CIF(352×288)	Approx. 1,024 sheets	Approx. 850 sheets	Approx. 512 sheets
VGA (480×640)	Approx. 510 sheets	Approx. 250 sheets	Approx. 170 sheets

Information

- Close-up shooting allows you to shoot images, focusing on subjects in distance of 7 cm.
- In this manual, numbers of (horizontal × vertical) for image size are omitted.

Shooting movies

You can shoot movies with Camera of FOMA terminal. The shot movie and recorded sound are saved in FOMA terminal (images/sound alone can be recorded as well).
Recorded movies are saved in MP4 format.
Following operations are available in shooting movies.

- Setting of image size/quality →P175
- Close-up shooting →P177
- Shooting with Special effect added→P178
- Setting of microphone sensitivity →P171
- Changing shooting start/end tone →P181
- Shooting with using Light →P174
- Zoom →P173
- Shooting with File size restriction →P176
- Shooting only video or recording only sound →P171
- Shooting with Auto timer →P177
- Adjusting White balance →P178
- Auto save of shot image →P179
- Reducing flicker of screen →P181
- Adjusting Brightness →P174

Image size/shooting mode in shooting movie

The details of movie images recordable with SA800i are as follows.

Image size (horizontal × vertical)	Shooting mode	Video bit rate	Sound bit rate	Frame rate (per second)
Sub-QCIF (128×96)	Normal	32 Kbps	12.2 Kbps	7.5 frames
	Prefer motion spd	128 Kbps		15 frames
	Prefer img quality	192 Kbps		10 frames
QCIF (176×144)	Normal	32 Kbps	12.2 Kbps	7.5 frames
	Prefer motion spd	128 Kbps		15 frames
	Prefer img quality	192 Kbps		10 frames

Duration of movies savable (estimates)

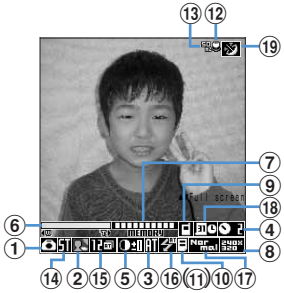
Duration of movies that can be saved in SA800i is as follows.

- Maximum duration of movie that can be saved in SA800i is approximately 24 minutes. However, the duration may differ according to Shooting mode, Shooting type, the setting of Restrict file size or the size of rest in Data box.
- The savable duration of movie is just a rough standard.

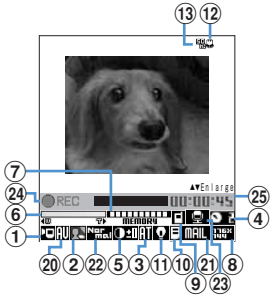
Image size (horizontal × vertical)	Shooting mode	Shooting type	Restrict file size		
			i-mode mail attachment (sec)	Large volume message attachment (sec)	Unrestricted (min)
Sub-QCIF (128×96)	Normal	Video and Sound	Approx. 50	Approx. 80	Approx. 24
		Video only	Approx. 60	Approx. 90	Approx. 33
	Prefer motion spd	Video and Sound	Approx. 20	Approx. 30	Approx. 7
		Video only	Approx. 20	Approx. 30	Approx. 8
	Prefer img quality	Video and Sound	Approx. 10	Approx. 20	Approx. 6
		Video only	Approx. 10	Approx. 30	Approx. 6
QCIF (176×144)	Normal	Video and Sound	Approx. 50	Approx. 80	Approx. 24
		Video only	Approx. 60	Approx. 90	Approx. 33
		Sound only	Approx. 180	Approx. 310	Approx. 85
	Prefer motion spd	Video and Sound	Approx. 20	Approx. 30	Approx. 7
		Video only	Approx. 20	Approx. 30	Approx. 8
	Prefer img quality	Video and Sound	Approx. 10	Approx. 20	Approx. 6
		Video only	Approx. 10	Approx. 30	Approx. 6

Reading shooting screen

Start Still camera to display Still image shooting screen. Start movie camera to display Movie shooting screen.



Still image shooting



Movie shooting

Function	Icon and name of the item	Description
Common in Still image/Movie		
① Camera-mode	Still image shooting	Shoots still images.
	Movie shooting	Shoots movies.
② Special effect	Sepia	Makes an image tanned-yellowish like an old picture.
	Monochrome	Makes an image black and white.
	4 colors (Red etc.)	Adds colors on images (Red/Green/Blue/Purple). For example, selecting "Red" makes the image reddish.
③ White balance	Auto	Adjusts coloring automatically.
	Fine weather	Appropriate for shooting under the sunshine.
	Cloudy weather	Appropriate for shooting under the cloudy lighting.
	Lamp light	Appropriate for shooting under the lamp light.
	Fluor (neut. white)	Appropriate for shooting under fluorescent light (neut. white).
	Fluor (daylight)	Appropriate for shooting under fluorescent light (daylight).
④ Auto timer	2 sec, 5 sec 10 sec	Starts shooting automatically after a lapse of the preset time.
⑤ Brightness	to to	Sets brightness.
⑥ Zoom		Enlarges (zooms) the subject.
⑦ Memory bar	MEMORY	Indicates memory space (remaining space) of FOMA terminal.
⑧Select size	128×96, 176×144, 240×320, 352×288, 288×352, 480×640	The image size to be shot can be selected. When shooting movies, only Sub-QCIF and QCIF can be set.
⑨ Auto save	AUTO Auto save ON	Shot still images are saved automatically after shooting (image/sound).
	Auto save OFF	Saves shot still images or movies (sounds) after checking.
⑩ Restrict file	Restricted	Images cannot be sent/transferred from receiver's FOMA terminal.
	Unrestricted	Images can be sent/transferred from receiver's FOMA terminal.
⑪ Light	Light ON	Light is on.
	Unable to use	Light is not available due to low temperature.
⑫ Close-up	Close-up mode	Shoots a subject close in distance.

Function	Icon and name of the item	Description
Common in Still image/Movie		
⑬ Reduce flicker	No display: auto	Reduces flicker of screen automatically.
	50Hz	Reduces flicker of 50Hz fluorescent lamp.
	60Hz	Reduces flicker of 60Hz fluorescent lamp.
Still image		
⑭ Scene select	Standard	Shoots photos normally.
	Portrait	Emphasizes the skin color, focusing on the person with background unfocused.
	Landscape	Emphasizes outlines of subjects.
	Night scene	Shoots subjects adjusting with night lighting or illumination.
	Backlit	Makes the subject clean, when shooting images against light.
⑮ Continuous mode	12-piece auto 24-piece auto	Press ● once to shoot continuous images. The number of images to be shot varies due to image size.
	12-piece manual 24-piece manual	Press ● each time to shoot continuously. The number of images to be shot varies due to image size.
⑯ Flash	Flash AUTO	Flash is to be automatically on when shooting the subject and surroundings in the dark.
	Flash ON	Flash works always when shooting.
⑰ Image quality	Normal	Shoots normal images.
	Fine	Shoots high quality images.
	Super fine	Shoots the highest quality images.
⑱ Date stamp	Time and date	Saves shot still images with date and time inserted.
	Date	Saves shot still images with date inserted.
	Time	Saves shot still images with time inserted.
⑲ Add location info	Add location info	Saves still images with location information inserted.
Movie		
⑳ Shooting type	Video and sound	Shoots movies and sounds.
	Video only	Shoots only movies.
	Sound only	Records only sounds.
㉑ Restrict file size	i-mode mail attachment	Restricts the recordable file size up to approx. 290 Kbytes.
	Attach large volume message	Restricts the recordable file size up to approx. 490 Kbytes.
	Unrestricted	Does not restrict file size. (Max. approx. 8 Mbytes)
㉒ Shooting mode	Standard	Records in standard image quality and motion speed.
	Prefer motion speed	Sets priority to motion speed over image quality.
	Prefer image quality	Sets priority to image quality over motion speed quality.
㉓ Mic sensitivity	For conference	Collects sound in wide angle and range.
	For dictation	Collects sound in small range.
㉔ Shooting/recording	● REC	Shooting movies or recording sounds.
㉕ Left recordable duration	00:00:00	Displays video/sound recordable time.

Shooting still images

You can shoot still images with FOMA terminal camera.

- You cannot mute the shutter sound even under Manner mode, Public mode (Drive mode), or connected to Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with a switch (optional). Also the volume of the shutter sound cannot be changed.

1 Hold down (i) (📷) for over a second on Stand-by display.

Still image shooting screen

Still image shooting screen is displayed and Shoot lamp blinks in green.

- Press (✉) [Cam Sw] to switch to In-camera.
- You can change settings for shooting. →P173

■ Displaying in Full-screen

Press (•).

Icons and Soft keys on the screen are not displayed temporarily.

- Full-screen is available when shooting size is CIF (In-camera), Stand-by display, or VGA.
- Press it one more time to display the icons etc. on the screen.
- With the same operation from Still image confirmation screen, full-screen display becomes available.

■ Displaying in Large view

Press (•).

- Also press (i) [Function] ▶ Select "Large view" or "Normal view", and press (●) to display in Large/Normal view.
- Large view can be displayed when the image size is Sub-QCIF or QCIF.
- Press one more time to return to Normal view.
- With the same operation from Still image confirmation screen, Large/Normal view becomes available.

2 Direct the lens of the camera to the subject and press (●).

Still image confirmation screen

After a shutter sound, Shoot lamp lights up in red. Still image shooting screen is displayed.

- The image is saved if "Auto save ON" has been set, then the screen returns to Still image shooting screen.

3 Confirm the image.

■ Reshooting an image

Press (CLR).

Sending mails with images attached

Press ✉ [CompMsg].

Image is saved in Data box and Compose message screen with the image attached is displayed.

- Images bigger than Stand-by display image size can be attached by being converted to Stand-by display image size.
- Following operations : →P242 "Composing and sending i-mode mail" Step 2 to 6 Attaching still image with location information added→P253
- When "Auto save ON" has been set, saved images can be attached to mails from Data box. →P356

Pasting Date stamp

Press i [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Date stamp".

- Still images with the size of VGA cannot be pasted.
- Following operations: →P180 "Pasting Date stamp" Step ②

Inserting location information

Press i [Function] ▶ Press 2 "Add location info".

- Also press ※ to insert location information.
- Following operations: →P343 "Adding location information" Step 4

Setting image as Stand-by display etc.

Press i [Function] ▶ Press 3 "Image".

The image is saved in Data box.

- Following operations : →P360 "Setting images as Stand-by display etc." Step 2 to 4

Editing title

①Press i [Function] ▶ Press 5 "Edit title".

②Enter the title and press ●.

- Up to 18 two-byte (Full Mark)/36 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

Displaying reversed image

Press i [Function] ▶ Press 6 "Mirror image view".

- Still images with the size of VGA cannot be displayed/saved as mirror image.
- Press i [Function] ▶ Press 6 "Normal image view" to return to normal screen from reversed image.
- Press i [Function] ▶ Press 7 "Save mirror image" to save reversed image. Frame-pasted images cannot be saved as mirror image.

4 Press ●.

The image is saved.

- The image is saved in "Data box" → "My picture" → "Camera" folder. Saving destination can be changed. →P179

Information

- Alternatively, press ● ▶ Press Camera ▶ Press 1, to display Still image shooting screen.
- Shutter sound can be selected from 3 types, but Melody etc. cannot be set as shutter sound. →P180
- Saving images may take time according to the image size and quality.
- If a call is received or Alarm (including also Schedule alarm and ToDo alarm)/GPS positioning is activated, on Still image shooting screen or Still image confirmation screen, shooting is stopped and the data up to the point is saved. The previous screen returns after a call is disconnected, Alarm is stopped, or GPS positioning is ended. If Snooze sound is set in Alarm, the previous screen returns after releasing snooze mode.
- Shooting keeps activating when receiving mails while shooting.
- Camera is terminated automatically if no operation is made for more than approximately 2 minutes on Still image shooting screen.

Shooting images continuously <Continuous mode>

Default	OFF

Still images can be shot continuously. Continuous mode has two types: "Auto" to shoot the preset number of images continuously at regular intervals automatically, and "Manual" to shoot an image one by one manually.

- The number of images for continuous shooting varies depending on the image size.
- Images with the size of VGA cannot be shot continuously.

1 Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 5 JKL "Continuous mode", on Still image shooting screen.

2 Select an item and press ●.

■ For image size of Sub-QCIF or QCIF

24-pc. auto (fast) : 24 still images are shot continuously at approximately 0.2 second intervals.

24-pc. auto (normal) : 24 still images are shot continuously at approximately 0.4 second intervals.

24-pc. manual : Shoots images one by one by pressing ● each time, and still images are displayed as Index after shooting 24 images.

OFF : Does not shoot images continuously. No further operation is needed.

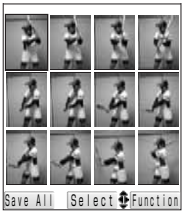
■ For image size of Stand-by display or CIF

12-pc. auto : 12 still images are shot continuously at approximately 0.4 second intervals.

12-pc. manual : Shoots images one by one by pressing ● each time, and still images are displayed as Index after shooting 12 images.

OFF : Does not shoot images continuously. No further operation is needed.

3 Press ●.



■ Continuous shooting (auto)

Continuous shooting starts. After shooting, selected number of images are displayed in Index.

- Press ✉ [Stop] to cancel the continuous shooting on the halfway. Images shot before the cancellation are displayed in Index.
- All of the shot images are saved after shooting is finished if "Auto save ON" has been set, then the screen returns to Still image shooting screen.

Index screen

■ Continuous shooting (manual)

Selected number of images can be shot.

- Press ✉ [Stop] to cancel the continuous shooting on the halfway. Images shot before the cancellation are displayed in Index.
- All of the shot images are saved after shooting is finished if "Auto save ON" has been set, then the screen returns to Still image shooting screen.

4 Select a still image and press ●.

■ Saving all images at once

Press ✉ [Save All].

All images are saved and Still image shooting screen returns.

Saving Index image

- Index image can be saved only when the maximum number of images for continuous shooting has been shot.

①Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Save index".
②Press 1 "Yes".

Index image is saved, and Index screen returns.

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.
- Index image sizes are as follows.

- Sub-QCIF	:256× 288	- QCIF	: 352× 432
- Stand-by display	:240× 240		
- CIF (Out-camera)	:352× 216	- CIF (In-camera)	: 288× 264

5 Confirm images and press ●.

Selected images are saved and Index screen returns.
Save all of the necessary images.

- Press (i) [Function] to add location information or to edit titles etc. →P167

Sending mails with images attached

①Press (✉) [CompMsg].
②Press 1 "Save all" or 2 "Save selected only".

Images are saved in Data box and Compose message screen with the image attached is displayed.

- Press 3 "Cancel" to cancel.
- Images bigger than Stand-by display image size can be attached by being converted to Stand-by display image size.
- Following operations : →P242 "Composing and sending i-mode mail" Step 2 to 6
Attaching still image with location information added →P253

Setting images as Stand-by display etc.

①Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 2 "Image".
②Press 1 "Save all" or 2 "Save selected only".

Images are saved in Data box.

- Press 3 "Cancel" to cancel.
- Following operations : →P360 "Setting images as Stand-by display etc." Step 2 to 4

Information

- Shutter sound is set to "Click" automatically in Continuous shooting regardless of the setting.
- Only Light ON/OFF can be set in continuous shooting.
- "Night scene" cannot be selected from Scene select in continuous shooting. "Night scene" setting is replaced by "Standard".
- After selecting and saving still images from Index screen, already saved images cannot be saved even by executing "Save all".
- Shooting is suspended as FOMA terminal is folded while continuous shooting. Images shot before folded are displayed in Index when FOMA terminal is opened. Images are saved automatically when "Auto save ON" is set.
- If there is an incoming call while continuous shooting, shooting is terminated and Receiving screen is displayed. Images shot before the incoming call are saved and Index screen is displayed after the call is disconnected.
- Continuous shooting keeps activated when receiving mails while shooting.

Shooting still images with frame <Shoot with frame>

Default	No frame

You can shoot images with frames preinstalled in FOMA terminal or downloaded.

- Images with the size of VGA cannot be shot with frames.
- You cannot add the frames on the different size of image.
- The following frames are preinstalled in FOMA terminal.

1 Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 6MNO "Shoot with frame", on Still image shooting screen.

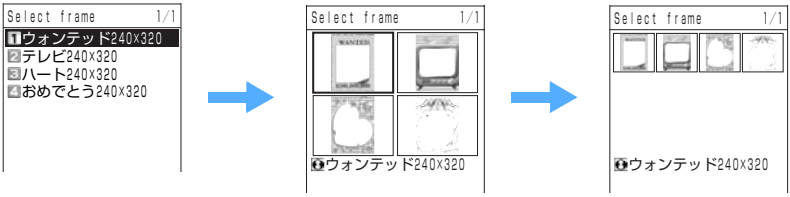
2 Select a frame and press ●.

The frame is displayed.

- Press ◁▷ to display previous and next frames.
- Press ✉ [Release] to release. Still image shooting screen returns.

■ Displaying frames in Index for selection

Press (i) [4-for-1] to display 4 images each in a screen. Press (i) each time to switch between Index/List.



3 Press ●.

The frame is set.

- Following operations : →P166 "Shooting still images" Step 2 to 4

Information

- Frames alone cannot be sent via Infrared communication or as attachments to mails.
- Frames can be downloaded from the site " どこでも SANYO (Dokodemo SANYO)" →P196

Shooting movies

FOMA terminal camera can shoot movies with sounds.

- You cannot mute the start/end tone for shooting movies with sounds, even under Manner mode, Public mode (Drive mode), or connected to Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with a switch (optional). The volume of shooting start/end tone cannot be changed.

1 Hold down ( ) for over a second on Stand-by display.

2 Press [Function] ▶ Press "Camera-mode" ▶ Press "Shoot movie".

Movie shooting screen

Movie shooting screen is displayed and Shoot lamp blinks in green.

- Press [Cam Sw] to switch to In-camera.
- You can change settings for shooting. →P173

Displaying in Large view

Press .

- Also press [Function] ▶ Select "Large view" or "Normal view", and press to display in Large/Normal view.
- Press one more time to return to Normal view.
- By the same operation from Movie image confirmation screen, Large/Normal view becomes available.

Shooting only video or recording only sounds

①Press [Function] ▶ Press "Shooting type".
②Press "Video only" or "Sound only".

Setting Microphone sensitivity

①Press [Function] ▶ Press ▶ Press "Mic sensitivity".
②Press "For conference" or "For dictation".

For conference:Collects sound in wide angle and range.
For dictation :Collects sound in small range.

3 Direct the lens of the camera to the subject and press .

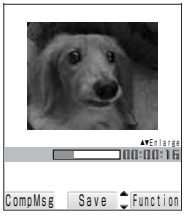
Sound recording start tone rings and "● REC" is displayed to start recording. Shoot lamp lights up in red while recording.

Pausing shooting

Press [Pause].

- Press it once again to restart shooting.

4 Press .



Movie confirmation screen

Shooting stops.

- Movies are saved when "Auto save ON" or Restrict file size is set to "Unrestricted", and Movie confirmation screen returns.

Reshooting instead of saving

Press .

See next page

Sending a movie by attaching to mail

Press ✉ [CompMsg].

The image is saved in Data box and Compose message screen with the image attached is displayed.

- Following operations: →P242 "Composing and sending i-mode mail" Step 2 to 6
- File size of the attachment to i-mode mail is restricted. Setting "Restrict file size" is recommended when attaching movies to mails.
- When "Auto save ON" has been set or Restrict file size has been set to "Unrestricted", saved images can be attached to mails from Data box. →P366

Confirming movies

Press i [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Play".

Replays the recorded movie.

- Press ◁ to rewind, and press ▷ to fast-forward. Press ↕ to adjust the volume.
- Press ● or wait till movie playing is completed, and Movie confirmation screen returns.

Setting a movie as Stand-by display or Ring tone

Press i [Function] ▶ Press 2 "i-motion setting".

The movie is saved in Data box.

- Following operations: →P369 "Setting movie/i-motion as Phone receive call etc." Step 3

Editing title

①Press i [Function] ▶ Press 4 "Edit title".

②Enter the title and press ●.

- Up to 18 two-byte (Full Mark)/36 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

5 Press ●.

The movie is saved.

- The movie is saved in "Data box" → "i-motion" → "Camera" folder. Saving destination can be changed. →P179

Shooting still images while shooting movies

- When Shooting type is "Video and sound" or "Video only", you can shoot still images only when "Restrict file size" is set to "Unrestricted". →P171, 176
- When Shooting type is "Video and sound" or "Video only", 9 still images can be shot during movie shooting, and when "Sound only", 1 image before recording.
- The shutter sound is set to "Click" automatically in Continuous shooting regardless of the setting.
- When setting Shooting type to "Video and sound", the shutter sound for shooting still image is recorded in the movie currently recorded.

1 Press 📷 while shooting a movie (or before starting sound recording).

- Image size is the same as movie size being set.
- Still images can be shot during pause in recording.

Information

- Also press ● ▶ Press Camera ▶ Press 2 to display Movie shooting screen.
- Movie shooting is suspended as FOMA terminal is folded while shooting. Movie confirmation screen is displayed when FOMA terminal is opened. Movies are saved automatically when "Auto save ON" or "Unrestricted" is set in File size restriction.
- End tone plays when you stop movie playing or sound recording.
- Operation sound may be recorded if you operate Keypad while shooting movies.
- If a call is received or Alarm (including also Schedule alarm and ToDo alarm)/GPS positioning is activated, on Movie shooting screen or Movie confirmation screen, shooting is stopped and the data up to the point is saved. The previous screen returns after the call is disconnected, Alarm is stopped, or GPS positioning is ended. If Snooze sound is set in Alarm, the previous screen returns after releasing snooze mode.
- Shooting keeps activating when receiving mails while shooting.
- Shoot movie and Voice recorder are disabled during a call.
- Camera is terminated automatically when no operation is done for more than approximately 2 minutes on Movie shooting screen.

Changing settings for shooting

You can set FOMA terminal camera settings to fit into the shooting situation. You can change the saving destination or record images/movies with Auto timer.

- Start operation from Still image shooting screen or Movie shooting screen.
- Refer to "Shooting still images" to display Still image shooting screen. →P166
- Refer to "Shooting movies" to display Movie shooting screen. →P171
- Some items cannot be changed depending on shooting types, or when Camera is activated from Phonebook registration screen or from i-αppli.
- The following settings are saved after terminating Camera. By Reset settings or Delete all data, settings returns to default.
  - Select size
  - Image quality
  - Shooting mode
  - Date stamp*
  - Shutter sound
  - Start/End tone
  - Auto save ON/OFF
  - Save to:
  - Restrict file size
  - Mic sensitivity
  - Reduce flicker

* The color of Date stamp is not saved.

Using Zoom

Default	Wide

- Images with the size of VGA cannot be zoomed.

1 Press ◉ on Still image/Movie shooting screen.

Zoom bar indicated as W T slides right and left, and the view are enlarged (reduced).

- The screen can be zoomed up even while shooting movies or pausing on movie shooting.

• Zoom magnification is as follows.

Image size (horizontal × vertical)	Camera	Number of zoom scales
Still image		
Sub-QCIF (128×96)	In-camera	Approx. up to 2.3 times (6 levels)
	Out-camera	Approx. up to 3.8 times (12 levels)
QCIF (176×144)	In-camera	Approx. up to 1.6 times (4 levels)
	Out-camera	Approx. up to 2.7 times (8 levels)
Stand-by display (240×320)	In-camera	—
	Out-camera	Approx. up to 2.0 times (5 levels)
CIF(288×352)	In-camera	—
CIF(352×288)	Out-camera	Approx. up to 1.3 times (2 levels)
Movie		
Sub-QCIF (128×96)	In-camera	Approx. up to 2.3 times (6 levels)
	Out-camera	Approx. up to 3.8 times (12 levels)
QCIF (176×144)	In-camera	Approx. up to 1.6 times (4 levels)
	Out-camera	Approx. up to 2.7 times (8 levels)

Setting Brightness

Default	±0

Sets Brightness of the movie.

1 Press ▲ or ▼ on Still image/Movie shooting screen.

- Brightness of the screen can be set within the 11 levels of − 5 to + 5.
- The screen varies from [-5] to [±0], and to [+5].

Turning Light (Flash) on

Default	Still image	: Flash AUTO
	Movie	: OFF

Images/Movies can be shot with the light on at dark places. Flash is available when shooting still images.

- Flash is on when Light setting is "ON" in still image shooting.
- Flash cannot be used in Movie shooting.
- Flash cannot be used for continuous shooting or under "Night scene" setting from Scene select. (Setting for "Light/Flash" should be "Light".)
- When the temperature is extremely low (under −10 ℃), Light/Flash cannot be used.

Setting Light/Flash on (Shooting still images)

1 Press i [Function] ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 3 DEF さ "Light/Flash", on Still image shooting screen.

2 Press one of 1 @ あ to 4 GHI た.

Flash AUTO : Flash automatically lights on when shooting the subject and surroundings in the dark.
Flash ON : Flash lights always when shooting.
Light ON : Light/Flash is on.
OFF : Light/Flash is off.

■ Switching Light/Flash in one touch

Press (#) on Still image shooting screen.

- Press the key each time to switch icons.

Turn the Light on (Shooting movies)

1 Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press (○) ▶ Press (○) ▶ Press (1) "Light", on Movie shooting screen.

2 Press (1) "ON".

- Press (2) "OFF" not to light on.

■ Switching Light in one touch

Press (#) on Movie shooting screen.

- Press the key each time to switch icons.

Information

- Use Light to add the light level when it is dim. Light is not for shooting images brighter in the dark.

Selecting image size/quality

Default	Still image	Select size: Stand-by Image quality: Normal
	Movie	Select size: QCIF Shooting mode: Normal

Selecting the image size to shoot

1 Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press (2) "Select size", on Still image /Movie shooting screen.

2 Select the image size and press (●).

■ Switching the image size in one touch

Press (1) on Still image/Movie shooting screen.

- Press the key each time to switch icons.

Selecting the image quality of the still image to shoot

1 Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press (3) "Image quality", on Still image shooting screen.

2 Press one of (1) to (3) .

Normal : Images are shot in Normal quality.
Fine : Images are shot in Fine quality.
Super fine : Images are shot in the highest quality.

■ Switching the image quality in one touch

Press (2) on Still image shooting screen.

- Press the key each time to switch icons.

Selecting image quality of movies to shoot

1 Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 4GHI "Shooting mode", on Movie shooting screen.

2 Press one of 1 to 3DEF.

Normal : Sets as the standard quality in both image/movement of the image.
Prefer motion spd : Sets priority to the motion smoothness over the image quality.
Prefer img quality : Sets priority to the image quality over the motion smoothness.

■ Switching shooting mode in one touch

Press 3DEF on Moving shooting screen.

- Press the key each time to switch icons.

Restricting file size <Restrict file size>

Default	Attach i-mode msg

Setting "Restrict file size" is recommended when attaching movies to mails.

1 Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 3DEF "Restrict file size", on Movie shooting screen.

2 Press one of 1 to 3DEF.

Attach i-mode msg : Restricts duration of movies to make the file size approximately 290 KB.
Atch large vol.msg : Restricts duration of movies to make the file size approximately 490 KB.
Unrestricted : Movies can be shot up to approximately 8 MB. Movie file size that can be saved varies depending on the remaining space of FOMA terminal.

■ Switching File size restriction in one touch

Press 2ABC on Moving shooting screen.

- Press each time to switch icons.

Information

- "Unrestricted" cannot be set when remaining space in FOMA terminal is less than approximately 390 KB.
- Movie (Sound) is saved automatically after ending shooting (recording), by setting "Unrestricted". The setting of "Auto save ON/OFF" cannot be changed.

Selecting the scene to shoot <Scene select>

Default	Standard

You can select camera settings to fit into the shooting situation, for such shooting as focusing on the person, night scene etc.

- "Night scene" cannot be selected when Continuous mode (auto) is set. When switching to Continuous mode (auto) in "Night scene" setting, the setting is changed into "Standard".
- Flash cannot be used with "Night scene" setting.

1 Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 4GHI "Scene select", on Still image shooting screen.

2 Press 1 to 5.

Standard : Shoots images with the standard setting.
Portrait : Emphasizes the skin color and focuses on the person with background unfocused.
Landscape : Emphasizing outlines of subjects.
Night scene : Shoots subjects adjusting with the night scene.
Backlit : Makes the subject clear, when shooting images against light.

Switching Scene select in one touch

Press 3 on Still image shooting screen.

- Press the key each time to switch icons.

Information

- White balance is set to "Auto" with "Night scene" setting.

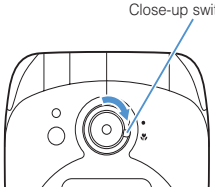
Shooting a subject close in distance

Default	Standard mode

Close-up shooting allows you to shoot images, focusing on subjects in distance of approximately 7 cm.

- Close-up is only available when shooting by Out-camera.

1 Move the Close-up switch lever to "".



- Move the Close-up switch lever to "•", when shooting in Standard mode.

Using Auto timer

Default	OFF

Shooting images/movies starts automatically when the preset time in Auto timer is passed. This function prevents you from jiggling hands by key operation since no key operation is needed.

1 Press [Function] ▶ Press ▶ Press 1 "Auto timer", on Still image shooting screen.

- In movie shooting, press [Function] ▶ Press 7 "Auto timer".

2 Press one of 1 to 3.

5 (in the case of 5 seconds) is displayed.

- Press 4 "OFF" not to use Auto timer. No further operation is needed.

3 Set the position and press .

Auto timer starts. The number (remaining time) shown in 5 decreases, and shooting starts when the preset time is passed.

- Shoot lamp blinks in green at 1 second intervals. Shoot lamp changes into red and flashes faster, 3 seconds before shooting. Also the timing of the shutter is informed with 3 beeps, a second each, 3 seconds before the shutter.

See next page

■ Setting Auto timer in one touch

Press 5 JKL on Still image/Movie shooting screen.

- Press the key each time to switch icons.

Information

- Press [Cancel] or CLR to reset the count, while Auto timer is active.
- The countdown is terminated with incoming calls/alarms (including Schedule alarm and ToDo alarm)/positioning by GPS. The timer is reset after a call is disconnected/alarm is stopped/GPS positioning is ended.
- Auto timer is not disturbed by receiving messages.

Setting effects in shooting images/movies <Special effect>

Default: No effect

Effects, such as adding colors, can be added to images.

1 Press [Function] ▶ Press 7 PQRS "Special effect", on Still image shooting screen.

- In movie shooting, press [Function] ▶ Press 6 MNO "Special effect".

2 Press one of 1 to 6 MNO.

Preview is displayed.

- Press ◀▶ on Preview screen, to switch Special effect.
- Press [Release] to release. No further operation is needed.

Sepia : Makes an image tanned-yellowish like an old picture.
Monochrome : Makes an image black and white.
Red : Makes an image red-tinged.
Green : Makes an image green-tinged.
Blue : Makes an image blue-tinged.
Purple : Makes an image purple-tinged.

3 Press ●.

The selected special effect is set.

■ Setting special effects easily

①Press 4 GHI on Still image/Movie shooting screen.
②Press ◀▶ to select the special effect, and press ●.

- Press [Release] to release.

Adjusting white balance

Default: Auto

Color difference may occur in images, depending on the lighting conditions and lighting types. You can edit images by adjusting color tones.

1 Press [Function] ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 4 GHI "White balance", on Still image shooting screen.

- Press [Function] ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 2 ABC "White balance", on Movie shooting screen.

2 Press one of 1 to 6.

Auto : Adjusts coloring automatically.
Fine weather : Sets images to be adapted to fine weather lighting.
Cloudy weather : Sets images to be adapted to cloudy weather lighting.
Lamp light : Sets images to be adapted to the light condition under lamp light.
Fluor (neut. white) : Sets images to be adapted to fluorescent (neut. white) lighting.
Fluor (daylight) : Sets images to be adapted to fluorescent (daylight) lighting.

Switching White balance in one touch

Press 6 on Still image/Movie shooting screen.

- Press the key each time to switch icons.

Saving shot still images/movies automatically <Auto save ON/OFF>

Default	Auto save OFF

1 Press i [Function] ▶ Press ▶ Press 6 "Auto save ON", on Still image shooting screen.

- Press i [Function] ▶ Press ▶ Press 4 "Auto save ON", on Movie shooting screen.
- Press i [Function] ▶ Select "Auto save OFF" and press ●, on Still image shooting/Movie shooting screen, not to save automatically.
- Set "Auto save OFF" to attach the image to a mail right after shooting.

Information

- Movie (Sound) is saved automatically after shooting (recording), by setting Restrict file size as "Unrestricted" in Shoot movie. The setting of "Auto save ON/OFF" cannot be changed.

Setting the saving destination of shot still images/movies <Save to: >

Default	Still image: "Data box" → "My picture" → "Camera" Movie : "Data box" → "i-motion" → "Camera"

1 Press i [Function] ▶ Press ▶ Press 7 "Save to:", on Still image shooting screen.

- Press i [Function] ▶ Press ▶ Press 5 "Save to:", on Movie shooting screen.

2 Select a folder and press ●.

File names/Titles of saved still images and movies

The file names/titles of shot images are given as "year-month-day_hour-minute" of the day and time of shooting.

<ex> A still image or movie shot on 10:30, April 10, 2006
File names/Titles are to be "2006-04-10_10-30".

- In continuous mode, the file names/titles of still images are given by the shooting date of the 1st image and the serial numbers are added after the shooting date. For example, the 3rd file's name of continuous images shot in 10:30, April 10, 2006, is to be 2006-04-10_10-30_03. The serial number of images in Index is "00".

Information

- The file names of still images or the file names/titles of movies you saved, can be confirmed in "File property". →P388
- In the case the image set as Stand-by display is deleted, settings return to default.

Refer to still images/movies in shooting

1 Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press ○ ▶ 5JKL "Ref to My picture", on Still image shooting screen.

- Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 3DEF "Ref to i-motion", on Movie shooting screen.

2 Select a folder and press ●.

3 Select an image and press ●.

- Reading Still image play screen →P357
- Reading Movie play screen →P367

Referring to still images/movies after shooting

- Displaying saved images→P356
- Playing movies/i-motions→P366

Changing other settings

Default				
	Date stamp	:OFF	Shutter sound	:Click
	Start/End shooting tone	:Beep	Restrict file	:Unrestricted
	Reduce flicker	:Auto		

Various functions are available, such as inserting date of shooting or changing the shutter sound etc.

1 Press (i) [Function] on Still image/Movie shooting screen.

2 Select an item.

■ Pasting Date stamp

- The function is executable on Still image shooting screen.
- Still images with the size of VGA cannot be pasted.

①Press ○ ▶ Press 2ABC "Date stamp".

②Press one of 1 to 3DEF.

- Press 4GHI "OFF" not to paste Date stamp.
- Press (i) [Color] to change the color of Date stamp.

■ Inserting location information

- The function is executable on Still image shooting screen.

Press ○ ▶ Press 3DEF "Add location info".

- Alternatively, press ※ on Still image shooting screen, to add location information.
- Following operations: →P343 "Adding location information" Step 4

■ Changing Shutter sound

- The function is executable on Still image shooting screen.

①Press ○ ▶ Press 5JKL "Shutter sound".

②Press one of 1 to 3DEF.

- Press ✉ [Play] to confirm the shutter sound. Sounds play even under Manner mode.

Changing Start/End shooting tone

• The function is executable on Movie shooting screen.

①Press ▶ Press 3 "Start/End tone".

②Press one of 1 to 3.

• Press [Play] to confirm Start/End tone. Sounds play even under Manner mode.

Setting file restriction

You can set still images/movies unable to send or forward from received FOMA terminal.

• The function is executable on Still image shooing/Movie shooting screen.

①Select "Restrict file" and press ●.

②Press 1 "Restricted".

• Press 2 "Unrestricted" to release.

Reducing flicker on screen

• The function is executable on Still image shooing/Movie shooting screen.

①Select "Reduce flicker" and press ●.

②Press one of 1 to 3.

Displaying operation guide

• The function is executable on Still image shooing/Movie shooting screen.

Select "Operation guide" and press ●.

• Press ● to end.

Bar code reader

Using Bar code reader

Scan JAN code or QR code using FOMA terminal built-in camera. You can make a phone call, send a mail, or connect to a site using functions like Phone To(AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To with the scanned data.

• Up to 18 scanned codes can be saved.

• Readable codes are JAN code and QR code only.

JAN code/QR code

JAN code is a type of bar code that consists of vertical lines with various width and spaces. FOMA terminal can recognize 8-digit (JAN8) and 13-digit (JAN13) codes.

• The bar code on the left represents the numeric data "4123578369877".

QR code is a highly information-contained type of two-dimensional code that consists of horizontal and vertical pattern hiding information on numerics/alphabets/Chinese characters/Kana/Pictograms/melodies/images etc.

• The QR code on the left represents the text data "株式会社NTTドコモ (NTT DoCoMo Co. Ltd.)".

Scanning codes

Scan JAN code or QR code using FOMA terminal built-in camera.

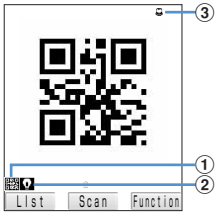
- Codes can be scanned with Out-camera only.
- Scratches, dirt, damages, low print quality and the strong reflection of light may disable code scanning.
- Codes may not be scanned depending on the type, version and size of bar codes.

1 Switch to Close-up mode.

- Switching to Close-up mode →P177

2 Hold down ⓕ (📷) for over a second on Stand-by display.

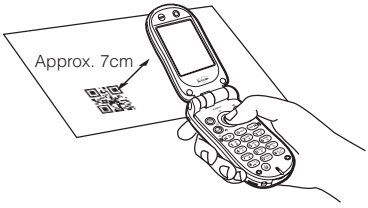
3 Press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Camera-mode" ▶ Press 3 "Bar code reader".



Bar code reader screen

① : Bar code reader is active.
② : Lighted on.
: Light is not available due to low temperature.
③ : Reading in Close-up mode.

4 Set Out-camera apart approximately 7 cm from the code, to display the entire code on the screen.



- Operate FOMA terminal with your hands stable.

■ Scanning codes with light turned on

Press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press 2 "Light" ▶ Press 1 "ON".

- Press 2 "OFF" not to turn on the light.

5 Press ●.

After "Scanning" is displayed, the scanned result is displayed.

6 Press ✉ [Save].

The scanned data is saved.

- Scanned data can be used without saving.
  Following operations: →P183 "Using scanned data" Step 3, →P184 "Using scanned text" Step 2
- Press C ▶ Press 1 "Yes" not to save data.

Scanning multiple split QR codes

Split QR codes can be combined (up to 16 pieces).

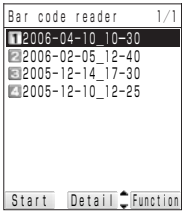
- If scanned QR code is split into pieces, the message "Scan next bar code" is displayed. Scanning starts automatically as the next code is displayed. The scanned result is to be displayed after all of the QR codes have been scanned.

Information

- Press ● ▶ Press Camera ▶Press 3, or press ● ▶ Press Tools ▶Press 7 also to display Bar code reader screen.
- Turn the light on before scanning at dark places.
- The title of saved data is set to scanned date and time. (year-month-day_hour-minute) For example, when shot at 10:30 on 10th April, 2006, the title is to be "2006-4-10_10-30". The title of saved data can be changed. →P185
- Scanned data cannot be saved in Data box.

Using scanned data

1 Press ✉ [List] on Bar code reader screen.



Bar code reader list screen

- Press ✉ [Start] to return to Bar code reader screen.

2 Select data and press ●.

3 Use data.

- Using data of phone number, URL, etc. →P184

■ Registering to Phonebook

Scanned data can be registered to Phonebook.

Select "Add to phonebook" and press ●.

- Register the scanned data to Phonebook.
  Following operations: →P99 "Registering entry in FOMA terminal phonebook" Step 2 to 6, →P104 "Registering entry into UIM (FOMA card) Phonebook" Step 2 to 4
- Some items may not be registered depending on the Phonebook entry selected.

See next page

■ **Composing message**

Mails are sent to "address" on data.

Select "Compose message" and press ●.

- Following operations : →P242 "Composing and sending i-mode mail "Step 4 to 6

■ **Registering to Bookmark**

Register URL or the title name on the data as Bookmark.

Select "Add bookmark" and press ●.

- Following operations : →P204 "Registering in Bookmark" Step 2 to 3

■ **Starting i-αppli software**

①Select "Start i-αppli" and press ●.

- Cannot start i-αppli that is not saved in FOMA terminal.

②Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" not to start.

■ **Playing/saving images and melodies in data**

Select the image/melody and press ●.

Images/melodies are played.

- Select data and press i [Function] ▶ Press 4 "Save to data box" to save images/melodies.
- Images are saved to "Data box" → "My picture" → "Data exchange" folder. Melodies are saved to "Data box" → "Melody" → "Data exchange" folder.

Selecting directly an item to use

- Dial phone call/Sending mails/Connecting to sites cannot be activated from bar-code-scanned data under Self mode.

1 Select data on Bar code reader list screen and press ●.

2 Select an item to use and press ●.

Selecting Phone number : Dial phone call/Dial video-phone/Video-phone image/New to phonebook/Add to phonebook/Copy phone number can be executed.

- Following operations : →P215 "Functions available by selecting the phone number" Step 2 to 3

Selecting URL : Connecting to site/Register bookmark/New to phonebook/Add to phonebook/Copy URL can be executed.

- Following operations : →P217 "Functions available by selecting URL" Step 2 to 3

Selecting E-mail address : Compose message/New to phonebook/Add to phonebook/Copy E-mail can be executed.

- Following operations: →P216 "Functions available by selecting an E-mail address" Step 2

Using scanned text

1 Select data on Bar code reader list screen and press ●.

2 Press i [Function] to use text information.

■ **Copying**

①Press 1 "Copy".

②Press ● to define the start point of the range to copy ▶ Press ● to define the end point.

- Copied data is registered as Paste data.

■ Registering to User dictionary

①Press 2ABC "Reg. to user dict.".

②Press ● to define the start point of the range to register ▶ Press ● to define the end point.

- Up to 20 two-byte (Full Mark) or 40 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be specified.

③Enter Reading and press ●.

■ Using Jpn dictionary

①Press 3DEF "Jpn dictionary".

②Press ● to define the start point of a word to look up ▶ Press ● to define the end point.

- Up to 15 two-byte (Full Mark) or 30 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be specified.
- Following operations: →P436 "Using Jpn dictionary" Step 3

Changing title of saved code

1 Select data and press i [Function], on Bar code reader list screen ▶ Press 1 "Edit title".

2 Enter a title and press ●.

- Up to 10 two-byte (Full Mark)/20 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

Deleting saved code

1 Select data and press i [Function], on Bar code reader list screen ▶ Press 2ABC "Delete".

2 Press 1 "Delete".

■ Deleting by option

①Press 2ABC "Delete option".

②Select data and press ●.

- Press ● to release.

③Press i [Exec.]

■ Deleting all

①Press 3DEF "Delete all".

②Enter the terminal security code and press ●.

3 Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2ABC "No" to cancel.

Information

- Some data may not be able to link to each function even using scanned phone number/E-mail address/URL. (Characters that are not underlined and colored cannot be linked.)

i-mode/i-motion

i-mode 188
Displaying i-mode Menu 195

Displaying sites

Displaying sites 195
Reading sites and operations 198
Registering sites to My Menu . . . . . <My Menu> 201
Changing i-mode password . . . . . <Change i-mode password> 202
Displaying Internet sites . . . . . <Connect Internet> 203
Registering Internet/i-mode sites for quick browsing . . . . . <Bookmark> 204
Saving site contents . . . . . <Screen memo> 208

Downloading images or melodies from sites

Downloading images from sites or messages . . . . . <Save image> 212
Downloading i-melody from sites . . . . . <i-melody> 213
Downloading Menu icons or data from sites 214
Downloading Chara-den from sites 214

Useful functions of i-mode

Useful functions of i-mode 215

Making i-mode settings

Making i-mode settings . . . . . <i-mode setting> 217

Using Message service

When receiving MessageR/F . . . . . <Receive message> 222
Checking MessageR/F . . . . . <Check new message> 224
Displaying MessageR/F stored in message boxes . . . . . <MessageR/MessageF> 224

Using Certificate

Using SSL certificate . . . . . <SSL certificate> 227
Setting FirstPass . . . . . <Client certificate> 228
Change the Host for certificate . . . . . <Certificate center host setting> 229

Retrieving i-motion

i-motion 230
Downloading i-motion from sites . . . . . <Download i-motion> 231
Setting whether to play i-motion automatically . . . . . <i-motion auto play> 232

i-mode

i-mode allows you to use online services to connect to sites (Programs), Internet or i-mode mail with the display of i-mode compatible FOMA terminal (hereinafter called as i-mode terminal).

Connecting to sites (Programs)

Select Menu List from i-mode menu, then you can use various online services such as weather forecast and news provided by IP (information service providers). Also, games or stand-by images are available to download and enjoy.

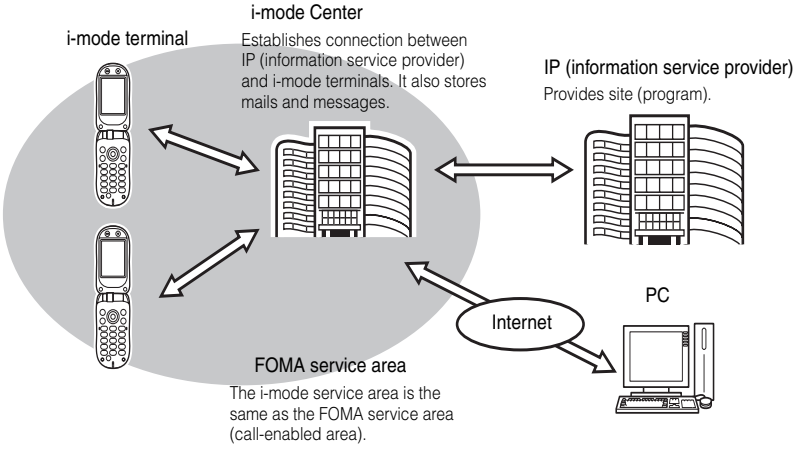
Connecting to Internet

Enter Internet site addresses (URLs) directly to i-mode terminals, and you can browse various sites applicable to i-mode.

i-mode mail

E-mail containing up to 5,000 two-byte (Full Mark) characters can be transferred to/from anybody who has an Internet E-mail address, as well as between i-mode terminals. Also, you can exchange enjoyable Deco-mails or mails with still/movie images attached.

Service schematic



- i-mode is an optional charged service which requires additional subscription. For further information, please contact the number on the backside of this manual.

Information

- When newly subscribing to the FOMA service, all services are available as of the first day.
- The contents of "My Menu" is carried over when changing services from mova (i-mode subscribed) to FOMA. Some sites may not be carried over to "My Menu" in the FOMA service. In that case, registration is required again. Also, applicable sites to carry over "My menu" can be confirmed in "お知らせ&ヘルプ (Information & Help)" in iMenu. →P189
- i-mode service is charged based on sent/received information volume (packet count). This manual does not include fee-related information. For details of service charge, refer to "i-mode User's Manual" handed when subscribing to i-mode.
- i-mode service contents are subject to change; for details, refer to the latest "i-mode User's Manual".

Connecting to sites (Programs)

Various online services are available by accessing sites provided by IP (information service providers) with simple key operations. For example, following services are available such as checking the bank balance/ making a remittance, reserving tickets, watching news, searching dictionaries or downloading melodies, etc.

Displaying sites

When connecting to the i-mode Center, iMenu is displayed first. Access sites (Programs), "週刊iガイド (What's New)" etc. from this menu.

- Procedure for displaying sites →P195

Menu name	Function
1 マイメニュー (My Menu)*	Register favorite sites and quickly access to the site later. →P201 Charged sites in iMenu are automatically registered to My Menu. Up to 45 sites can be registered.
2 週刊iガイド (What's New)*	The information of new sites and recommended sites is released and updated every Monday to Friday.
3 メニューリスト (Menu List)*	List to display all sites by categories or regions. Desired sites can be selected from here.
4 とくするメニュー (Value Menu)	Provides enjoyable information on campaigns, gifts and discount coupons. Information is updated every week. (Provided by D2 Communications Inc.)
5 iエリア (i-area)	Weather, Map, Town information and the sites applicable to GPS in the place or neighborhood can be retrieved.
6 かんたん検索 (Quick Search)	The desired sites can be easily searched for through keyword search from categories such as "Games" or "Stand-by display" etc.
iアプリサーチ (i-αppli Search)	The menu introducing i-αppli on a subjective basis like free-charged, Games, etc.
便利サイトサーチ (Useful Sites Search)	Introduces convenient sites for daily life from the Menu List, selected according to situations.
7 マイボックス (My Box)	Service for membership access to shop information and sites through registration in advance.
8 オプション設定 (Options)*	Sets i-mode mail, changes i-mode password etc.
9 お知らせ&ヘルプ (Info & Help)	Provides information from DoCoMo, operation procedure and rules on use of i-mode.
■料金&お申込 (Charge & Subscription)	Confirm and pay the fee, change the subscriptions or subscribe services.
ENGLISH	Change language to English on iMenu.

- The screen shown is an example. The screen may differ depending on the settings.

* These menus are available after selecting "ENGLISH" on iMenu.

キッズiモード (Kids' i-mode, provided only in Japanese)

- This service restricts the access to sites through i-mode, allowing only the access to the i-mode Menu.
  * The access to sites on マイボックス (My box) is not permitted to the user, except for DoCoMo Premier Club site.
- キッズiモード (Kids' i-mode) is an optional free service requiring a subscription. For further information, please contact the number on the backside of this manual.

キッズi メニュー (Kids' iMenu, provided only in Japanese)

* The screen shown is an example.

Contents for kids are available. Easier expressions and characters (Hiragana) are used for kids.
To use キッズiメニュー (Kids' iMenu), an optional subscription is required.

Information

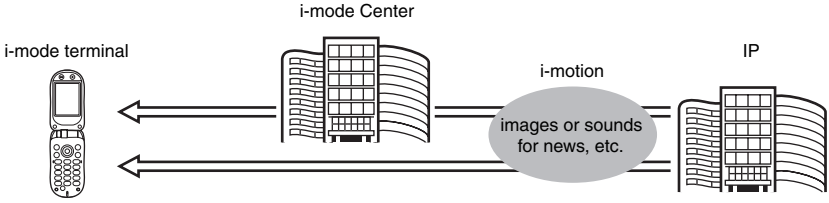
- Some sites may require information fee to access (i-mode charged sites).
- Some services provided by IP (information service providers) may require separate subscriptions.
- Packet communication fee is not charged except in communicating with the i-mode Center, even if the i-mode icon blinks.
- iMenu screen or other functions may differ for Dual Network Service subscribers.

Other convenient functions

i-motion

You can download images or sounds from sites to i-mode terminals, to play or set them on Stand-by display.

- Retrieving i-motion →P231
- Playing i-motion →P366
- Setting i-motion Auto play →P232



Chaku-motion/Chaku-uta®

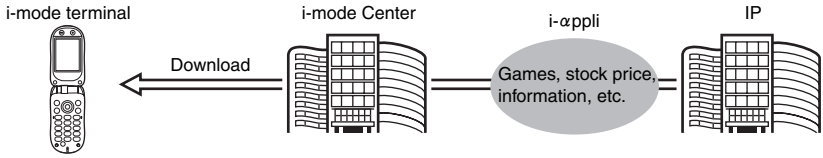
i-motion can be downloaded from i-mode sites to i-mode terminals for setting as Ring tone or Receiving image. The vocals of favorite singers can be set to Ring tone as well as melodies. (Some i-motion cannot be set as Chaku-motion.)

- Setting Chaku-motion →P120
- "Chaku-uta" is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

i-αppli

Downloading i-αppli from the sites allows more convenient use of i-mode terminals. For example, you can download enjoyable games or i-αppli software to check stock prices automatically and periodically. Furthermore, Map i-αppli downloads only minimum of necessary data, so that it provides smooth scrolling operation.

- Downloading software →P302
- Executing i-αppli →P304
- Executing i-αppli automatically →P310



i-αppli stand-by display

i-αppli stand-by display uses i-αppli as a stand-by display, which also allows receiving messages and making phone calls directly. i-αppli stand-by display enables Stand-by display to indicate the latest news or weather forecast, or to inform incoming messages and alarms, etc. with favorite characters.

- Setting i-αppli stand-by display →P312

i-αppliDX

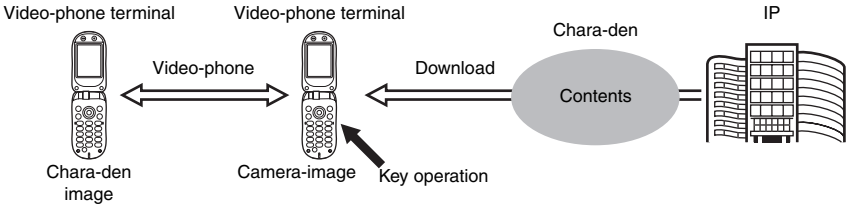
i-αppliDX makes i-αppli more convenient and enjoyable. In conjunction with i-mode terminal information (such as message, Call history or Phonebook data), i-αppliDX allows you to compose a message on your favorite character screen and inform you of a sender of incoming call by character's comments when a call is received. Also i-αppliDX, engaged with mail, updates desired information on stock price, game progress or other information, in real time.

- i-αppliDX →P300

Chara-den

During a video-phone, displays a character on the other party's terminal instead of your image, and makes motions by key operation. Download a favorite character to set the still image/movie file of the Chara-den as Stand-by image, or attach it to a mail to send. (Unable to send still image/movie files prohibited to be attached to mails or to output from FOMA terminals).

- Downloading Chara-den →P214
- Setting Chara-den →P90
- Recording Chara-den →P378
- Checking Chara-den →P375
- Operating character →P377



See next page

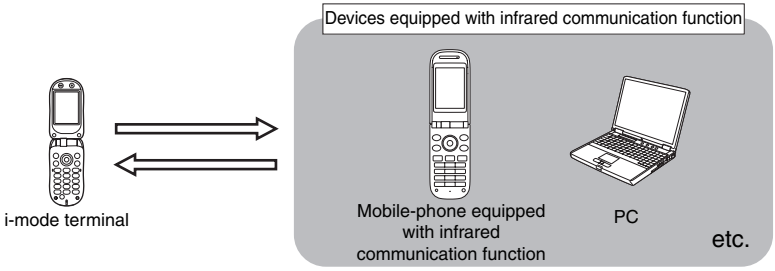
Infrared communication function

You can exchange Phonebook data, mails, Bookmarks, etc. with mobile phones, PCs, etc. equipped with Infrared communication function.*

In addition, taking advantage of Infrared communication with i-αppli allows enhanced use by interacting with devices equipped with Infrared communication function. For example, a mobile phone can also be used as a remote controller for TV or a member ID card.

* Some types of data may not be exchanged depending on the devices of the other party's, even with infrared communication function.

• Activating Infrared data exchange mode →P396

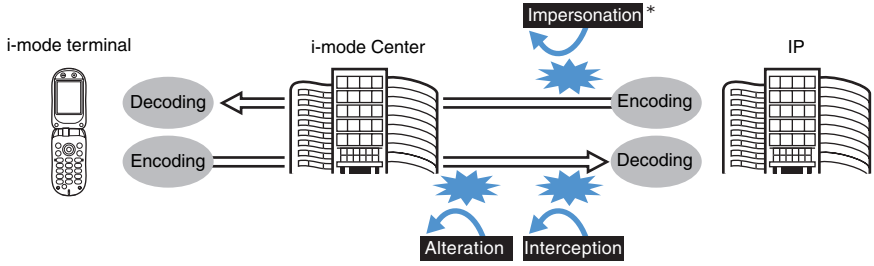


SSL communication

SSL is a safer data communication method using certification/encryption technology to protect privacy. On SSL pages, data is encrypted and sent/received to prevent information interception, impersonation or alteration, thus allowing personal customer information such as credit card numbers and street addresses, etc. to be exchanged safely.

There are 2 types of SSL communication; one is to display SSL compatible sites (SSL pages) using the CA certificate saved in i-mode terminal, and the other is to display SSL compatible sites (SSL pages) using the downloaded Client certificate from the FirstPass center. The certificates to be used differ depending on the sites. →P227

• Using the CA certificate saved in i-mode terminal →P227
• Using Client certificate of FirstPass →P228



* Impersonation denotes that a false site made up by a third party pretends to be a valid site to obtain customer information illegally.

UIM (FOMA card) operation restriction function

Insert UIM (FOMA card) retaining customer information (Phone number, Phonebook (partially), etc.) to i-mode terminals, and that restricts operation of melody/still image files downloaded from the sites or retrieved with mails. Also when turning on the power of an i-mode terminal with another UIM (FOMA card) or no UIM (FOMA card) inserted, the function prohibits to play or display the obtained files. →P40

* This function does not support still images or movies shot with the camera function, or files saved to the terminal from external memory.
* This function resets Ring tone, Stand-by display or other settings, if any, made for the i-mode terminal.

i-melody

You can download latest or favorite music to i-mode terminals and set as Ring tone. →P213

i-anime

You can download favorite animations from sites to i-mode terminals and set as Stand-by display or Receiving screen. →P129, 132

Flash™

Flash is an animation technology using images and sounds. Displays various animations and expressive sites. Also movies using Flash (Flash movie) can be downloaded to i-mode terminals and set as Stand-by display.

Some Flash movies can quote the terminal information data of user's i-mode terminal. Available data is listed below:

- Battery level
- Reception level
- Time information
- Ringer volume
- Select language
- Model information

→P220

Message service

Message service is a service that automatically delivers desired information (message) to user's i-mode terminal. There are 2 types of message service: MessageR (Request) and MessageF (Free).

Message Request (MessageR)	Information is delivered automatically after subscribing in a site that provides Message service.
Message Free (MessageF)	Messages to be delivered free of packet communication charge.

- Receiving Message service →P222, 224, 260
- MessageF is set as "受信する (Receive)" by default if you subscribe to the i-mode service when newly subscribing to the FOMA service after the 1st of October, 2004. If it is unnecessary to receive MessageF, change the setting for MessageF to "受信しない (Not receive)".
  * Except in the case noted above, to use MessageF, preliminary setting for receiving in "オプション設定 (Options)" is required. "受信しない (Not receive)" is set by default.
- When the terminal is powered off or out of service area and unable to receive mails, MessageR/F is to be stored in the i-mode Center.

Information

- The list shows the number and the period of MessageR/F to be stored in the i-mode Center. When exceeding the maximum number of messages to be stored, messages are deleted from the oldest MessageR/F.

Message	Maximum number of mails stored	Maximum storage period
MessageR	300 items	72 hrs
MessageF	300 items	72 hrs

- MessageR/F stored in the i-mode Center can be received by Check new message. →P224, 260

■ トクだねニュース便 (Convenient News)

This service is provided by DoCoMo to distribute information such as news and weather forecast to i-mode terminals using MessageR (Request) function.

This is a charged service, requiring a separate subscription. After subscribing, it is automatically registered to My Menu and the same information is also available by accessing from My Menu.

• Reading MessageR screen →P225

i-mode password

"i-mode password" is required to apply for charged sites, to register/release it to/from My Menu, or to make i-mode mail settings. The default password is set to "0000" and be sure to change to a unique 4-digit number. →P202

Note that you must never reveal your i-mode password to others.

Connecting to Internet

Enter the address of Internet sites (URL), connect to Internet and display i-mode compatible sites.

• Displaying method →P203

Information

- i-mode incompatible sites may not be displayed correctly. The i-mode compatible sites are created with i-mode compatible tags. →P203
- The displayed screen of the Internet sites may differ from that of PC.
- Some Internet sites may not be displayed with more than 512 characters of URL.

Before using i-mode

- The contents of sites (programs) and Internet sites are usually protected by the copyright laws. All or any portion of texts, images or other data downloaded to the i-mode terminal from sites (programs) or Internet sites cannot be altered except for personal use, and cannot be sold or redistributed in any form without the express permission of the copyright holder.
- Data saved/registered in i-mode terminal (Mail, MessageR/F, Screen memo, i-αppli and i-motion) and registered contents of Bookmark remains for about 1 month with the battery pack removed or empty battery level, but may be lost if the terminal is in such condition for more than 1 month. Data may be lost due to malfunction, repair or other handling of FOMA terminal. It is recommended to maintain a separate record of the data registered in your FOMA terminal. In case that saved or registered data is lost, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss.
- When an i-mode terminal is sent for repair etc., the downloaded information using i-mode, i-αppli or i-motion is not transferred to the new mobile terminal in accordance with the copyright laws with some exceptions. Still images/i-motion/melodies downloaded from sites, attached files sent/received with mails (still images/movies, melodies), screen memos and MessageR/F for some models cannot be displayed, when inserting another UIM (FOMA card) and turning on the power of FOMA terminal without UIM (FOMA card).
- When replacing UIM (FOMA card) to another or turning the power on with no UIM (FOMA card) inserted, files restricted to display/play by UIM (FOMA card) to Stand-by display or Ring tone, the settings returns to default.

Information

- Saved data may be lost due to FOMA terminal malfunction, repairs, or other reasons. As DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of data, be advised to backup the data with your PC by using the data link software and FOMA USB connection cable (optional). →P528

Displaying i-mode Menu

1 Press (i) [i-mode].

i-mode menu is displayed.

Menu	Function	Page
i-mode setting	Sets functions regarding i-mode.	P217
MessageR	Displays received MessageR.	P224
MessageF	Displays received MessageF.	P224
Screen memo	Displays Screen memo saved in FOMA terminal.	P208
iMenu	The first site displayed on the screen, on connecting to the i-mode Center. Accesses to each site (program) from here.	P195
Bookmark	Accesses directly to registered favorite sites.	P205
Last URL	Accesses to the site displayed last.	P198
Go to location	Enters URL to access to Internet sites.	P203
Check new message	Checks the storage of i-mode mails or MessageR/F in the i-mode Center.	P224, 260

Information

- Alternatively, press (●) ▶ Press i-mode, to display i-mode Menu.

Displaying sites

Connect to i-mode to display various sites for various services.

1 Press (i) ▶ Press iMenu.

⇦ blinks, and ⇳ blinks after connection is established.

- Press (✉) [Cancel] or (CLR) to cancel while retrieving pages.

See next page

2 Select "ENGLISH" at the bottom of the list and press ●, then select "Menu List" and press ●.

3 Select an item of the site and press ●.

Connection is established.

■ Ending i-mode

①**Press** (PWR).
②**Press** (1) **"Yes".**
disappears.

■ "どこでもSANYO (Dokodemo SANYO)"

Download original data (Menu icons, National holidays, Dictionary data, category icons) or Deco-mail templates etc. from the site "どこでもSANYO (Dokodemo SANYO)" for various usage.

- "iMenu" → "メニューリスト (Menu List)" → "ケータイ電話メーカー (Mobile phone manufacturer)" → "どこでもSANYO (Dokodemo SANYO)".

Information

- Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press (1) "iMenu" to return to iMenu while displaying sites.
- Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press (↓) ▶ Press (↓) ▶ Press (3) "i-mode menu" to return to i-mode Menu during displaying sites.
- If images are not displayed successfully, or appears.
- Pages failed to be displayed properly may be recovered by operating "Convert char. code". →P204
- Under "圏外 (Out of service area)" or Self mode, i-mode is not available.
- Some sites may display the message to notify sending the Product serial number of the i-mode terminal/UIM (FOMA card).
  - "Product serial number of i-mode terminals/UIMs (FOMA card)" to send is used by the IP (information service provider) to identify the user, to provide with customized information or to judge whether the contents provided by the IP are available to the mobile phone.
  - "Product serial number of the i-mode terminals/UIM (FOMA card)" is sent to the IP (information service provider) via Internet and there is a possibility to be captured by the third parties during transmission. However, no user information of the phone number, address, age or gender is to be informed to the IP with this operation.

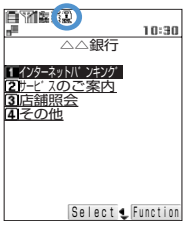
Connecting to SSL page

You can display SSL compatible pages (SSL page).

- Establishment of SSL sessions requires electronic information called "certificate" issued by the same certification organization for both the connected site and FOMA terminal. →P227

Connecting to SSL page

When connecting to SSL sites, a message to start SSL communication is displayed.



- SSL appears when the SSL page is displayed.
- If the safety cannot be confirmed in communication with the site, a message to confirm whether to connect to the site is displayed. Press 1 "Yes" to connect. Press "No" 2 to cancel connection.

Information

- To display certificates while displaying SSL pages, press i [Function] ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 6 "View certificate".

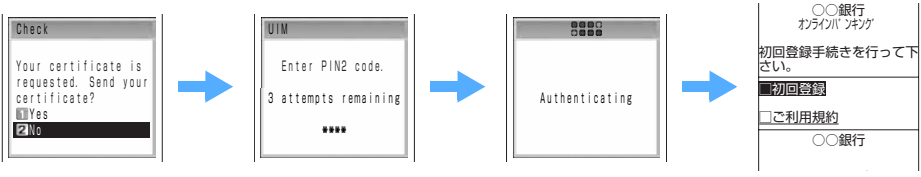
Displaying normal pages from SSL pages

When moving to normal pages from SSL pages, a message is displayed to confirm whether to end SSL sessions.

- Press 1 "Yes" to display a normal page, and SSL disappears.

Connecting to FirstPass applicable page

Follow the operation as below, to connect to FirstPass compatible pages.



1 Press 1 "Yes".

2 Enter PIN2 code and press ●.

The Client certificate is sent and the FirstPass compatible page is displayed.

Reconnecting to the page last displayed <Last URL>

The URL displayed last is memorized when closing i-mode. You can reconnect to the last URL easily.

1 Press (i) ▶ Press URL Last URL.

The last URL is displayed.

- When no last URL is recorded, a message indicating that there is no Last URL is displayed.

2 Press (●).

Copying URL

Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Copy".

Deleting Last URL

①Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 2 "Delete".
②Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Reading sites and operations

Operations while displaying sites are described below.

Displaying images

Flash, an animation technology using images and sounds, is available. Flash movies facilitate displaying expressive sites. You can also set Flash movies as Stand-by display.

- If making the display setting to "Not display", Flash movies are not displayed.
- When Flash movies are displayed, display operation may differ from the normal operation.
- Some Flash movies may lose a part of image, for example, saved images or screen memos may be displayed differently from the graphics displayed on the site.
- Even if a Flash movie is displayed, it may not work properly. And when the Flash movie is not displayed properly, it may not able to be saved.
- Some Flash movies play sound effects. Set Sound effect to "Not play", not to play sound effects. Some Flash movies may not play any sound effect.
- Some Flash movies can be operated even when ▶◀▲▼ are not displayed on the bottom of the screen.
- If no operation is executed for over 30 seconds while playing Flash movies, playing is to be paused temporarily. To resume playing, press one of ✣, (●), 0 to 9, * or #.
- If a Flash movie fails to play, it cannot be saved.
- Some Flash movies may vibrate FOMA terminals while playing. Note that terminals vibrate even when Vibrator is set to "OFF".
- Some Flash movies may use data registered in i-mode settings. For setting movies to use registered data, set "Use registered data" to "Use". →P220
  Default setting is "Use". Flash movies use the data listed below:
  - Battery level
  - Reception level
  - Time information
  - Ringer volume
  - Select language
  - Model information
- The melody of the Flash movie set to Stand-by display is not played.

Selecting Link and items

Following operations are available in some sites while connected to i-mode.

Links

Link is an item to jump to the related page, from the currently displayed page. Link is highlighted when selected.

- Links may be set upon some images. Those images are enclosed with a frame when selected.
- Move to the linked pages with corresponding numbers by pressing number keys 1, 2, etc. However, some sites do not support to move to the linked pages with those numbers.

Check box

You can select multiple items from the option.

☐ : Not selected ☑ : Selected

- Switch Select/Release by pressing ●.

Radio button

You can select an item from the option.

○ : Not selected ◉ : Selected

- Switch items to select by pressing ●.

Pulldown menu

You can select an item from the option list.

Press ● to display the option list. Press ↕ to select an item and press ●.

- Some sites allow you to select multiple items by repeating the operation of selecting from the pulldown menu. After selecting, press i [Complete] to complete the operation.

Textbox

You can input characters. Select textbox, and Character input screen is displayed.

- When entering password etc., "✱" may be displayed.
- While entering, scanned data can be inserted by activating Bar code reader or Character reader.

Button (Sent/Reset, etc.)

You can send or reset the contents entered/selected on the page. Selected buttons are enclosed with the full line. Press ● to execute sending/resetting.

Moving to the previous/next pages

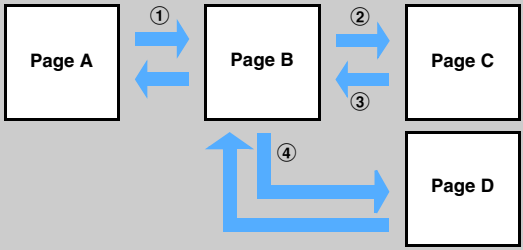
You can move to the previous or the next page stored in cache memory. Cache is the storage area in the terminal, to temporarily store data of Internet sites, etc. once displayed. By pressing ◉, pages stored in cache can be displayed without making communications.
However, note that when exceeding the terminal cache size or when displaying a page set (or created) to forcibly read the latest information, communication is started by pressing ◉.

- Also press C to return to the previous page.
- Characters or settings previously entered are not displayed when displaying the page in cache.
- When finishing i-mode, the page information in cache is to be cleared.
- Display operation may differ when Flash movies are displayed.

2 pages before the current page | **1 page before the current page** | **Current page**

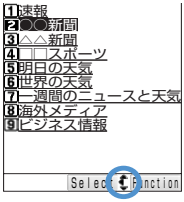
Information

- When you display Page A → Page B → Page C (①, ②), return to Page B (③) and proceed to Page D (④), then the display history of Page B to Page C is erased. You can return, Page D → Page B → Page A, but not to Page C.



Scrolling screen

Scroll the screen with ◉ while displaying i-mode sites or Internet sites.



When the whole site is not displayed, or Links are selectable, ▲ or ▼ is displayed.

- Hold down ◉ for over a second to scroll continuously.
- Lines to scroll can be set when pressing ◉.
- Press ▷ or ▷ to display the next screen.
- The operation is the same in MessageR/F and SMS. →P224, 266

Reloading data <Reloading>

Reload the page data properly or update to the latest data.

1 Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press ◯ ▶ Press 5JKL "Reload", while displaying sites.

The page data is reloaded and the page is redisplayed.

Information

- Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press ◯ ▶ Press 7PQRS "Retry" to play Flash movies again, while displaying sites.

Displaying URL <View URL>

Displays the site URL on the screen.

1 Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 7PQRS "View/Copy URL", while displaying sites.

URL is displayed.

- Press (i) [Copy] to copy URL.

Information

- When operating from URL history list screen, Bookmark list screen or Screen memo list, press (i) [Function] ▶ Select "View/Copy URL".
- Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press ◯ ▶ Press 1 "Compose message" to copy URL on the screen to the mail. The displayed URL of the site is pasted in the text field and Composing screen is displayed.

My Menu

Registering sites to My Menu

Save frequently accessed sites to My Menu, and you can access to the site easily.

- Up to 45 sites can be registered to My Menu.
- i-mode password is required to register sites to My Menu.
- Only i-mode sites are available to be registered. However, some sites cannot be registered. To register Internet sites, register them to Bookmark.
- When submitting to charged sites, the site is automatically recorded in My Menu.

1 Select "マイメニュー登録 (Register My Menu)" and press ●, while displaying sites.

2 Select the i-mode password field, press ●, enter i-mode password and press ●.

The entered i-mode password is masked with "✱".

- The i-mode password is set to "0000" by default.

3 Select "決定 (Set)" and press ●.

Displaying sites registered to My Menu

1 **Press (i) ▶ Press i-Menu ▶ Press 1.**

2 **Select a site and press ●.**

Change i-mode password

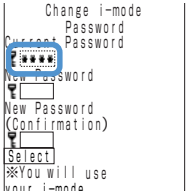
Changing i-mode password

i-mode password is required to register/delete entries to/from My Menu, subscribe/cancel Message Service or i-mode charged sites, or to make mail settings. i-mode password is set to "0000" by default. Be sure to change to another unique number. Never reveal i-mode password to others.

- Enter a number of 4 digits for the i-mode password.
- If you forgot i-mode password, the password is to be reset to "0000" at the sales outlets such as DoCoMo shop, after confirming your driver's license or other official identifications.

1 **Press (i) ▶ Press i-Menu ▶ Select "ENGLISH" and press ● ▶ Press 4 GHI ▶ Press 2 ABC.**

2 **Select the i-mode password field, press ●, enter i-mode password and press ●.**



The entered i-mode password is masked with "✱".

3 **Select the new i-mode password field, press ●, enter a new i-mode password and press ●.**

4 **Select the new i-mode password field for confirmation, press ●, enter the i-mode password at Step 3 again and press ●.**

5 **Move the cursor to "Select" and press ●.**

- A message is displayed if the entered password is incorrect.

Displaying Internet sites

Enter a URL and access to Internet.

- i-mode incompatible Internet sites may not be displayed correctly.
- Basic operations on Internet sites are the same as that on i-mode sites.

1 **Press (i) ▶ Press Go to location.**

URL input screen is displayed.

2 **Select "New entry" and press ●, then enter URL and press ●.**

- Up to 512 one-byte (Half Mark) characters including "http://" or "https://" can be entered.

Information

- Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 6MNO "Go to location", to operate while displaying i-mode sites or Internet sites.
- A message is displayed when exceeding maximum data size to receive for 1 page, and the screen displays only the received data.

Displaying pages using URL history <URL history>

List of URLs connected from "Go to location" is displayed in order by date.

- URL is recorded up to 10. The oldest URL is deleted when the number of URLs exceeds 10.

1 **Press (i) ▶ Press Go to location.**

URL history list screen is displayed.

URL history list screen

2 **Select a URL and press ●.**

3 **Press ●.**

Deleting URL in history

1 **Select a URL to delete on URL history list screen and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 5JKL "Delete".**

2 **Press 1 "Delete".**

■ Deleting by option

①Press 2ABC "Delete option".
②Select a URL and press ●.
- Press ● to release.

③Press (i) [Exec.]

See next page

■ Deleting all

①Press 3 "Delete all".

②Enter the terminal security code and press ●.

3 Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Displaying characters properly <Convert char. code>

When characters in a site is displayed incorrectly, the site may be displayed properly by converting character code.

1 Press i [Function] ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 2 "Convert char. code", while displaying the site.

- Repeat the operation of Step 1 and ShiftJIS → JIS → EUC → UTF8 is switched in order. Repeat the operation 4 times, to return to the original screen.
- Characters may be displayed incorrectly even if converting characters.
- Characters may be displayed incorrectly, if converting the properly displayed characters again.

Bookmark

Registering Internet/i-mode sites for quick browsing

Registering Internet/i-mode sites to Bookmark allows quicker and more convenient browsing.

Registering in Bookmark

- Up to 100 Bookmarks can be registered.
- Up to 256 one-byte (Half Mark) characters including "http://" or "https://" can be registered. URLs exceeding the number of maximum characters cannot be registered.
- Some sites may not be registered in Bookmark.

1 Press i [Function] ▶ Press 2 "Register bookmark", while displaying site to register.

2 Select the folder to register the entry, and press ●.

3 Enter the title and press ●.

Bookmark is registered.

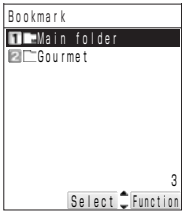
- Up to 12 two-byte (Full Mark)/24 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.
- Characters exceeding the maximum character number are to be deleted.
- When registering Bookmark without entering a title, the URL of the site is displayed on the Bookmark list.

Information

- Press i [Function] ▶ Press 2 "Register bookmark", to register from URL history list.
- When the number of Bookmarks exceeds the maximum number of saved items, a message is displayed confirming whether to overwrite registered Bookmarks. Select a Bookmark to overwrite.

Displaying Internet/i-mode sites from Bookmark

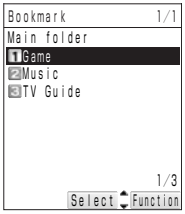
1 Press (i) ▶ Press Bookmark.



Bookmark folder list screen is displayed.

Bookmark folder list screen

2 Select a folder and press ●.



Bookmark list screen is displayed.

Bookmark list screen

3 Select the Bookmark to display and press ●.

Connection to the site is established.

■ **Displaying/copying URL of selected Bookmark**

Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 1 "View/Copy URL".

URL is displayed. Press ● to connect. Press (i) [Copy] to copy.

■ **Composing mails with attached URL of selected Bookmark**

Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 4 "Compose message".

- Following operations : →P242 "Composing and sending i-mode mail" Step 2 to 6

Information

- Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 3 "Bookmark list", to operate from the displayed site on the screen.

Creating folders

Create folders to register Bookmarks.

- Up to 8 folders can be created including "Main folder".

1 Press (i) ▶ Press Bookmark.

2 Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Create folder".

3 Enter a folder name and press ●.

- Up to 8 two-byte (Full Mark)/16 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

Sorting folders

- "Main folder" cannot be sorted.

①Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 3 "Sort folders".
②Select a folder and press ●.
③Select the destination to move and press ●.
- When sorting other folders, repeat Step ② to ③.

④Press (i) [Complete].

Displaying all Bookmarks in folders

Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 5 "Bookmark log".

Moving Bookmarks to folders

Saved Bookmarks can be moved to other folders.

1 Select a Bookmark and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 3 "Move to folder".

2 Press 1 "Move".

Moving by option

①Press 2 "Move option".
②Select a Bookmark to display and press ●.
- Press ● to release.

③Press (i) [Exec.]

Moving all

Press 3 "Move all in folder".
- Press 3 "Move all" while displaying Bookmark log.

3 Select the folder to move in and press ●.

4 Press 1 "Yes".
- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Editing titles of Bookmarks or folders

- The name of "Main folder" cannot be changed.

1 **Select a Bookmark and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 2ABC "Edit title".**

- Select a folder on Bookmark folder list screen and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 2ABC "Edit folder name" to edit the folder name.

2 **Enter a new title and press ●.**

- You can enter up to 12 two-byte (Full Mark)/24 one-byte (Half Mark) characters as a title. As a folder name, up to 8 two-byte (Full Mark)/16 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

Deleting Bookmarks or folders

Delete created folders or Bookmarks.

Deleting folder

Preinstalled "Main folder" by default cannot be deleted.

- Bookmarks saved in folders are also deleted.

1 **Select a folder and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 4GHI "Delete folder".**

2 **Enter the terminal security code and press ●.**

3 **Press 1 "Yes".**

- Press 2ABC "No" to cancel.

Deleting Bookmark

1 **Select a Bookmark and press (i) [Function] ▶ ◯ ▶ Press 1 "Delete".**

2 **Press 1 "Delete".**

■ Deleting by option

①**Press 2ABC "Delete option".**
②**Select a Bookmark to delete and press ●.**
- Press ● to release.

③**Press (i) [Exec.]**

■ Deleting all

①**Press 3DEF "Delete all in fldr".**
- Press 3DEF "Delete all" while displaying Bookmark log.

②**Enter the terminal security code and press ●.**

3 **Press 1 "Yes".**

- Press 2ABC "No" to cancel.

Saving site contents

The contents currently displayed on the screen can be saved as Screen memo.

Saving Screen memo

The number allowed to save varies according to the data size of saved Screen memo.

- Up to 100 Screen memos can be registered.

1 Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 4GHI "Screen memo", while displaying the site to save.

2 Select a folder to register and press ●.

3 Enter the title and press ●.

The Screen memo is registered.

- Up to 12 two-byte (Full Mark)/24 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.
- Characters exceeding the maximum character number are to be deleted.
- A site without a title is saved as "No title".

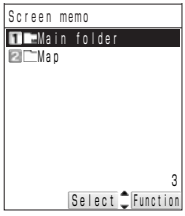
Information

- When the data in Screen memo exceeds the maximum of volume and number, the message is displayed to confirm whether to overwrite data in UIM (FOMA card). Follow the instructions on the screen and delete Screen memo in FOMA terminal, until a space required becomes available.

Displaying Screen memo

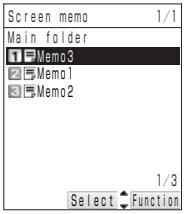
1 Press (i) ▶ Press Screen memo.

Screen memo folder list is displayed.



Screen memo folder list screen

2 Select a folder and press ●.



Screen memo list screen

Screen memo list screen is displayed.

3 Select a Screen memo and press ●.

- Basic operation on Screen memo are the same as that on the original site, with some exceptions such as function menu. →P198
- Icon definitions are as follows:
  - : Normal Screen memo
  - : Protected Screen memo
  - : UIM (FOMA card) not inserted
  - : Protected Screen memo with UIM (FOMA card) not inserted

■ Displaying the property of selected Screen memo

Press i [Function] ▶ Press 6MNO "File property".

- Press i [Function] ▶ Press 3DEF "File property", while displaying Screen memo.

Creating folders

Creates a folder to register Screen memo.

- Up to 8 folders can be created including "Main folder".

1 Press i ▶ Press Screen memo.

2 Press i [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Create folder".

3 Enter a folder name and press ●.

- Up to 8 two-byte (Full Mark)/16 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

Sorting folders

- "Main folder" cannot be sorted.

①Press i [Function] ▶ Press 3DEF "Sort folders".
②Select a folder and press ●.
③Select the destination to move and press ●.
- When sorting other folders, repeat Step ② to ③.

④Press i [Complete].

Displaying all Screen memos in folders

Press i [Function] ▶ Press 5JKL "Screen memo log".

Moving Screen memo to folders

Saved Screen memo can be moved to other folders.

1 Select a Screen memo and press i [Function] ▶ Press 3DEF "Move to folder".

2 Press 1 "Move".

Moving memos by option

①Press 2ABC "Move option".
②Select a Screen memo and press ●.
- Press ● to release.

③Press i [Exec.]

Moving all

Press 3DEF "Move all in folder".
- Press 3DEF "Move all" while displaying Screen memo log.

3 Select the destination to move in and press ●.

4 Press 1 "Yes".
- Press 2ABC "No" to cancel.

Changing the title of Screen memo or folders

- The name of "Main folder" cannot be changed.

1 Select a Screen memo and press i [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Edit title".
- Select a folder on Screen memo folder list screen and press i [Function] ▶ Press 2ABC "Edit folder name" to edit the folder name.

2 Enter a new title and press ●.
- Up to 12 two-byte (Full Mark)/24 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered as a title. As a folder title, up to 8 two-byte (Full Mark)/16 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

Information

- Press i [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Edit title", to edit the title while displaying Screen memo.

Deleting Screen memo or folders

- You cannot delete protected Screen memos. Even if deleting all, protected screen memos are not deleted. Also folders with protected Screen memos cannot be deleted. Release the protection of Screen memo first to delete.

Deleting folder

- Preinstalled "Main folder" by default cannot be deleted.

1 **Select a folder and press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press 4GHI "Delete folder".**

2 **Enter the terminal security code and press ●.**

3 **Press 1 "Yes".**

- Press 2ABC "No" to cancel.

Deleting Screen memo

1 **Select a Screen memo and press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press 7PQRS "Delete".**

2 **Press 1 "Delete".**

■ Deleting by option

①Press 2ABC "Delete option".
②Select a Screen memo and press ●.
- Press ● to release.

③Press ⓘ [Exec.]

■ Deleting all

①Press 3DEF "Delete all in fldr".
- Press 3DEF "Delete all" while displaying Screen memo log.

②Enter the terminal security code and press ●.

3 **Press 1 "Yes".**

- Press 2ABC "No" to cancel.

Information

- Press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press 4GHI "Delete" to delete Screen memo displayed on screen.

Protecting Screen memo

- Up to 50 Screen memos can be protected.

1 **Select a Screen memo and press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press 2ABC "Protect".**

The protected Screen memo icon changes from to .

■ Releasing the protection of Screen memos

①Select a Screen memo and press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press 2ABC "Release".
②Press 1 "Release".
- Press 2ABC "Release all" to release all the protected Screen memos, then press 1 "Yes".

See next page

Information

- Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 2ABC "Protect", to protect the displayed Screen memo. Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 2ABC "Release", to release the protection.

Sorting Screen memo < Sort >

Sorts Screen memos temporarily.

1 Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 4GHI "Sort", on Screen memo list screen.

2 Press one of 1 to 6MNO.

Svg date (new → o) : Sorts by date order from new to old.
Svg date (old → n) : Sorts by date order from old to new.
Title (asc.) : Sorts titles in ascending order.
Title (des.) : Sorts titles in descending order.
Prot/unprot order : Sorts Screen memos by order from protected to unprotected.
Unprot/prot order : Sorts Screen memos by order from unprotected to protected.

Information

- When closing Screen memo list, the sorting order returns to "Svg date (new → o)".

Save image

Downloading images from sites or messages

Save images from the sites or MessageR/F displayed on the screen, to set them as Stand-by display etc.

1 Display a site with images and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 5JKL "Save image".

The image is framed. Select the image to download. Press CLR to return to the screen of the site or MessageR/F.

2 Press ● ▶ Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2ABC "No" not to save. No further operation is needed.

3 Select the folder to save and press ●.

Save still images in "My picture" in Data box → "i-mode" or "Deco-mail picture" folder. A message is displayed to confirm whether to set the image. Press 1 "Yes" and the list to set the image is displayed, and the image can be set as Stand-by display etc. →P360

- Frames or stamp images are saved in "Items" folder.
- You can select another image to save, after saving an image. Press CLR to finish and return to the screen of sites or MessageR/F.

Information

- The number of data allowed to save in FOMA terminal →P354
- The maximum size for 1 file to be saved in FOMA terminal is approximately 100 KB.
- Some images may not be displayed correctly.
- When the size of still image is larger than the screen, the image is reduced to display.
- Images of the size over 640 × 480 in GIF format (or 240 × 320 in animation GIF format) in width and height or height and width cannot be saved. Also some JPEG types may not be saved.
- When there is not enough available storage space for still images to be saved or the number of images exceeds the allowable maximum number →P389

i-melody

Downloading i-melody from sites

Download i-melody from sites displayed on the screen, and set to Ring tone.

1 Select a melody to download from a site and press ●.

- Press ✉ [Cancel] to cancel download.

2 Press 2ABC "Save".

A saved melody is to be saved as "Data box" → "Melody" → "i-mode" folder.

■ Playing the melody
Press 1 "Play".

■ Setting the melody to Ring tone etc. directly after saving
Press 3DEF "Set".

- Following operations: →P382 "Setting the melody as Ring tone etc." Step 3

■ Displaying the melody property
Press 4GHI "File property".

■ Returning without saving
Press 5JKL "Return" ▶ Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2ABC "No" to cancel.

3 Press 5JKL "Return".

Information

- The number of data allowed to save in FOMA terminals, and the maximum size →P354
- Some melodies may not be played correctly.
- When there is not enough available storage space for still images to be saved or the number of images exceeds the allowable maximum number →P389

Downloading Menu icons or data from sites

Download original data (Menu icon, National holidays, Dictionary data, Category icons) or Deco-mail templates from the site "どこでもSANYO" for various usages.

1 Select data to download from a site and press ●.

- Download is canceled by pressing ✉ [Cancel].

2 Press 2ABC か "Save".

Saved Menu icon, National holidays, Dictionary data, or Category icons are saved to "Tool" → "Original data". Deco-mail templates are saved in "Data box" → "My picture" → "Deco-mail picture" folder.

- Press 1 あ "Yes" to download Deco-mail template. Press 2ABC か "No" to cancel.

■ **Displaying data**

Press 1 あ "View".

- Press 1 あ "Preview" to preview Deco-mail templates.

■ **Setting data directly after saving**

Press 3DEF さ "Set".

- Following operations: →P382 "Displaying/registering original data"

■ **Displaying data property**

Press 4GHI た "File property".

■ **Returning without saving**

Press 5JKL な "Return" ▶ Press 1 あ "Yes".

- Press 2ABC か "No" to cancel.

3 Press 5JKL な "Return".

Information

- The number of data allowed to save in FOMA terminals, and the maximum size →P354
- About the site "どこでもSANYO (Dokodemo SANYO)" →P196
- When there is not enough available storage space for still images to be saved or the number of images exceeds the allowable maximum number →P389

Downloading Chara-den from sites

Download and save favorite Chara-den from sites.

1 Select a Chara-den to download and press ●.

- Download is canceled by pressing ✉ [Cancel].

2 Press 2ABC か "Save".

Saved Chara-den is placed in "Data box" → "Chara-den" folder.

■ Playing Chara-den
Press 1 "Play".

■ Setting Chara-den to video-phone substitutive images directly after saving
Press 3 "Substitutive image" ▶ Press 1 "Yes".

■ Displaying Chara-den property
Press 4 "File property".

■ Returning without saving
Press 5 "Return" ▶ Press 1 "Yes".
- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

3 Press 5 "Return".

Information

- The number of data allowed to save in FOMA terminals, and the maximum size →P354
- If deleting Chara-den preinstalled by default, you can download from the site "どこでもSANYO (Dokodemo SANYO)". →P196
- When there is not enough available storage space for still images to be saved or the number of images exceeds the allowable maximum number →P389

Useful functions of i-mode

By using phone numbers/mail addresses/URL displayed on sites, functions of Voice-phone/Video-phone (Phone To/AV Phone To), composing i-mode mails (Mail To) or connecting to sites (Web To) are available. You can also save the data in Phonebook.
- Some functions may not be supported in some sites.
- When receiving mails from PC etc., Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To function may not be available.

Using Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To

1 Display a site or mail with the phone number, E-mail address or URL.

Functions available by selecting the phone number

- Up to 26 digits can be recognized.

1 Select a phone number and press ●.

2 Press 1 "Dial phone call".
- Press 2 "Dial video-phone" to make a video-phone call.

■ Making video-phone calls by selecting an image
①Press 3 "Video-phone image".
②Press 1 "Me" or 2 "Chara-den".
- When pressing 2 "Chara-den", select the Chara-den and press ●.

Registering to Phonebook

Press 4 GHI た "New to phonebook".

- Following operations: →P99 "Registering entry in FOMA terminal phonebook" Step 2 to 6, P104 "Registering entry into UIM (FOMA card) Phonebook" Step 2 to 4
- To add an entry to Phonebook, press 5 JKL な "Add to phonebook", select Phonebook and press ●. Following operations: →P111 "Editing saved Phonebook entries" Step 2 to 4

Copying a phone number

Press 6 MNO は "Copy phone number".

The phone number is copied. Copied data is registered as Paste data.

3 Press 1 あ "Dial".

- Press 2 ABC か "Cancel" to return to the previous screen.

Making a call with Caller ID

①Press 3 DEF さ "Caller ID".

②Press 2 ABC か "Notify callerID".

- Press 1 あ "Notify no callerID" to make a call without Caller ID.

Making a call with IDD prefix

①Press 4 GHI た "Add/Delete number".

②Press one of 1 あ to 4 GHI た.

Prefix	: Selects the prefix code registered in the Prefix list and press ●. Additional settings of Caller ID and Add/Delete number are also available to make.
Int'l access code	: Adds the prefix code registered as IDD prefix. Additional settings of Caller ID and Add/Delete number are also available to make.
Multinumber	: Select the phone number registered as Multinumber and press ●. Additional settings of Caller ID and Add/Delete number are also available to make. Multinumber →P449
Delete	: Deletes the phone number added.

③Press 1 あ "Dial".

- Press 2 ABC か "Cancel" to return to the previous screen.

Functions available by selecting an E-mail address

- Up to 50 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be recognized.

1 Select an E-mail address and press ●.

2 Press 1 あ "Compose message".

- Following operations: →P242 "Composing and sending i-mode mail" Step 4 to 6

Registering to Phonebook

Press 2 ABC か "New to phonebook".

- Following operations: →P99 "Registering entry in FOMA terminal phonebook" Step 2 to 6, P104 "Registering entry into UIM (FOMA card) Phonebook" Step 2 to 4
- To add an entry to Phonebook, press 3 DEF さ "Add to phonebook", select Phonebook and press ●. Following operations: →P111 "Editing saved Phonebook entries" Step 2 to 4

■ Copying E-mail addresses

Press 4 "Copy E-mail".

E-mail address is copied. Copied data is registered as Paste data.

Functions available by selecting URL

1 Select a URL and press ●.

2 Press 1 "Connect to site".

■ Registering to Bookmark

Press 2 "Register bookmark".

- Following operations : →P204 "Registering in Bookmark" Step 2 to 3

■ Registering to Phonebook

Press 3 "New to phonebook".

- Following operations: →P99 "Registering entry in FOMA terminal phonebook" Step 3 to 6
- To add an entry to Phonebook, press 4 "Add to phonebook", select Phonebook and press ●. Following operations: →P111 "Editing saved Phonebook entries" Step 2 to 4

■ Copying URL

Press 5 "Copy URL".

URL is copied. Copied data is registered as Paste data.

3 Press i [Connect].

Information

- When several addresses are listed, Mail To function may not be available.
- Press i [Function] ▶ Press 5 "New to phonebook" or 6 "Add to phonebook" to register from Bookmark list screen.
- Press i [Function] ▶ Press 3 "New to phonebook" or 4 "Add to phonebook" to register from URL history on "Go to location".

i-mode setting

Making i-mode settings

Set each function regarding i-mode.

1 Press i ▶ Press i-mode setting.

Menu	Function	Page
Font size	Sets Font size to display sites or MessageR/F.	P221
Scroll	Sets the number of scrolling lines to display sites, Screen memo or MessageR/F.	P221
Image display	Sets whether to display images when displaying sites, Screen memo or MessageR/F.	P220
Message auto-display	Sets MessageR/F to display automatically when receiving.	P223

Menu	Function	Page
Melody att. message	Sets whether to play melodies attached to MessageR/F automatically.	P223
i-motion auto play	Sets whether to play downloaded i-motion automatically.	P232
Use registered data	Sets whether to use the registered data for displaying sites or Flash movies.	P220
Sound effect	Sets whether to play Sound effect with Flash movies of sites or Screen memo.	P220
Check new message	Checks the storage of i-mode mails or MessageR/F in the i-mode Center. • The setting is the same as "Mail setting" in Check new message setting.	P284
Connection timeout	Sets the timeout to connect to the i-mode Center.	P218
Host setting	Sets Host for the services except i-mode.	P219
Certif. Center host	Sets Host to use services except FirstPass.	P229
Certificate	Sets Valid/Invalid for Certificates required to SSL connection, and confirms details.	P227
Client certificate	Enables a user to apply to issue or download Client certificate form the FirstPass center.	P228
Check i-mode setting	Enables a user to check "i-mode setting".	P221
Reset i-mode	Resets "i-mode setting" to the default.	P221

Setting Connection timeout <Connection timeout>

Default	60 seconds

Sets the time to terminate the connection automatically when no reply returns from the site.

1 Press ▶ Press ▶ Press ▶ Press 1.

2 Press one of 1 to 3.

60 seconds : Terminates the connection automatically after 60 seconds without any reply.
90 seconds : Terminates the connection automatically after 90 seconds without any reply.
Unlimited (no setting) : Does not cancel connection.

Information

• Even being set to "Unlimited", connection with the i-mode Center may be terminated under poor radio wave condition.

Changing Host from i-mode (ISP connection communication) <Host setting>

Default	i-mode (UIM (FOMA Card))

No setting change is needed for general use.

Sets Host for the services other than i-mode.

- Up to 10 Hosts can be registered.
- Default Host on subscribing i-mode differs according to the region where the subscription is made.
- Separate subscription to the provider is required to use ISP connection communication. Some provider services may be required optional fee.
- i-mode service is unavailable when Host is changed.

1 Press (i) ▶ Press i-mode setting ▶ Press (○) ▶ Press 2ABC かな.

2 Select "Unregistered" and press (i) [Edit].

■ Changing to Host previously set

Select the preset Host and press (●).

■ Returning settings to use i-mode

Press 1 ✱ "i-mode(UIM)".

■ Deleting the preset Host

①Select the preset Host and press (✉) [Delete].
②Enter the terminal security code and press (●).
③Press 1 ✱ "Yes".

- Press 2ABC かな "No" to cancel.

3 Enter the terminal security code and press (●).

4 Enter the title and press (●).

- Up to 10 two-byte (Full Mark)/20 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

5 Enter the Host name and press (●).

- Up to 99 one-byte (Half Mark) alphanumeric characters and marks can be entered.

6 Enter the Host address and press (●).

- Up to 30 one-byte (Half Mark) alphanumeric characters and marks can be entered.

7 Confirm the contents and press (i) [Complete].

Host is changed.

Information

- Note that the packet communication fee is not included in the Pake-Houdai service when connecting to the services other than i-mode.
- You cannot set or change Host during communication.

Setting whether to use registered data for displaying Flash movies <Registered data settings>

Default	Use

Sets whether to let Flash movies of Screen memo or sites use the registered data of FOMA terminal. Following registered data is used by Flash movies:

- Battery level
- Reception level
- Time information
- Ringer volume
- Select language
- Model information

1 **Press (i) ▶ Press i-mode setting ▶ Press 7PQRS.**

2 **Press 1 "Use" or 2ABC "Not use".**

Setting whether to play Sound effect of Flash movies <Sound effect>

Default	Play

Sets whether to play Sound effect with Flash movies of sites or Screen memo.

1 **Press (i) ▶ Press i-mode setting ▶ Press 8TUV.**

2 **Press 1 "Play" or 2ABC "Not play".**

Information

- Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 1 "Sound effect" to operate when displaying sites.
- Sound effects with some Flash movies may not be played, even being set to "Play".

Setting not to display the images <Image display>

Default	Display

Sets whether to display images when displaying sites, Screen memo or MessageR/F.

1 **Press (i) ▶ Press i-mode setting ▶ Press 3DEF.**

2 **Press 1 "Display" or 2ABC "Not display".**

appears on sites instead of the undisplayed images.

- Flash movies are not displayed when "Not display" is set.

Information

- Images attached to MessageR/F are displayed, even when "Not display" is set.
- Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 4GHI "Image display", to operate while displaying sites.
- Some images may not be displayed correctly even when "Display" is set.

Setting Font size <Font size>

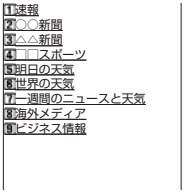
Default	i-mode : Standard Message : Standard

Sets Font size to display sites or MessageR/F.

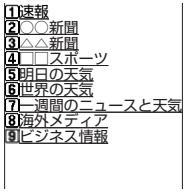
1 **Press ▶ Press ▶ Press 1.**

2 **Press 1 "i-mode" or 2 "Message".**

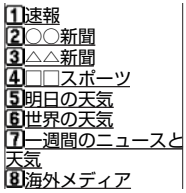
3 **Press one of 1 to 3.**



Small : 16 dots



Standard : 20 dots



Large : 24 dots

Setting the number of scrolling lines <Scroll>

Default	1-line

Sets the number of scrolling lines by pressing ◎ while displaying sites, Screen memo or MessageR/F.

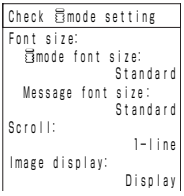
1 **Press ▶ Press ▶ Press 2.**

2 **Press one of 1 to 5.**

Checking the i-mode setting <Check i-mode setting>

Enables a user to check "i-mode setting".

1 **Press ▶ Press ▶ Press ◎ ▶ Press 6.**



Displays the details of the setting.

Resetting i-mode setting to default <Reset i-mode setting>

Resets "i-mode setting" to the default.

1 **Press ▶ Press ▶ Press ◎ ▶ Press 7.**

2 **Enter the terminal security code and press ●.**

See next page

3 Press (1) "Yes".

- Press (2) "No" to cancel.

Receive message

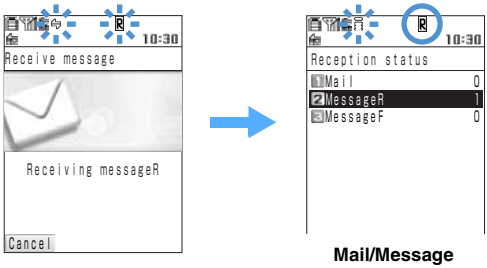
When receiving MessageR/F

MessageR/F is received automatically when FOMA terminal is within the service area. The received MessageR/F is saved in FOMA terminal.

- Up to 100 MessageR/50 MessageF can be saved.
- MessageR/F sent under following conditions are to be stored in the i-mode Center:
  - During a Video-phone call
  - Under Self mode
  - Exchanging infrared data
  - The power is OFF
  - Out of i-mode service area
  - Receiving SMS
  - When MessageR/F list is full of protected/unread messages
  - Connecting to FirstPass center

1 Receive MessageR/F.

⇦ and R / F blink while receiving messages. When completing receiving messages, ⊂⊃ blinks and R or F appears.



Mail/Message Reception status

MessageR/F ring tone plays, and the number of received message is displayed with lighting/blinking incoming call lamp.

- Press (✉) [Cancel] to cancel receiving MessageR/F. However, MessageR/F may be received depending on the receiving condition.
- When folding FOMA terminals, the Reception status is displayed on Backside-display. →P33
- With no key operation for about 30 seconds after displaying Reception status, the screen automatically returns to the screen before receiving. When receiving messages in auto-display setting, unread MessageR/F contents are automatically displayed without any key operation before returning from Reception status screen.
- Under Multitask, auto-display function is unavailable.

Displaying new MessageR/F

<ex> Displaying received MessageR

1 Press 2ABC "MessageR" on Reception status screen.

- Press 3DEF "MessageF" to display MessageF.

2 Select MessageR.

- Reading MessageR/F →P225

Information

- Receiving screen and Reception status screen may not be displayed depending on Display priority setting. →P287
- When FOMA terminal receives MessageR/F, the MessageR/F in the i-mode Center is deleted.
- When there is not enough storage space for MessageR/F, or exceeding the maximum allowable numbers, unprotected and already read MessageR/F are overwritten in order from the oldest. Be sure to protect necessary MessageR/F to keep. →P225
- If no space is available to overwrite with full of unread or protected MessageR/F, reception of MessageR/F is canceled and R (orange) or F (orange) appears on the screen. →P31
- When MessageR/F remains in the i-mode Center, R or F appears. Note that there may be some conditions that MessageR/F are not displayed (ex: when powered off or out of service area). Also when the number of stored messages (→P193) becomes full in the i-mode Center, R (orange) or F (orange) appears.
- When failed to receive mails, retry receiving by checking new message.

Displaying MessageR/F automatically <Message auto-display>

Default	MessageR preferred

Sets MessageR/F to display automatically when receiving.

1 Press i ▶ Press i-mode setting ▶ Press 4GHI.

2 Press one of 1 to 5JKL.

MessageR preferred : Automatically displays MessageR preferentially.
MessageR only : Automatically displays MessageR only.
MessageF preferred : Automatically displays MessageF preferentially.
MessageF only : Automatically displays MessageF only.
Not auto display : Does not display MessageR/F automatically.

Automatically playing melody attached to MessageR/F <Melody att. message>

Default	Auto play

When displaying MessageR/F with a melody attached, set whether to play the melody automatically.

1 Press i ▶ Press i-mode setting ▶ Press 5JKL.

2 Press 1 "Auto play melody" or 2ABC "Not auto play melody".

Check new message

Checking MessageR/F

Check whether MessageR/F is received in the i-mode Center while the terminal has been out of service area or powered off.

- Note that new messages cannot be checked under the poor radio wave condition.

1 Press ⓘ ▶ Press Check new message.

Receive i-mode mails when MessageR/F is stored in the i-mode Center.

- The operation for checking i-mode mails is the same as for checking MessageR/F.

Information

- If any MessageR/F is saved in the i-mode Center, R or F appears. Note that there may be some conditions that MessageR/F are not displayed (ex: when powered off or out of service area).
- The default setting of checking new message is to receive all mails of "i-mode mail"/ "MessageR"/"MessageF". To avoid receiving MessageR or MessageF, release the settings.

MessageR/MessageF

Displaying MessageR/F stored in message boxes

The received MessageR/F is saved in FOMA terminal.

<ex> Displaying MessageR

1 Press ⓘ ▶ Press MessageR.

Displays MessageR list screen.

- Press MessageF to display MessageF.

2 Select a MessageR and press ●.

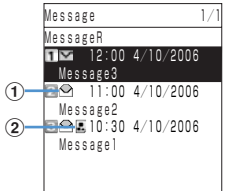
Displays the MessageR screen.

Information

- When setting "Attach melody setting" to "Auto-play", displays MessageR/F with melodies and automatically starts playing melodies with the volume set on Ring tone setting each for MessageR and MessageF. Press ● to stop playing the melody halfway.
- Press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press 3 "Check attachment" to check attachment files of received messages.
- Images displayed on received messages can be saved in FOMA terminal. →P264
- Melodies can be saved in FOMA terminal. The operation is the same as saving melodies from sites. →P262
- The function of Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To is available. →P215

Reading MessageR/F list screen

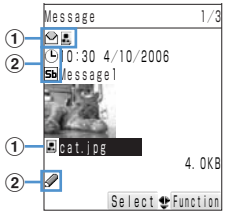
Reading MessageR/F list



① Message type
- : Unread message
- : Read message
- : Unread message (Protected)
- : Unread message (Protected)

② Attachment type
- : Still image
- : Melody
- : Still image/Melody (UIM (FOMA card) not inserted etc.)
- : Invalid file
- : Still image (Deleted)
- : Melody (Deleted)

Reading MessageR/F screen



① Message type/Attachment type are the same as MessageR/F list screen.

② Item type
- : Received date and time
- Sb : Subject
- : Message

Reloading images in MessageR/F <Reload image>

Reloads an image in a message which is failed to retrieve.

- Some images may not be displayed even attempted reloading.

1 Press ⓘ [Function] on MessageR/F list screen ▶ 4GHI "Reload image".

The image is reloaded.

Protecting MessageR/F <Protect >

- You can protect MessageR/F up to the maximum savable number.

1 Select a MessageR/F on MessageR/F screen, and press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press 2ABC "Protect".

- The icon of protected MessageR/F changes from to .

Releasing the protection of MessageR/F

①Select a MessageR/F and press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press 2ABC "Release".

②Press 1 "Release".

- Press 2ABC "Release all" and press 1 "Yes", to release all the protected MessageR/F.

Information

- Press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Protect" to protect MessageR/F displayed on MessageR/F screen. Press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Release" to release protection.

Sorting MessageR/F <Sort>

Sorts MessageR/F list temporarily.

1 Press ✉ [Sort] on MessageR/F list screen.

2 Press one of 1 to 4.

Rcptn date (new → o) : Sorts messages by reception date from new to old.
Rcptn date (old → n) : Sorts messages by reception date from old to new.
Subject (ascend.) : Sorts by subjects in ascending order.
Subject (descend.) : Sorts by subjects in descending order.

Information

- When MessageR/F screen is closed, the sorting order returns to "Rcptn date (new → o)".

Displaying MessageR/F after searching <Search>

You can search MessageR/F by specifying the search requirement from MessageR/F list screen.

1 Select a MessageR/F on MessageR/F list screen, and press i [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Search".

2 Press one of 1 to 4.

The number of the selected search requirement is displayed.

Search unread : Extracts unread MessageR/F.
Search read : Extracts read MessageR/F.
Search protected : Extracts protected MessageR/F.
Search attached : Extracts MessageR/F with attachments.

Re-searching after search

Press i [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Search" ▶ Press 1 "Re-search".

- The following operations are the same as Step 2.
- First search result is deleted.

Returning from the search result

Press i [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Search" ▶ Press 2 "Release search".

Deleting MessageR/F < Delete >

You can delete received MessageR/F.

- Protected MessageR/F cannot be deleted. Release the protection of MessageR/F first and then delete them.

1 Select a MessageR/F on MessageR/F list screen, and press i [Function] ▶ Press 3 "Delete".

2 Press 1 "Delete".

Deleting by option

①Press 2 "Delete option".

②Select a MessageR/F and press ●.

- Press ● to release.

③Press i [Exec.]

Deleting all

①Press 3 "Delete all".

②Enter the terminal security code and press ●.

- Press 3 "Delete all srchd" while displaying searching log.

3 Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Information

- Press i [Function] ▶ Press 5 "Delete" to delete from MessageR/F screen.

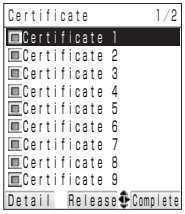
SSL certificate

Using SSL certificate

Sets Valid/Invalid of Certificates which is required for SSL connection, and confirms details.

- All certificates are set to be Valid by default.
- When you have not downloaded Client certificate, "Client certificate" is not displayed.
- When Blue UIM (FOMA card) is inserted in FOMA terminal, "DoCoMo certificate" or "Client certificate" is not displayed.

1 Press i ▶ Press i-mode setting ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 4.



2 Select a certificate.

- Press ● to switch between Valid/Invalid.

Checking the contents of the certificate

Select the certificate and press ✉ [Detail].

3 Press i [Complete] to complete the setting.

Information

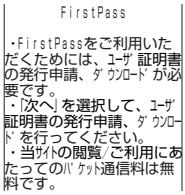
- Certificates are issued by the certifiers and saved in the FOMA terminal by default.
- DoCoMo certificate is required to connect to the FirstPass Center or FirstPass compatible sites, and saved in UIM (FOMA card) of green color.
- Client certificate is required to connect to FirstPass compatible sites and can be downloaded from the FirstPass Center. The downloaded certificate is saved in UIM (FOMA card) of green color.

Setting FirstPass

You can apply for issuance of Client certificate or download it from the FirstPass center.

- For connecting to FirstPass compatible sites, download Client certificate and save it to the green UIM (FOMA card). You cannot connect to the sites when blue UIM (FOMA card) is inserted.
- Set the date and time to connect to the FirstPass center. →P50
- The screens and operations displayed on the FirstPass center are subject to change.
- While connecting to the FirstPass center, you cannot send/receive the mails or receive MessageR/F.

1 Press ▶ Press ▶ Press ▶ Press 5JKL.



2 Select "English", and press ●.

3 Press 1あ "Request your certificate".

■ **Using FirstPass for the first time**

Read "The usage regulation" carefully and agree to use FirstPass.

■ **Revoking the request of Certificate**

Select "Other settings" and select "Revoke your certification". Enter PIN2 code and follow to the screen indication.

4 Check the contents on the screen, select "Yes" and press ●.

5 Press ●.

6 Enter PIN2 code and press ●.

7 Confirm the message, select "Download" and press ●.

8 Confirm the contents on the screen, select "Continue" and press ●.

Information

- Packet communication fee for connecting to or using the FirstPass center is free of charge.
- Packet communication charge is included in Pake-Houdai service for connecting to FirstPass compatible sites under i-mode .
- For issuing Client certificate newly or for update, be sure to download after requesting to issue. Client certificate without requesting issuance cannot be downloaded.
- Client certificate is the proof of your subscription to the FOMA service. Downloaded Client certificate is saved to the green UIM (FOMA card) and used in the FirstPass supported sites (supporting Client certificate).
- If FirstPass PC software is installed in PC from the bundled CD-ROM, you can connect FOMA terminal to PC and perform communication using the FirstPass. Refer to "FirstPass Manual" in CD-ROM for details. To view "FirstPass Manual" (PDF format), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later is recommended) is needed. If Adobe Reader is not installed in your PC, you can download the latest version from the Adobe Systems Internet site (Additional communication fee is charged). Refer to Adobe Systems Internet site for details.

Using FirstPass

- FirstPass is DoCoMo's electronic authentication service. Using FirstPass allows client authentication, in which a site and FOMA terminal exchange and verify each other's certificate for authenticating each other.
- You can use FirstPass in Internet communication from a FOMA terminal, and Internet communication in the condition that FOMA terminal is connected to a PC. To use the FirstPass with PC, FirstPass PC software bundled in the CD-ROM is needed.
- Before requesting Client certificate, be sure to read "FirstPass usage regulation" displayed on the screen and accept the terms and conditions.
- PIN2 code is required to use Client certificate.
- All operations made after the entry of the PIN2 code are regarded as operations you made. Use abundance of caution not to let the UIM (FOMA card) or PIN2 code used by any third party.
- If the UIM (FOMA card) is lost or stolen, you can revoke the Client certificate by contacting "DoCoMo Information Center" on the back of this manual.
- In no circumstances shall DoCoMo be put under any obligation by or held responsible for sites and information provided by FirstPass compatible sites. Any issue that arises must be settled between you and the FirstPass compatible site concerned.
- Neither DoCoMo nor certification organizations provides any guarantee for security, etc. in use of FirstPass or SSL. Use the services on your own judgment and responsibility.

Certificate center host setting

Change the Host for certificate

Default	DoCoMo

Sets Host for downloading Client certificate. If changing the setting, you cannot connect to the FirstPass Center.

No setting change is needed for general use.

1 Press i ▶ Press i-mode setting ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 3DEF.

See next page

2 Select "Unregistered" and press ⓘ [Edit].

■ Changing to the preset user-defined Host
Press 2ABC "User defined host".

■ Resetting the setting to use FirstPass
Press 1 "DoCoMo".

■ Deleting the user-defined Host
①Select "User defined host" and press ✉ [Delete].
②Enter the terminal security code and press ●.
③Press 1 "Yes".
- Press 2ABC "No" to cancel.

3 Enter the terminal security code and press ●.

4 Enter the Host name and press ●.

- Up to 99 one-byte (Half Mark) alphanumeric characters and marks can be entered.

5 Enter the Host address and press ●.

- Up to 100 one-byte (Half Mark) alphanumeric characters and marks can be entered.

6 Confirm the contents and press ⓘ [Complete].

Host is changed.

i-motion

Download movies or sounds (i-motion) from i-mode/Internet sites to FOMA terminals, and you can play or set to Ring tone (Chaku-motion). (Some unsupported i-motion cannot be set as Chaku-motion.)

i-motion type

i-motion is divided into two main types. The downloaded type of i-motion depends on sites.

■ Standard type
Enables a user to save to FOMA terminal.
Some standard i-motion may not be saved.
- Playable after downloading (up to 500 KB)
- Playable while downloading (up to 500 KB)

■ Streaming type (not applicable to this FOMA SA800i)
Streaming is the type to play and download data simultaneously, and the data is to be deleted after being played. Data up to 2 MB can be played, however, cannot be repeated or saved to FOMA terminal.

Downloading i-motion from sites

Download i-motion from sites, play and save.

- Some downloaded i-motion may not be saved to FOMA terminals.
- Unable to download or play i-motion data in ASF format. i-motion data only in MP4 (Mobile MP4) format can be downloaded and/or played.

1 Select an i-motion to download from a site, and press ●.

Starts downloading i-motion.

- When Auto play setting for i-motion is set to "Auto play" on, i-motion starts playing automatically. If not set, Downloaded data menu is displayed.
- Press ✉ [Cancel] to stop downloading.

■ i-motion playable while downloading

When Auto play setting for i-motion is set to "Auto play" on, i-motion starts playing automatically.

2 Press 1あ "Play".

- Following operations are available while playing:
  - ●: Pause/Resume
  - ✉: Stop
  - ▷: Fast-forward
  - ◁: Rewind
  - ▽: Adjust volume
- Following operations are available while pausing:
  - ▷: Step-forward
  - ◁: Step-rewind
- Unable to play with the functions of fast-forward, rewind, step-forward and step-rewind while downloading.

■ Saving i-motion

Press 2ABC か "Save".

- Saved i-motion is stored in "Data box" → "i-motion" → "i-mode" folder.

■ Setting i-motion as Stand-by display, etc.

Press 3DEF さ "Set".

- Following operations: →P369 "Setting movie/i-motion as Phone receive call etc." Step 3

■ Displaying the property of i-motion

Press 4GHI た "File property".

See next page

Returning to sites without saving

Press 5 "Return" ▶ Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Information

- The number allowed to save in FOMA terminal, and the maximum size →P354
- Some i-motion may not be able to play while downloading data.
- Some downloaded i-motion may not play properly.
- i-motion with Playable count:
  - Play count/Play period/Play duration may be set to some i-motion data. i-motion restricted by Play period cannot be played before or after the period. The date and time information may be reset if the battery pack is removed from FOMA terminal for a long time. In the case, you cannot play i-motion restricted by Play period or Play duration.
  - Before playing i-motion restricted by Play count/Play period/Play duration, you can confirm the status of Play count/Play period/Play duration.
- When playing i-motion while downloading, playing may stop temporarily in wait for data reception. In this case, the play is automatically resumed when starting receiving data.
- When playing i-motion while downloading, playing may stop or images may be blurred depending on the poor radio wave conditions. In this case, playing is resumed after completion of downloading i-motion.
- When there is not enough available storage space for data to be saved or number of data exceeds the maximum savable number →P389
- If you play i-motion which exceeds the bit rate* as below, dropping frames or sounds may occur.
  - Playable types after downloading
    Images : 128 Kbps
    Sound : 128 Kbps
  - Playable types while downloading
    Images : 64 Kbps
    Sound : 80 Kbps

* Bit rate indicates the data size of compressed image/audio data per second.

i-motion auto play

Setting whether to play i-motion automatically

Default	Auto play

Set whether to play downloaded i-motion automatically.

1 Press i ▶ Press i-mode setting ▶ Press 6.

2 Press 1 "Auto play" or 2 "Not auto play".

- Even when "Not auto play" is set, you can play i-motion by pressing 1 "Play" on Downloaded data menu.

Mail

What's i-mode mail? 234
Displaying Mail menu . . . . . <Mail menu> 241

Composing i-mode/Deco-mail

Composing and sending i-mode mail . . . . . <Compose/send i-mode mail> 242
Composing and sending Deco-mail . . . . . <Deco-mail> 245
Using Template 250
Attaching files . . . . . <Melody/Still image/Movie image/i-motion mail> 253
Saving i-mode mail and sending later . . . . . <Save i-mode mail> 255
Composing i-mode mail quickly . . . . . <Two-touch mail> 256

Receiving and handling i-mode mail

When receiving i-mode mail . . . . . <Mail auto receive> 256
Selecting i-mode mail to receive . . . . . <Receive option> 258
Checking i-mode mail . . . . . <Check new message> 260
Replying to i-mode mail . . . . . <Reply to i-mode mail> 260
Forwarding i-mode mail to other addresses . . . . . <Forward i-mode mail> 261
Playing/saving melody on i-mode mail . . . . . <Save melody> 262
Displaying images attached to mails . . . . . <Receive mail with image> 263
Playing/saving i-motion attached to i-motion mails . . . . . <i-motion mail> 265

Operating mail box

Displaying mails in Inbox/Outbox . . . . . <Inbox/Outbox> 266
Operation on Folder list/Mail list/Viewing screen 271
Useful functions of mail 279
Searching mails by quoting Phonebook . . . . . <Search Personal> 280

Using mail history

Using mail history . . . . . <Received address history/Sent address history> 281

Setting Mail

Setting Mail function of FOMA terminal . . . . . <Mail Setting> 282

Using Chat mail

Composing and sending Chat mail . . . . . <Compose/send Chat mail> 288

Using SMS (Short Message)

Composing and sending SMS (Short Message) . . . . . <Compose/send SMS> 293
When receiving SMS (Short Message) . . . . . <Receive SMS> 294
Checking whether SMS (Short Message) is stored . . . . . <Check SMS> 295
Setting SMS (Short Message) . . . . . <SMS settings> 296
Saving SMS (Short Message) in UIM (FOMA card) . . . . . <Operate UIM (FOMA card)> 297

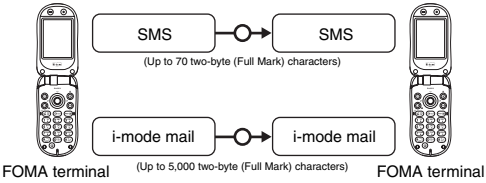
What's i-mode mail?

FOMA terminal provides 2 mail functions: i-mode mail and SMS.

- Application for i-mode service is required for i-mode mail.
- SMS is available without applying i-mode.

Sending/receiving mails

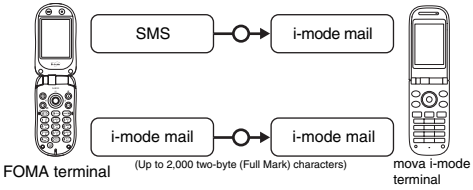
FOMA terminal ➔ FOMA terminal



FOMA terminal ➔ mova i-mode terminal

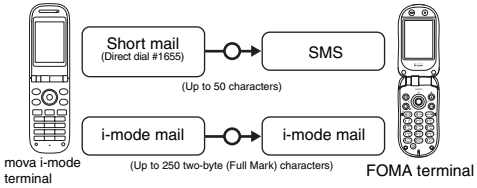
An SMS sent from FOMA terminal is received as an i-mode mail at mova i-mode terminal.

* SMS cannot be sent from FOMA terminal to mova i-mode terminal when "SMS report request" (➔P296) is set to "ON".



mova i-mode terminal ➔ FOMA terminal

You can receive i-mode mail and Short Mail sent from mova i-mode terminal. Short Mail is received as SMS.



* Short Mail is the service for the exchange of text messages between DoCoMo mobile phones.

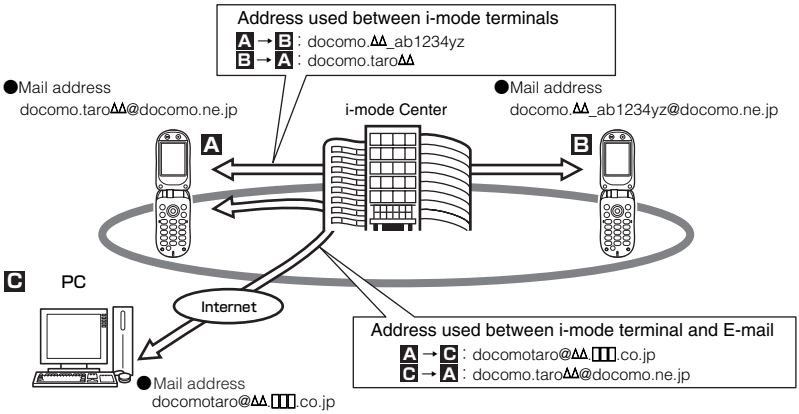
- FOMA terminals receive Short Mails sent from mova i-mode terminals as SMS.

i-mode mail

Application for i-mode service allows to exchange E-mails between i-mode terminals (including mova) or through Internet.
i-mode mail address primarily assigned with the contract is as follows.

Newly applying for i-mode service
Random alphanumeric characters are set to the address before the symbol "@". Be sure to check the user E-mail address after applying for i-mode.
(ex.) abc1234_789xyz@docomo.ne.jp
<Checking your E-mail address>
iMenu → ENGLISH → 4 Options → 1 Mail Settings → Confirm Mail Address

- When exchanging mails between i-mode terminals (including mova), the mails can be sent only by the part before the symbol "@" in the address.
- When receiving E-mail from PC, the entire address including "@docomo.ne.jp" is required.



- Sending mails →P242 - Receiving mails →P256

Receive Option
You can check and select whether to receive or to delete mails stored in the i-mode Center, before receiving them to the FOMA terminal. →P258

Operating mail settings

Following mail settings are available.

Setting procedure
iMenu → ENGLISH → 4 Options → 1 Mail Settings → each setting

* Refer to "i-mode User's Manual" handed when applying for i-mode service.

Changing E-mail address [Change Mail Address]
For example, the part of preceding "@" can be changed to other address like "docomo.taro_ab1234yz@docomo.ne.jp".

Registering Secret code [Mail settings (Other settings) → Register a Secret code]
Secret code (4 digits) can be set in addition to E-mail address when quoting Phonebook. Mails without the Secret code are rejected on receiving, so that you can avoid receiving unnecessary mails.

Resetting E-mail address [Mail settings (Other settings) → Reset Mail Address]

Renames "(mobile phone number)@docomo.ne.jp" as your mail address.

Checking E-mail address [Confirm Mail Address]

Checks the current setting of E-mail address.

Reject/receive mail settings

Restricts incoming mails making Reject/Receive mail settings in one of the following procedure.

① **Receiving mails with the specified domain**
[Receiving Mail (Reject/Receive Mail Settings) → Receive Mail from Selected Domains]
- Receives mails from the specified provider of au, Vodafone, TU-KA or Willcom.
- Also, receives mails sent from specified domains other than above providers.

* Receive all mails from NTT DoCoMo's i-mode, i-shot, charge notice service, e-billing charge notification and M-stage visual net.

② **Receiving/rejecting mails from specified address**
[Receiving Mail (Reject/Receive Mail Settings) → Receive Selected Mail, Reject Selected Mail]
- Receive/Reject all mails from specified addresses.

③ **Receiving/rejecting only i-mode mail**
[Receiving Mail (Reject/Receive Mail Settings) → Receive only i-mode mail, Reject only i-mode mail]
- Receives/rejects mails only between i-mode terminals. (Reject mails through Internet)

④ **Restricting the number of mails from mass i-mode mail senders**
[Receiving Mail (Other Settings) → Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders]
- Rejects the 200th and later i-mode mails sent from a single i-mode terminal (including a mova terminal) on the same day. Default setting is "Reject", and no setting is required to reject messages from mass i-mode mail senders.

⑤ **Rejecting Unsolicited Ad Mail**
[Receiving mail (Other Settings) → Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail]
- Rejects unsolicited ad mails with "未承諾広告※" at the beginning part of mail subject, sent for the purpose of advertising and publicity without receiver's consent. Default setting is "Reject", and no setting is required to reject unsolicited ad mails. (Senders are required by law to add "未承諾広告※" (6 two-byte characters) at the beginning part of mail subject.)

* Unable to set "Receive specified domain mail", "Receive mail from specified address", "Reject mail from specified address", "Receive i-mode mail only" and "Reject i-mode mail only" simultaneously.

⑥ **Rejecting SMS [Receiving mail (Other settings) → Set/Confirm SMS Rejection settings]**
- Make restrictions with incoming SMS messages by selecting from "Reject All SMS", "Reject Anonymous SMS", "Reject Intl. SMS", "Reject Anonymous and Intl. SMS". Also, you can check the current settings.

Checking mail setting status [Confirm Settings]

Checks the current settings including receiving/rejecting mails etc.

Restricting mail size [Limit Mail Size]

Restricts i-mode mail size to receive by the preset size.

Suspend mail service [Suspend Mail]

Suspends mail service in the i-mode Center if unnecessary.

The number of characters to send/receive

The number of characters allowed to send/receive in i-mode mails is as follows:

Item	Two-byte (Full Mark) characters (Kanji, Hiragana, Pictograms, etc.)	One-byte (Half Mark) characters (Alphanumeric, Katakana, etc.)
Subject	15 characters	30 characters
E-mail address	—	50 characters
Message	5,000 characters	10,000 characters

Information

- Message of i-mode mail can include up to 5,000 of two-byte (Full Mark) characters (10,000bytes), however, the number of characters may become smaller depending on the size of attachment files.
- When the number of characters in Message exceeds the limit, "/" or "//" is inserted at the end and remainders are deleted automatically.
- On sending i-mode mails to mova i-mode terminal, messages can contain up to 2,000 two-byte (Full Mark) characters. Also i-shot and i-motion mails are to be sent with linked URL on messages, and other attachment files are deleted.
- When the subject exceeds the limited number of characters to receive, the remainders are deleted.
- Except for exchanges between i-mode terminals (including mova), do not use one-byte (Half Mark) Katakana characters or Pictograms. Mails may not be displayed correctly on the receiving party.

Failed to receive mails

All i-mode mails received at the i-mode Center are sent to receiver's i-mode terminals immediately. However, when receiver's i-mode terminal is disconnected due to outside of service area or power off, i-mode mails are stored in the i-mode Center. Resend the stored messages up to 3 attempts at certain intervals. Also, select i-mode mails to receive in the i-mode Center with Receive option setting.

Information

- The maximum number of i-mode mails or the storage period in the i-mode Center are as follows:

Item	Maximum mails stored	Maximum storage period
i-mode mail	207 to 1,000 mails (up to approx. 2 MB)	720 hrs

- i-mode mails exceeding the maximum storage period are automatically deleted.
- The maximum number of mails stored depends on the mail size. When exceeding the maximum number of mail stored, the i-mode Center rejects to accept i-mode mails and returns to the sender with error messages. At this time, appears on the i-mode terminal. However when Receive option setting is "ON", does not appear even if the maximum number of mail is exceeded.
- Mails stored in the i-mode Center can be received by checking new message (→P260) or Receive option (→P258). You can receive new i-mode mails with other stored i-mode mails and MessageR/F.
- i-mode mails stored in the i-mode Center are deleted after received by i-mode terminals. The received i-mode mails are saved in "Inbox". →P256
- i-mode mails of extremely large volume may not be accepted in the i-mode Center.

Other convenient functions

Mail with files attached

- **Mails with melody attached**
  You can send/receive i-mode mails with melody file downloaded from i-mode/Internet sites. (Unable to send melody files prohibited to be attached to mails or output from FOMA terminals.)
  - Sending →P253 - On receiving →P262
- **Mails with image attached**
  You can send/receive i-mode mails with still image files downloaded from i-mode/Internet sites, or the external memory. (Unable to send still image files prohibited to be attached to mails or output from FOMA terminals).
  - Sending →P253 - On receiving →P263

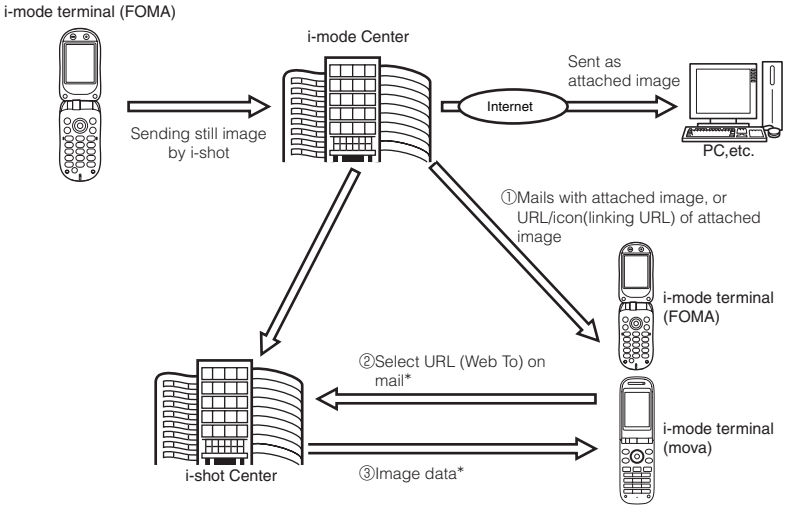
See next page

i-shot

You can send/receive still images shot with Camera as attachment files between i-mode terminals (including mova), PCs and other mobile carriers. Still images are sent with attachment file format, linked URL to browse attached still images (or icon) or the expiration date given automatically, then the images are downloaded by pressing the received URLs.

The number of characters of mails to send to mova i-mode terminal is up to 184 two-byte (Full Mark) characters (369 bytes). If multiple files are attached to mails, the attached files are deleted and only Message is notified.

- Sending →P253 - On receiving →P263



* On receiving mails containing URL of attached image

- The i-shot Center stores images for up to 10 days and deletes the images automatically after the expiration period.
- Still images up to 500 KB can be sent by i-mode terminals. When sending the mails attaching the image of the size exceeding 20 KB, the other party receives the image automatically compressed in size.

i-motion mail

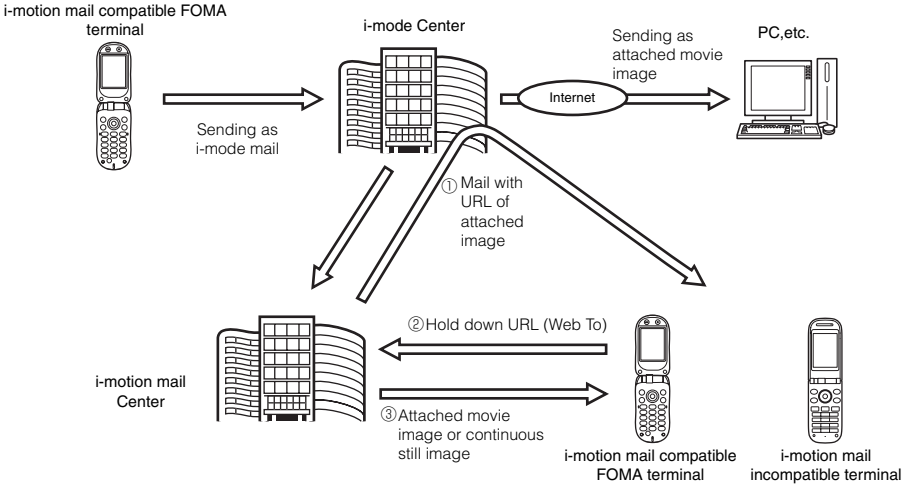
You can send/receive movie files shot with i-motion mail compatible terminals or downloaded from sites between i-motion mail compatible terminals, PC or terminals of other mobile carrier. (Unable to send movie files prohibited to be attached to mails or output from FOMA terminals).

- Sending i-motion mail →P253
- When receiving i-motion mail →P265
- Service schematic

  Movie files attached to i-motion mails are sent to the i-motion mail Center and stored. (If the destination is PC, the files are directly sent to the PC as attachment files.)

  Receiving mails with i-motion mail compatible terminals, movies can be downloaded by selecting URL displayed in Message.

  When the mails are sent to i-motion incompatible terminals, i-motion is converted to continuous still images and received as mails with URL in the messages. Receivers select displayed URL and retrieve continuous still images.



- The i-motion mail Center stores images for up to 10 days and deletes the images automatically after the expiration period.
- Receivable movie images are up to 500 KB by i-motion mail compatible terminals. Retrieved movie images are to be automatically resized depending on the display size of i-motion mail compatible terminals.

Deco-mail

You can compose and send original mails by changing the character size or background color, or by pasting images in Message in editing i-mode mail, and receive delightful decoration mails. (Some decorated mails received from PCs may not be the same operation as on PCs since some decorations are incompatible to i-mode terminals.)
When Deco-mail is sent to a terminal that does not support decoration, it is received as a message with a URL. Receivers select displayed URL in the messages and browse Deco-mail.

- Editing Deco-mail →P245
- Sending Deco-mail →P245
- Compatible model : Available for Deco-mail compatible terminals. Refer to "i-mode User's Manual" for details.

Sending mail to multiple addresses

You can send i-mode mails to multiple (up to 5) addresses at the same time. →P243

Information

- The communication fee is the same as sending one mail. (However, the communication fee increases corresponding to the data volume for additional addresses.)

Sending/receiving Cc/Bcc

When editing i-mode mails, sending addresses can be set as To, Cc and Bcc in the same way as on PC. Note that at least 1 address for To is required to be specified to send mails. →P243

Chat mail

You can exchange Chat mails like making conversation between multiple addresses.

Information

- Communication fee is the same as sending mails to multiple addresses simultaneously.

SMS (Short Message) settings

Exchange text messages between FOMA terminals.

- SMS received/sent can be saved in UIM (FOMA card). →P297
- SMS report request is available to inform whether the other party has received SMS that you sent. →P296

- Sending procedure→P293 - Receiving procedure→P294 - Inquiry procedure→P295

SMS (Short Message) address

The SMS address is the phone number given in the registration of service of DoCoMo.

Number of characters to send/receive

The number of characters to send/receive in SMS is as follows:
The maximum number of characters differs depending on Font type setting. →P296

Item	Font type "Japanese"	Font type "English"
Receiver	20 characters (numeric, ＊, ＃ only) *1	
Message	70 characters regardless of one-byte (Half Mark)/two-byte (Full Mark)	160 one-byte (Half Mark) characters *2

*1 21 characters when entering "+" in one-byte at the beginning of text.
*2 One-byte (Half Mark) alphanumeric characters and symbols can be sent (except for ｀｡｢｣､･ﾟ゜-).
When symbols (| ^ { } [ ] ~ ¥) are entered, the number of characters that can be sent is reduced.

Information

- Subject of the mail cannot be sent with SMS.
- If using one-byte (Half Mark) Katakana or Pictograms in the message of SMS, the other party may not be able to display characters correctly.

When being unable to receive SMS (Short Message)

SMS sent to your FOMA terminal is received by the SMS Center and sent to your FOMA terminal immediately. If your FOMA terminal fails to receive mails by powering off or being outside of service area, the SMS is stored in the SMS Center.

Information

- SMS is stored in the SMS Center for up to 72 hours. You can specify the storage period for sent SMS. →P296
- SMS exceeding the maximum storage period is automatically deleted.
- SMS stored in the SMS Center can be checked by Check SMS. →P295
- SMS stored in the SMS Center is to be deleted after received by FOMA terminal. Received SMS is stored in FOMA terminal. →P294

Displaying Mail menu

1 Press ✉ [Mail] .

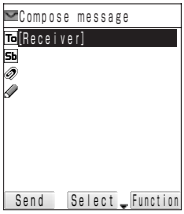
Menu	Function	Page
Mail setting	Sets various functions about mails.	P282
Search personal	Selects the phone number or E-mail address from Phonebook, and searches the applicable mail from Outbox.	P280
Compose SMS message	Composes and sends new SMS.	P293
Check new message	Checks the storage of mails or MessageR/F in the i-mode Center.	P224, 260
Inbox	Displays received mails.	P266
Compose message	Composes and sends new i-mode mail.	P242
Receive option	Receives selected mails from the i-mode Center.	P258
Outbox	Displays sent mails.	P266
Chat mail	Exchanges Chat mails like making conversation between multiple addresses.	P288
Check SMS	Checks the storage of SMS in the SMS Center.	P295
Unsent messages	Displays the mails saved without sending or mails failed to be sent.	P266
Deco-mail template	Displays contents of templates and composes mails. Templates can be newly composed.	P250

Information

- Alternatively, press ● ▶ Press ✉ to display Main menu.

Composing and sending i-mode mail

1 Hold down ✉ [Mail] for over a second.



Compose message screen

2 Select To "Receiver" and press ●.

3 Press 6 MNO "Direct input", enter an address and press ●.

- Up to 50 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

■ Quoting from Phonebook

① **Press 1 "Quote phonebook".**
- To specify an address for a mail using Multitask while editing Phonebook, you can quote Phonebook after you finish editing Phonebook.

② **Select a Phonebook entry and press ●.**
③ **Select an E-mail address and press ●.**

■ Quoting addresses from Sent/Received addresses history

① **Press 2 ABC "Quote sent adrs" or 3 DEF "Quote rcvd adrs".**
② **Select an address history and press ●.**
③ **Press ●.**

■ Quoting from Sending group

- Requires to register Sending group at "Mail setting" in advance.

① **Press 4 GHI "Quote sending grp".**
② **Select a group by pressing ⊙.**
③ **Select an E-mail address.**
- Press ● to release the unnecessary address.

④ **Press i [Complete].**

■ Quoting from Profile

① **Press 5 JKL "Quote profile".**
② **Select an E-mail address and press ●.**

■ Editing address

① **Select an E-mail address and press ●.**
② **Press 1 "Change receiver".**

Changing To, Cc and Bcc

① **Select an E-mail address and press ●.**

② **Press one of 2 to 4.**

- To is the main receiver address. You cannot send mails without specifying any address for To.
- Cc is the address for sharing contents of mails with other receivers in addition to the main receiver.
- Bcc is the address for sharing contents of the mail without showing the address to other receivers. The E-mail address entered in Bcc is hidden to other receivers.

Deleting address

① **Select an E-mail address and press ●.**

② **Press 5 "Delete receiver" ▶ Press 1 "Yes".**

Adding Receiver

Receiver column is automatically added after entering a receiver. Up to 5 receivers can be entered in the columns of To, Cc, and Bcc, to send the mail at one time (Multiple address).

- The communication fee is the same as for sending one mail. (However, the communication fee increases corresponding to the data volume for additional addresses.)
- The E-mail address which has already been entered cannot be entered any more.

4 Select Sb "Subject", press ●, enter subject and press ●.

- Up to 15 two-byte (Full Mark)/30 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.
- Attaching files →P253

5 Select ✎ "Message", press ●, enter the message and press ●.

- Up to 5,000 two-byte (Full Mark)/10,000 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.
- Line feeds can be inserted in the message. Press # to enter line feeds in 5-touch method. Line feeds are included in the character counts of Message.
- Message can be decorated. →P245

Entering blank spaces

Press i [Function] ▶ 7 "Input space", while entering the messages.

- Press ○ to enter a space of one-byte (Half Mark) at the end of Message. Spaces are also included in the character counts of Message.

Inserting Signature

① **Press i [Function] ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 2 "Signature", while entering the message.**

② **Press one of 1 to 3.**

- Requires to register Signature in advance. →P283
- The number of characters of Signature is included in the total character counts of Message.

Pasting Location information URL

- URL is included in the total character counts when pasting Location information URL.
- When sending mails with Location information URL to mova i-mode terminals and exceeding the character size of messages, note that the exceeded characters are deleted even in the middle of the whole URL.
- ▷ is added before the Location information URL in message.

① **Press i [Function] ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 7 "Quote loc. info", while entering the message.**

See next page

② **Press one of 1 to 6.**

Position location : Retrieves and pastes the present location information.
- Press ● on Position location screen.

From loc. history : Retrieves and pastes location information from location history.
- Select a location history and press ● ▶ Press ●.

From phonebook : Selects and pastes location information registered in Phonebook.
- Search entries in Phonebook and press ● ▶ Press ●.

From profile : Pastes location information registered in Profile.
- Press ● ▶ Press ●.

From image data : Selects and pastes location information inserted to image data.
- Select a file from a folder and press ● ▶ Press ●.

From schedule : Pastes location information registered in Schedule.
- Select a Schedule and press ● ▶ Press ●.

③ **Press 1 "Yes".**

6 Press ✉ [Send].

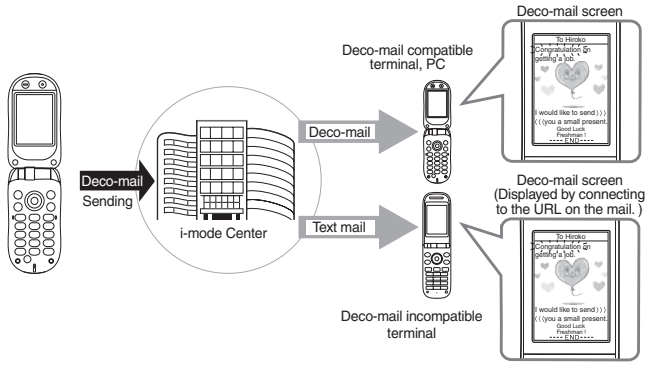
- Press ✉ [Cancel] on the connection screen to cancel connection. However, the i-mode mail may be sent depending on some operation timing.

Information

- Alternatively, press ✉ ▶ Press Compose message, to display Compose message screen.
- Under the condition of poor connection, characters may not be displayed properly on the other party.
- Even if i-mode mail has been sent correctly, the error message "Transmission failed" may be displayed under the condition of poor connection.
- Except for exchanges between i-mode terminals (including mova), do not use one-byte (Half Mark) Katakana characters or Pictograms. Message may not be displayed correctly.
- Depending on the model of i-mode terminal used by the other party, some pictograms may not be displayed properly.
- When transmission fails, an error message is displayed and the i-mode mail is saved in Unsent messages. i-mode mail can be edited/sent from Unsent messages. →P255
- When transmission is completed correctly, the i-mode mail is saved in Outbox. When there is not enough available storage space in Outbox, or exceeds the maximum savable number of sent SMS, an unprotected mail in Outbox is overwritten in order from the oldest. Be sure to protect sent mails to be preserved. →P278
- Some error messages for address unknown, etc., may not be received when messages are sent to E-mail addresses other than DoCoMo.
- When the other party registers the Secret code, enter the 4-digit Secret code after entering the phone number of other party's i-mode terminal.
- When the enough storage space is not available or exceeding the maximum number for Unsent messages or protected mails, i-mode mail cannot be composed. Delete unnecessary i-mode mails and/or SMS from Unsent message box. →P278
- The E-mail address entered in To and Cc is displayed on the other party. However, To and Cc may not be displayed depending on terminals, devices, mailing software, etc. used by the other party.
- Signature is added automatically if registered in "Signature" at Mail setting.

Composing and sending Deco-mail

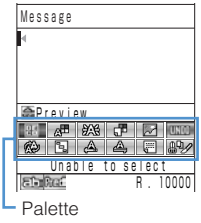
Deco-mail allows you to compose and send more expressive mails with variable Font color/size, Deco-mail picture, and inserted images shot by Camera.
Deco-mail can be composed in two ways: entering characters after specifying decoration, or setting decoration after entering characters. →P245, 248



Entering characters after specifying decoration

1 Press ✉ [Decorate] while displaying Message.

2 Select a decoration from Palette.



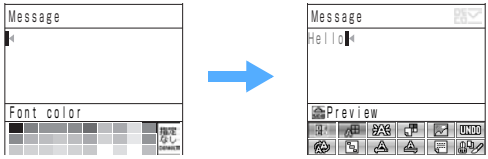
Place the cursor on the mark on Palette and press ●, then the decoration is selected. Multiple decorations can be set by selecting multiple marks. Note that "Ticker", "Swing" and "Word alignment" cannot be selected at the same time.

■ Changing Color of characters or lines (ruled lines)

① Select A and press ●, then select Font color and press ●.

- Background color can be selected from 30 colors.
- The color of Pictograms is also changed. Select "Default" by specifying the range in order to return to the default color.

② Press ✉ [Message], enter the message, and press ●.



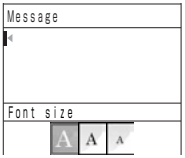
See next page

Changing Font size

① **Select** **and press ●, then select Font size and press ●.**

- Select size from "Large", "Standard" or "Small".

② **Press ✉ [Message], enter the message, and press ●.**

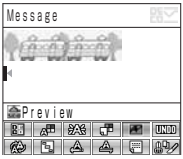


"Large" selected

Inserting images

① **Select** **and press ●, then select a folder and press ●.**

② **Select an image and press ●.**



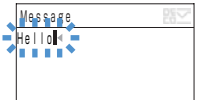
The image is inserted to the position designated by .

- Still images in JPEG or GIF format up to 10,000 bytes including Message can be attached.
- Location information URL is added after the still image, when the still image with location information is attached. When sending a mail attaching still images with the location Information, the location information attached to the still image is deleted. However, Location information URL in the message is not deleted.
- Press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 3 "File property" with the cursor pointing on the inserted image while displaying the message, the file property of the image is displayed.

Blinking characters

① **Select** **and press ●.**

② **Press ✉ [Message], enter the message, and press ●.**

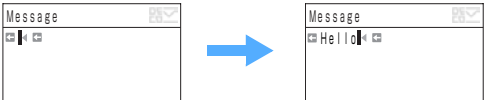


The entered characters are blinking. Blinking is stopped after a certain period of time.

Displaying ticker characters (Ticker display)

① **Select** **and press ●.**

② **Press ✉ [Message], enter the message, and press ●.**



Enter the characters between the arrow icons.

Displaying characters swinging right and left (Swing display)

① **Select** **and press ●.**

② **Press ✉ [Message], enter the message, and press ●.**

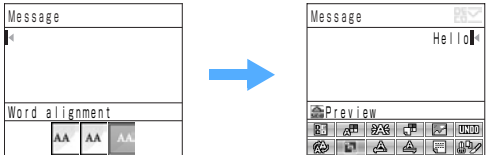
Enter the characters between the arrow icons.

Changing alignment of the word or the image

① Select [Word alignment] and press ●, then select Word alignment and press ●.

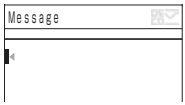
- Select from "Left", "Center" or "Right".

② Press ✉ [Message], enter the message, and press ●.



Inserting line (ruled line) to the message

Select [Line] and press ●.

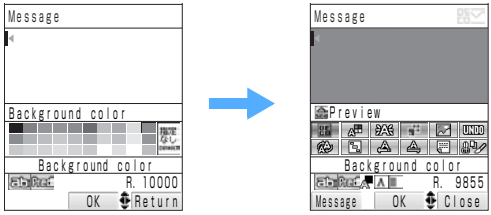


- Line (ruled line) is inserted with the color specified by [A].

Changing Background color of messages

Select [Background color] and press ●, then select Background color and press ●.

- Background color can be selected from 30 colors.
- URL may not be recognized if Background color of URL to retrieve the images/i-motion is overlapped.



Canceling the previous operation

Select [UNDO] and press ●.

Prior entry of the decoration, character, etc. is canceled.

Copying/cutting

Select [Copy/Cut] and press ●, then select "Copy" or "Cut" and press ●.

- Following operations : →P497 "Copying/cutting characters" Step 2 to 3

Pasting

Select [Paste] and press ●, then select "Paste" and press ●.

- Following operations : →P499 "Pasting characters" Step 2

Changing Decoration

① Select [Deco] and press ●.

② Place the cursor on the Start point for the decoration and press ●.

③ Place the cursor on the End point for the decoration and press ●.

④ Select a decoration from Pallet.

See next page

3 Press [i] [Close].

Confirming Decoration

Press [i] [Function] ▶ Press [○] ▶ Press [○] ▶ Press [5 JKL] "Preview".

- Confirm an accurate byte of the decoration set and the data space to be left to enter.
- Also, confirm a decoration by pressing [▷].

Resetting all decorations

① Press [i] [Function] ▶ Press [1] "Decorate mail" ▶ Press [○] ▶ Press [4 GHI] "Reset all".
② Press [1] "Yes".

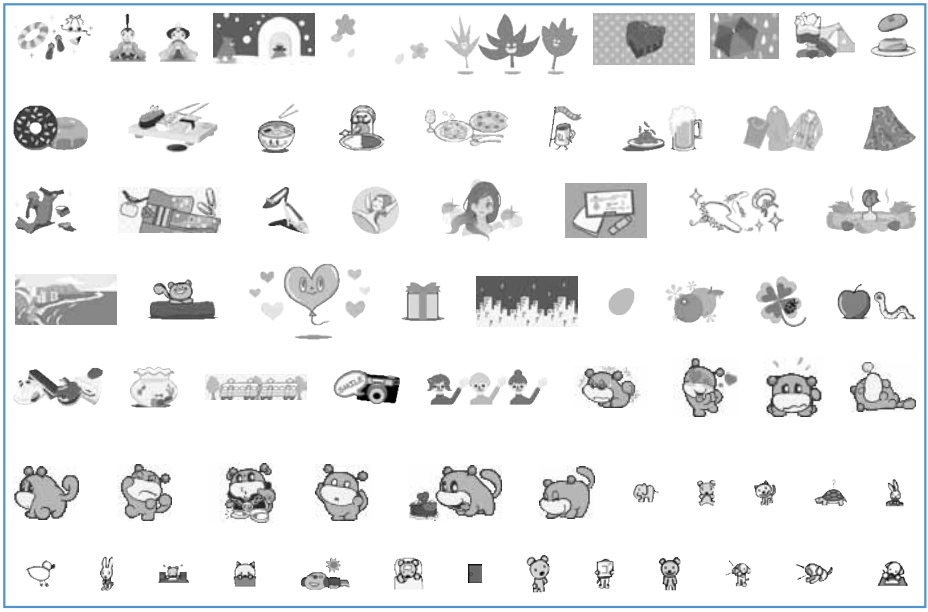
- Press [2 ABC] "No" to cancel.

Information

- Also press [i] [Function] ▶ Press [1] "Decorate mail", to operate the function while entering messages.

Images saved in "Deco-mail picture" folder

- The following images are saved in "Deco-mail picture" folder by default.



©BVIG

Decorating characters after specifying the range

You can change the preset decorations of characters or prior decorated characters.

- Insert line/Insert image/Background color/Copy/Cut/Paste cannot be operated.

1 Press [i] [Function] ▶ Press [1] "Decorate mail", while displaying Message.

2 Press [○] ▶ Press [3 DEF] "Edit decoration".

3 Place the cursor at the Start position of the range to be decorated, and press ●.

- Press i [SelectAll] to select all the text.

4 Place the cursor at the End position of the range to be decorated, and press ●.

5 Select the decoration option.

Changing Color of characters or lines (ruled lines)

Press 1 "Font color" ▶ Select the font color and press ●.

Changing Font size

Press 2 "Font size" ▶ Press one of 1 to 3.

Blinking characters

Press 4 "Blink" ▶ Press 1 "Begin".

- To end blinking, press 2 "End".

Displaying ticker characters (Ticker display)

Press 5 "Ticker" ▶ Press 1 "Begin".

- To end Ticker, press 2 "End".

Displaying characters swinging right and left (Swing display)

Press 6 "Swing" ▶ Press 1 "Begin".

- To end swinging, press 2 "End".

Changing alignment of the word or the image

Press 7 "Word alignment" ▶ Press one of 1 to 3.

Information

- Deco-mail takes over only the decoration property of "Font color", "Font size", "Blinking", "Image" and "Alignment" cut/copied from original sources. Decoration property other than above is not taken over but applied to the setting of pasting destination.
- Copied/cut Deco-mail messages can be directly pasted within the same Message input screen only. When pasting data other than on Message input screen, decoration is to be released and only text data is pasted. Also, decorations are released with other operations such as displaying Preview or inserting Signature.
- When copying/cutting the decorated message of Deco-mail, only the latest copied/cut contents are taken over with decorated data. Decorations are released on previous data, and only the text data is to be pasted.
- Even if the decorated characters are deleted, the decoration setting still remains and the number of characters to enter may be fewer. Delete characters after canceling the decoration. When deleting characters by holding down C for over a second, characters including decoration data are deleted.
- When sending a Deco-mail to an incompatible terminal, the URL to browse Deco-mail data is attached to the Message of the mail. The receiver selects the URL and display/browse the Deco-mail by connecting to the URL. Note that Deco-mail may not be received/displayed properly depending on the terminal type of the other party.
- You cannot view Deco-mail from another terminal than the receiver terminal. Thus, Deco-mail with a URL to browse Deco-mail forwarded by Deco-mail incompatible terminals, or the URL directly input cannot be viewed.
- When replying to the Deco-mail by quoting, or when forwarding the Deco-mail, the message of the mail is displayed with the decoration and the inserted images quoted.
- When receiving mails with decoration from PC etc., the decoration may not be properly displayed.
- When receiving mails with only images or lines, "Deco-mail data" is displayed on the paste data list screen.

Using Template

Compose Deco-mail using templates registered in FOMA terminal. Template is the preset patterns for Deco-mail with layouts or decorations. Compose and send Deco-mail easily by using Template.

- The following templates are preset by default (imaged screenshot).

ありがとう
(Thank you)

ごめんね
(Sorry)

お久しぶり！
(Long time no see!)

大丈夫？
(Are you OK?)

NEW YEAR
CARD

HAPPY!

花火
(Fireworks)

ゴール！
(Goal!)

バーベキュー
(Barbeque)

You Got Mail

ダルメシアン
(Dalmatian)

お花
(Flower)

海 (Sea)

ブンブン1
(Boon Boon 1)

ブンブン2
(Boon Boon 2)

ブンブン3
(Boon Boon 3)

クリスマス
(Christmas)

大好き
(Love....)

お父さんありがと
Thanks Dad

お母さんありがと
Thanks Mom

晴れないかな
(Hope the sky
clears up.)

HAPPY
BIRTHDAY

お願い
(Please)

©BVIG

Information

- You can save sent/received Deco-mails as templates. Press (i) [Function] ▶ Select "Save to template" ▶ Press (●), on Inbox/Outbox screen.
- Templates can be downloaded from the sites. Downloaded templates are saved to "My picture" → "Deco-mail picture", and you can also edit the templates. →P214

Composing Deco-mail by using templates <Select template>

1 Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 2ABC "Template", on Compose mail screen.

2 Select a template to use and press ●.

- The contents of the template are set to the Compose mail screen.
- If reading the template to add to the messages already entered, an alert is displayed to confirm whether to delete entered message. Press 1 "Yes", and select a template to overwrite the mail. Press 2ABC "No", to cancel loading templates.

3 Add/edit the contents and send the message.

Information

- Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 2ABC "Template", to operate the function while entering messages.
- Template itself cannot be attached.

Composing template

Compose/save new templates to apply to Deco-mail to compose.

1 Press ✉ ▶ Press Deco-mail template ▶ Press 1.

2 Compose a template and press ●.

- Composing procedure : →P245

3 Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2ABC "No" to cancel.

Information

- When there is not enough available storage space for a still image to be saved or number of images exceeds the allowable maximum number →P389

Displaying template list and composing templates

Displays preset template list, and you can check the contents to set on Compose message screen or edit templates.

1 Press ✉ ▶ Press Deco-mail template ▶ Press 2ABC.

2 Select a template.

■ Composing message

① Press ✉ [CompMsg] while displaying a template.

- The contents of the template are set to Compose message screen.

② Add/edit the contents and send.

See next page

Editing templates

① **Press ● while displaying a template.**
② **Add/modify the message, and press ●.**
③ **Press 1 "Overwrite" or 2 "Save new entry".**

Editing titles

① **Press i [Function] ▶ Press 3 "Edit title".**
② **Enter the title and press ●.**
- Up to 18 two-byte (Full Mark)/36 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

Displaying template property

Press i [Function] ▶ Press 4 "File property".

Editing file name of Deco-mail picture

① **Press i [Function] ▶ Press ▶ ▶ Press 2 "Edit file name".**
② **Enter a file name and press ●.**
- Up to 36 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

Sorting template

① **Press i [Function] ▶ Press ▶ ▶ Press 3 "Sort files".**
② **Press one of 1 to 7.**

Date ord (new → old)	: Sorts by date order from new to old.
Date ord (old → new)	: Sorts by date order from old to new.
Title (asc.)	: Sorts by titles in ascending order.
Title (des.)	Sorts by titles in descending order.
File size (asc.)	: Sorts by the file size in ascending order.
File size (des.)	: Sorts by the file size in descending order.
Retrieval sources	: Sorts Retrieval source in descending order.

- Only created folders by user (user folder) can be sorted by senders.

Deleting templates

1 Select a template and press i [Function] ▶ Press ▶ ▶ Press 7 "Delete".

2 Press 1 "Delete".

Deleting by option

① **Press 2 "Delete option".**
② **Select a template, and press ●.**
- Press ● to release.

③ **Press i [Exec.]**

Deleting all

① **Press 3 "Delete all in fldr".**
② **Enter the terminal security code and press ●.**

3 Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Attaching files

Sends i-mode mail with still images and melodies attached. You can also send i-motion mail with movie images or i-motion shot with FOMA terminal or downloaded from the sites.

- Attachable files are as follows :

File type	Melody in SMF format	Still image up to 10,000 bytes (JPEG, GIF)	JPEG still image from 10,001 bytes to 500 KB (large size of still image)	Movie, i-motion image less than 500 KB
Maximum number attachable to one mail	10 items		1 item	
Note	Up to 10 still images or melodies in total, and up to 10,000 bytes including the mail text can be attached. The number of attachable files may differ depending on the size of the attachment.		Only one large still image and movie image/ i-motion can be attached to one mail.	

1 Select "Attachment" on Compose message screen and press ●.

2 Attach the file.

Attaching still image

① Press 1 "Attach image", select a folder, and press ●.

② Select a still image and press ●.

The selected still image is attached.

- Select a still image and press [Play] to display the selected still image. Press CLR to return to the list screen.
- Unattachable still images cannot be selected.
- When attaching a still image with the location information onto mails, a message is displayed to confirm whether to attach. Press 1 "Paste" and the location information URL is attached onto the mail. Press 2 "Attach image only" to attach only the image. Press 3 "Cancel" not to attach.
- For still images exceeding QVGA size, the confirmation screen is displayed whether to convert to Stand-by display size (QVGA). Press 1 "Yes" ▶ Press ● to attach images. JPEG still images exceeding 500 KB are automatically converted to the file size of under 500 KB and displayed. Press ● to save to Data box and an image file is to be attached.

Attaching movie image/i-motion (i-motion mail)

① Press 2 "Attach i-motion", select a folder, and press ●.

② Select movie/i-motion and press ●.

The selected movie image/i-motion is attached.

- Select a movie image/i-motion and press [Play] to play a movie images/i-motion. Press CLR to return to the list screen.
- Unattachable movie/i-motion cannot be selected.
- Since the file size of i-motion exceeding 500 KB is too large to attach, the message is displayed to confirm whether to extract the file attachable to mails. Press 1 "Yes" and cut out movie images. →P374

See next page

Attaching Melody

① Press 3 DEF "Attach melody", select a folder, and press ●.

② Select a melody and press ●.

The selected melody is attached.

- Select a melody and press ✉ [Play] to play the melody. Press CLR to return to the list screen.
- Unattachable melodies cannot be selected.

Attaching still images/movie images immediately after shooting

① Press 4 GHI "Snap photo" or 5 JKL "Shoot movie".

② Edit and press ●.

Shot still images/movie images are attached after saving.

Shot still images/movie images are saved to "Data box" → "My picture" (still images) or "i-motion" (movie image) → "Camera" folder.

- When attaching one or more files and shooting photos or movies, a message is displayed to confirm whether to release the attached files. Press 1 "Yes" and attachments are released.

Information

- When attaching movies/i-motion/large still images, the number of characters to enter is reduced to 100 two-byte (Full Mark)/200 one-byte (Half Mark) for mail messages, and 200 two-byte (Full Mark)/400 one-byte (Half Mark) for Deco-mails.
- The files prohibited outputting from FOMA terminals cannot be attached.
- Only one JPEG still image can be attached to the mail with mova i-mode terminals. In that case, mova i-mode terminals receive the mails as i-shot mail with linked URL.
- mova i-mode terminals cannot receive the mails attached with melody or still images in GIF format.
- Up to 500 KB of shot movies can be attached to i-motion mail except the message texts. i-motion cannot be attached when exceeding the maximum size. Some i-motion may not be attached.
- When the receiver has the terminal except SA800i, sent melodies may not be played properly.
- Still images can be reduced to (240 × 320) in QVGA (→P362). The QVGA size is the size for Stand-by display and is suited for sending to i-mode terminals.
- When sending mails attached with JPEG still image exceeding 10,000 bytes to i-mode compatible terminals, the size is converted into the appropriate size to send to i-mode compatible terminals in the i-shot Center.
- A GIF still image exceeding 10,000 bytes cannot be attached to mails.
- When sending i-motion mails, movies may be degraded or displayed as continuous still images on some terminals of the other party.
- When sending a mail attaching still images with the location Information, the location information attached to the still image is deleted. However, location information URL in the message is not deleted.

Playing/changing/displaying file property/releasing of attachments

1 Select an attachment file on Compose message screen, and press ●.

■ **Playing attachment file**
Press 1 "Play".

■ **Changing attachment file**
Press 2 "Change".
- Following operations: →P253 "Attaching files" Step 2

■ **Displaying File property of attachment**
Press 3 "File property".

■ **Releasing attachment**
① Press 4 "Release".
② Press 1 "Yes".
- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Save i-mode mail

Saving i-mode mail and sending later

You can save the composed i-mode mails without sending, or edit/send the saved i-mode mails.
- In total, up to 400 sent/unsent i-mode mails and SMS can be saved to Outbox and Unsent messages.

Saving i-mode mail

Save composed i-mode mails to Unsent messages without sending.

1 Press i [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Save" on Compose message screen.
- Entering one of Subject/Receiver/Message, or attaching files allows to save mails.

2 Press 1 "Yes".

Editing/sending i-mode mails sent/saved

i-mode mails or SMS sent, saved without sending or failed to send can be edited or sent.
- The saved i-mode mails or SMS can only be sent one by one.

1 Press ✉ ▶ Press Outbox or Unsent messages.

2 Select a folder and press ●.

3 Select a mail and press ●.

4 Edit and send the mail.

Two-touch mail

Composing i-mode mail quickly

You can compose i-mode mails by simple operations to send to the addresses with Phonebook number of 0 to 99 in FOMA terminal phonebook.

- If multiple E-mail addresses are registered, the first address is to be set to the Receiver address.

<ex> Sending an i-mode mail to Phonebook number 27

1 Press Phonebook number (2ABC か 7PQRS ま in this case) on Stand-by display.

2 Press ● ▶ Press 3DEF さ "Compose message".

The first E-mail address in Phonebook is set to the Receiver address.

- No prefix before Phonebook number is required to add.
- Composing/sending i-mode mail →P242

Information

- When no Phonebook data is registered in the entered Phonebook number, you cannot compose mails.

Mail auto receive

When receiving i-mode mail

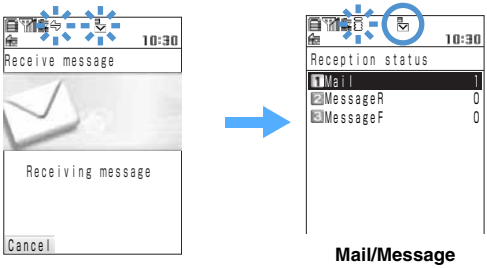
i-mode mails are received automatically when FOMA terminals are within the service area. Received i-mode mails are saved to Inbox.

- Up to 1,000 i-mode mails and SMS in total can be saved to Inbox.
- Mails sent under following conditions are saved in the i-mode Center.
  - During a video-phone call
  - Under Self mode
  - Exchanging infrared data
  - The power is off
  - Out of service area
  - Receive option "ON"
  - Inbox is full of protected or unread mails
  - Connecting to FirstPass center

1 Receive i-mode mails.

The icons and blink, and "Receiving message" is displayed. blinks and appears when completing receiving mails.

- : Unread i-mode mails and SMS are saved.
- : Unread i-mode mail are saved.



Mail/Message Reception status screen

Message ring tone sounds, the incoming-call lamp lights up/blinks and the number of Received messages is displayed.

- Press [Cancel] to cancel receiving mails. Mails may be received depending on the receiving condition.
- When folding FOMA terminals, Reception status is displayed on Backside-display. →P33
- Reception status screen is displayed approximately for 30 seconds. With no key operation, the screen automatically returns to the same as before receiving.
- When operating Check new message/Receive option, Reception status screen remains displayed.

Displaying newly-received i-mode mail

1 Press 1 "Mail" on Reception status screen of Mail/Message.

- Press 2 "MessageR"/3 "MessageF" to display MessageR/F.

2 Select a folder and press ●.

3 Select a mail and press ●.

- Reading received mails →P268

Information

- Receiving/Reception status screen may not be displayed depending on Display priority setting.
- Setting "ON" on Receive option setting allows selective reception of desired messages without automatically receiving all messages.
- When new i-mode mails arrive, other i-mode mails or MessageR/F stored in the i-mode Center are also received.
- When i-mode mails are received by FOMA terminal, i-mode mails stored in the i-mode Center are deleted.
- When receiving mails from the terminal that can specify To, Cc and Bcc, you can confirm to which of To, Cc, Bcc you have been specified. →P268
- Extremely large i-mode mails may be returned to the sender with error messages without being accepted in the i-mode Center.
- Melodies and still images can be sent/received as attachments of i-mode mails. The i-mode Center deletes unsupported attached files. If the attachment is deleted, a message "Delete attachment" is inserted onto message text.
- When the data size (number of characters plus attached file size) of the received mail exceeds the number of characters (data size) set to "Limit mail size" in Option settings, the attachments will be deleted in the i-mode Center and may not be received any more.
- When Receive attachment is set to "Not receive", attachments are deleted in the i-mode Center. Deleted attachment is not received again.
- When two or more i-mode mails and MessageR/F are received at the same time, Ring tone/Vibrator/Incoming-call lamp operate according to the settings for the mail received last.
- When i-mode mail cannot be automatically received, the messages are stored in the i-mode Center. Stored mails are attempted up to 3 times to resend after a certain period of time.
- When enough storage space is not available in Inbox, or exceeding the maximum allowable number of mails, unprotected read mails are overwritten in order from the oldest. Be sure to protect Received mails to save. →P278
- When the storage space is full and unable to overwrite unread or protected mails, reception of i-mode mails is stopped and FULL appears.
- When i-mode mails are left in the i-mode Center, appears. Note that i-mode mails may not be displayed in some conditions (ex. in turning the power off or out of service area). Also when the number of stored messages are full in the i-mode Center, (orange) appears.
- When mails are failed to be received, receive mails again by Check new message or Receive option.

Receive option

Selecting i-mode mail to receive

Check and select subjects etc. of i-mode mails stored in the i-mode Center, and select mails to receive or delete.
Receive option is required to be set to "ON" in advance.

When i-mode mails arrive

When receiving i-mode mails with setting Receive option to "ON", a message indicates that mails are stored in the i-mode Center.

- Even if mails are received, Ring tone or Vibrator does not work.
- Press ● and return to Stand-by display or the previous screen.

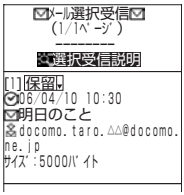
Receiving i-mode mails with Receive option

1 Press ✉ ▶ Press Receive option.

■ When setting Receive option to "OFF"

Press 1 "Yes" ▶ Press 1 "ON".

- Press 2 "OFF" not to set.



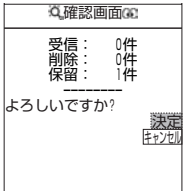
Connects to i-mode and the list of i-mode mails stored in the i-mode Center is displayed.

- Icon definitions of the end of mail are as bellow:
  - : Attaching still image file
  - : Attaching melody file
  - : Attaching i-motion

2 Select one of "受信 (Receive)", "削除 (Delete)" or "保留 (Hold)" from the pull-down menu for each mail.

- When selecting "保留 (Hold)", the mails are stored in the i-mode Center. The stored mails can be received by Check new message etc.
- When there are multiple pages, select "前ページ (Previous Page)" and "次ページ (Next Page)" at the end of the mail list and press ● to display the previous and next page.

3 Select "受信 (Receive)/削除 (Delete)" and press ●.



■ Deleting all messages stored in the i-mode Center

Select "削除 (Delete)" on "iモードセンターからすべてのメールを (All mails from the i-mode Center)", and press ●.

4 Select "決定 (Set)" and press ●.

Information

- Selecting procedure of pulldown menu items: →P199
- Even if Receive option setting is "ON", all mails are received when checking new message. To avoid receiving unnecessary mails, clear "Mail" item from the settings in Check new message. →P284

Check new message

Checking i-mode mail

Checks the status whether an i-mode mail is arrived in the i-mode Center while you are out of service area or turning the power off.

- Note that new messages cannot be checked under the poor radio wave condition.

1 Press ✉ ▶ Press Check new message.

Receive i-mode mails when mails are stored in the i-mode Center.

- The operation of checking MessageR/F is the same as of checking new i-mode mail.

Information

- When i-mode mails are left in the i-mode Center, appears. Note that may not appear even when the mails are stored in the i-mode Center (ex: in turning the power off or out of service area).
- Default setting is receiving all mails of "i-mode mail"/ "MessageR"/"MessageF". To avoid receiving MessageR or MessageF, release the settings. →P284

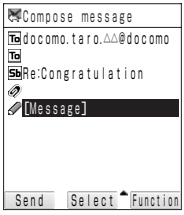
Reply to i-mode mail

Replying to i-mode mail

Replies to the received i-mode mails or SMS. To reply to i-mode mails, enter only replying addresses or enter replying messages with the quoted received i-mode mail.

- Some received mails may not be able to reply.

1 Select a mail on mail list screen and press i [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Reply".



"Re:" is entered to the subject field of the received mail in advance. (only for i-mode mail)

- Press 2 "Reply w/quotation" to quote messages of the i-mode mail received.

Replying to the received mails sent to multiple receivers

Press 1 "Sender" or 2 "All".

2 Edit the mail and send.

- When replied, the status icon for the Received mail changes from to next time the received mail list is displayed.

Information

- Press ✉ [Reply] to reply from the Received mail screen. Press i [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Reply w/ quotation" to reply with the quoted messages.
- Quote characters preceding the quoted message can be specified for Reply with quotation. →P284
- You cannot reply to SMS with quotation.
- Attachments with the received message are not added on the replying mails.
- You cannot reply to received SMS without Caller ID ("ID unsent", "Payphone" or "Not supported") on sender fields.
- When i-αppli activating data (i-αppli To) is attached to the mail messages, i-αppli To cannot be quoted to replying/forwarding mails. Also i-αppli To cannot be quoted for data-link software or Infrared connection.
- If the files being prohibited to attach to mails or output from FOMA terminals are inserted to Deco-mail messages, the files are deleted in replying.
- If the number of characters in the subject field including "Re:" exceeds 15 two-byte (Full Mark)/30 one-byte (Half Mark), the exceeded characters are deleted (i-mode mail only).

Forward i-mode mail

Forwarding i-mode mail to other addresses

Forwards received i-mode mails or SMS to other addresses.

- Received mails are forwarded each by types.
- Attachments on the received mails are also attached to forwarding mails.

1 Select a mail on mail list screen and press i [Function] ▶ Press 3 "Forward".

"Fw:" is entered to the subject field of the received mail in advance. (only for i-mode mail)

2 Enter the forwarding addresses and send.

- When forwarded, the status icon for the Received mail changes from ✉ to ✉ next time Inbox mail list is displayed.

See next page

Information

- Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 2 "Forward" to forward mails from the Received mail screen.
- Regarding attachments (still image and melody) to received mails, files prohibited to attach to mails or output from FOMA terminals cannot be attached to forwarding mails.
- If forwarding the received mail without downloading the attachment of still images exceeding 10,000 bytes (large still images), the image is not attached to forwarded mails.
- When i-αppli activating data (i-αppli To) is attached to the mail messages, i-αppli To cannot be quoted to replying/forwarding mails. Also i-αppli To cannot be quoted for data-link software or Infrared connection.
- If files prohibited to attach to mails or output from FOMA terminals are inserted to Deco-mail messages, the files are deleted in forwarding.
- When received Deco-mail is quoted, the mail message is displayed with the decoration and inserted images quoted. When the mail size is over the limit during transmission, a message appears indicating the mail is unable to send.
- If the number of characters including "Fw:" exceeds 15 two-byte (Full Mark)/30 one-byte (Half Mark), the exceeded characters are deleted (i-mode mail only).

Save melody

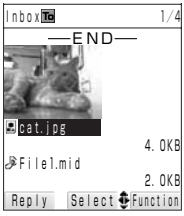
Playing/saving melody on i-mode mail

Plays/saves melodies attached or pasted to received i-mode mails.

- If the other party uses the terminal other than SA800i, received melodies may not be played properly.

Playing melody

1 Display an i-mode mail with a melody attached.



- Attachment type icons →P268
- To avoid playing melodies automatically when displaying mails, set Melody auto play setting to "Not auto play".

2 Select a melody and press ● ▶ Press 1 "Play".

- Press (✉) "Stop" to stop playing the melody halfway.

■ Setting a melody as Ring tone, etc.

Press 3 "Set".

- Melodies are saved to "Data box" → "Melody" → "i-mode" folder.
- Following operations: →P382 "Setting the melody as Ring tone etc." Step 3

■ Displaying melody property

Press 4 "File property".

■ Deleting melody

① Press 5 "Delete".

② Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Playing a melody from the attachment list

1 **Display an i-mode mail with a melody attached.**

2 **Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 7PQRS "Check attachment".**

3 **Select a melody and press ●.**

Information

- Select an attachment from Attachment list and press (i) [Function] to set Ring tone etc., display file property and delete while playing melodies.

Saving melody

1 **Display an i-mode mail with a melody attached.**

2 **Select a melody and press ● ▶ Press 2ABC "Save".**

- Melodies are saved to "Data box" → "Melody" → "i-mode" folder.

Saving a melody from attachment list

1 **Display an i-mode mail with a melody attached.**

2 **Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 7PQRS "Check attachment".**

3 **Select a melody and press ✉ [Save].**

Information

- When there is not enough available storage space for a still image to be saved or number of images exceeds the allowable maximum number →P389

Receive mail with image

Displaying images attached to mails

Displays/saves still images attached on received mails.

Displaying still images

1 **Display an i-mode mail with a still image attached.**

- Attachment type icons →P268
- Displays the first attachment file automatically.

2 Select a still image and press ● ▶ Press 1 "Play".

■ **Setting still images as Stand-by display, etc.**

Press 3 "Set".

- Still images are saved to "Data box" → "My picture" → "i-mode" folder.
- Following operations : →P360 "Setting images as Stand-by display etc." Step 2 to 4

■ **Displaying still image property**

Press 4 "File property".

■ **Deleting still images**

① Press 5 "Delete".

② Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Displaying still images from the attachment list

1 Display an i-mode mail with still images attached.

2 Press i [Function] ▶ Press 7 "Check attachment".

3 Select the still image and press ●.

Information

- Press i [Function] while displaying the attachment file list to set the still image to Stand-by display, display the file property or delete. However, unable to delete the large still images.
- Still image up to 100 KB in JPEG format or GIF format can be downloaded. When receiving a mail with a JPEG still image up to 500 KB (large still image), the image is converted to the receivable size.
- A JPEG still image (large still image) exceeding 10,000 bytes attached to i-mode mail is automatically downloaded. The large still image downloaded automatically is saved to "Data box" → "My picture" → "i-mode" folder.
- When failed to download large still images automatically, select "📷" in i-mode mails, then press ● ▶ Press 1 "Download data" to download the images. Press ● ▶ Press 2 "View URL" to display the URL of the source.
- When the size of still images is larger than the screen, the images are reduced to display. Note that still images may not be displayed if the size is too big.
- Some still images may not be displayed properly. The size possible to display is 240 in width × 320 in height. If the size exceeds, still images can be received but cannot display.

Saving still images

1 Display an i-mode mail with still images attached.

2 Select a still image and press ● ▶ Press 2 "Save".

- Still images are saved to "Data box" → "My picture" → "i-mode" folder.

■ Saving still images within Deco-mail

① Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 6MNO "Check image".
② Press ○ to select a still image and press ●.
③ Press 1 "Yes".
- Press 2ABC "No" to cancel.

④ Select a folder and press ●.
- Still images are saved to "Data box" → "My picture" → "i-mode" or "Deco-mail picture" folder.

Saving still images from attachment list

1 Display an i-mode mail with still images attached.

2 Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 7PQRS "Check attachment".

3 Select a still image and press ✉ [Save].

Information

- Still images attached to the sent mails can also be saved by the same operation.
- When there is not enough available storage space for a still image to be saved or number of images exceeds the allowable maximum number →P389

i-motion mail

Playing/saving i-motion attached to i-motion mails

Movie images or i-motion data sent with i-motion mails are stored in the i-motion Center, and receives as mails with URL to browse i-motion.
- The receivable i-motion file size is up to 500 KB.

1 Display an i-mode mail with i-motion URL attached.

2 Select the i-motion URL and press ● ▶ Press 1 "Connect to site" .

3 Press (i) [Connect].

Connects to the i-motion mail Center and starts downloading of i-motion.
- When Auto play setting for i-motion is set to "Auto play", i-motion starts playing automatically after download.
- Press ✉ [Cancel] to cancel downloading.

4 After completing downloading, press 1 "Play".

Plays i-motion.
- The operation procedure of the playing screen →P366

■ Saving i-motion

Press 2ABC "Save".
- i-motion data is saved to "Data box" → "i-motion" → "i-mode" folder.

Setting i-motion to Stand-by display, etc.

Press 3 "Set".

- i-motion data is saved to "Data box" → "i-motion" → "i-mode" folder.
- Following operations: →P369 "Setting movie/i-motion as Phone receive call etc." Step 3

Displaying i-motion property

Press 4 "File property".

Returning to the mail screen

Press 5 "Return".

- When i-motion data is not saved yet, User check screen is displayed. Press 1 "Yes" to return to the screen displaying URL without saving i-motion data.

Information

- Press i [Function] and displays the file property or plays in large.
- You can also play movie images/i-motions which are attached to sent mails. Note that the movie images/i-motion does not play if the files have been deleted from FOMA terminals.
- When sending i-motion mails to an i-mode terminal, i-motion can be downloaded up to 50 times for each of URLs to browse i-motion saved in the i-motion Center. i-motion will not be downloaded when exceeding 50 times.
- To play the i-motion attached to mails on PC, the applicable software is required. Refer to DoCoMo Internet site for details.

Inbox/Outbox

Displaying mails in Inbox/Outbox

Received mails are saved in Inbox, and sent mails are saved in Outbox. Mails saved unsent or failed to be sent are saved in Unsent messages box.

- Up to 400 i-mode mails and SMS in total can be saved in Outbox and Unsent messages box. And up to 1,000 mails can be saved in Inbox. (The number available to save is subject to change by the data size.)

<ex> Displaying received mails

1 Press ✉ ▶ Press Inbox.

Inbox folder list is displayed.

- To display the sent mails, press Outbox, and press Unsent messages to display unsent messages.

2 Select a folder and press ●.

Inbox mail list is displayed.

3 Select a mail to display and press ●.

Message screen is displayed.

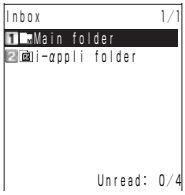
- Displays the previous/next mails by pressing ◎.

Information

- When enough storage space is not available or exceeding the maximum allowable number of mails in Inbox or Outbox, unprotected read mails are overwritten in order from the oldest. It is recommended to protect mails to keep. →P278
- Press (i) [Function] ▶ Select "Check attachment" ▶ Press ●, to check the attachments to Received/Sent mails.
- When selected a folder for mails linked with i-αppli, the i-αppli software may start automatically.
- To display mails in Mail link type i-αppli folder without starting software, press (i) [Function] ▶ Press ▶ Press 2abc "Folder file log", while selecting Mail link type i-αppli folder.
- When receiving mails with decoration from PC etc., the decoration may not be properly displayed.
- If the URLs to download images and i-motion are displayed in the same color as the background color of Deco-mail displayed, the URLs may not be visible.
- You can save sent/received Deco-mails as templates. Press (i) [Function] ▶ Select "Save to template", on Inbox/Outbox screen and press ●.

Reading folder list screen

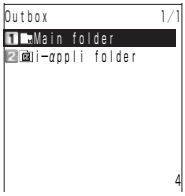
Inbox folder list screen



- Folder type ("M" is not displayed for created folders.)
  - (yellow) : No unread mail
  - (blue*) : Holding unread mails
  - (yellow) : No unread mail (Security ON)
  - (blue*) : Holding unread mails (Security ON)
  - (yellow) : No unread mail in Mail link type i-αppli folder
  - (blue*) : Holding unread mails in Mail link type i-αppli folder
  - (yellow) : No unread mail in Mail link type i-αppli folder (Security ON)
  - (blue*) : Holding unread mails in Mail link type i-αppli folder (Security ON)

* The color is changed to orange when Taste being set to blue. →P135

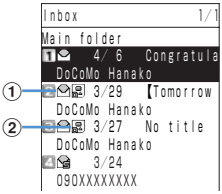
Outbox/Unsent messages folder list screen



- Folder type ("M" is not displayed for created folders.)
  - : Security ON
  - : Security OFF
  - : Security ON in Mail link type i-αppli folder
  - : Security OFF in Mail link type i-αppli folder

Reading List screen/viewing screen of Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages

Inbox message list screen



① Mail type

- : Unread mail
- : Read mail
- : Replied mail
- : Forwarded mail
- : Unread SMS
- : Read SMS
- : Replied SMS
- : Forwarded SMS
- : Unread mail (Protected)
- : Read mail (Protected)
- : Replied mail (Protected)
- : Forwarded mail (Protected)
- : Unread SMS (Protected)
- : Read SMS (Protected)
- : Replied SMS (Protected)
- : Forwarded SMS (Protected)

② Attachment type

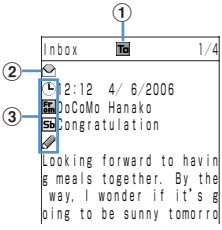
- : Still image
- : Melody
- : Large still image
- : Large still image (Deleted)
- : SMS in UIM (FOMA card)
- : Message i-αppli
- : Still image (Deleted)
- : Melody (Deleted)
- : Large still image (Not downloaded)
- : Invalid file
- : UIM (FOMA card) restricted file
- : i-αppli linkage

- When the sender is registered in Phonebook, the name is displayed.
- In Received date/time field, the time is displayed on the current day and the date is displayed on the other day.

Information

- If the i-mode E-mail address of sender/receiver matches to Phonebook address, registered name in Phonebook is displayed. For using SMS, if the phone number of sender/receiver matches to Phonebook phone number, the registered name in Phonebook is displayed.
- When attaching images over 10,000 bytes (large still image), appears even attaching still images or melodies. When attaching multiple numbers of still images or melodies, only the icon of the first attached file appears.

Inbox message screen



① Receive type

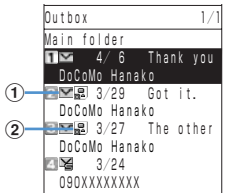
- To: Mails addressed as To from senders
- Cc: Mails addressed as Cc from senders
- Bcc: Mails addressed as Bcc from senders

② Mail type/Attachment type is the same as Inbox mail list screen.

③ Item type

- : Received date and time
- Fr om (yellow): Sender
- To (yellow): Receiver
- Cc (yellow): Receiver (Cc)
- Sb: Subject
- Fr om (gray): Sender unable to reply
- To (gray): Receiver unable to reply
- Cc (gray): Receiver unable to reply (Cc)
- : Message

Outbox/Unsent messages list screen



① Mail type

- (gray): Sent mail
- (gray): Sent SMS
- (blue*): Unsent mail
- (blue*): Unsent SMS
- : Sent mail (Protected)
- : Sent SMS (Protected)
- : Mail failed to send
- : SMS failed to send

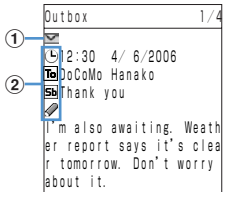
* The color is changed to orange when Taste being set to blue. →P135

② Attachment type

- : Still image
- : Melody
- : i-motion
- : Large still image
- : Invalid file
- : Still image (Deleted)
- : Melody (Deleted)
- : i-motion (Deleted)
- : Large still image (Deleted)
- : SMS in UIM (FOMA card)
- : UIM (FOMA card) restricted file
- : Message i-αppli

- In Sent date/time field, the time is displayed on the current day and the date and time is displayed on the other day.
- When the Receive address is registered in Phonebook, the name is displayed.

Outbox/Unsent message screen



① Mail type/Attachment type is the same as Outbox /Unsent message list screen.

② Item type

- : Sent date and time
- : Receiver
- : Receiver (Cc)
- : Receiver (Bcc)
- : Subject
- *: Receiver failed to send (To)
- *: Receiver failed to send (Cc)
- *: Receiver failed to send (Bcc)
- : Message

* Unsent mails only

Information

- Time and date setting is required to display sent time/date or saved time/date. →P50

Creating/Editing/Deleting folders

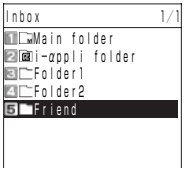
Creates or deletes folders to save mails.

Creating folders

- You can create up to 24 folders including "Main folder" and Mail link type i-αppli folders in Inbox/Outbox. Mail link type i-αppli cannot be downloaded, if 24 folders had been already created in total.
- When redownloading Mail link i-αppli, the folder left without Mail link i-αppli can be utilized. If Security setting is ON to the folder, enter the terminal security code and downloading becomes available. If you do not use a folder, delete the unnecessary folders and create a new folder. Mail link type i-αppli cannot be downloaded, if not creating a new folder.

1 Press (i) [Function] on the folder list screen ▶ Press 1 "Create folder".

2 Enter a folder name and press ●.



A folder is created in Inbox.

- Up to 8 two-byte (Full Mark)/16 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

Editing folder name

1 Select a folder and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 2 "Edit folder name".

2 Enter a new folder name and press ●.

Information

- When downloaded a Mail link type i-αppli, a folder is automatically created for the i-αppli mail, in each of Inbox, Outbox and Unsent messages. The folders are named as the title of the i-αppli, and cannot be changed.

Deleting folders

- Existing "Main folder" by default cannot be deleted.
- Folders with protected mails cannot be deleted. Cancel the protection, and then delete the folders.

1 Select a folder and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 6 "Delete folder".

2 Enter the terminal security code and press ●.

3 Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.
- Mail link type i-αppli folder cannot be deleted if applicable Mail link type i-αppli is saved. If deleting, created Mail link type i-αppli in Sent/Unsent messages list screen is also able to be deleted.

Operation on Folder list/Mail list/Viewing screen

Sorting mail automatically into specified folders <Auto sort>

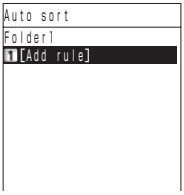
Sorts received/sent i-mode mails or SMS into the specified folder automatically according to the sort setting.

- You cannot specify "Main folder".
- Up to 8 sort requirements for each "Inbox" and "Outbox" can be registered.

Setting sort requirement

<ex> Setting to Inbox

1 Select a folder and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 3DEF "Auto sort".



2 Press 1 "Add rule".

3 Edit sort requirements.

■ **Entering a sender address quoting from Phonebook**

① Press 1 "Sender address" ▶ Press 1 "Quote phonebook".
② Select a Phonebook entry and press ●.
③ Select an E-mail address and press ●.

■ **Entering a sender address quoting from Sent/Received addresses history**

① Press 1 "Sender address" ▶ Press 2ABC "Quote sent adrs" or 3DEF "Quote rcvd adrs".
② Select an address history and press ●.
③ Press ●.

■ **Entering a sender address quoting from Sending group**

- Sending group in Mail setting is required to be registered in advance.

① Press 1 "Sender address" ▶ Press 4GHI "Quote sending grp".
② Select a group by pressing ◎.
③ Select the address to quote and press ●.

■ **Entering a sender address quoting from Profile**

① Press 1 "Sender address" ▶ Press 5JKL "Quote profile".
② Select an E-mail address and press ●.

See next page

■ **Entering a sender address directly**

① Press 1 "Sender address" ▶ Press 6 "Direct input".

② Enter an E-mail address and press ●.

■ **Setting from Subject**

① Press 2 "Subject".

② Enter the subject and press ●.

■ **Setting from All inbox messages**

Press 3 "All inbox messages".

4 Press i [Complete].

Information

- When setting Auto sort to Outbox, sort requirements are displayed as 1 "Receiver address", 2 "Subject" and 3 "All outbox msgs".
- Sort requirement is executed by the following priority:
  ① Subject
  ② Sender (Receiver) address
  ③ All Inbox (Outbox) mails
- If a sort requirement is already set to the other folder, a message is displayed confirming whether to change the folder to set. Press 1 "Yes" to set to the operating folder.
- When setting "Auto sort" to Mail link type i-αppli folder, a message is displayed confirming whether to use Mail link type i-αppli. Press 1 "Yes" to set to Mail link type i-αppli folder.
- You can also sort usual mails automatically to Mail link type i-αppli folder. In this case, the priority is on the sort requirement for Mail link type i-αppli.
- Mails with Mail link type i-αppli are placed into Mail link type i-αppli folder automatically, when sending and receiving mails.
- When downloading a Mail link type i-αppli, the i-αppli mail you have already received can be sorted into the folder that is automatically made. It is also possible to sort i-αppli mails manually.

Editing sort requirement

1 Select a folder and press i [Function] ▶ Press 3 "Auto sort".

2 Select a rule and press ●.

3 Press 1 "Yes".

- Following operations: →P271 "Setting sort requirement" Step 3 to 4

■ **Deleting sort requirement**

① Press ✉ [Delete] ▶ Press 1 "Delete".

- To execute 2 "Delete all", enter the terminal security code and press ●.

② Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Information

- When setting "All inbox messages" to the folder that has been already set "Sender (Receiver) address" or "Subject", a message is displayed to confirm whether to delete the previous setting of Sort requirement. Press 1 "Yes" to delete the previous setting of Sort requirement, and "All inbox messages" is set.

Resorting mails after setting Auto sort

Moves the mails to the folder with the current sort setting, after changing the setting of Auto sort or moving between folders.

- This function is applied to mails in all folders.

1 Press (i) [Function] on the folder list screen ▶ Press 4GHI "Re-sort messages".

2 Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2ABC "No" to cancel.
- When Security is set on a folder, a message is displayed confirming whether to apply to resort. Press 1 "Yes", enter the terminal security code, and mails are resorted. Press 2ABC "No" and all folders except those being set Security ON are resorted.

Sorting folders

Sorts the folders in Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages.

- "Main folder" cannot be sorted.

<ex> Sorting Inbox

1 Select a folder and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 5JKL "Sort folders".

2 Select a folder and press (●).

3 Select the destination to move and press (●).

- Repeat Step 2 to 3 to sort other folders.

4 Press (i) [Complete].

Setting Security on folders

Requires Security code to view, delete or set Auto sort on secured folders, in order to prevent others from checking your FOMA terminal.

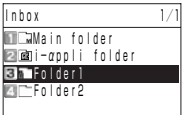
- Unable to execute Auto start or i-αppli Stand-by display with Mail link type i-αppli if the security is set to the i-αppli folder.

<ex> Setting Security ON to Inbox folder

1 Select a folder and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press (○) ▶ Press 1 "Set security".

- Press (○) ▶ Press 1 "Release security" to release.

2 Enter the terminal security code and press (●).



Security is set to the selected folder.

See next page

Information

- When moving mails to secured folders by reason of Auto sort or moving between folders, the terminal security code is not required.

Displaying Mail log <Folder file log>

Displays each folder file log in Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages.

<ex> Displaying Folder file log of Inbox

1 Select a folder and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press ◯ ▶ Press 2ABC "Folder file log".

■ **Displaying all mails in Inbox**

Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press ◯ ▶ Press 3DEF "Inbox message log".

- Inbox message log is displayed.

2 Press CLR after confirmation.

Resetting folder setting

Resets the settings in folders. Mails saved in folders are still remained.

- Resets as follows:
  - Folder name: "New folder"
  - Security setting: "OFF"
  - Auto sort: "No rule"

<ex> Returning the setting of Inbox

1 Select a folder and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press ◯ ▶ Press 4GHI "Reset folder".

2 Enter the terminal security code and press ●.

3 Press 1 "Yes".

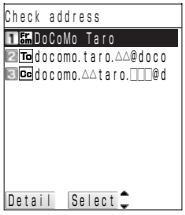
- Press 2ABC "No" to cancel.

Checking E-mail address <Check address>

Displays the E-mail address of Sender/Receiver from Received/Sent/Unsent mails.

<ex> Checking the address of received mails

1 Select a mail and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press ◎ ▶ Press 1 "Check address".



- Received mail
  - Fr (yellow) : Sender
  - Fr (gray) : Sender unable to reply
  - To (yellow) : Receiver (To)
  - To (gray) : Receiver unable to reply (To)
  - Cc (yellow) : Receiver (Cc) (only i-mode mail)
  - Cc (gray) : Receiver unable to reply (Cc) (only i-mode mail)
- Sent/Unsent mail
  - To : Receiver completed sending (To)
  - To : Receiver failed to send (To)
  - Cc : Receiver completed sending (Cc) (only i-mode mail)
  - Cc : Receiver failed to send (Cc) (only i-mode mail)
  - Bcc : Receiver completed sending (Bcc) (only i-mode mail)
  - Bcc : Receiver failed to send (Bcc) (only i-mode mail)

2 Select the address and press ✉ [Detail].

- Press ✉ [List] to return.
- Displays the details of previous/next addresses by ◎.

Composing mail

Select an address and press ● ▶ Press 1 "Compose message".

- Press 1 "Compose SMS message" for SMS.
- Following operations : →P242 "Composing and sending i-mode mail" Step 4 to 6

Registering to Phonebook

Select an address and press ● ▶ Press 2 "New to phonebook".

- Following operations: →P99 "Registering entry in FOMA terminal phonebook" Step 2 to 6, P104 "Registering entry into UIM (FOMA card) Phonebook" Step 2 to 4
- To add an entry to Phonebook, press 3 "Add to phonebook", select a Phonebook entry and press ●.
  Following operations : →P111 "Editing saved Phonebook entries" Step 2 to 4

Sorting addresses automatically

① Select an address and press ● ▶ Press 4 "Auto sort".
② Select a folder and press ●.

Registering to Sending groups

① Select an address and press ● ▶ Press 5 "Reg. sending group".

- SMS cannot be registered to Sending group.

② Select a group and press ●.

Copying address

Select an address and press ● ▶ Press 6 "Copy E-mail".

- Press 6 "Copy phone number" for SMS.

See next page

Information

- Press (i) [Function] ▶ Select "Check address" and press ●, to operate from Message screen of Inbox/Outbox.
- When the E-mail address is saved in Phonebook, the name is displayed.

Moving received/sent mail to another folder <Move to folder>

Moves saved mails to other folders.

<ex> Moving a received mail to another folder

1 Select a mail and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 6MNO "Move to folder".

2 Press 1 "Move".

■ Moving mails by option

① Press 2ABC "Move option".
② Select a mail to move and press ●.
- Press ● to release.

③ Press (i) [Exec.]

■ Moving all

Press 3DEF "Move all in folder".
- When displaying Searched result list, press 3DEF "Move all searched", and press 3DEF "Move all" on message list screen.

3 Select the folder to move in and press ●.

4 Press 1 "Yes".
- Press 2ABC "No" to cancel.

Setting display style of mail list <Switch display>

Sets the display style of Sent/Received/Unsent mails.

<ex> Switching the display style of Inbox message list

1 Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 7PQRS "Switch display", on Mail list screen.

2 Press one of 1 to 3DEF.

Date/Subj./Sender : Displays Date/Subject/Sender on the list.
Date/Sender : Displays Date/Sender on the list.
Subject/Sender : Displays Subject/Sender on the list.

- The field of "Sender" is displayed as "Receiver" for Sent mails/Unsent messages.

Sorting received/sent mails <Sort>

Sorts the mail list of Inbox/Outbox/Unsent temporarily.

<ex> Sorting received mails

1 Press ✉ [Sort] on Mail list screen.

2 Press one of 1 to 6.

Rcptn date (new → o) : Sorts mails by Received date from new to old.
Rcptn date (old → n) : Sorts mails by Received date from old to new.
Subject (ascend.) : Sorts Subjects in ascending order.
Subject (descend.) : Sorts Subjects in descending order.
Sender (ascend.) : Sorts Senders in ascending order.
Sender (descend.) : Sorts Senders in descending order.

- The field of "Received date" is displayed as "Sent date" for sent mails, and "Saved date" for unsent messages.
- The field of "Sender" is displayed as "Receiver" for sent mails/unsent messages.

Information

- When Mail list screen is closed, sorting returns to "Rcptn date (new→o)".

Searching mails and displaying the results <Search mail>

You can search mails to specify the sort requirements from the mail list of Inbox/Outbox/Unsent.

<ex> Searching received mails

1 Press i [Function] ▶ Press 4 "Search", on Mail list screen.

2 Press one of 1 to 4.

Search unread : Extracts unread mails.
Search read : Extracts read mails.
Search protected : Extracts protected mails.
Search attached : Extracts mails with attachments.

- You can select sent mails from "Search protected" or "Search attached".
- Unsent mails can be selected from "Search sndg failed", "Search unsent" or "Search attached".

Re-searching after the search

Press i [Function] ▶ Press 4 "Search" ▶ Press 1 "Re-search".

- The following operation is the same as Step 2 above.
- The first search result is deleted.

Returning from the search result list

Press i [Function] ▶ Press 4 "Search" ▶ Press 2 "Release search".

Protecting sent/received mails <Protect Mail>

Protecting received/sent mails allows you to avoid erasing mails by accident or overwriting because of the shortage of the memory space.

- Up to 500 of received mails, and up to 200 of sent mails can be protected. (The number to protect mails is subject to change by the data size.)
- Unable to protect SMS in UIM (FOMA card).

<ex> Protecting a Received message

1 Select a mail and press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press 5 JKL "Protect".

- The icon of the protected mail changes from ✉ to 🔒.

■ **Releasing the protection of received mails**

① **Select a mail and press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press 5 JKL "Release".**

② **Press 1 "Release".**

- Press 2 ABC "Release all" and 1 "Yes" to release all of the protected mails. Press 2 ABC "No" to cancel.

Information

- Press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press 3 DEF "Protect", to protect mails from Message screen. Press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press 3 DEF "Release", to release protection.

Deleting received/sent mail <Delete mail>

Deletes unnecessary received/sent/unsent mails.

- Protected mails cannot be deleted. Release the protection and delete mails.

<ex> Deleting a received mail

1 Select a mail and press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press ◯ ▶ Press 4 GHI "Delete".

2 Press 1 "Delete".

■ **Deleting by option**

① **Press 2 ABC "Delete option".**

② **Select a mail to delete and press ●.**

- Press ● to release.

③ **Press ⓘ [Exec.]**

■ **Deleting all**

① **Press 3 DEF "Delete all in fldr".**

- When displaying Searched result list, press 3 DEF "Delete all srchd", and press 3 DEF "Delete all in fldr" on Mail list screen.

② **Enter the terminal security code and press ●.**

3 Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 ABC "No" to cancel.

Information

- Press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press ◯ ▶ Press ◯ ▶ Press 2 ABC "Delete", to delete from Message screen.

Deleting all mails in mail boxes

You can delete all mails in the current mailbox of any folder.

- Protected mails and SMS in UIM (FOMA card) are not deleted.

<ex> Deleting all mails in Inbox

1 Press (i) [Function] on Inbox folder list screen ▶ Press 7PQRS "Delete all rcvd".

2 Enter the terminal security code and press ●.

3 Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2ABC "No" to cancel.
- When Security is set on a folder, a message is displayed confirming whether to delete the folder. Press 1 "Yes" and attachments are released. Press 2ABC "No", and all mails except in the folders which Security is set ON are deleted.

Useful functions of mail

Copying message etc.

You can copy Message of i-mode mail and SMS.

- When copying received Deco-mail, only text data is copied.

<ex> Copying from the mails in Inbox

1 Display a mail and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press ◎ ▶ Press 3DEF "Copy".

2 Press 3DEF "Message".

- Following operations : →P497 "Copying/cutting characters" Step 2 to 3
- Up to 5,000 two-byte (Full Mark)/10,000 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be copied.

Copying address

Press 1 "Address".

- Select an E-mail address and press ●, if several E-mail addresses are registered in Phonebook.

Copying subject

Press 2ABC "Subject".

Using entered messages

Uses the message text to register to user dictionary, or to search words with Japanese dictionary.

<ex> Using the message text in a received mail message

1 Display a mail message and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 4GHI た "Reg. to user dict." or 5JKL な "Jpn dictionary".

2 Move the cursor to the start point, and press ●.

3 Move the cursor to the end point, and press ●.

- Following operations: →P498 "Registering to User dictionary" Step ②, →P498 "Using Jpn dictionary" Step ② to ⑤

Saving URL as Bookmark

Register URL in the messages of i-mode mail/SMS/MessageR/F to Bookmark.

<ex> Registering URL in the received mail to Bookmark

1 Display a mail message including a URL, select the URL and press ●.

2 Press 2ABC か "Register bookmark".

- Following operations : P204 "Registering in Bookmark" Step 2 to 3

Information

- The function of Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To are available to use. →P215

Search Personal

Searching mails by quoting Phonebook

Select a phone number or an E-mail address from Phonebook, and search the relevant mail from Inbox/Outbox.

- Received mail : The sender can be searched.
- Sent mail : The receiver (To) specified as the first receiver can be searched.

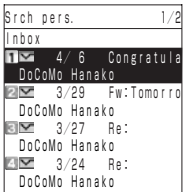
1 Press ✉ ▶ Press Search personal.

2 Select a Phonebook entry and press ● ▶ Press ●.

3 Select a phone number or E-mail address and press ●.

- Press ● to release.
- All the mails are selected.

4 Press (i) [Search].



The searched mails are displayed.

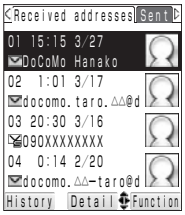
- Press (✉) [Cancel] to cancel searching.
- When Security is set to some folders, a message is displayed to confirm whether to sort the folder. Press 1 "Yes", enter the terminal security code, and starts searching. Press 2 "No", and all folders are searched except those which security is on.

Received address history/Sent address history

Using mail history

Records received/sent addresses (or phone numbers) automatically to address lists of received/sent addresses. Up to 30 addresses are recorded to each received/sent address history.

1 Hold down (○) for over a second.



Address history list screen

- Hold down (○) for over 1 second to display Received address history, and hold down (○) for over a second to display Sent address history.
- ✉ indicates i-mode mail, and ✉ indicates SMS.

Making calls

Select an address history and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Dial phone call".

- Press 2 "Dial video-phone" to make a video-phone call.
- Following operations : →P215 "Functions available by selecting the phone number" Step 3
- You can also operate from Address history detail screen.

Making video-phone calls by selecting an image

Select an address history and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 3 "Video-phone image".

- Following operations: →P215 "Making video-phone calls by selecting an image" Step ① to ②
- You can also operate from Address history detail screen.

Not displaying the image registered in Phonebook

Select an address history and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 5 "Photo display OFF".

- Press 5 "Photo display ON" to display.

Sending Push tone during a call

- Display Address history during a call. →P404

Select an address history and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 6 "Send push tone".

- You can also operate from Address history detail screen.

See next page

2 Select an address history and press ●.

Address history detail screen is displayed.

- Press CLR to return.
- The operation when pressing ● : →P216 "Functions available by selecting an E-mail address" Step 2

■ Not displaying the image registered in Phonebook as background

Press i [Function] ▶ Press 5 "Transp display OFF.".

- Press 5 "Transp display ON" to display.

Information

- To use "Dial phone call" or "Dial video-phone" etc. from Received/Sent addresses, Received/Dialed (Sent) phone numbers or addresses must be registered in Phonebook in advance.

Deleting mail history <Delete mail history>

Deletes an unnecessary received/sent address history.

1 Select an address history and press i [Function] ▶ Press 4 "Delete".

2 Press 1 "Delete".

■ Deleting by option

① Press 2 "Delete option".
② Select a mail and press ●.

- Press ● to release.

③ Press i [Exec.]

■ Deleting all

① Press 3 "Delete all".
② Enter the terminal security code and press ●.

3 Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Information

- Press i [Function] ▶ Press 4 "Delete" to delete from Address history detail screen.

Mail Setting

Setting Mail function of FOMA terminal

Sets functions regarding mails.

1 Press ✉ ▶ Press Mail setting.

Menu item	Description	Reference
Check new message	Sets the items to check to the i-mode Center.	P284
Receive attachment	Sets whether to receive attachments.	P286
Receive option	Receives selected mails without receiving automatically.	P284
Melody auto play	Sets whether to play attached melody automatically when displaying the mail.	P286

Menu item	Description	Reference
Receive preference	Sets whether to preferentially display Receiving message screen or Reception status screen of mails or MessageR/F.	P287
Signature	Registers a signature to attach to mails.	P283
Edit quotation mark	Sets the quotation marks to add to the quoted message in replying mails.	P284
Font size	Sets Font size to display the mails.	P287
Scroll	Sets the number of scrolling lines to display the mails.	P287
Auto learn reply	Learns words or Katakana temporally referred from received mails to use as predictions to convert.	P286
Reg. sending group	Sets multiple addresses as a mail group.	P285
SMS report request	Select whether to request the SMS report request when sending SMS.	P296
SMS message validity	Select the period of time to save SMS sent to the SMS Center.	P296
SMS input char. type	Select the input method to compose SMS.	P296
SMS Center	Sets Hosts for SMS services except DoCoMo.	P297
Mail status request	Confirms the mail setting.	P288
Reset mail	Initializes mail settings to the default.	P288

Attaching mail signatures <Signature>

Default	OFF

Register a signature to add to i-mode mail message automatically. Up to 3 signatures can be registered.

1 Press ✉ ▶ Press Mail setting ▶ Press 6MNO.

2 Press one of 1 to 3.

- Press 4GHI "OFF" not to set. No further operation is needed.

Editing signature title

① Enter a signature and press i [Title].

② Enter the title and press ●.

- Up to 8 two-byte (Full Mark)/16 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

3 Enter a signature and press ●.

Signature is automatically added.

- Up to 128 two-byte (Full Mark)/256 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered as a signature.
- Signature is not added to SMS and Chat mails.

Setting Quotation marks to add in reply < Edit quotation mark>

Default	> (one-byte)

Sets the quotation marks to add to the quoted message in replying mails.

1 **Press ✉ ▶ Press Mail setting ▶ Press 7PQRS.**

2 **Enter a quotation mark and press ●.**

- Up to 5 two-byte (Full Mark)/10 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

Setting items to check the i-mode Center <Check new message>

Default	Check all

Set to specify the items to be received from stored i-mode mail and MessageR/F, when checking the i-mode Center.
Same items are to be set for Check new message setting as "i-mode setting".

- Set to "☐" if not receiving.

1 **Press ✉ ▶ Press Mail setting ▶ Press 1.@あ.**

2 **Select an item.**

- Press ● each time to switch Select/Release.

3 **Press i [Complete].**

Receiving selected mails <Receive option>

Default	OFF

Receives selected mails without receiving automatically.

1 **Press ✉ ▶ Press Mail setting ▶ Press 3DEFさ.**

2 **Press 1.@あ "ON".**

- Press 2ABCか "OFF" not to set.

Information

- When setting Receive option to "ON", mails cannot be received automatically. Mail ring tone or Vibrator are also unable to be activated.
- If an i-mode mail is received in the i-mode Center when Receive option setting is "ON", a message is displayed to notify that mails are stored in the i-mode Center.

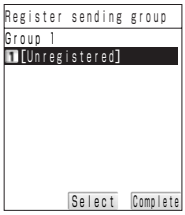
Registering address to mail group <Register sending group>

Multiple E-mail addresses registered in a mail group can be specified as mail destinations, by a simple operation when composing i-mode mail.

- Up to 9 mail groups can be saved. Up to 5 E-mail addresses can be registered for one mail group.
- You cannot register the same address in one group. But registering in different groups is allowed.

1 Press ✉ ▶ Press Mail setting ▶ Press ● ▶ Press 2ABC.

2 Press one of 1 to 9WXYZ.



■ Editing group name

① **Select a group and press i [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Edit group name".**

② **Enter the name and press ●.**

- Up to 8 two-byte (Full Mark)/16 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

■ Deleting mail group

① **Select a group and press i [Function] ▶ Press 2ABC "Delete".**

② **Press 1 "Yes".**

- Press 2ABC "No" to cancel.

3 Select [Unregistered] and press ●.

■ Editing E-mail address

① **Select an E-mail address, and press ●.**

② **Press 1 "Yes".**

- Go on to Step 4.
- Press 2ABC "No" to cancel.

■ Deleting E-mail address

① **Select an E-mail address, and press ✉.**

② **Press 1 "Delete".**

- To execute 2ABC "Delete all", enter the terminal security code and press ●.

③ **Press 1 "Yes".**

- Press 2ABC "No" to cancel.

4 Press 6MNO "Direct input", enter an E-mail address, and press ●.

- Up to 50 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

■ Quoting from Phonebook

① **Press 1 "Quote phonebook".**

② **Select a phone number and press ●.**

③ **Select a mail address and press ●.**

■ Quoting addresses from Sent/Received addresses history

① **Press 2ABC "Quote sent adrs" or 3DEF "Quote rcvd adrs".**

② **Select an address history and press ●.**

③ **Press ●.**

See next page

■ Quoting from Profile

① Press 5 "Quote profile".

② Select an E-mail address and press ●.

5 Press i [Complete].

The E-mail address is registered.

- E-mail addresses registered in Phonebook are displayed by the registered name. And those unregistered in Phonebook are displayed by the E-mail address.
- To add other E-mail addresses, repeat the operation from Step 3 to 4.

Quoting words from received mails when composing replying mails <Auto learn reply>

Default	ON

Learns words or Katakana temporarily to use as predictions to convert, referring from received mails when entering messages for replying mails.

1 Press ✉ ▶ Press

▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 1.

2 Press 1 "ON".

- Press 2 "OFF" not to quote.

Setting whether to play melody automatically <Melody auto play>

Default	Auto play

Sets whether to play the melody automatically when displaying i-mode mails or MessageR/F with attached melody.

1 Press ✉ ▶ Press

▶ Press 4.

2 Press 1 "Auto play" or 2 "Not auto play".

Information

- When multiple melodies are attached, the melody plays in the attached order.

Setting whether to receive attachments <Receive attachment>

Default	Image and melody

Sets whether to receive still images and melodies attached to i-mode mails.

1 Press ✉ ▶ Press

▶ Press 2.

2 Press one of 1 to 4 .

Information

- Note that unreceived attachments are deleted in the i-mode Center and to be unreceivable.
- When setting not to receive images, the inserted images of Deco-mail cannot be received.
- MFI format melodies attached to mails can be received regardless of Receive attachment setting.

Setting Mail receive notification during operations <Receive preference>

Default	Prefer receive notice

Sets whether to preferentially display Receiving/Reception status screen on receiving mails or MessageR/F during operations.

1 **Press ✉ ▶ Press Mail setting ▶ Press 5JKL な.**

2 **Press 1@ あ "Prefer receive notice" or 2ABC か "Prefer user operation".**

Prefer receive notice : On receiving mails, stops activated functions temporarily, to display Receiving/Reception status screen.

Prefer user operation : When any function is activated while receiving mails, Receiving/Reception status screen are not displayed. Receiving is notified only by the icon, while Ring tone or Vibrator are not activated.

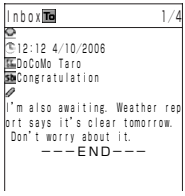
Setting Font size of mails <Font size>

Default	Standard

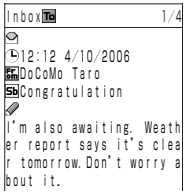
Sets the font size of mails to display on the screen for displaying Received/Sent mails.

1 **Press ✉ ▶ Press Mail setting ▶ Press 8TUV や.**

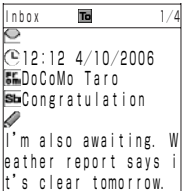
2 **Press one of 1@ あ to 3DEF さ.**



Small : 16 dots



Standard : 20 dots



Large : 24 dots

Information

- To change Font size when received/sent mails are displayed, press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Select "Font size" and press ●.
- The font size on the screen for composing/editing message cannot be changed.

Setting the number of scrolling lines <Scroll>

Default	1-line

Sets the number of lines to scroll when pressing ⊛ while displaying the mail messages.

1 **Press ✉ ▶ Press Mail setting ▶ Press 9WXYZ ら.**

2 **Press one of 1@ あ to 5JKL な.**

See next page

Information

- To change Scroll setting while Received/Sent mails are displayed, press (i) [Function] ▶ Select "Scroll" and press ●.

Confirming mail setting status <Mail status request>

1 Press ✉ ▶ Press Mail setting ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 7PQRS.

Resetting mail settings to default <Reset mail setting>

Initializes mail settings to the default.

1 Press ✉ ▶ Press Mail setting ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 8TUV.

2 Enter the terminal security code and press ●.

3 Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2ABC "No" to cancel.

Information

- SMS message validity, SMS input character type, and SMS Center setting do not return to default even when resetting mail settings.

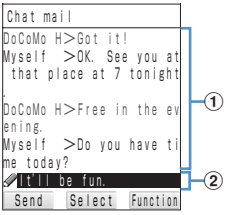
Compose/send Chat mail

Composing and sending Chat mail

Chat mails can be exchanged among multiple addresses like making conversation.

- Chat mail is not available when Receive option of mail is set to "ON".
- Communication fee for exchanging Chat mails among multiple addresses is equivalent to that of sending mail to multiple addresses.
- Mails satisfying the following conditions are recognized as Chat mails.
  - i-mode mails from addresses registered as chat members
  - Mails including "Chat mail" (all in one-byte/Half Mark, or all in two-byte/Full Mark) in the Subject
  - Mails other than Deco-mails

Reading Chat mail screen



Chat mail screen

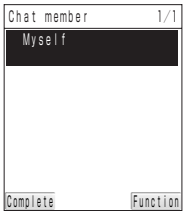
① Received/sent Chat mail
Received/sent Chat mails are displayed.
② Text
Enter text for Chat mail.

Registering Chat member <Register Chat member>

Registers members to exchange Chat mails.

- When registering an i-mode mail address as Chat member, register the whole address including "@docomo.ne.jp". An address in the form of "phone number@docomo.ne.jp" should be registered only by the phone number.
- Up to 5 chat members can be registered.
- A registered address cannot be registered as another entry.

1 Press ✉ ▶ Press Chat mail.



- When there are registered chat members, Chat mail screen is displayed. Press i [function] ▶ 3 "Set member", and go on to Step 2.

2 Press i [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Add new entry".

Editing registered chat members

① **Select a chat member and press i [Function] ▶ Press 2 "Edit".**
② **Select a field to edit and press ●.**

- Go on to Step 5 for editing Nickname, to Step 3 for editing Receiver, and to Step 7 for editing Display color.
- Nickname and display color of "Myself" can also be edited.

Deleting registered chat members

① **Select a chat member and press i [Function] ▶ Press 3 "Delete".**
② **Press 1 "Delete".**
- When you press 2 "Delete all", enter the terminal security code and press ●.

③ **Press 1 "Yes".**
- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

3 Press 5 "Direct input", enter an address, and press ●.

- Up to 50 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

Quoting addresses from Phonebook

① **Press 1 "Quote phonebook".**
② **Select a phone number and press ●.**
③ **Select a mail address and press ●.**

Quoting addresses from Sent/Received addresses history

① **Press 2 "Quote sent adrs" or 3 "Quote rcvd adrs".**
② **Select an address history and press ●.**
③ **Press ●.**

See next page

■ Quoting addresses from Sending group

- Mail setting requires to register Sending group at "Mail setting" in advance.

① **Press 4 [Quote sending grp].**
② **Select a group by pressing ◎.**
③ **Select "Receiver".**
- Press ● to release an unnecessary receiver.

④ **Press i [Complete].**

4 Select Nickname field and press ●.

5 Enter a nickname and press ●.

- Up to 4 two-byte (Full Mark)/8 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.
- When Nickname is not registered, the first 8 one-byte (Half Mark) characters in Receiver substitutes the nickname.

6 Select Display color field and press ●.

7 Select a Display color and press ●.

8 Press ✉ [Complete] ▶ Press ✉ [Complete].

Composing and sending Chat mail

- Sent Chat mails are saved in Outbox.
- Chat mails failed in sending are saved in Unsent messages box. Try to resend them from Unsent messages box.

1 Press ✉ ▶ Press Chat mail.

2 Press ●.

■ Setting members to send Chat mails

① **Press i [Function] ▶ Press 3 "Set member".**
② **Select a member and press ●.**
- Press ● to release.

③ **Press ✉ [Complete].**

3 Enter Message and press ●.

- Up to 250 two-byte (Full Mark)/500 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

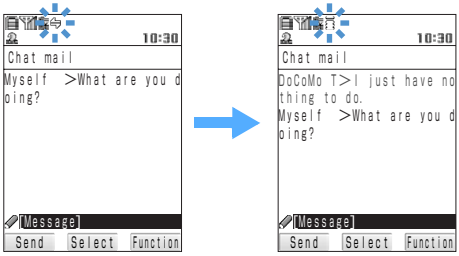
4 Press ✉ [Send].

Message of the sent Chat mail is displayed in Chat mail screen.

Receiving Chat mail <Receive Chat mail>

- Up to 50 recently received Chat mails are displayed.
- Received Chat mail is saved to Inbox. Chat mails received on Chat mail screen are displayed as read in Inbox.
- Ring tone can be set for Chat mail receiving. The Ring tone set for the last received Chat mail rings when receiving multiple Chat mails simultaneously. The i-motion set as Ring tone does not play when receiving Chat mail while displaying Chat mail screen.
- Up to 250 two-byte (Full Mark)/500 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be displayed on the screen.
- When there is any attachment file to the received Chat mail, Chat mail screen only displays the message.
- When phone numbers, mail addresses, or URL are included in the message of the received Chat mail, Phone To(AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To function is not available from Chat mail screen. When accessed from Inbox, Phone To(AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To function is available from the Chat mail.

1 Chat mail can be received while displaying Chat mail screen.



After Ring tone plays, message is displayed on the top of Chat mail screen. The message also appears in the same way when receiving Chat mail while composing Chat mail.

Receiving Chat mail on screens other than Chat mail screen

1 From Received mail list, select i-mode mail including "Chat mail" (all in one-byte (Half Mark), or all in two-byte (Full Mark)) in the Subject, and press ●.

2 Press 1@あ "Yes".

- If the sender has not been registered as Chat member, the sender is registered. When 5 entries have already been registered, registration is not executed.
- Press 2ABCか "No" to cancel.

Operations from Chat mail screen

Receiving unreceived Chat mail

You can receive unreceived Chat mail being stored in the i-mode Center.

1 Press i [Function] ▶ Press 1@あ "Update", on Chat mail screen.

Checking currently received Chat mail address

The currently received Chat mail address can be viewed.

1 Press [Function] ▶ Press "Check current add.", on Chat mail screen.

■ Setting new Chat member

① **Press [Set].**

② **Select a member and press ●.**

- Press ● to release.

③ **Press [Complete].**

Switching font size

1 Press [Function] ▶ Press "Switch font size", on Chat mail screen.

- To return to the original font size, press [Function] ▶ Press "Switch font size".

Deleting Chat mail <Delete Chat mail>

You can delete Chat mail. Deleted Chat mails also disappear from Inbox/Outbox.

1 Press [Function] ▶ Press "Delete chat mail", on Chat mail screen.

2 Press "Yes".

- Press "No" to cancel.

Information

- When deleting Chat mails received on other than Chat mail screen, delete from Inbox.
- Protected Chat mails remain in Inbox/Outbox even after deleted from Chat mail screen.

Ending Chat mail <End Chat mail>

1 Press or on Chat mail screen.

- Press "Yes" when there is an unsent Chat mail. Press "No" to cancel.

2 Press "Yes" or "No".

Yes : Deletes Chat mails and ends the function. Deleted Chat mails also disappear from the message list.

No : Ends Chat mail without deleting Chat mails. The Chat mails are displayed next time you activate Chat mail.

Information

- Also press [Function] ▶ "End chat mail", on Chat mail screen, to end Chat mail.
- Unsent Chat mails are deleted.

Composing and sending SMS (Short Message)

- One-byte Katakana or Pictograms may not be displayed properly on the receiver. Characters cannot be decorated.
- Pictograms allowed to send are ♥ and ☎.
- SMS can be sent to or received from the parties of overseas service providers other than DoCoMo. Visit DoCoMo Internet site for more information about the connectable areas and telecommunication companies.
- Access for Sent/Unsent SMS list and screen →P266

1 Press ✉ ▶ Press Compose SMS message.

2 Select To "Receiver" and press ●.

3 Press 6MNO "Direct input", enter an address, and press ●.

Enter the phone number of the receiver.

- When the phone number has been registered in Phonebook, the name in Phonebook entry is displayed in To field.
- When a destination is via an overseas service provider other than DoCoMo, enter "+" (hold down 0 for over a second), "country code" and "mobile phone number of the destination" in this order. Omit "0" if the mobile phone number begins with "0". You can also send SMS by entering "010", "country code" and "mobile phone number of the destination" in this order. (Enter "010" to reply to an SMS received from overseas.)

■ Quoting the number from Phonebook

① Press 1 "Quote phonebook".
② Select a Phonebook entry and press ●.
③ Select the phone number and press ●.

■ Entering E-mail address from Received/Sent addresses

① Press 2ABC "Quote sent adrs" or 3DEF "Quote rcvd adrs".
② Select an address history and press ●.
③ Press ●.

■ Quoting the number from Profile

① Press 5JKL "Quote profile".
② Select a phone number and press ●.

4 Select ✎ "Message" and press ●, then enter the message and press ●.

- The number of characters allowed to input differs depending on SMS input character type setting.
- Line feeds can be inserted in the message. Press #シャープ to enter line feeds. Line feeds are included in the character counts.
- Press ○ to enter a space of one-byte (Half Mark). Spaces are also included in the character counts of Message.

5 Press ✉ [Send].

■ Saving without sending mails

Press i [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Save".
The mail is saved in "Unsent messages". If neither the receiver nor message is entered, the mail cannot be saved.

See next page

Information

- Under the poor radio wave condition, characters may not be displayed properly on the other party.
- When transmission fails, an error message is displayed and SMS is saved to Unsent messages box. SMS in Unsent messages box can be edited or sent. →P255
- When transmission is completed properly, SMS is saved in Outbox. When there is not enough storage space left in Outbox, or the number of mails in Outbox has reached the maximum, unprotected Sent messages are overwritten in order from the oldest. Be sure to protect Sent messages that you need to keep. →P278
- Font type or whether to receive an SMS report can be set in SMS Settings in advance (→P296). "SMS report request" or "Message validity" can be changed by pressing (i) [Function] after starting to compose SMS. Set status is valid only for currently composing SMS.
- If SMS is sent when SMS report request is set to "ON", an SMS report notifies that FOMA terminal of the other party received SMS. SMS reports are saved to Inbox.
- Even if "Notify no callerID" has been set, Caller ID is sent to the receiver when sending SMS.
- Some Font type may not be sent. →P240
- SMS cannot be composed when the memory is not left enough, or the number of saved mail has reached the maximum, due to Unsent or protected mails. Delete unnecessary i-mode mails and/or SMS from Outbox/Unsent message box. →P278
- When subscribing to Multinumber service, set Initial number to the default in set multinumber.

Editing or sending sent/saved SMS (Short Message)

SMS sent, saved without sending, or failed to send can be edited or sent. →P255

Receive SMS

When receiving SMS (Short Message)

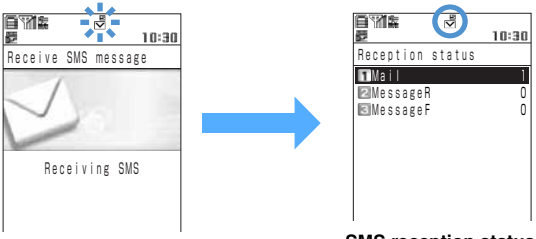
SMS is received automatically when FOMA terminals are within service area. Received SMS is saved to Inbox.

- Inbox can save SMS in conjunction with i-mode mails up to 1,000.
- SMS sent under following conditions are to be saved in the SMS Center:
  - Under Self mode
  - Exchanging infrared data
  - When the power is OFF
  - Out of service area
  - When Inbox is full of protected or unread mails
  - When UIM (FOMA card) is full of saved SMS

1 Receive SMS.

blinks and "Receiving SMS" is displayed. The icon stays on the screen after finishing receiving mails.

- : Unread i-mode mails and SMS are saved.
- : Unread SMS



SMS reception status screen

Message ring tone sounds, the incoming-call lamp lights up/blinks and the number of Received messages is displayed.

- When folding FOMA terminals, Reception status is displayed on Backside-display. →P33

• Reception status screen is displayed for approximately 30 seconds. With no key operation, the screen automatically returns to the same as before receiving.

Displaying new SMS (Short Message)

1 Press (1 @あ) "Mail" on Reception status screen.

2 Select a folder and press ●.

3 Select a mail and press ●.

- Reading received mails →P268
- Replying to the received SMS →P260
- Forwarding a received SMS →P261

Information

- SMS stored in the SMS Center is to be deleted after received by FOMA terminal.
- Short Mails sent from mova i-mode terminals are received as SMS at FOMA terminals.
- You cannot reply to received SMS without Caller ID ("ID unsent", "Payphone" or "Not supported") on sender fields.
- If failed to receive SMS, execute Check SMS to receive again.
- When there is not enough storage space left in Inbox, or the number of mails in Inbox has reached the maximum, unprotected received messages are overwritten in order from the oldest. Be sure to protect Received mails that you need to keep. →P278
- When mails cannot be overwritten as the storage space is full of unread or protected mails, reception of SMS is canceled and FULL appears.
- When UIM (FOMA card) already stores 20 SMS, SMS may not be received even there is space available in Inbox. In this case, SIM appears on the screen. Move the messages to FOMA terminal or delete SMS in UIM (FOMA card). →P278, 297

Check SMS

Checking whether SMS (Short Message) is stored

Check whether SMS was delivered while the terminal has been out of service area or the power has been off.

- Under the poor radio wave condition, checking SMS may not be executable.

1 Press (✉) ▶ Press Check SMS.

SMS is to be received if any message is stored in the SMS Center.

Setting SMS (Short Message)

Sets various requirements for SMS.

SMS (Short Message) report request

Default	OFF

Sets whether to request the SMS report when sending SMS.

1 **Press ✉ ▶ Press Mail setting ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 3DEF さ.**

2 **Press 1 .@ あ "ON".**

- Press 2ABC か "OFF" not to set.

SMS (Short Message) message validity

Default	For 3 days

Selects the storage period of sent SMS in the SMS Center if the receiver cannot receive the SMS.

1 **Press ✉ ▶ Press Mail setting ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 4GHI た.**

2 **Press one of 1 .@ あ to 4GHI た.**

For 0 day : Not stored in the SMS Center.
For 1 day : Stored in the SMS Center for 1 day.
For 2 days : Stored in the SMS Center for 2 days.
For 3 days : Stored in the SMS Center for 3 days.

SMS (Short Message) input character type setting

Default	Japanese

Selects the input method to compose SMS.

- The maximum number of characters allowed for sending mails differs depending on Font type. →P240

1 **Press ✉ ▶ Press Mail setting ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 5JKL な.**

2 **Press 1 .@ あ "Japanese" or 2ABC か "English".**

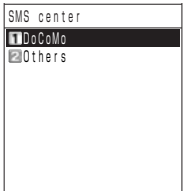
Japanese : Up to 70 characters can be entered regardless of one-byte (Half Mark) or two-byte (Full Mark).
English : Up to 160 one-byte (Half Mark) alphanumerics and marks can be entered (except ‘。「」、・゛゜-).

SMS (Short Message) Center setting

Default	DoCoMo

No setting change is needed for general use.

1 Press ✉ ▶ Press Mail setting ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 6MNO.



2 Press 2ABC "Others", enter the SMS Center number, and press ●.

- Up to 20 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered. When adding "+" at the beginning of the message, up to 21 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.
- Hold down 0 for over a second and add "+" to the beginning of the SMS Center number, to set "international". If you do not add "+", it is set to "unknown".

Information

- Press i [Function], to operate from Compose message screen. In this case, only "SMS report request" or "Message validity" can be set. Contents set from Compose message screen is valid only for the currently composed SMS.
- SMS message validity/SMS input char. type/SMS Center setting is recorded in UIM (FOMA card) inserted in FOMA terminal. Inserting different UIM (FOMA card) may change the settings.

Operate UIM (FOMA card)

Saving SMS (Short Message) in UIM (FOMA card)

Move or copy SMS stored in FOMA terminal to UIM (FOMA card) and save. Also SMS stored in UIM (FOMA card) can be moved or copied to FOMA terminal.

Moving/copying SMS (Short Message) to UIM (FOMA card)

- You can save up to 20 Received/Sent/Unsent SMS in total to UIM (FOMA card). Moved/copied Received/Sent/Unsent SMS are displayed in each "Main folder".
- By moving or copying sent SMS, the corresponding SMS report is not moved or copied to UIM (FOMA card).

<ex> Moving a received SMS

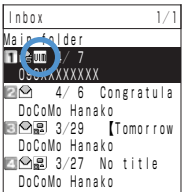
1 Select an SMS, and press i [Function] ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 2ABC "UIM".

2 Press 1あ "Move to UIM".

- Press 2ABC "Copy to UIM" to copy.

See next page

3 Press 1 "Yes".



SMS is moved to UIM (FOMA card), and UIM appears.

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Information

- Press i [Function] ▶ Select "UIM" and press ●, to operate from Message screen of Inbox/Outbox.

Moving/copying SMS (Short Message) in UIM (FOMA card) to FOMA terminals

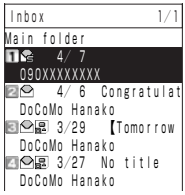
<ex> Moving a received SMS

1 Press i [Function] ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 2 "UIM".

2 Press 3 "Move to Phone".

- Press 4 "Copy to Phone".

3 Press 1 "Yes".



- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Information

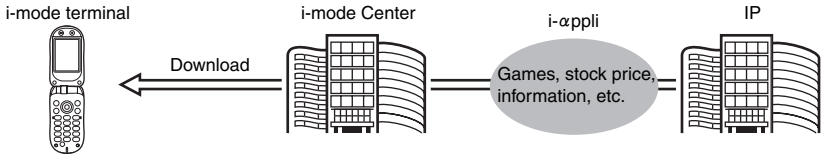
- Press i [Function] ▶ Select "UIM" and press ●, to operate from Message screen of Inbox/Outbox.

i-αppli

i-αppli 300
i-αppliDX 300
Downloading i-αppli from sites 302
Starting i-αppli. 304
Starting i-αppli automatically. 310
Starting i-αppli software from sites or mails . . . . . <i-αppli To function> 311
Setting i-αppli stand-by display. . . . . <i-αppli stand-by display> 312
Managing i-αppli 314
Using various functions of i-αppli. 319

i-αppli

Downloading i-αppli software from sites allows you more convenient use of FOMA terminal compatible with i-mode (hereinafter called as i-mode terminal). For example, you can play various downloaded games, or check stock prices automatically and periodically with i-αppli share software. Furthermore, by downloading the only data needed, you can enjoy smooth scrolling when operating map i-αppli program. In addition, some i-αppli help to register data directly to Phonebook or Schedule, and also can be linked to "Data box" to save/obtain images directly.



- Downloading i-αppli →P302
- Executing i-αppli automatically →P310
- Executing i-αppli →P304

Information

- Some software may require the serial number of the i-mode terminal/UIM (FOMA card).
- Some i-αppli software may connect to network. Also, the setting for not connecting to network is available. →P305

Using registered data

Some i-αppli software enable you to view/register/operate registered data (Phonebook, Bookmark, Schedules, images and icons) in your i-mode terminal. Registered data is available in the following operations:

- Register to Phonebook
- Use icon information
- Register Bookmark
- Register to Schedule
- Retrieve images from Data box
- Save images in Data box

i-αppliDX

i-αppliDX allows you even more convenient and enjoyable use of i-αppli in conjunction with the information of i-mode terminal (Mails, Dialed/Received call history, Phonebook data etc.).
Ex: Changing Compose message screen into the one with characters you like, notifying you the caller/sender on receiving calls/mails with the characters' comment, revising up-to-date information on stock prices or games in progress, and indicating the present location on the map and searching the route to the destination by using GPS function.

Using registered data

Some i-αppliDX software enable you to view/register/operate registered data such as Mails, Redials, Received calls and Ring tones in addition to the registered data available with standard i-αppli (Phonebook, Bookmarks, Schedules, images and icons). Registered data is available in the following operations:

- Register to Phonebook
- Refer to Phonebook
- Use icon information

- Register Bookmark
- Register to Schedule
- Use Mail menu
- Use Compose i-mode mail screen
- Refer to latest Redial
- Refer to latest Received calls
- Refer to latest unread mails
- Save Ring tone
- Save i-motion
- Change Ring tone (call, mail, MessageR/F)
- Retrieve images from Data box
- Save images in Data box
- Change image settings (Stand-by display, Dialed/Received calls, Menu icons)

Information

- With i-αppliDX, communication may be made to confirm the validity of the software regardless of the network transmission setting of the software. The timing and frequency to attempt to connecting differ, depending on the software.
- To start i-αppliDX, setting time and date in advance is required.

Mail link type i-αppli

Mail link type i-αppli is one of i-αppliDX that allows more convenient and enjoyable use of software by providing real-time update on desired information such as stock prices, or on the status of the game in progress, etc. through exchanging information by i-mode Mail.

- i-αppli mails used with Mail link type i-αppli may not be correctly displayed.

GPS i-αppli

GPS i-αppli allows more convenient and enjoyable software use such as providing the town-information of the present location quickly, indicating the present location and searching a route to the destination with GPS function.

- FOMA terminal sends location information to the information service provider (IP) of software to use or GPS service provider while operating GPS i-αppli.
- When using GPS function through GPS i-αppli, "Use location info" of the software to use is required to be set to "Send".

Other convenient functions

i-αppli stand-by display

i-αppli stand-by display uses i-αppli as a stand-by display, which also allows receiving messages and making phone calls directly. i-αppli stand-by display enables Stand-by display to indicate the latest news or weather forecast, or to inform incoming messages and alarms, etc. with favorite characters. →P312

- This function is available with software compatible with i-αppli stand-by display.

i-αppli Auto start

Software can be automatically started at the user-specified time, on the date or the day of the week, etc. Some software allow Auto start at the intervals preset in the software. →P310

Shooting with Camera

Images can be shot with FOMA terminal camera from the software. →P319

- This function is available with software compatible with shooting with Camera.

Infrared communication

Communication can be made from the software to the devices with infrared communication function. Enhanced applications are available in conjunction with the devices with infrared communication function. →P319

- This function is available with software compatible with infrared communication function.
- Some types of data may not be exchanged depending on the devices of the other party even with infrared communication function.

See next page

■ Infrared remote control

Operate various devices and electrical appliances compatible with infrared remote control from the software. →P396

- This function is available with software supported by infrared remote control function. Software compatible with devices of the other party is required.

Downloading i-αppli from sites

You can download software from sites and store in FOMA terminal.

- Up to 100 software including preinstalled software can be saved.
- Up to approximately 250 KB can be saved for each item.
- i-αppli already saved in the FOMA terminal cannot be redownloaded. However, the software can be updated if a new version is available.
- If the software download has failed due to poor radio wave condition, etc., the software will not be saved in the FOMA terminal.
- Downloading requires packet communication fee.

1 Select software to download from a site and press ●.

Selected software is downloaded.

- Press ✉ [Cancel] to stop downloading.

■ When software property display is set to "Display"

Information of the software, such as the name and the version, etc., is indicated.

Press ● ▶ Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

■ When the selected software is already downloaded into the other UIM (FOMA card)

Press 1 "Yes" on the screen to confirm whether to overwrite.

■ When the selected software is already downloaded

"Already downloaded" or "Software updated" is indicated and you cannot download the software.

■ When downloading software that uses the serial number or the registered data of FOMA terminal/UIM (FOMA card)

Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.
- Press ✉ [Detail] to confirm registered data to use if software uses registered data.
- Personal information such as address, age, or sex is not to be sent to the information service provider (IP).

2 Select a folder to save in and press ●.

3 Make i-αppli settings.

- Items to be set vary according to the software. Go to Step 5 if no item is needed to be set.

■ Setting whether to connect in starting software

①Select "Network transmission" and press ●.

②Press 1 "Yes" or 2 "No".

■ Setting i-αppli stand-by display

①Select "i-αppli stand-by display" and press ●.

②Press 1 "Yes" or 2 "No".

■ Setting whether to permit to send location information

①Select "Use location info" and press ●.

②Press 1 "Send loc. info" or 2 "Not send loc. info".

4 Press i [Complete].

5 Press 1 "Yes".

i-αppli starts.

- The confirmation screen is displayed when starting the software that requires the location information. Press 1 "Yes" to start.
- Press 2 "No" not to start.

i-αppli software starting from sites immediately

Some i-αppli software start immediately after downloading (Instant start i-αppli).

- Some Instant start i-αppli software cannot be saved to FOMA terminal.

Information

- The confirmation screen is displayed when no space is left in i-αppli saving space or when 100 software has been already saved. Press 1 "Yes" to delete data and save new software. Press 2 "No", and the screen returns to Stand-by display without saving data. Deleted software cannot be restored even when download is failed.
- When connection is not successfully accomplished, try to download again by pressing 1 "Reconnect".
- When your FOMA terminal is not the compatible model or the software has errors, displays a message, and be unable to download .

Viewing i-αppli software information in downloading <Software prop disp>

Default	Not display

Displays software information such as the title and the version etc. in downloading.

1 Press i [Function] ▶ Press 7 "Software property set", on i-αppli folder list screen.

2 Press 1 "Display" or 2 "Not display".

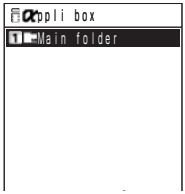
Information

- Press i [Function] ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 4 "Software property set" to set from i-αppli list screen.
- The name of i-αppli software cannot be changed.

Starting i-αppli

Select and start the software from i-αppli list.

1 Hold down (i) for over a second.



i-αppli folder list screen

i-αppli folder list screen is displayed.

2 Select a folder and press ●.

i-αppli list screen

i-αppli list screen is displayed.

3 Select an i-αppli and press ●.

- The confirmation screen is displayed when Network transmission is set to "Check every session". Press 1 "Yes" or 2 "No".

Information

- Alternatively, press ● ▶ Press αppli, to display i-αppli folder list screen.
- Connection to network may be executed while using some software, even after download is completed. You can preset whether to make connection. →P305
- Voice-calls while using i-αppli can be answered on Receive display appeared on the screen.
- Icons notify mails and messages received when i-αppli is running. You can view mails without ending i-αppli. →P404
- 3D polygon* engine enables to display 3-dimensional images in i-αppli.
  * By combining polygons (triangles and squares), deep 3-dimensional images can be displayed.
- Images used in i-αppli* or the data you entered may be sent to the server through Internet automatically.
  * Images shot with Camera activated from the software or the images retrieved by using Infrared function
- The message "Software terminated due to security error" is displayed if the software tries to activate the function which is not accepted. Error history is saved when software is terminated due to Security error.
- Melody plays in the volume level set by Phone receive call in Volume while using i-αppli. When setting Volume to Step tone, i-αppli plays in LEVEL3. →P123
- Some software may not play any sound.

Setting whether to connect to the network <Network transmission>

Sets whether to execute transmission when starting i-αppli.

1 **Select an i-αppli from i-αppli list screen and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press (○) ▶ Press 3DEF "Software act" ▶ Press 3DEF "Network trans".**

2 **Press one of 1 to 3DEF.**

Yes : Connects the software to network automatically.

No : Does not connect the software to network.

Check every start : Can check whether to connect to network each time software starts. Does not display the confirmation screen if the software does not use network transmission.

- Packet communication fee is charged for connecting to network. Setting "Yes" allows automatic connection to the network.

Information

- Software requiring transmission may not operate correctly when Network transmission setting is set to "No".

Setting whether to display information with icons <Set icons>

Sets to use icons of FOMA terminal such as Unread mails or Manner mode etc. on i-αppli.

- This setting is not available for the software which does not use Icons.

1 **Select an i-αppli from i-αppli list screen and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press (○) ▶ Press 3DEF "Software act" ▶ Press 5JKL "Set icons".**

2 **Press 1 "Use" or 2ABC "Not use".**

Information

- When the software icon setting of i-αppli stand-by display is set as "Use", the information of FOMA terminal, such as the presence or icons of unread mails/messages, remained battery, Manner mode, in or out of service area, as well as the product serial number and ID number of your FOMA terminal, may be informed to information service provider (IP) through Internet, and a third party may access to the information.
- Software which requires icon information may not be started if Icon setting is set as "Not use".

Setting whether to refer to Phonebook and History <Refer to phonebook/History>

Sets whether to refer to Phonebook, Redial/Received calls, latest unread mails when starting i-αppli.

- The setting is not available for the software which does not refer to Phonebook, Redial/Received calls, latest unread mails.

1 Select an i-αppli from i-αppli list screen and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press (○) ▶ Press 3DEF "Software act" ▶ Press 7PQRS "See phonebook/hist".

2 Press 1 "Yes" or 2ABC "No".

Information

- Some i-αppli software can be set whether to accept referring to Phonebook/History. Setting "Yes" allows i-αppli to refer to Phonebook, Redialed/Received calls automatically.

Setting whether to allow Ring tone or image to be changed <Set Ring tone/Image>

You can change Ring tone or images in some i-αppli software. When setting is "Yes", Ring tone or images are changed automatically.

1 Select an i-αppli from i-αppli list screen and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press (○) ▶ Press 3DEF "Software act" ▶ Press 6MNO "Set ringtone/image".

2 Press 1 "Yes" or 2ABC "No".

- Sets whether to display the confirmation screen each time changing, when "Yes" is set. Press 1 "Yes" or 2ABC "No".

Setting whether to accept using and sending location information <Use location info>

Sets if FOMA terminal allows i-αppli to send the location information.

1 Select an i-αppli from i-αppli list screen and (i) [Function] ▶ Press (○) ▶ Press 3DEF "Software act" ▶ Press (○) ▶ Press 1 "Use location info".

2 Press 1 "Use" or 2ABC "Not use".

Starting software from other software

You can start new software without returning to i-αppli software list while activating other software. Procedures to start and register depends on each software. Follow the guidance on the display.

- Download the software which allows the other application to start.
- Some software may require to register applications to start in advance.

Information

- The software not saved in FOMA terminal is required to be downloaded, if being specified to be started.

Software preinstalled by default

FOMA terminal already has "MagicArrow" and "じかんわり (Class schedule)" software by default.

- Deleted preinstalled software by default can be downloaded from the site "どこでもSANYO (Dokodemo SANYO)". →P196

MagicArrow

The puzzle game to delete panels by operating the arrow and various colors of panels to align more than three panels in the same color.

©2005 Shift
Presented by BANDAI NETWORKS CO., LTD

■ ENDLESS

The mode to delete panels set in random order. Panels added from the bottom at regular time intervals.
Difficulty level increases as getting higher scores.

■ PUZZLE

The mode to clear 30 stages. Delete all panels within the presented number of steps to switch panels, indicated in the field of "STEP" on the right side of the screen. Delete all panels, and you can advance to the next stage.

■ MANUAL (Provided only in Japanese)

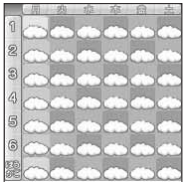
You can refer to "HOW TO PLAY" or "STORY" while playing.

じかんわり (Class schedule) (Provided only in Japanese)

Displays on Stand-by display by registering items such as your school grade, subjects to take, or homeworks. And also, you can register the times for private tutoring school or the appointment with friends into "ほうかご (After-school schedule)", to notify the schedule by alarm.

<ex> Using after registering your grade as "中学生以上 (Junior high. or older)"

1 Select "じかんわり (Class schedule)" on i-αppli list screen and press ●.



Main screen

■ Starting the application for the first time

Registration screen of the school grade is displayed.

①Press ●.
②Select "中学生以上 (Junior high. or older)" and press ●.
③Press i [OK].

- Kanji (Chinese characters) to be displayed differs depending on the selected school grade, according to the difficulty.

2 Select a class of the week on the main screen and press ●.

■ Exchanging data with Infrared communication

①Press i [メニュー (Menu)] on the main screen.

- The operation is also available to press #SHIFT on the main screen.

②Select "友達とつなぐ (Connect to friends)" and press ●.
③Select an item and press ●.

ノートを送る (Sending your notebook)	: Sends the notebook contents of selecting subjects. • If selecting "ほうかご (After school)" on the main screen, displays as "予定を送る (Sending schedule)". Sends all of the 4 schedules registered in "ほうかご (After school)".
時間割を送る (Sending your class schedule)	: Sends all of class schedules.
友達からもらう (Obtaining from friends)	: Obtains the "じかんわり (Class schedule)" data.
戻る (Return)	: Returns to the main screen.

④Select "Yes" and press ●.

See next page

Returning to i-αppli stand-by display

• Set "じかんわり (Class schedule)" as i-αppli stand-by display in advance. →P312

①Press (i) [メニュー (Menu)] on the main screen.

• The operation is also available to press (メール) on the main screen.

②Select "待受け画面 (Stand-by display)" and press (●).

Changing the subject

①Select a subject and press (i) [メニュー (Menu)], on the main screen.

②Select "科目名の変更 (Change the subject)" and press (●).

• Go to Step 3.

Deleting registered subjects or items registered in After-school schedule

①Select a subject and press (i) [メニュー (Menu)], on the main screen.

②Select "この科目を消去 (Delete this subject)" and press (●).

• For deleting all registered subjects, select "全科目を消去 (Deleting all the subjects)".

③Select "はい (Set)" and press (●).

Changing じかんわり (Class schedule) settings

① Press (i) [メニュー (Menu)] on the main screen.

② Select "設定 (Setting)" and press (●).

③ Select an item and press (●).

学年 (Grade) : Changes the registered grade.

デザイン (Design) : Select the design for the main screen.

待ちうけ画像 (Stand-by display screen) : Select the background image while displaying i-αppli stand-by display.

• If selecting "画像を選択 (Images selected by yourself)", press (●) ▶ Press (1) "Yes".

待受け予定表示 (Stand-by schedule screen) : Selects the position of "予定 (Schedule)" while displaying i-αppli stand-by display.

バイブ (Vibrator) : Select the setting whether to activate vibration on the preset alarm time.

アラーム音 (Alarm tone) : Select Ring tone whether to sound on the preset alarm time. Select "なし (none)" not to set Alarm tone.

• Select (メール) and press (●) to confirm Alarm tone after selecting Alarm tone.

• Alarm tone rings at the volume set for Phone receive call in Volume.

④ Press (i) [決定 (Set)] ▶ Press (●).

Ending "じかんわり (Class schedule)"

①Press (i) [メニュー (Menu)] on the main screen.

②Select "アプリ終了 (End of application)" and press (●).

③Select "はい (Set)" and press (●).

3 Press (○) ▶ Press (●).

• Press (●), and you can enter the subject directly. Up to 2 two-byte (Full Mark)/4 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

4 Select a subject and press (●).

5 Select "OK" and press ●.

6 Select a field and press ●.

マーク1、2 (Mark 1, 2) : Select an icon to display on the main screen.
- Select an icon and press ●.
- When changing the design for the main screen, some of the icons are also changed.

ノート : Enter a note to display on the main screen. Up to 100 two-byte (Full Mark)/200 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.
- Enter the content of the note and press ●.

7 Press i [決定 (Set)] ▶ Press ●.

■ Entering the after-school schedule

① Select "ほうかご (After-school) on the main screen and press ●.
② Select a field and press ●.

アイコン欄 (Icon field) : Selects the icon displayed on the main screen.
- Select an icon and press ●.
- When changing the design for the main screen, some of the icons are also changed.

アラーム欄 (Alarm field) : Sets to ring the alarm on the preset time.
- Press ○ ▶ Press ● to enter the time, and press ●.

予定入力欄 (Schedule input field) : Enter the schedule displayed on the main screen. Up to 12 two-byte (Full Mark)/24 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.
- Enter the schedule and press ●.

③ Press i [決定 (Set)] ▶ Press ●.
- Alarm is to be activated only when i-αppli stand-by display is on the screen.

Information

- Both software are not restricted by UIM (FOMA card). However, when redownloading after deleting or when overwriting by upgrade, both software are restricted by UIM (FOMA card) as regular software downloaded. Restricted action by UIM (FOMA card) →P40
- Followings are the default settings.
  - Network trans (→P305) : Yes
  - Set i-αppli To (→P312) : Yes*2
  - Standby disp trans (→P313) : Yes*1
  - Stand-by display (→P312) : No*1
  - Set icons (→P305) : Use*2
  - Set ringtone/image (→P306) : Yes*2
  - See phonebook/hist (→P306) : Yes*2
  - Use location info (→P306) : Use*2
  - Auto start (→P310) : No

*1 Unable to change the settings of "MagicArrow".
*2 Unable to change the settings of both software.

Starting i-αppli automatically

Default	Software: Not set User setting: Not set

Sets time and date/Repeat to make i-αppli software to start automatically.

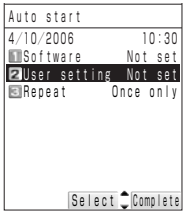
- Up to 30 Auto start settings of Software and User setting in total can be valid.
- i-αppli cannot be started automatically when FOMA terminal is out of battery, under All lock, or under PIM lock (i-αppli).

Setting whether to start automatically <Auto start>

Sets each i-αppli software whether to start automatically. When the software has its setting of intervals for activating automatically, set whether to activate the software at the interval preset in the software.

- Some software cannot be activated automatically.

1 Select an i-αppli from i-αppli list screen and press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 2ABC "Auto start".



2 Press 1 "Software" or 2ABC "User setting".

Software : Sets whether to start automatically with time and date/Repeat setting in software.

User setting : Sets whether to start automatically with the time and date set in Auto start.

3 Press 1 "Set".

- Press 2ABC "Not set" not to set Auto start.

4 Press ⓘ [Complete].

◷ is displayed on the software screen. In some cases, it may not be displayed even after setting Auto start.

Setting date and time of Auto start <Set auto start>

Register the time and date to start automatically.

- The conditions that can be set depend on the software program.
- Auto start does not work when settings of the software and the user setting are set to "No" in Auto start.

1 Select an i-αppli from i-αppli list screen and press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 2ABC "Auto start".

2 Press 3DEF "Repeat".

3 Press one of 1 to 3.

Once only : Starts automatically just once on the registered time and date.

Daily : Starts automatically at the same time every day.

Day of week : Starts automatically at the registered time on the selected day of the week, every week.

① Select the day of the week to start automatically and press ●.
Press ● again to cancel.

② Press i [Complete].

4 Enter time and date and press ●.

5 Press i [Complete].

Information

- If i-αppli auto start and Alarms, such as Schedule alarm, are set at the same time, the priority goes to Alarm setting and i-αppli is not activated. And also software may not start while operating other functions such as composing mails.
- Failed Auto start is recorded and saved in Auto start failure history.
- Multiple software cannot be started automatically at the same time. The error message is displayed in an attempt to enter the same time as another software.
- Also software may not be activated automatically if the same software has been started automatically within the last 10 minutes. Set the interval time between auto start settings more than 10 minutes.

i-αppli To function

Starting i-αppli software from sites or mails

You can start i-αppli software from other functions, such as sites, mails, infrared communication, and Bar code etc.

1 Select the item linking to software and press ●.

2 Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" not to start.

See next page

Information

- The software to start must be saved in FOMA terminal in advance. However, some i-αppli software which are executed from sites open immediately after download is completed (Instant start i-αppli). In this case, software is not saved yet, and the confirmation screen whether to save is displayed when closing the software. Some Instant start i-αppli software cannot be saved to FOMA terminal.
- If the software to start is not saved in FOMA terminal, a message "No requested software" is displayed.
- Some instant start i-αppli software may displays the confirmation screen whether to connect to network when starting.
- i-αppli software does not start when i-αppli To is set to "No".
- After ending the i-αppli or forced termination by error, the screen returns to the previous place where the i-αppli software was started.

Setting whether to start with i-αppli To software <i-αppli To>

Sets each i-αppli software whether to be started from sites or Mails etc.

- Some i-αppli software cannot be set to start from sites or mails.

1 Select an i-αppli from i-αppli list screen and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press (○) ▶ Press 3DEF "Software act" ▶ Press 4GHI "Set i-αppli To".

2 Press 1 "Yes" or 2ABC "No".

i-αppli stand-by display

Setting i-αppli stand-by display

You can set i-αppli software as Stand-by display, from which to start and operate i-αppli software.

- To set i-αppli stand-by display, the software for Stand-by display must be downloaded in advance.
- Some software cannot be set as i-αppli stand-by display.
- When i-αppli stand-by display is activated, " " or " " is displayed.
- i-αppli stand-by display setting is prior to Wallpaper in Stand-by display setting.
- Only one software can be set for i-αppli stand-by display.
- Connection to a site (Web To) cannot be made from i-αppli stand-by display.

Setting i-αppli stand-by display

1 Press (●) ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 2ABC ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press 2ABC.

2 Press 1 "Set".

3 Select an i-αppli and press (●).

4 Press 1 "Yes" or 2ABC "No".

Setting from i-αppli software list

1 Select an i-αppli from i-αppli list screen and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press (○) ▶ Press 3DEF "Software act" ▶ Press 1 "Stand-by display".

2 Press 1 "Yes" or 2 "No".

Operating i-αppli stand-by display

1 Press CLR while displaying i-αppli stand-by display.

i-αppli starts and " " or " " is changed into flashing " " (orange) or " " (orange).

■ Ending/releasing i-αppli stand-by display while activating

Press PWR while activating i-αppli stand-by display.

- Following operations: →P313 "Releasing i-αppli stand-by display" Step 3

Information

- When All lock or PIM lock (i-αppli) is set while activating i-αppli stand-by display, i-αppli stand-by display is terminated and the default Stand-by display is displayed under All lock, and the Stand-by display preset before setting i-αppli stand-by is displayed under PIM lock (i-αppli). Release All lock or PIM lock (i-αppli) to redisplay i-αppli stand-by display.
- The screen is displayed to confirm whether to start i-αppli stand-by display, when the power is rebooted with the setting of i-αppli stand-by display activated. Press 1 "Yes" to activate i-αppli stand-by display, and 2 "No" to display Stand-by display. Or i-αppli stand-by display starts after approximately 5 seconds of no operation.
- i-αppli stand-by display which requires connection to the network may not work correctly under the condition of poor radio wave.
- When the software icon setting of i-αppli stand-by display is set as "Use", the information of FOMA terminal, such as the presence or icons of unread mails/messages, remained battery, Manner mode, in or out of service area, as well as the product serial number and ID number of your FOMA terminal, may be informed to information service provider (IP) through Internet, and a third party may access to the information.

Setting Network transmission on <i-αppli stand-by display transmission>

Sets to start network transmission while activating i-αppli stand-by display.

1 Select an i-αppli from i-αppli list screen and press i [Function] ▶ Press ● ▶ Press 3 "Software act" ▶ Press 2 "Standby disp trans".

2 Press 1 "Yes" or 2 "No".

Information

- When stand-by display transmission is set to "No", up-to-date information may not be available on the display.

Releasing i-αppli stand-by display

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 2 ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press 2.

2 Press 2 "End/Terminate".

See next page

3 **Press 2 "Terminate".**

- Press 1 "End" to end i-αppli stand-by display temporarily. i-αppli software returns at next time displaying Stand-by display.
- Press 3 "Cancel" to cancel.

Releasing from i-αppli software list

1 **Select an i-αppli from i-αppli list screen and press i [Function] ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 3 "Software act" ▶ Press 1 "Stand-by display".**

- The screen is displayed to confirm whether to change i-αppli stand-by display when select other software while setting.

2 **Press 1 "Yes".**

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Managing i-αppli

You can upgrade or sort software for comfortable use, and also check the error history of i-αppli operation, such as failure in starting.

Information

- For i-αppli builders:
  If software does not act normally while building, referring to Trace information may be a help.
  Press i [Function] on i-αppli list ▶ Press 6 "View history" ▶ Press 4 "Trace info", to confirm.

Upgrading i-αppli software <Upgrade>

When software saved in FOMA terminal is upgraded at the site, you can update by downloading.

- When upgrading Mail link type i-αppli, the screen is displayed to confirm whether to change the name of folders, if the folders of Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages that the software uses are with Security ON. Press 1 "Yes" to start upgrading.

1 **Select an i-αppli from i-αppli list screen and press i [Function] ▶ Press 3 "Upgrade".**

2 **Press 1 "Yes".**

Connects to Network and starts downloading.

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.
- The confirmation screen is displayed depending on Software act or the setting on each software. The confirmation screen in downloading →P302

Information

- Some software may confirm weather to upgrade automatically and displays the confirmation screen when starting. Press 1 "Yes" to start upgrading.

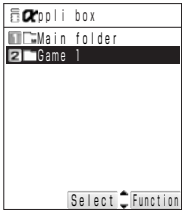
Creating folders

Creates folders to save i-αppli.

- Up to 9 folders can be created including "Main folder".

1 Press (i) [Function] on i-αppli folder list screen ▶ Press 1 "Create folder".

2 Enter the folder name and press ●.



- Up to 8 two-byte (Full Mark)/16 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

■ Changing the name of created folder

- The name of "Main folder" cannot be changed.

①**Select a folder and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 2 "Edit folder name".**
②**Enter the folder name and press ●.**

■ Sorting folders

- "Main folder" cannot be sorted.

①**Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 3 "Sort folders".**
②**Select a folder and press ●.**
③**Select a destination to move and press ●.**
- When sorting other folders, repeat Step ② to ③.

④**Press (i) [Complete].**

Moving i-αppli to folders

Saved i-αppli can be moved to other folders.

1 Select an i-αppli from i-αppli list screen and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 2 "Move to folder".

2 Press 1 "Move".

■ Moving several i-αppli software by option

①**Press 2 "Move option".**
②**Select an i-αppli and press ●.**
- Press ● to release.

③**Press (i) [Exec.]**

■ Moving all

Press 3 "Move all in folder".

3 Select the folder to move in and press ●.

See next page

4 Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Deleting i-αppli or folders

You can delete created folders or i-αppli.

Deleting folder

- Preinstalled "Main folder" by default cannot be deleted.

1 Select a folder from i-αppli folder list screen and press i [Function] ▶ Press 4 "Delete folder".

2 Enter the terminal security code and press ●.

3 Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Deleting i-αppli

1 Select an i-αppli from i-αppli list screen and press i [Function] ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 1 "Delete".

2 Press 1 "Delete".

■ Deleting by option

①Press 2 "Delete option".
②Select i-αppli and press ●.
- Press ● to release.

③Press i [Exec.]

■ Deleting all

①Press 3 "Delete all in fldr".
②Enter the terminal security code and press ●.

3 Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Information

- When i-αppli software to delete is set as i-αppli stand-by display, the confirmation screen is displayed. Press 1 "Yes" to delete and return to the setting of Stand-by display registered as Wallpaper.
- Mail link type i-αppli cannot be deleted, if any mails in the folders of Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages which the software uses are protected.
- You can set whether to delete the folders that was made automatically in deleting Mail link type i-αppli. However, under PIM lock (mail) or when the folder has protected mails, neither the software nor the folders can be deleted.
- If security is set on the folders of Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages that Mail link type i-αppli uses, the screen is displayed to confirm whether to delete. Press 1 "Execute" and enter the terminal security code to delete.
- When redownloading Mail link i-αppli, the folder left without Mail link i-αppli can be utilized. If Security setting is ON to the folder, enter the terminal security code and downloading is available.
- Depending on the software, i-αppli mail may be deleted from folders, when deleting Mail link type i-αppli software. You can delete the unnecessary folders and create a new folder. Mail link type i-αppli cannot be downloaded, if not creating a new folder.
- While operating Mail link type i-αppli folder with Multitask, the compatible Mail link type i-αppli cannot be deleted.

Sorting i-αppli software <Sort>

You can sort the i-αppli software for comfortable use.

1 Press i [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Sort", on i-αppli list screen.

2 Select an item and press ●.

Run times (asc.) : Sorts by activated frequency in ascending order.
Run times (des.) : Sorts by activated frequency in descending order.
Start date (new→o) : Sorts by activated date order from new to old.
Start date (old→n) : Sorts by activated date order from old to new.
Svg date (new→o) : Sorts by saved date order from new to old.
Svg date (old→n) : Sorts by saved date order from old to new.
αppli name (asc.) : Sorts by i-αppli name in ascending order.
αppli name (des.) : Sorts by i-αppli name in descending order.
αppli size (asc.) : Sorts by the saved size of software in ascending order.
αppli size (des.) : Sorts by the saved size of software in ascending order.

Information

- Sorting may not work when the number of executions or file size of several software are the same.

Confirming the information of i-αppli <View certificate>

When downloading an i-αppli with SSL communication, the certificate of the downloading destination is displayed.

1 Select an i-αppli on i-αppli list screen and press i [Function] ▶ Press 5 "View certificate".

Confirming the information, such as errors etc. <View history>

You can confirm the errors, such as failures in starting.

1 Press ⓘ [Function] on i-αppli folder list screen ▶ Press 5JKL "View history".

2 Press one of 1 to 4GHI.

Auto start failure : Confirms the software title or the time/date of Auto start failure.

End w/stand-by err : Confirms the software title or the time/date of the failure to continue i-αppli stand-by display.

Security error : Confirms the title of the software or the time/date of the forced termination for attempting network transmission and reference etc. that are not allowed.

Trace info : Creates the character strings on the error report written in while executing software or the saved contents at exceptional terminations as the trace information.

■ Deleting the history

Deletes all of the history and trace information.

①On each History list screen (Trace info. screen), press ⓘ [Delete].

②Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2ABC "No" to cancel.

Information

- Press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press 6MNO "View history", to confirm from i-αppli list screen.
- Up to approximately 1 KB for each history can be saved in Auto start failure history/End w/stand-by err history/Security error history/Trace info.
- If not enough space for the new history is left, the oldest messages are deleted to save the new history.

Confirming the information of i-αppli <Software property>

You can confirm the software title, version, and settings of i-αppli.

1 Select an i-αppli from i-αppli list screen and press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press 4GHI "Software property".

Information

- The setting also can be confirmed when downloading the software. →P303

Confirming system status of i-αppli <System property>

Displays Used/Rest memory space and the number of saved i-αppli in number and graph.

1 Press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press 6MNO "System property", on i-αppli folder list screen.

Information

- Press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press 7PQRS "System property", to confirm from i-αppli list screen.

Using various functions of i-αppli

Some i-αppli software provide various functions, such as making calls, connecting to sites, Camera, Bar code reader, and Infrared transmission etc.

- Download i-αppli applicable to each function in advance.

Making a call from i-αppli

1 Select the phone number field and press ●, following the guidance of the screen.

- Following operations : →P215 "Functions available by selecting the phone number" Step 2 to 3
- When you make a call, the software is interrupted.
- Some software may need different operations or are unable to make calls.

Connecting to sites from i-αppli

1 Select a link item and press ●, following the guidance of the screen.

2 Press i [Connect].

The software is ended and the site is displayed.

- Some software may need different operations or are unable to connect to sites.

Using camera function from i-αppli

1 Shoot a picture by the camera using the software.

- Some software may automatically start camera.

Information

- When Camera is activated from software, the shot image is not saved in "Camera" folder in My picture or i-motion folder, but saved/used as a part of i-αppli.
- Some software support setting change of the size, continuous shot, image quality or frame.

Using Bar code reader from i-αppli

JAN or QR code can be read from i-αppli using the camera.

1 Read a code using the software.

- A message appears to indicate that the scanned data is saved and used by software.

Using infrared connection from i-αppli

- Infrared communication may not work depending on the other party's devices, even when Infrared communication function is available.

1 Perform Infrared communication using the software.

GPS function

GPS function 322
Positioning your location . . . . . <Position location> 324
Setting Position location . . . . . .<Position loc. settings> 326
Using GPS software . . . . . .<GPS software> 327
Providing the location information upon the request from the other party . . . . . <Location provide> 327
Notifying present location . . . . . <Notify location> 333
Displaying the history of confirmed location information . . . <Location history> 341
Using location information from each function 343

GPS function

GPS (Global Positioning System) is the system developed and operated by Department of Defense of USA to notify current position (longitude and latitude, etc.) using the radio wave for positioning location radiated from the orbiting satellites of the earth.
Retrieve location information (longitude/latitude) of FOMA terminals to use radio waves radiated from GPS satellites for positioning location. Varieties of services are available with retrieved location information.

Services using GPS function

Displaying map or searching surrounding information of the present location (Notify location)

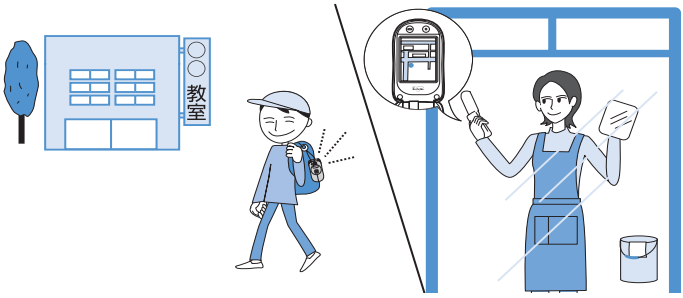
Sends retrieved location information to search map or surrounding information. (The services differ according to the IP.)

Using GPS applicable i-αppli (GPS software)

Useful i-αppli is available by using location information. You can use FOMA terminal as Navigation by repeating positioning.

Providing location information upon the request from the other party (Location provide)

If the terminal is set as the target of DoCoMo's searching service "イマドコサーチ (Searching position)", provides the information about present location upon request. "イマドコサーチ (Searching position)" is the service to provide the rough present location of a person who is carrying i-mode compatible FOMA terminal with a map to the searcher. Refer to NTT DoCoMo Internet site for "イマドコサーチ (Searching position)" service.



Notifying location information of the present location (Notify location/Periodic notify)

Notifies location information of the present location to others. Periodical notification can be set to notify the present location of children with FOMA terminals.

Adding Location information to shot still images

Adds location information to shot still images. Maps are available to view by the location information added to the image.

Sending location information of the present location or favorite places with mails

Attaches location information to mail messages. Receivers can check the maps of neighborhood by using location information URL.

Registering location information to Phonebook or Schedule

Registers the retrieved location information to Phonebook or Schedule to use.

GPS function

Using GPS function

- GPS service uses the function of Location provide and Notify location.
- This service may require the subscription or may be charged to use.
- To use Location provide and Notify location, follow the information on Internet sites of GPS service providers or DoCoMo. Some of these functions may be charged.
- To use GPS function, application to i-mode service may be required.
- GPS is the service in charge of Department of Defense of USA, therefore, GPS radio wave condition may be controlled (accuracy degradation or radio wave abort, etc.) for the US national security reason.
- Note that GPS is using the radio wave from satellites, and following conditions may cause the radio wave abort or difficulty to receive.
  - In or under buildings
  - In bags or boxes
  - In or under densely trees
  - Inside moving cars or trains
  - When blocking mobile phones by people or objects
  - When covering Screen/Keypad/Microphone/Speaker of mobile phones with hands
  - In basement, tunnel, underground or water
  - In densely area with buildings or residence
  - Near high-tension line
  - In bad weather with heavy rain/snow

  In these cases, the error of retrieved location information may be more than 300 m.
- Unable to use GPS function of FOMA terminals out of service area except Position location function.
- Operation of Notify location out of service area may take more time or differ from within service area.
- 24 GPS satellites are on the satellite orbits at the altitude of approximately 20,000 km, and each satellite orbits around the earth in 12 hours. Therefore, note that radio wave condition to retrieve differs depending on the date even in the same environment, and retrieved location information may have significant errors or positioning may not be executed.
- Unable to activate GPS function under All lock mode/Self mode/PIM lock (GPS) mode and if PIN lock is all locked. However, Location provide is available to operate under All lock or PIM lock mode.
- Positioning may be failed while dialing/receiving phone calls or receiving mails.
- Note that DoCoMo does not take any responsibility for the user's disadvantage if you cannot confirm the positioning (communication) result with failure/repair or other handlings.
- FOMA terminals cannot be used as navigation system for professional use of aircrafts, vehicles, person, etc. Therefore, note that DoCoMo does not take any responsibility for the trouble caused by the navigation system to use Location information.
- FOMA terminals cannot be used as surveying GPS of high accuracy. Therefore, note that DoCoMo does not take any responsibility for the loss caused by the error of location information.
- GPS function of FOMA terminals cannot be used outside of Japan.
- Positioning (Positioning location/Location provide/Notify location/Periodic notify) is not operated under the following conditions:

Menu item	Conditions
Position location	• During a video-phone call • When holding down GPS key for over a second while activating i-αppli • In Infrared communication, updating software • Entering PIN code when turning the power on
Location provide	• During Location provide (including Location provide while ringing Burglar alarm or under Power off act "ON") • Positioning from i-αppli, connecting to i-αppli sites, infrared communication of i-αppli • In Infrared communication, updating software • Entering PIN code when turning the power on

See next page

Menu item	Conditions
Notify location	• When holding down Task key for over a second • In Infrared communication, updating software • Entering PIN code when turning the power on
Periodic notify	• During infrared communication of i-αppli • In Infrared communication, updating software • Entering PIN code when turning the power on

Position location

Positioning your location

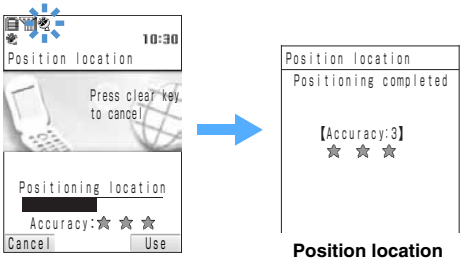
Position the present location and check your place. You can send the positioned location information with mails or register to Phonebook. Also, Location information is available using GPS software.

- You can position the location with FOMA terminals out of service area, however, may take more time. Also may not be positioned depending on the surrounding condition.
- You may position the location with FOMA terminals out of service area, however, you cannot display a map.

1 Press ▶ Press .

blinks, and the operation follows the setting on Sound/Volume/Vibrator/LED/Notice time.

- Press the keys except , , to stop playing melody. However, pressing does not stop playing, when [Use] is not displayed.
- Press [Use] to use the displayed location information of Accuracy as the position location result while positioning location.



Position location result screen

Accuracy level 3 (★★★) : Error is less than 50 m.
Accuracy level 2 (★★☆) : Error is 50 m or more, and less than 300 m.
Accuracy level 1 (★☆☆) : Error is over 300 m.

Canceling Position location

Press [Cancel] or .

Information

- Alternatively, press ▶ Press ▶ Press , to start Position location.
- Position location is also activated by holding down over a second.
- Accuracy is the rough indication. Differs depending on the radio wave condition of the surroundings.

Services using Position location results

Displaying map

Displays a map based on location information.

1 Press ● ▶ Press 1 "Read a map", on Position location result screen.

2 Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Sending location information by E-mails

You can notify the location information URL to others by pasting to mails.

- Location information URL is the location site URL of maps or surroundings, added with location information (longitude/latitude)/Geographic coordinate system* or Accuracy. Access the location information URL and displays the site utilizing location information.

  * Geographic coordinate system is the standard rule to display positions on earth with latitude and longitude.

1 Press ● ▶ Press 2 "Paste to mail", on Position location result screen.

2 Press 1 "Yes".

Compose message screen is displayed, and the location information URL is pasted on the message.

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.
- Following operations : →P242 "Composing and sending i-mode mail" Step 2 to 6

Running GPS software

Runs GPS software to use location information.

1 Press ● ▶ Press 3 "Run GPS software", on Position location result screen.

- Following operations: →P327 "Using GPS software" Step 2

Registering location information to Phonebook

1 Press ● ▶ Press 4 "New to phonebook", on Position location result screen.

Displays Phonebook registration screen, and the location information URL is attached.

- Following operations : →P99 "Registering entry in FOMA terminal phonebook" Step 3 to 6
- Unable to register Location information URL to UIM (FOMA card) Phonebook.

When adding to Phonebook

①Press ● ▶ Press 5 "Add to phonebook", on Position location result screen.
②Select a Phonebook entry and press ●.

- Press 1 "Yes" when location information is already attached. Press 2 "No" to cancel.
- Following operations : →P111 "Editing saved Phonebook entries" Step 2 to 4

Registering location information to Schedule

1 Press ● ▶ Press 6 "New to schedule", on Position location result screen.

- Following operations : →P414 "Registering schedules" Step 3 to 5

See next page

■ When adding to Schedule

①Press ● ▶ Press 7PQRS "Add to schedule", on Position location result screen.

②Select a schedule and press ●.

- Press 1 "Yes" when location information is already attached. Press 2ABC "No" to cancel.
- Following operations : →P414 "Registering schedules" Step 4 to 5

Position loc. settings

Setting Position location

After positioning location, you can display a map with simple operation or start GPS software automatically.

Setting GPS key

Default	Read a map

Hold down GPS key for over a second and set the operation after positioning location.

1 Press ▶ Press Position loc. settings ▶ Press 1.

2 Select an item and press ●.

Read a map	: Connects to DoCoMo's site and displays the map. →P325
Paste to mail	: Pastes location information URL onto mails. →P325
Run GPS software	: Displays GPS software list. →P327
Register to phonebook	: Registers a new entry/Adds to Phonebook. →P99, 111
Register to schedule	: Registers a new entry/Adds to schedule. →P414
Check every position	: Enables a user to select items to use on every positioning.

Setting Positioning mode for Positioning location

Default	Standard mode

1 Press ▶ Press Position loc. settings ▶ Press 2ABC.

2 Press 1 "Standard mode" or 2ABC "Quality mode".

Standard mode	: Positions location prior to shorter required time.
Quality mode	: Takes longer time for Position location. Consequently the accuracy of positioning location may be superior to that of Standard mode.

GPS software

Using GPS software

GPS software is an i-αppli applicable to GPS function. The software allows you to display the map of surroundings etc. by using the location information retrieved to FOMA terminals.

- Downloads GPS compatible i-αppli software from the sites since GPS software is not set by default.
- Service procedures of Location information differ depending on software.

1 **Press ▶ Press .**

2 **Select GPS software and press .**

- Only the software applicable to GPS is displayed.

Location provide

Providing the location information upon the request from the other party

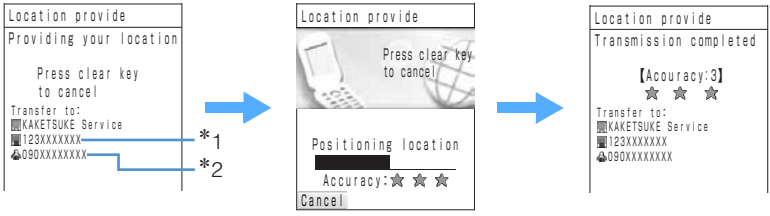
Sets whether to provide the present location information upon the request from the other party.

- Sets Location provide setting to "Loc. provide ON" to use this function. "Loc. provide ON " is set by default. Also, the function may be required to set the service settings in the Location provide menu.
- Location provide may be required the additional service subscription. The service may be charged under some conditions.
- For using Location provide service, follow the information on Internet sites of GPS service providers or DoCoMo.
- Location information may be sent with no operation under "Loc. provide ON".

When the location information is requested

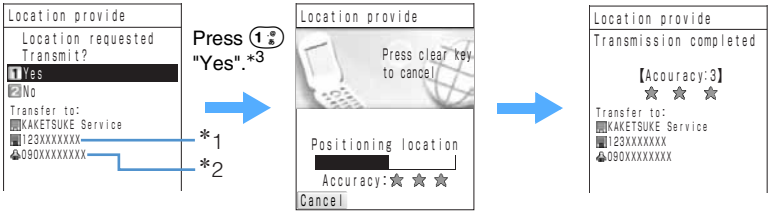
Starts Location provide upon the request to provide the location information from the registered host.

- blinks, and the operation follows the setting on Sound/Volume setting/Vibrator/LED/Notice time.
- When making or talking on a phone/video-phone call, Notify/Check tone, or vibrator are not activated, and only signal tone, incoming-call lamp and the screen are active.
- When GPS Service setting is set to "許容 (Allow)" (for the users of "イマドコサーチ (Searching position)", when "位置情報利用設定 (Setting for using location information)" in "iモードオプション設定 (i-mode option setting)" is set to "許容 (Allow)"), provides locations without confirmation of users.



See next page

- When GPS Service settings are set to "毎回確認 (Confirm request)" (for the users of "イマドコサーチ (Searching position)", when "位置情報利用設定 (Setting for using location information)" in "iモードオプション設定 (i-mode option setting) is set to "毎回確認 (Confirm request)"), locations are provided by confirming to users upon each request. Location is not provided if no operation is made for over 20 seconds.



*1 (Host ID for Location provide) may not be displayed.

*2 If (Requestor ID for Location provide) matches to a phone number or an E-mail address registered in Phonebook, the name registered in Phonebook is displayed. And if matches to a phone number of Location service client and does not match to the ones in Phonebook, Location service client name is displayed. In this case, the icon is displayed.

*3 Press 2 "No", not to send.

Terminating providing Location information

Press [Cancel] or while providing location.

- Location information may be sent depending on the operation timing.
- Under the condition of poor connection, sent Location information may not reach GPS service providers.

Information

- Even the phone number or the E-mail address to provide Location information is registered to the Phonebook data as secret, the name is not displayed except under Secret mode.
- When activating Location provide function while displaying Chara-den in video-phone calls or Chara-den is set to Substitutive image, a confirmation screen is displayed to set Chara-den as substitutive image. Also, an image to indicate being in a process is sent to the other party, by pressing .

Location provide ON/OFF

Default	Location provide ON

1 Press ▶ Press ▶ Press 3 ▶ Press 1.

Displays Loc. provide ON/OFF setting screen.

2 Press 1 "Loc. provide ON".

- Press 2 "Loc. provide OFF" not to accept.

3 Enter the terminal security code and press .

Setting Permission schedule onto Location provide

1 Press 3 "Permission schedule" on Location provide ON/OFF screen.

2 Enter the terminal security code and press .

3 Set the permission schedule to provide.

Setting Start time

①Select ▷ and press ●.
②Enter time and date to start the function and press ●.

Setting End time

①Select ◁ and press ●.
②Enter time and date to deactivate and press ●.

Setting Repeat

①Select ⇄ and press ●.
②Press one of 1 to 3.

Daily : Provides location information at the set time every day.

Day of week : Provides Location information on specified days of the week.
- Select a day of the week, press ●, and press i [Complete]. Select the day of the week and press ● to release.

No repeat : Notifies Location information only on the set date.

Setting Valid period

- Unable to set the period when Repeat setting is set to "No repeat".
- No operation is required without setting Valid period.

①Select ▷‖ and press ●.
②Press 1 "Set".
- Press 2 "Not set" not to set.

③Enter Start date and press ●, enter End date and press ●.

4 Press i [Define].

Actions when setting Permission schedule of Location provide

<ex> Current time and date: 14:00 4/10/2006

Setting				Effective period of Location provide
Start time	End time	Repeat	Valid period	
15:00	22:00	No repeat	–	15:00 4/10/2006 to 22:00 4/10/2006
		Daily	Start date : 4/15/2006 End date : 5/15/2006	Daily from 15:00 4/15/2006 to 22:00 5/15/2006 (15:00 to 22:00)
			Start date : 4/5/2006 End date : 5/15/2006	Daily from 15:00 4/10/2006 to 22:00 5/15/2006 (15:00 to 22:00)
			Not set	Daily after 15:00 4/10/2006 (15:00 to 22:00)
		Day of week	Start date : 4/15/2006 End date : 5/15/2006	On every specified day of the week from 15:00 4/15/2006 to 22:00 5/15/2006 (15:00 to 22:00)
			Start date : 4/5/2006 End date : 5/15/2006	On every specified day of the week from 15:00 4/10/2006 to 22:00 5/15/2006 (15:00 to 22:00)
			Not set	On every specified day of the week after 15:00 4/10/2006 (15:00 to 22:00)

See next page

<ex> Current time and date: 14:00 4/10/2006

Setting				Effective period of Location provide
Start time	End time	Repeat	Valid period	
09:00	22:00	No repeat	–	9:00 4/11/2006 to 22:00 4/11/2006
		Daily	Start date : 4/15/2006 End date : 5/15/2006	Daily from 9:00 4/15/2006 to 22:00 5/15/2006 (9:00 to 22:00)
			Start date : 4/5/2006 End date : 5/15/2006	Daily from 14:00 4/10/2006 to 22:00 5/15/2006 (9:00 to 22:00)
			Not set	Daily after 14:00 4/10/2006 (9:00 to 22:00)
		Day of week	Start date : 4/15/2006 End date : 5/15/2006	On every specified day of the week from 9:00 4/15/2006 to 22:00 5/15/2006 (9:00 to 22:00)
			Start date : 4/5/2006 End date : 5/15/2006	On every specified day of the week from 14:00 4/10/2006 to 22:00 5/15/2006 (9:00 to 22:00)
			Not set	On every specified day of the week after 14:00 4/10/2006 (9:00 to 22:00)
15:00	10:00	No repeat	–	15:00 4/10/2006 to 10:00 4/11/2006
		Daily	Start date : 4/15/2006 End date : 5/15/2006	Daily from 15:00 4/15/2006 to 10:00 5/16/2006 (15:00 to 10:00 the next day)
			Start date : 4/5/2006 End date : 5/15/2006	Daily from 15:00 4/10/2006 to 10:00 5/16/2006 (15:00 to 10:00 the next day)
			Not set	Daily after 15:00 4/10/2006 (15:00 to 10:00 the next day)
		Day of week	Start date : 4/15/2006 End date : 5/15/2006	On every specified day of the week from 15:00 4/15/2006 to 10:00 5/16/2006 (15:00 to 10:00 the next day)
			Start date : 4/5/2006 End date : 5/15/2006	On every specified day of the week from 15:00 4/10/2006 to 10:00 5/16/2006 (15:00 to 10:00 the next day)
			Not set	On every specified day of the week after 15:00 4/10/2006 (15:00 to 10:00 the next day)
09:00	09:00	No repeat	–	9:00 4/11/2006 to 9:00 4/12/2006
		Daily	Start date : 4/15/2006 End date : 5/15/2006	Daily from 9:00 4/15/2006 to 9:00 5/16/2006 (9:00 to 9:00 the next day)
			Start date : 4/5/2006 End date : 5/15/2006	Daily from 14:00 4/10/2006 to 9:00 5/16/2006 (9:00 to 9:00 the next day)
			Not set	Daily after 14:00 4/10/2006 (9:00 to 9:00 the next day)
		Day of week	Start date : 4/15/2006 End date : 5/15/2006	On every specified day of the week from 9:00 4/15/2006 to 9:00 5/16/2006 (9:00 to 9:00 the next day)
			Start date : 4/5/2006 End date : 5/15/2006	On every specified day of the week from 14:00 4/10/2006 to 9:00 5/16/2006 (9:00 to 9:00 the next day)
			Not set	On every specified day of the week after 14:00 4/10/2006 (9:00 to 9:00 the next day)

GPS Service settings <Service settings>

Connect to GPS Service settings and configure the setting required for Location provide.

- GPS Service settings are the menu for customers to set Location information service.
- To use "イマドコサーチ (Searching position)", "位置情報利用設定 (Setting for using location information)" in "iモードオプション設定 (i-mode option setting) is required to be set, instead of GPS service setting on FOMA terminal. Refer to DoCoMo's Internet site for details about Use location info.

1 **Press ▶ Press ▶ Press 3 ▶ Press 4.**

Connect to GPS Service settings.

2 **Configure the required settings.**

- Please contact GPS Service providers for the setting details.

Information

- Functions (such as registering Bookmark/Screen memo, etc.) are not available except View certificate or converting character code while connecting to GPS Service setting. No URL history is left.
- Location provide function under Public mode (Drive mode) operates as follows.
  - When GPS Service setting is set to "毎回確認 (Confirm request)", location information is not provided upon the request under Public mode (Drive mode).
  - As setting to "許容 (Allow)" in the GPS service settings, the notification for location indicates on screen without any sound, vibration or lamp. Only notification screen is displayed and provides the location.

Setting to transmit the location information on turning off the power<Power off act>

Default	Power off act : ON　Power off act : 15 min.

You can set FOMA terminal to turn the power on in specified intervals to operate Location provide while being turned off.

- When FOMA terminal is the searching target of "イマドコサーチ (Searching position)", Location provide is activated.
- Location information is not transmitted when Location provide setting is OFF.
- Location provide is unavailable when Location provide setting is ON but Complete power off is set. Complete power OFF →P48

1 **Press ▶ Press ▶ Press 3 ▶ Press 5.**

2 **Press 1 "ON".**

- Press 2 "OFF" not to transmit.
- When "Permission schedule" is set on Loc. provide ON/OFF setting, a message is displayed confirming that Location provide is not available out of the period for Permission schedule. Press ●.

3 **Enter the terminal security code and press ●.**

4 **Press one of 1 to 3.**

15 min : Turns the power on every 15 minutes, to provide location.
30 min : Turns the power on every 30 minutes, to provide location.
60 min : Turns the power on every 60 minutes, to provide location.

When setting Power off act as "ON"

Location provide starts when turning the power off or entering the wrong terminal security code 5 times under All lock/Close lock.

- When being out of service area for more than 5 minutes, FOMA terminal turns the power off without executing Location provide.
- Location provide is available even under Self mode.

1 Hold down PWR for over 2 seconds on Stand-by display.

blinks and Location provide starts. The power is turned off after providing the location. Afterwards, if the power is off, the power is turned on in accordance with set Notification interval, and turned off after the location information is provided. Location provide is notified by the displayed screen and the LED.

- Power is automatically turned off, if the incorrect terminal security code is entered 5 times under All lock/Close lock.

Canceling positioning

①Press [Cancel].

②Enter the terminal security code and press ●.

- Enter Password(number) and press ●, under Kids' mode.

Information

- Location provide is not activated when turning the power off under following conditions:
  - Under locking PIN code, or PIN lock completely
  - Without inserting UIM (FOMA card)
  - Inserting the card other than UIM (FOMA card)
  - When the battery is running out or battery level is low
- Location provide is not activated when the power is turned off under following conditions:
  - During Location provide while ringing Burglar alarm (the power kept on)
- By the following actions while Power off act is set to "ON", "Out of service area" may be temporarily displayed even under good radio wave condition.
  - Turning the power off immediately after turning the power on
  - Turning the power off under Self mode
  - When the power being off, and turned on in set Notification intervals
- When setting Power off act to "ON", stand-by/calling (data communication) duration may be reduced to half.

Setting Positioning mode of Location provide

Default	Standard mode

1 Press ▶ Press Notify Provide menu ▶ Press 3 DEF さ ▶ Press 2 ABC か.

- Following operations: →P326 "Setting Positioning mode for Positioning location" Step 2

Setting Host number

Default	Initial number

Sets the host onto GPS Service settings except the Initial number.

No setting change is needed for general use.

1 Press ▶ Press Notify? ▶ Press 3 DEF ▶ Press 3 DEF.

2 Select "Unregistered" and press [Edit].

■ **Changing to the preset user-defined host**
Press 2 ABC "User defined host".

■ **Changing back to the default host**
Press 1 "Initial host".

■ **Deleting the user-defined host**
①Select "User defined host" and press [Delete].
②Enter the terminal security code and press ●.
③Press 1 "Yes".
- Press 2 ABC "No" to cancel.

3 Enter the terminal security code and press ●.

4 Enter the host name and press ●.
- Up to 99 one-byte (Half Mark) alphanumeric characters or marks can be entered.

5 Enter the host address and press ●.
- Up to 100 one-byte (Half Mark) alphanumeric characters or marks can be entered.

6 Confirm the contents and press [Complete].
Host is changed.

Notify location

Notifying present location

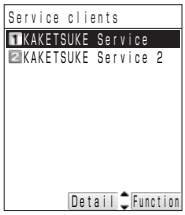
Notifies the positioned Location information of the present location to specified service clients (via GPS service providers).
- Unable to notify the location when making a call while "Notify no callerID" is set.
Setting Caller ID notification →P59
- Unable to notify the location if the other party is under Public mode (Drive mode) or rejects calls.
- Notify location may require the additional subscription to GPS service providers. GPS service may be charged under some conditions.
- For using Notify location/Periodic notify, follow the information on Internet sites of GPS service providers or DoCoMo. These functions are charged services.

Registering Location service client

Registers service clients to notify the present location. Selects the registered service client to notify Location information of the present location.

- Available registration number to Location service clients are up to 9.

1 Press ▶ Press ▶ Press ▶ Press .



Location service client screen

■ When registering Service client to Phonebook

Select a service client and press [Function] ▶ Press "New to phonebook".

- Following operations: →P99 "Registering entry in FOMA terminal phonebook" Step 2 to 6, P104 "Registering entry into UIM (FOMA card) Phonebook" Step 2 to 4
- To add an entry to Phonebook, press "Add to phonebook", select Phonebook and press . Following operations : →P111 "Editing saved Phonebook entries" Step 3 to 5

■ Editing Service clients

①Select a service client and press .
②Select the item by pressing [Edit] to edit, and press .
③Edit and press .
④Press [Function].

2 Press [Function] ▶ Press "Register new entry".

3 Enter the contents.

■ Entering Service client name

①Select and press .
②Enter the Service client name and press .

- Up to 16 two-byte (Full Mark)/32 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.
- Service client name can be entered by quoting from Phonebook etc. →P495

■ Entering Service client ID

Service client ID is the number informed by GPS service providers after applying to the service.

①Select and press .
②Enter the Service client ID and press .

- Set Service client ID with one-byte (Half Mark) numeric characters up to 12 digits. "✳", "#" are also available to enter.

■ Entering phone numbers

①Select and press .
②Enter a phone number and press .

- Up to 26 one-byte (Half Mark) numbers including "✳", "#", "+" and "P" are available to enter.
- Unable to add the phone number already registered as Location service client.
- Phone numbers can be entered by quoting from Phonebook etc. →P495

■ Setting Confirm each calling

• Unable to set without entering Phone number.

①Select and press ●.

②Press one of 1 to 3.

Transmit	: Notifies the present location information to the service client when dialing the registered number.
Not transmit	: Does not notify the present location information to the service client when dialing the registered number.
Confirm each calling	: Determines whether to notify the present location information to the service client when dialing the registered number.

4 Press i [Register].

Deleting Service client

1 Select a service client on Location service client list screen, and press i [Function] ▶ Press 6 "Delete".

2 Press 1 "Delete".

■ Deleting by option

①Press 2 "Delete option".

②Select a service client and press ●.

• Press ● to release.

③Press i [Exec.]

■ Deleting all

①Press 3 "Delete all".

②Enter the terminal security code and press ●.

3 Press 1 "Yes".

• Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Setting Positioning mode of Notify location

Default	Standard mode

1 Press ▶ Press Notify? ▶ Press 2 ▶ Press 2.

• Following operations: →P326 "Setting Positioning mode for Positioning location" Step 2

Notifying Location information

Notifies Present location information to the selected service client.

1 Press ▶ Press Notify? ▶ Press 1.

See next page

2 Select the client and press ●.

Present location information is notified to the service client.

- blinks, and the operation follows the setting on Sound/Volume/Vibrator/LED/Notice time.

Entering Service clients to notify

①Select "Direct input" and press ●.
②Enter the Service client ID and press ●.

Canceling Notify location

Press [Cancel] or .

- Location information may be sent depending on the operation timing.
- Under the condition of poor connection, sent Location information may not reach GPS service provider.

Notifying present location easily <1-touch notify>

Notifies location information with easy operation by setting the service client.

- Set 1-touch notify to use.

1 Hold down (TASK) for over a second.

Starts positioning. Location information is to be notified to the service client as 1-touch notify after completing positioning location.

Information

- Displays a confirmation screen that Chara-den is replaced with the substitutive image when Notify location or Periodic notification is executed by holding down (TASK) for over a second while displaying Chara-den on Video phone or Substitutive image is set to Chara-den. Press (1) "Yes" to notify. Also, an image to indicate being in a process is sent to the other party.

Setting 1-touch notify client

Register service clients to notify as 1-touch notify.

- 1-touch notify setting is released when deleting the set service client.

1 Select the service client on Location service client list screen, and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press (2) "1-touch notify".

- Press (2) "Reset 1-touch" to release setting.

Notifying Present location periodically

Set periodical notification to notify at the certain set time.

- Up to 2 schedules can be registered.

1 Press (i) ▶ Press Notify ▶ Press (2) ▶ Press (3).

2 Press (1) "Schedule 1" or (2) "Schedule 2".

- Valid/Invalid is displayed depending on each schedule.

3 Enter the terminal security code and press ●.

4 Press 1 "Valid".

Canceling the setting

Press 2 "Invalid".

- Previous schedule setting is remained even changing the setting to "Invalid".

5 Set each item.

Setting Service clients

①Select and press ●.

②Select a client from Service clients list and press ● ▶ Press ●.

- Requires a prior setting for Location service client. →P334

Setting Start time

①Select and press ●.

②Enter time to activate and press ●.

Setting End time

- Unable to enter when Notification interval is set to "Once only".

①Select and press ●.

②Enter time to deactivate and press ●.

Setting Notification interval

①Select and press ●.

②Press 1 "Notification interval" or 2 "Once only".

Notification interval : Notifies the location for each time set between Start time and End time.

- Enter the notification interval and press ●. Unable to the set the time less than 5 minutes.

Once only : Notifies the location at the set time for starting.

Setting Repeat

①Select and press ●.

②Press one of 1 to 3.

Daily : Notifies the location at the set time every day.

Day of week : Notify location is activated on the specified day of the week.

- Select a day of the week, press ●, and press i [Complete]. Select the day of week and press ● to release.

No repeat : Notifies the location only on the set date.

Setting Valid period

- Unable to set when Repeat setting is set to "No repeat".
- No operation is required without setting Valid period.

①Select and press ●.

②Press 1 "Set".

- Press 2 "Not set" not to set.

③Enter Start date and press ●, then enter End date and press ●.

6 Press i [Register].

Actions when setting periodic notify

<ex> Current time and date: 14:00 4/10/2006

Setting					Effective period of Periodic notify
Start time	End time	Notification interval	Repeat	Valid period	
15:00	22:00	1:00 (1 hour)	No repeat	–	Notification at 15:00 4/10/2006, followed by hourly notifications until 22:00 4/10/2006
			Daily	Start date: 4/15/2006 End date : 5/15/2006	Notification at 15:00 4/15/2006, followed by daily notifications until 22:00 5/15/2006 (hourly from 15:00 to 22:00)
				Start date: 4/5/2006 End date : 5/15/2006	Notification at 15:00 4/10/2006, followed by daily notifications until 22:00 5/15/2006 (hourly from 15:00 to 22:00)
				Not set	Notification at 15:00 4/10/2006, followed by hourly notifications from 15:00 to 22:00, every day
			Day of week	Start date: 4/15/2006 End date : 5/15/2006	Notification on every specified day of the week from 15:00 4/15/2006 to 22:00 5/15/2006 (hourly from 9:00 to 22:00)
				Start date: 4/5/2006 End date : 5/15/2006	Notification on every specified day of the week from 15:00 4/10/2006 to 22:00 5/15/2006 (hourly from 9:00 to 22:00)
				Not set	Notification on every specified day of the week after 15:00 4/10/2006 (hourly from 15:00 to 22:00)
09:00	22:00	1:00 (1 hour)	No repeat	–	Notification at 9:00 4/11/2006, followed by hourly notifications until 22:00 4/11/2006
			Daily	Start date: 4/15/2006 End date : 5/15/2006	Notification at 9:00 4/15/2006, followed by dairy notifications until 22:00 5/15/2006 (hourly from 9:00 to 22:00)
				Start date: 4/5/2006 End date : 5/15/2006	Notification at 15:00 4/10/2006, followed by dairy notifications until 22:00 5/15/2006 (hourly from 9:00 to 22:00)
				Not set	Notification at 15:00 4/10/2006, followed by hourly notifications from 9:00 to 22:00, every day
			Day of week	Start date: 4/15/2006 End date : 5/15/2006	Notification on every specified day of the week from 9:00 4/15/2006 to 22:00 5/15/2006 (hourly from 9:00 to 22:00)
				Start date: 4/5/2006 End date : 5/15/2006	Notification on every specified day of the week from 15:00 4/10/2006 to 22:00 5/15/2006 (hourly from 9:00 to 22:00)
				Not set	Notification on every specified day of the week after 15:00 4/10/2006 (hourly from 9:00 to 22:00)

<ex> Current time and date: 14:00 4/10/2006

Setting					Effective period of Periodic notify
Start time	End time	Notification interval	Repeat	Valid period	
09:00	—	Once only	No repeat	—	Notification at 9:00 4/11/2006
			Daily	Start date : 4/15/2006 End date : 5/15/2006	Notification at 9:00 4/15/2006, followed by daily notifications at 9:00 every day, until 5/15/2006
				Start date : 4/5/2006 End date : 5/15/2006	Notification at 9:00 4/11/2006, followed by daily notifications at 9:00 every day, until 5/15/2006
				Not set	Notification at 9:00 4/11/2006, followed by daily notifications at 9:00 every day
			Day of week	Start date : 4/15/2006 End date : 5/15/2006	Notification on every specified day of the week from 9:00 4/15/2006 to 9:00 5/15/2006
				Start date : 4/5/2006 End date : 5/15/2006	Notification on every specified day of the week from 9:00 4/11/2006 to 9:00 5/15/2006
				Not set	Notification at 9:00 every specified day of the week, after 9:00 4/11/2006
15:00	—	Once only	No repeat	—	Notification at 15:00 4/10/2006
			Daily	Start date : 4/15/2006 End date : 5/15/2006	Notification at 15:00 4/15/2006, followed by daily notifications until 15:00 5/15/2006
				Start date : 4/5/2006 End date : 5/15/2006	Notification at 15:00 4/10/2006, followed by daily notifications until 15:00 5/15/2006
				Not set	Notification at 15:00 4/10/2006, followed by notification at 15:00 every day
			Day of week	Start date : 4/15/2006 End date : 5/15/2006	After 15:00 4/15/2006, notification on every specified day of the week until 15:00 5/15/2006
				Start date : 4/5/2006 End date : 5/15/2006	After 15:00 4/10/2006, notification on every specified day of the week until 15:00 5/15/2006
				Not set	Notification at 15:00 every specified day of the week, after 15:00 4/10/2006

See next page

<ex> Current time and date: 14:00 4/10/2006

Setting					Effective period of Periodic notify
Start time	End time	Notification interval	Repeat	Valid period	
15:00	10:00	1:00 (1 hour)	No repeat	–	Notification at 15:00 4/10/2006, followed by hourly notifications until 10:00 4/11/2006
			Daily	Start date: 4/15/2006 End date : 5/15/2006	Notification at 15:00 4/15/2006, followed by daily notifications until 10:00 5/16/2006 (hourly from 15:00 to 10:00 the next day)
				Start date: 4/5/2006 End date : 5/15/2006	Notification at 15:00 4/10/2006, followed by daily notifications until 10:00 5/16/2006 (hourly from 15:00 to 10:00 the next day)
				Not set	Notification at 15:00 4/10/2006, followed by hourly notifications from 15:00 to 10:00 the next day, every day
			Day of week	Start date: 4/15/2006 End date : 5/15/2006	After 15:00 4/15/2006, notification on every specified day of the week until 10:00 5/16/2006 (hourly from 15:00 to 10:00 the next day)
				Start date: 4/5/2006 End date : 5/15/2006	After 15:00 4/10/2006, notification on every specified day of the week until 10:00 5/16/2006 (hourly from 15:00 to 10:00 the next day)
				Not set	Notification at 15:00 4/10/2006, followed by notification on every specified day of the week (hourly from 15:00 to 10:00 the next day)
09:00	09:00	1:00 (1 hour)	No repeat	–	Notification at 9:00 4/11/2006, followed by hourly notification until 9:00 4/12/2006
			Daily	Start date: 4/15/2006 End date : 5/15/2006	Notification at 9:00 4/15/2006, followed by daily notifications until 9:00 5/16/2006 (hourly from 9:00 to 9:00 the next day)
				Start date: 4/5/2006 End date : 5/15/2006	Notification at 15:00 4/11/2006, followed by daily notifications until 9:00 5/16/2006 (hourly from 9:00 to 9:00 the next day)
				Not set	Notification at 15:00 4/11/2006, followed by hourly notifications from 9:00 to 9:00 the next day, every day
			Day of week	Start date: 4/15/2006 End date : 5/15/2006	Notification on every specified day of the week from 9:00 4/15/2006 to 9:00 5/16/2006 (hourly from 9:00 to 9:00 the next day)
				Start date: 4/5/2006 End date : 5/15/2006	Notification on every specified day of the week from 15:00 4/11/2006 to 9:00 5/16/2006 (hourly from 9:00 to 9:00 the next day)
				Not set	Notification on every specified day of the week after 15:00 4/11/2006 (hourly from 9:00 to 9:00 the next day)

Information

- Periodic notify under Public mode (Drive mode) does not activate Notify tone (including OK tone and NG tone)/ Vibrator/Incoming-call lamp, and only notification screen is displayed to notify the location.
- While dialing or during voice-calls/video-phone calls, Notify tone and vibrator are not activated. Only signal tone, incoming-call lamp, and the screen are activated to notify the location.

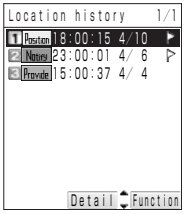
Location history

Displaying the history of confirmed location information

Displays the history of Location information. You can execute Read a map or Paste to mail, using location information on the history.

- Up to 50 Location history is saved and the oldest history exceeding 50 is to be overwritten.

1 Press ▶ Press .



Location history list screen

Displays Location history list screen.

- You can check Date/Position result of Position location/Notify location/Location provide.

Position : Confirming Present location

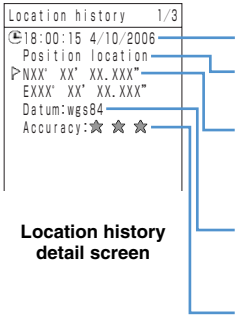
Notify : Notifying Present location

Provide : Providing requested Present location*

* Displayed even when Location provide has not been executed.

- " ▷ " is displayed when the Location history contains location information.

2 Select the location history and press .



Location history detail screen

Displays Location history detail screen.

Positioning date : The date/time to position.

Types : Position location/Notify location/Periodic notify/ Location provide is displayed.

Location info : Longitude (degrees/minutes/seconds), Latitude (degrees/minutes/seconds)
"N" indicates North latitude, and "E" indicates East longitude.

Datum : wgs84 (World Datum), Tokyo (Tokyo Datum)
Datum is the standard rule to specify the location on the earth with longitude/latitude.

Accuracy : Error range of accuracy

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	Positioning date		Service clients name for Location notify/Host name for Location provide
	Location info		Service clients ID for Location notify ID/Host ID for Location provide
★★★	Error is less than 50m. (Accuracy level 3)		Requestor ID for Location provide
★★☆	Error is 50m or more, and less than 300m. (Accuracy level 2)		Requestor Name for Location provide
★☆☆	Error is 300m or more. (Accuracy level 1)		

- Even if location information is indicated on Location history screen, sent data may not be reached the GPS service provider depending on the radio wave condition.

Available functions in Location history

1 Select the location history on Location history list screen and press ⓘ [Function].

2 Select an item and press ●.

Read a map	: Connects to DoCoMo's site and displays the map. →P325
Paste to mail	: Pastes Location information URL onto mails. →P325
To service client	: Displays Composing mail screen with the address set to Requestor ID. →P242
Run GPS software	: Displays GPS software list. →P327
New to phonebook	: Registers a new entry to Phonebook. →P99
Add to phonebook	: Registers an additional entry to Phonebook. →P111
New to schedule	: Registers a new entry to Schedule. →P414
Add to schedule	: Registers an additional entry to Schedule. →P414
Add to image	: Adds the location information onto images.
Delete	: Deletes location history. →P343

Information

- History failed to position is unusable for each function (except for composing a mail message to the Location service client, and for deleting).
- "To service client" is only available when Requestor ID is set to the E-mail address.

Adding location information of Location history to images

You can add location information of Location history to still images. Displays maps using the location information added to images.

- You can add the location information onto JPEG images.
- Location information may not be able to be added to some images shot with equipment other than SA800i.

1 Press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 2ABC "Add to image" on Location history list screen.

2 Select a folder and press ●.

3 Select a still image and press ●.

Location information is added to the still image.

- A message is displayed to select the method to save location information if the information is already added.

Save new entry	: Copy the image and add location information.
Update loc. info	: Overwrite location information which has been already added.
Cancel	: Does not add Location information.

Deleting location information

1 Press (i) [Function] on Location history list screen ▶ Press (●) ▶ Press 3DEF "Delete".

2 Press 1 "Delete".

- Enter the terminal security code and press (●) before the operation, under Kids' mode.

■ Deleting by option

①Press 2ABC "Delete option".
②Select the location history and press (●).
- Press (●) to release.

③Press (i) [Exec.]

■ Deleting all

①Press 3DEF "Delete all".
②Enter the terminal security code and press (●).

3 Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2ABC "No" to cancel.

Using location information from each function

You can display or paste a map to mails by using location information added to Phonebook, Schedule or images. Also location information added to the image is available to use.

Adding location information

Location information can be added to FOMA terminal Phonebook, Schedule, still images before/after shooting with camera, still images in Databox, and Profile.

1 Display Edit screen of FOMA terminal Phonebook/Schedule/Profile, the screen of shooting/checking still images, or the image list/display screen.

- Editing FOMA terminal Phonebook : →P111
- Editing Schedule : →P417
- Editing Profile : →P424
- Displaying still images before/after shooting : →P166
- Displaying image list/screen : →P356

2 Press (i) [Function] ▶ Select "Location info" or "Add location info", and press (●).

- For FOMA terminal Phonebook, Schedule and Profile, select " No location info" and press (●). Go to Step 4.

3 Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2ABC "No" to cancel.
- Go to Step 4 except for moving to image list/screens.

See next page

4 Select an item and press ●.

Position location : Positions the present location and adds location information.
- Press ● on Position location result screen.

From loc. history : Adds the location information from Location history list.
- Select Location history, and press ● ▶ Press ●.

From phonebook : Adds the location information registered in Phonebook.
- Search Phonebook and press ● ▶ Press ●.

From profile : Adds the location information registered in Phonebook.
- Press ● ▶ Press ●.

From image data : Adds the location information which is already added onto other still images.
- Select the file from the folder and press ● ▶ Press ●.

From schedule : Adds the location information registered in Schedule.
- Select a schedule and press ● ▶ Press ●.

- Unable to select "From phonebook" or "From profile" while editing Phonebook or Profile.
- Unable to select "From schedule" while editing schedule, and "From image data" while displaying image list or screen.

Using added Location information

1 Displays FOMA terminal Phonebook, Schedule, image list/display screen, or Profile.

- Displaying FOMA terminal phonebook : →P107
- Displaying Schedule : →P417
- Displaying image list/screen : →P356
- Displaying Profile : →P424

2 Press i [Function] ▶ Select "Location info", and press ●.

- Following operations are available as selecting " Loc. info acquired" and pressing ● for FOMA terminal Phonebook/Schedule/Profile.

3 Select an item and press ●.

- Some items may not be selected depending on the item displayed.

Read a map : Connects to DoCoMo's site and displays the map. →P325

Paste to mail : Pastes Location information URL onto mails. →P325

Run GPS software : Displays GPS software list. →P327

New to phonebook : Registers a new entry to Phonebook. →P99

Add to phonebook : Registers an additional entry to Phonebook. →P111

New to schedule : Registers a new entry to Schedule. →P414

Add to schedule : Registers an additional entry to Schedule. →P414

Add to Image : Adds the location information onto images. →P342

Add location info : Updates the location information added into images in Databox. →P343

Detailed loc. info : Displays details of the location information added. →P341

Delete : Deletes the location information added.
- Delete Phonebook, Schedule or Profile from Edit screen.

Burglar alarm

Before using Burglar alarm 346
Ringing Burglar alarm. . . . . <Burglar alarm> 347

Before using Burglar alarm

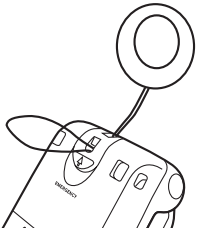
You can use FOMA terminal as Burglar alarm.

- Burglar alarm rings at the volume of maximum 100 dB/10 cm approximately. Be careful not to ring the alarm by your ears, or it may cause defective hearing.
- Burglar alarm does not ensure the security or to prevent crimes.
- Burglar alarm does not ring when the battery runs out or the battery pack is not attached. When the battery level is extremely low, Burglar alarm also may not ring. Be sure to recharge the battery before use.
- Burglar alarm may not ring shortly after switching on, depending on the activated functions.

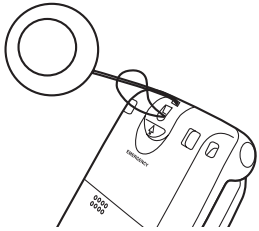
Using Burglar alarm strap

- Do not fold the strap into FOMA terminal.

1 Put the string of the strap through Burglar alarm strap hole.



2 Put the ring of the strap through the circled end of the string.

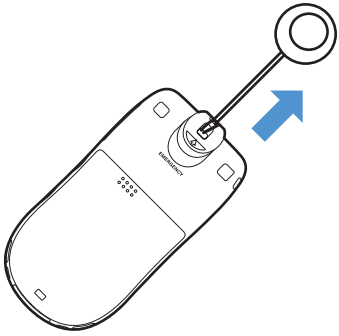


Ringing Burglar alarm

When ringing Burglar alarm, you can call the registered phone number, and/or you can notify the current location automatically (Location provide) if registering the receiver to the searching target of "イマドコサーチ (Searching position)" service. Refer to NTT DoCoMo Internet site for "イマドコサーチ (Searching position)" service.

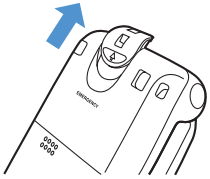
- When Urgent contact have been registered and Burglar alarm is set to "Alarm and phone call", FOMA terminal dials to Urgent contacts repeatedly to alert emergency until the registered persons answer the calls.
- Avoid dialing by using Burglar alarm except in the case of emergencies.
- Burglar alarm does not ring during Software update.
- Burglar alarm rings even when turning the power off. And the power is turned on at the time of ringing Burglar alarm. The power is kept turned on if stopping Burglar alarm.
- Burglar alarm rings even under Manner mode or Public mode (Drive mode).
- Burglar alarm rings only through the speaker in connecting to Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with a switch (optional) with any setting on Output ring tone to. Auto receive call is invalid in this case.
- Burglar alarm switch may be activated by accidents, in such cases as the strap attached to the switch is caught.
- Location cannot be provided when "Loc. Provide OFF" is set.

1 Set Burglar switch to ON.



Alarm rings, and "EMERGENCY" is displayed on Stand-by screen. and blink.

- Slide Burglar alarm lever to the direction of the arrow, when the strap is not tied to the terminal.

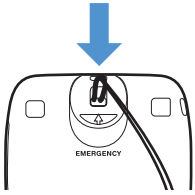


Canceling Dial phone call/Location provide

Press [i] [Cancel] ▶ Enter the terminal security code and press ●.

- Burglar alarm keeps ringing.
- Enter Password(number) and press ●, under Kids' mode.

Stopping Burglar alarm



Set Burglar switch to OFF.

- Dial phone call or Location provide being set is not canceled by stopping Burglar alarm.

Dialing the specified number on ringing Burglar alarm <Burglar alarm setting>

Default	Alarm only

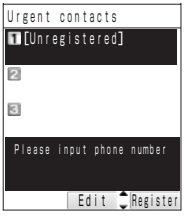
Sets the acts when ringing Burglar alarm. When ringing Burglar alarm, you can make a call to Urgent contacts automatically or restrict reception of calls.

- Up to 3 Urgent contacts can be registered.
- The same phone number cannot be registered as another Urgent contact.
- Unable to register "110", "119", "118" as Urgent contacts.

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 3 DEF ▶ Press 1 .

2 Enter the terminal security code and press ●.

3 Press 1 "Alarm and phone call".



Urgent contacts registration screen

Urgent contacts registration screen is displayed.

- Press 2 ABC "Alarm only" not to make a call automatically when ringing Burglar alarm. No further operation is needed.

4 Select [Unregistered] and press ●.

- The Urgent contact registered as 1 has the highest priority of all registered contacts.

5 Enter the phone number and press ●.

Quoting from Phonebook

①Press i [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Quote phonebook".
②Select a Phonebook entry and press ●.
③Select a phone number and press ●.

Quoting from Redial, Received calls, etc.

①Press i [Function] ▶ Press 2 ABC "Quote history".
②Press one of 1 to 4 GHI.
③Select a history and press ●.
④Press ●.

Quoting from Schedule/Text memo

①Press i [Function] ▶ Press 3 DEF "Quote schedule" or 4 GHI "Quote text memo".
②Select data and press ●.
③Select a phone number and press ●.

Quoting from Profile

①Press i [Function] ▶ Press 5 JKL "Quote profile".
②Select a phone number and press ●.

Copying a phone number

Press i [Function] ▶ Press 6 MNO "Copy phone number".

Burglar alarm

■ Quoting from Paste data

①Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 7PQRS "Paste phone number".
②Select data and press ●.

6 Enter the name and press ●.

- Up to 11 two-byte (Full Mark)/23 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.
- Press (i) [Function], to quote from Phonebook, Redial, Received calls, etc.
- Repeat Step 4 to 6 to register multiple phone numbers.

7 Press (i) [Register].

8 Press 1@あ "Yes".

- Press 2ABCかな "No" not to notify the phone number.
- If registering the phone number as Urgent contacts with "184" or "186", the prefix setting is prior to the one of Step 8.

Editing Urgent contacts

1 Select a phone number on Urgent contacts registration screen and press ●.

- Following operations: →P348 "Dialing the specified number on ringing Burglar alarm" Step 5 to 8

Deleting Urgent contacts

1 Select a phone number on Urgent contacts registration screen and press ✉ [Delete].

2 Press 1@あ "Yes".

- Press 2ABCかな "No" to cancel.
- Following operations: →P348 "Dialing the specified number on ringing Burglar alarm" Step 7 to 8

When ringing Burglar alarm

- Burglar alarm keeps ringing until turning the switch off or the battery runs out.
- If you ring Burglar alarm, all other activated functions are ended and no editing data remains.
- When ringing Burglar alarm under All lock or Close lock, each lock is turned "OFF" temporarily. Each lock function returns to "ON" when stopping Burglar alarm.
- When ringing Burglar alarm under Public mode (Drive mode) or Self mode, each mode is turned "OFF". The setting does not return even when stopping Burglar alarm.
- Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with a switch (optional) does not work while ringing Burglar alarm.

Dialing and providing location

When ringing Burglar alarm, phone calls are automatically dialed if Phone dial call is set, and Location provide is activated if your terminal is set as the searching target of "イマドコサーチ (Searching position)" service.

- Dialing or providing location is activated on ringing Burglar alarm even when turning the power off.
- When ringing Burglar alarm while the power is off, "Out of service area" may be temporarily displayed even under good radio wave condition.
- If Enter PIN code is set to "ON", dialing or providing location is activated after entering PIN code when ringing Burglar alarm while the power is off.
- When ringing Burglar alarm out of service area, dialing or providing locations is activated after the terminal moves to locations within the service area.
- Dialing or Location provide is available even under Self mode/Keypad dial lock/PIM lock.
- Dialing or Location provide is not available under following conditions:
  - Under PIN code blocked, or PIN blocked completely
  - Without UIM (FOMA card)
  - With a card other than UIM (FOMA card) inserted
  - Under lower battery level
- Settings for Burglar alarm when ringing Burglar alarm during a phone/video-phone call.

  Alarm only : The line of the voice-call continues. The line of the video-phone call between the other party registered as Urgent contact can be kept on line. Otherwise, the line is disconnected.

  Alarm and phone call : The line of the call between the other party registered in Urgent contact can be kept on line. The call is disconnected if it is connected to a receiver other than Urgent contact.

- FOMA terminal acts as following while Burglar alarm is ringing (and while dialing, or under Location provide).

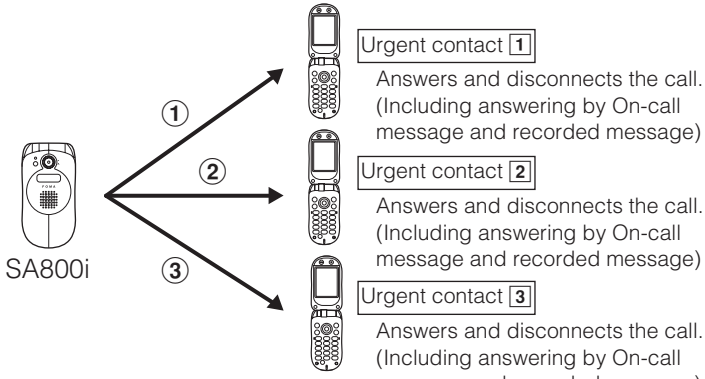
Function	Operation
Receiving voice-calls	If Burglar alarm is set as "Alarm and phone call", only the calls from Urgent contacts are receivable. All incoming calls are receivable with the setting of "Alarm only". FOMA terminal automatically answers the first call from the Urgent contacts after 5 seconds on both settings. • Notifies with Vibrator without ringing Ring tone. • The voice message "Kinkyu tuuwa desu. (This is an emergency call)" is played 3 times to the other party. • The settings of Auto receive call, Set mute seconds, or Call rejection become invalid.
Receiving video-phone calls	Only the calls from Urgent contacts are receivable regardless of the setting of Burglar alarm. However, FOMA terminal does not answer automatically. • Notifies with Vibrator without ringing Ring tone. • The voice message "Kinkyu tuuwa desu. (This is an emergency call)" is played 3 times to the other party. • The settings of Auto receive call, Set mute seconds, or Call rejection become invalid.
Receiving mails	Unable to receive any mails.
Alarm, ToDo/Schedule alarm	Alarm is not activated.
i-αppli auto start	i-αppli is not activated.
Software update	Software update is not activated.
Auto power OFF	Auto power OFF is not activated.
Periodic notify	The location is notified after stopping Burglar alarm, or after Dial phone call/Location provide ends.
Incoming 64K data communication	Unable to receive the incoming data.

Actions on setting to dial phone call

When multiple Urgent contacts have been registered and Burglar alarm is set to "Alarm and phone call", FOMA terminal dials to the Urgent contacts one after another, upon ringing Burglar alarm. Depending on the response, FOMA terminal acts as follows:

<ex> Answered by all of the Urgent contacts

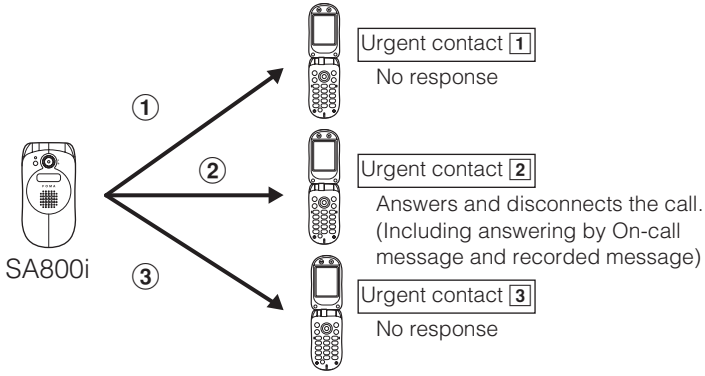
Dials in order of ①→②→③.



<ex> Answered only by Urgent contact 2

Dials in order of ①→②→③.

- Repeats dialing to ①, then to ③, every 60 seconds until 1 and 3 answer the call.



- Press (i) [Cancel] ▶ Enter the terminal security code and press ●, to stop dialing. Enter Password(number) under Kids' mode.
- Dials to the next contact if an Urgent contact is under following conditions.
  - No response for approximately 30 seconds
  - Being set not to receive any calls, such as connecting to Voice mail*1/Call fording service*1, Call rejection, or under Public mode (Drive mode)*1, 2

*1 May be regarded as being answered, depending on the condition of the other party. When the line is connected to Voice mail, you can leave a voice message.

*2 If you make a video-phone call to the party registered as Urgent contact and ring Burglar alarm while the image guidance being played, it is regarded that the dialing to the Urgent contact is answered.

See next page

- Redials approximately 60 seconds later if a registered Urgent contact has not answered, and repeats dialing until all the contacts answer. However, if the Urgent contact responds to the call with a recorded message or on-hold within approximately 30 seconds, the call is regarded as being answered, and dialing is not repeated.
- When the call is connected, the voice message "Kinkyu tuuwa desu. (This is an emergency call)" is announced 3 times to the other party.
- If folding FOMA terminal during a call, Hands free is activated. The settings of Closing action are invalid while ringing Burglar alarm.
- During a call, key operations following the voice guidance are not available. (Leaving the voice message for Voice mail is available.)

Information

- When ringing Burglar alarm while a video-phone call with a Substitutive image, the Substitutive image turns to the self-image.
- Location is not provided if ringing Burglar alarm when receiving or during a video-phone call from a registered Urgent contact.
- Burglar alarm may ring louder gradually not to damage ears depending on the activated functions, for example, when ringing the alarm during a call.
- Phone calls to Urgent contacts may not be connected in some cases.

Displaying/editing/managing data

Data box 354

Making full use of still images

Displaying saved images 356
Editing still images . . . . . <Edit image> 360

Making full use of movies

Playing movies/i-motions 366
Editing movies/i-motions . . . . . <Edit i-motion> 370

Making full use of Chara-den

Chara-den. 375

Making full use of melody

Playing melodies 381

Making full use of other data

Displaying/registering original data 382

Making full use of other data

Making full use of folders and data 384

Making full use of Infrared communication

Infrared communication 391
Sending data with Infrared communication . . . . . <Send Infrared data> 393
Receiving data with Infrared communication. . . . <Receive infrared data> 394
Activating Infrared data Exchange mode . . . . . <Infrared communication mode> 396
Using Infrared remote control function. 396

Making full use of Voice recorder

Using as Voice recorder . . . . . <Voice recorder> 397

Data box

Manages various data such as still images/movies shot with FOMA terminal and downloaded melodies by sorting into each folder. The capacity of Data box and items to be stored into each folder are as follows:

Data space of Data box

- Data space of Data box is approximately 25 MB, and the maximum number of savable items is 1024. (Including Chara-den and Deco-mail picture preinstalled by default.)
- The maximum data size varies depending on the retrieval source, such as downloading from i-mode (including attachment of mails).

Item	Data type	Maximum size for each item
Image	JPEG format	Approx. 1 MB
	GIF format	
	Animation GIF format	
	Flash movie	Approx. 100 KB
Movie/i-motion	MP4 format	Approx. 500 KB*1
Melody	SMF format	Approx. 100 KB
	MFi format	Approx. 100 KB
Chara-den	Chara-den	Approx. 100 KB
Original data	Menu icon	Approx. 100 KB
	National holidays*2	Approx. 5 KB
	Dictionary*2	Approx. 20 KB
	Category icon*2	Approx. 100 KB

*1 The maximum data size when retrieving from i-mode (including mail attachment). The maximum size of the data shot with FOMA terminal is approximately 8 MB.

*2 Up to 10 National holidays, 100 dictionary data and 40 category icons in total, including Set icon and Single icon can be registered.

- Up to 10 User folders can be added to each My picture/i-motion/Melody folder.

Folder name		Data contents in the folders
My picture	i-mode	Images that are created or retrieved from sites/i-mode mail/ MessageR/F/i-αppli
	Camera	Images shot with Camera or Chara-den, Edited images shot with Camera or Chara-den
	Deco-mail picture	Preinstalled images/templates for Deco-mail by default, and templates downloaded from sites for Deco-mail
	Preinstalled	Preinstalled images by default (including frames and stamps)*
	Data exchange	Images retrieved from infrared/USB communication or Bar code reader
	Items	Frames/stamps downloaded or created in FOMA terminal (excluding preinstalled frames or stamps by default)
	User folder	Folder made by customers which can be moved from each folders in My picture with selecting "Move to folder"

* Excludes images/templates for Deco-mail.

Folder name		Data contents in the folders
i-motion	i-mode	i-motions created or retrieved from sites/i-mode mails/i-αpplis
	Camera	Movies recorded with Camera or Chara-den, Movies recorded and edited Movies recorded by voice recorder (movie shooting with voice only)
	Data exchange	i-motions retrieved from infrared/USB communication
	User folder	Folder made by customers which can be moved from each folder in i-motion with selecting "Move to folder"
Melody	i-mode	Melodies created or retrieved from sites/i-mode mails/MessageR/F/i-αppli
	Preinstalled	Preinstalled melodies by default
	Data exchange	Melodies retrieved from infrared/USB communication or Bar code reader
	User folder	Folder made by customers which can be moved from each folders in Melody with selecting "Move to folder"
Chara-den		Chara-den preinstalled or downloaded

- Use folder with security set on is listed with the icon "".

Icons displayed in folders

Folder	Icon	Data type	Icon	Image size
My picture		GIF format		Sub-QCIF
		Animation GIF format		QCIF
		JPEG format		QVGA(Stand-by display size)
		Exif-JPEG format *		CIF
		JPEG format with location information		VGA
		Frame data		XGA
		Stamp data		SXGA
		Flash movie data		1M
		Deco-mail template data		Other sizes
		Preinstalled still images		
i-motion		MP4 format (Movie)		Sub-QCIF
		MP4 format (voice only)		QCIF
		MP4 format (Movie with Playable count)		Other sizes
Melody		MFi format melody data		
		SMF format melody data		
Chara-den		Chara-den data		

* "Exif" is a file format for still images established by Japan Electronics and Information Technology Industries Association (JEITA) that accepts additional information such as shooting details.

Folder	Icon	Data contents	Icon	Data contents
All folders	(ex)	Not playable ("×" is displayed with data type icons)	/	Now in progress
		Unrestricted		Restricted by UIM (FOMA card)
		Restricted		

See next page

Information

- Data saved in Data box may be lost due to FOMA terminal malfunction, repairs, changes in the model or other manipulations. If data is erased, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data. The data can be stored in your PC using data link software and the FOMA USB connection cable (optional). →P528

Displaying saved images

You can display images saved in My picture folder.

1 Press ● ▶ Press Data box ▶ Press 1.

2 Select a folder and press ●.

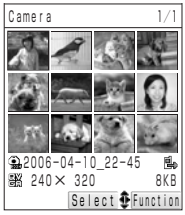


Image list screen (12-for-1 split)

Attaching images to i-mode mails

Select an image and press i [Function] ▶ Press 2 "Mail attachment".

- Compose message screen with a shot image attached is displayed.
- Images bigger than Stand-by display image size can be attached by being converted to Stand-by display image size.
- Images can also be attached by the same operation on Image display screen.
- Following operations : →P242 "Composing and sending i-mode mail" Step 2 to 6
  Attaching still image with location information added →P253

Switching display method

① Press i [Function] ▶ Press 5 "Switch display".
② Press one of 1 to 3.

Adding location information on images

Select an image and press i [Function] ▶ Press 7 "Location info".

- Following operations : →P343 "Adding location information" Step 3 to 4
- Already inserted location information can be used.
  Following operations: →P344 "Using added Location information" Step 3
- Press i [Function] ▶ Press 6 "Location info" to add location information from Image display screen.

Viewing Slideshow

Images (JPEG/GIF format) in a folder can be displayed in a row starting from the selected image switching approximately every 3 seconds.

- Animations or Flash movies cannot be displayed in slideshow.

Press i [Function] ▶ Press ▶ Press 1 "Slideshow".

- Returns to Image list screen after displaying all the images. Press ● or clr to return to Image list screen in the middle of the slideshow.

3 Select an image and press ●.

Image display screen

- If the image size is smaller than 240 horizontal × 220 vertical dots, press ● [Enlarge] to play in large view. Press ● [Normal] to return to normal display.
- If the image size is bigger than 240 horizontal × 220 vertical dots, press ● [Zoom] to play in zoom.
  Press i [Zoom] to raise zooming scale and ✉ [Wide] to reduce.
  When ▶◀▲▼ are displayed, scrolling can be made with pressing ✣.
  Press ● [Optimize] to return to Normal display.

Displaying images in full-screen

Press i [Function] ▶ Press 7PQRS "Full-screen disp".

- Press ● or CLR to return to Image list screen.

Playing Animation or Flash movie

Display them to start playing automatically.
While playing animation, press ✉ to stop, and press ● to restart while stopping.
Press ● to stop while playing Flash movie and Press ● to replay while stopping.
In both Animation and Flash movie, press i [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Retry" to play from the beginning.

Information

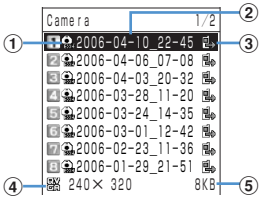
- Flash movies downloaded from sites may be displayed differently from the graphics displayed on the site.

Reading Image list screen

Displays images as thumbnail image or list.
Switching display method →P356

4-for-1 split

12-for-1 split



List display

① Data type
② Title
③ Data contents (Restrict file etc.)
④ Image size
⑤ File size

- Thumbnail images may not be displayed correctly depending on image type. In this case, substitutive images below are displayed.
  - : Still image not capable of Thumbnail
  - : Deco-mail template
  - : Still image set restricted action by UIM (FOMA card)

Information

- Title of the image set as Stand-by display etc. is indicated in a different color.

Creating Stamp/Frame/Menu icon from still image <Create items>

Creating Stamp

- Stamps can be created from still images, bigger than 34 × 34 dots or smaller than CIF image size.

1 Select a still image and press (i) [Function] on Image list screen ▶ Press 6MNO "Create items" ▶ Press 1 "Stamp".

2 Select a Stamp frame and press ●.

3 Place an image on stamp frame.

- Press ✣ to scroll the image.
- Press ✉ [FrameSize] to switch frame size.
- Press (i) [Optimize] to fit either vertical or horizontal shorter line into current frame length and to shrink the image without changing aspect ratio. Press (i) [Release] to return to the previous size.

4 Press ●.

5 Confirm the created stamp and press ●.

6 Enter the title and press ●.

The image is saved in "Data box" → "My picture" → "Items" folder.

- Up to 18 two-byte (Full Mark)/36 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

Creating frame

- Frames can be created from still images whose image sizes are CIF (352 × 288), Stand-by display, QCIF, or Sub-QCIF.

1 Select a still image and press (i) [Function] on Image list screen ▶ Press 6MNO "Create items" ▶ Press 2ABC "Frame".

2 Select a frame and press ●.

The area excluded from the frame is displayed in gray.

3 Confirm the created frame and press ●.

Frame is displayed as preview.

4 Press ●.

5 Enter the title and press ●.

The image is saved in "Data box" → "My picture" → "Items" folder.

- Up to 18 two-byte (Full Mark)/36 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

Creating Menu icon

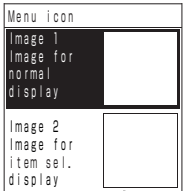
You can create "Set icons" for each menu screen as a whole, and "Single icon" for each item of the menu.

- Still images with file restriction (excluding being set with FOMA terminal) cannot be used for icon making. However, Single icon can be created from images of following sizes:
  - 80 × 84 dots (Image 1 of "5 or 9 for 1")
  - 88 × 93 dots (Image 2 of "5 or 9 for 1")
  - 80 × 63 dots (Image 1 of "12 for 1")
  - 88 × 69 dots (Image 2 of "12 for 1")
- Some images are unusable for icon making according to the sizes.

1 Press i [Function] on Image list screen ▶ Press 6MNO "Create items" ▶ Press 3DEF "Menu icon".

2 Press 1 "Set of icons" or 2ABC "Single icon".

3 Select an image and press ●.



- For making set icons, select Background color with ◇ and press ●.

4 Select "Image 1 Image for normal display" and press ●.

5 Select a folder and press ●.

6 Select an image and press ●.

- Press ✉ [Play] to view the image.

7 Adjust location and size, and press ●.

Making Single icon

- Press ◇ to set position.
- Press i [Optimize] to fit either vertical or horizontal longer line (in the case of Single icon, shorter line) into current frame length and to shrink the image without changing aspect ratio. Press i [Release] to return to the previous size.

8 Press ●.

9 Select "Image 2 Image for item sel. display" and press ●.

Operate Step 5 to 8 and define the image displayed in selecting item.

See next page

10 Press (i) [Save].

- Press ✉ [Play] to play and confirm data.

11 Enter the title and press ●.

Saved in "Menu icon" in Original data.

- Up to 18 two-byte (Full Mark)/36 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

Information

- Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 5 "Create items" to create items from Image display screen.

Setting images as Stand-by display etc.

- Images bigger than VGA image size cannot be set.
- Images bigger than QCIF or images with file restriction (except when being set with FOMA terminal) cannot be set as "Substitutive image", "Record message img", "On-hold image", and "Call-on-hold image".

1 Press ✉ [Set] on Image display screen.

2 Select an item to set and press ●.

- Setting may be completed without Step 3 to 4 depending on the item to set or the image.

3 Confirm the image.

- Press ✣ to set position.
- Press (i) [Size] to set display size. Some sizes may not be changed depending on the image size.

4 Press ●.

Information

- When a movie/i-motion including video and sound is already set on the selected item, the message is displayed that Ring tone setting returns to the default.

Edit image

Editing still images

You can edit still images saved in My picture with using Size change and Paste stamp etc.

- Following data cannot be edited:
  - Data bigger than 870 × 1160 dots image size
  - Data smaller than 34 × 34 dots image size
  - Data set file restriction (excluding the data that file restriction is set with FOMA terminal, or that retrieval source is displayed as "Data exchange" in File property)
  - Data set restricted action by UIM (FOMA card)

1 Display a still image and press [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Edit image".

Edit image menu

Enlarge/Reduce : Enlarges/reduces an image.
Resize/Clip : Changes an image into specified size. →P362
Stamp : Pastes stamps onto an image. →P362
Frame : Pastes frames onto an image. →P363
Text : Pastes Characters onto an image. →P364
Rotate/Reverse : Rotates/reverses an image. →P364
Special effect : Puts special effect onto an image. →P365

2 Confirm the edited image and press ●.

- Press [Cancel] ▶ Press 1 "Yes" to cancel edited details.
- Press [Function] to continue editing.

3 Press 1 "Save new entry".

■ Overwriting edited image on original image

Press 2 "Overwrite" ▶ Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

4 Enter the title and press ●.

- Up to 18 two-byte (Full Mark)/36 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

Information

- Select a still image and press [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Edit image" to edit on Image list screen.
- The result of editing may differ from image as assumed depending on the still image or method of editing.
- Repetition of editing and saving may cause damage of image quality or increasing data size of the still image file. Also, edited data may not be able to be reedited in this case.
- When there is not enough available storage space for a still image to be saved or number of images exceeds the allowable maximum number →P389
- When editing an image set as Stand-by display, the image cannot be overwritten.

Enlarging/reducing images

- Images bigger than CIF image size cannot be enlarged or reduced.

1 Press 1 "Enlarge/Reduce" on Edit image menu.

2 Press [Enlarge] or [Reduce] to change the size.

You can enlarge/reduce the image by 5%, holding the aspect ratio.

- When ▶◀▲▼ are displayed, you can scroll with ✣.

3 Press ●.

- Following operations: →P360 "Editing still images" Step 2 to 4

Compressing image size or cutting out the image

Still images can be resized or clipped as specified size.

- Still image smaller than Sub-QCIF image size cannot be resized/clipped.
- The image cannot be clipped out if vertical or horizontal line is shorter than the line of clipping out image.

1 Press 2ABC "Resize/Clip" on Edit image screen.

2 Press one of 1 to 4GHI.

3 Press ●.

- Press ✉ [Switch] to switch between resizing and cutting out.
- For clipping, set the area to be clipped with ✣ and press ●.
- Cannot be clipped out when of selecting "CIF (352×288)" in Step 2.

4 Confirm the image and press ●.

- Following operations: →P360 "Editing still images" Step 2 to 4

Pasting stamps

You can paste stamps or images onto an image.

- Up to 20 stamps or images can be pasted. The number may be changed according to the size of the stamp/image.
- Stamps or images cannot be pasted onto still images bigger than CIF image size.
- Images cannot be pasted onto still images smaller than QCIF image size.
- Stamp size allowed to be pasted is smaller than 240 × 320 dots.
- Still image size allowed to paste is 34 × 34 dots at the minimum, and QCIF at the maximum.

1 Press 3DEF "Stamp" on Edit image menu.

2 Press 1 "Paste stamp".

■ Pasting images

① Press 2ABC "Paste image".
② Select a folder and press ●.
③ Select an image and press ●.

- Go to Step 4.

3 Select a stamp and press ●.

- Press ✉ [←] or ℹ [→] to display different sized stamp.
- Stamps bigger than the image size cannot be pasted on the image.

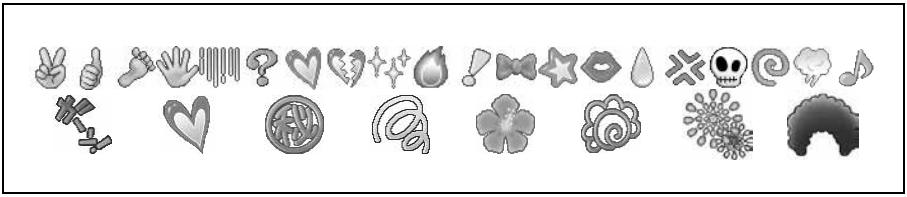
4 Press ✣ to adjust the position to paste stamps or images, and press ●.

- The same stamp or image can be pasted on a different position continuously.
- Press C to readjust the position of the pasted stamps or images. Hold down C for over a second to delete all of the pasted stamps or images.
- Press ✉ [Add] to add other stamps or images. Repeat Step 2 to 4.

5 Press i [Define].

- Following operations: →P360 "Editing still images" Step 2 to 4

Preinstalled stamps



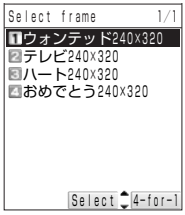
Information

- Stamps can be downloaded from the site "どこでも SANYO (Dokodemo SANYO)" →P196

Pasting frames

- Frames can be pasted onto still images with the image size of CIF, Stand-by display, QCIF, or Sub-QCIF.

1 Press 4 GHI た "Frame" on Edit image menu.



Frames of the same size as the selected still image are displayed.

- Press i to switch display method of frames.

2 Select a frame and press ●.

3 Confirm the frame-pasted image and press ●.

- Press ▷ or ▷ to select a frame.
- Preinstalled frames →P170
- Following operations: →P360 "Editing still images" Step 2 to 4

Pasting texts

- Texts cannot be pasted onto a still image bigger than CIF image size.

1 **Press 5 JKL "Text" on Edit image menu.**

2 **Press one of 1 to 5 JKL.**

3 **Enter a text and press ●.**

- The number of characters allowed to input differs depending on the selected font size.

4 **Press ✣ to adjust the position to paste text.**

- Press i [Color] each time to change font color as Black → White → Red → Green → Light blue.
- Press ✉ [Return] to return to Text entry screen.

5 **Press ●.**

- Following operations: →P360 "Editing still images" Step 2 to 4

Rotating/reversing still images

- Images bigger than CIF image size cannot be reversed or rotated.

1 **Press 6 MNO "Rotate/Reverse" on Edit image menu.**

2 **Press i [Rotate] or ✉ [Reverse].**

- Press i [Rotate] to rotate 90 degrees clockwise. Press ✣ to view the area hidden from the screen.
- Press ✉ [Reverse] to flip the image.
- When executing Reverse, press i [Rotate] to rotate 90 degrees to the left.

3 **Press ●.**

- Following operations: →P360 "Editing still images" Step 2 to 4

Applying special effects

- Images bigger than CIF image size cannot be edited with special effects.

1 Press 7PQRS "Special effect" on Edit image menu.

2 Press one of 1 to 9WXYZ.

Mosaic/Paint-out : Puts mosaic onto the image.
Sepia : Makes the image yellowish like an old picture.
Monochrome : Changes the image to black and white.
Tile : Displays the image in a segmental display.
Portrait : Displays the image in ellipse circle and colors white outside of the circle.
Fade out : Colors gray on the edges of the image and emphasizes the depth of the image.
Spotlight : Makes the outside of the image dark and displays as spot-lighted on center.
Poster : Emphasizes the color contrast like drawings.
Soft focus : Scumbles the color of entire the image softer.

- Press ◎ to switch to previous/next special effect.

3 Press ●.

Selecting Mosaic/Paint-out

Press ✉ [Fine] to switch the fineness of mosaic. Press ✉ [Fine] three times to paint-out the image. Press ✉ [Redo] to take back the operation.

Selecting Mosaic/Paint-out/Sepia/Monochrome

The area to put special effect can be specified.
① **Press i [Range].**
- Press i [Full-Scrn] to return.

② **Press ◎ to define the initial point and press ●.**
③ **Press ◎ to define the area and press ●.**
- Press ✉ to switch mosaic fineness.

Selecting Tile

Press i each time to split an image as 4 for 1 → 16 for 1 → 64 for 1.

Selecting Portrait/Fade out/Spotlight

Press i each time to narrow down the range to display the image gradually. Press i [Redo] to take back the operation.

Selecting Poster

Press i each time to switch the strength of the contrast.

4 Press ●.

- Following operations: →P360 "Editing still images" Step 2 to 4

Playing movies/i-motions

You can play movies/i-motions saved in i-motion folder.

- Movie/i-motion and Sound only movie/i-motion (i-motion without video such as vocals of singers), that are Sub-QCIF or QCIF image size, can be played.

1 Press ● ▶ Press Data box ▶ Press 2ABC.

2 Select a folder and press ●.

Movie list screen

Attaching movies/i-motions to i-mode mails

Select a movie/i-motion and press i [Function] ▶ Press 2ABC "Mail attachment".

- Compose message screen with movie/i-motion attached is displayed.
- Movie/i-motion can be attached to mails by the same operation, also from Movie play screen.
- If the file size is bigger than approximately 500 KB, the image is cut out to fit to attach to mails.
- Following operations : →P242 "Composing and sending i-mode mail" Step 2 to 6

Switching display method

① Press i [Function] ▶ Press 5JKL "Switch display".
② Press one of 1 to 3DEF.

Setting thumbnail

The image (Thumbnail) displayed on Movie list screen can be set.

- Following movies/i-motions cannot be edited:
  - Movie/i-motion not shot with FOMA terminal*
  - Movie/i-motion bigger than approximately 7.4 MB file size
  - Movie/i-motion set to file restriction (except being set with FOMA terminal)
  - Movie/i-motion set to restricted action by UIM (FOMA terminal)
  - Movie/i-motion that the retrieval source is displayed as "i-mode" on File property
  - i-motion with Playable count
  - Movie/i-motion without video

* Some movies/i-motions may be edited.

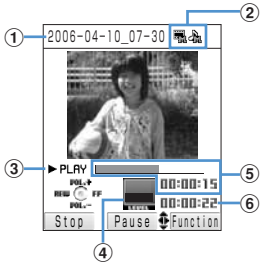
① Select a movie/i-motion and press i [Function] ▶ Press 7PQRS "Thumbnail setting".
② Press ✉ [Back] or i [Next], to select an image for Thumbnail, and press ●.

- Alternatively, press ◁▷ to select an image.

③ Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2ABC "No" to cancel.

3 Select a movie and press ●.



Play movie screen

① Title

② File type

- : Video
- : Sound
- : Text
- : Unable to play (in gray)
- : Unable to play (in gray)
- : Unable to play (in gray)

③ Playing status

④ Play volume

⑤ Play duration

Displays current playing duration with numbers (counter) and a bar.

⑥ Total play duration

- Following operations are available while playing:
  - ●: Pause/Resume
  - ✉: Stop
  - ▷: Fast forward (continuous fast forwarding by holding down for over a second)
  - ◁: Rewind (continuous rewinding by holding down for over a second)
  - ⇕: Adjust volume
- Following operations are available during pause:
  - ▷: Frame by frame advance (continuous frame by frame advancing by holding down for over a second)
  - ◁: Frame by frame rewind (continuous frame by frame rewinding by holding down for over a second)

* Cannot be used while Voice recorder data or Movie/i-motion data without images is displayed.

Operating data with the link destination as Ticker

If underlined phone number/mail address/URL are displayed while movie is played, press ● or ✉ [Stop], or wait until the movie is over. And then, Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To functions can be used. Phone number or E-mail address can be registered to Phonebook or copied.

- Using the function of Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To →P215

Playing movie/i-motion in large view

Press i [Function] ▶ Press 5 JKL "Play in large".

- Press i [Function] ▶ Press 5 JKL "Play in normal".

Playing movie/i-motion repeatedly

Press i [Function] ▶ Press 7 PQRS "Repeat play ON".

- Press i [Function] ▶ Press 7 PQRS "Repeat play OFF" to stop repeat playing.

Information

- Movies/i-motions saved in a folder can be played in a row (Play program). →P390
- If you press ● or ✉ [Stop] to stop playing while playing movie/i-motion and then press ✉ [Set], playing starts from the beginning when Play movie screen returns.

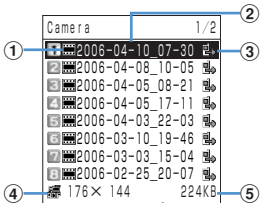
Reading Movie list screen

Displays as Thumbnail image or list of the movie.

- Switching display method →P366

4-for-1 split

12-for-1 split



List display

① Data type
② Title
③ Data contents (Restrict file etc.)
④ Image size
⑤ File size

- Thumbnail images may not be displayed correctly depending on the movie. In such cases, substitutive images below are displayed:
  - : Movie/i-motion not capable of Thumbnail
  - : Sound only movie/i-motion (or i-motion with no video such as vocals of singers)
  - : Movie/i-motion set restricted action by UIM (FOMA card)

Information

- Title of the image set as Stand-by display etc. is indicated in a different color.

Splitting movie by chapters <Chapter>

Segments (Chapters) can be registered in long movie/i-motion. Can be played from the registered chapter.

Registering chapter

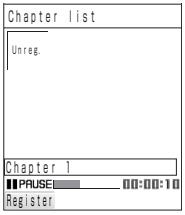
Up to 12 chapters can be registered for each movie/i-motion. Up to 100 movies/i-motions with chapters can be created.

- Chapters cannot be registered to following movies/i-motions:
  - Movie/i-motion not shot with FOMA terminal*
  - Movie/i-motion bigger than approximately 7.4 MB file size
  - Movie/i-motion set with file restriction (except the case of setting with FOMA terminal)
  - Movie/i-motion act restricted by UIM (FOMA card)
  - Movie/i-motion that the retrieval source is displayed as "i-mode" on File property
  - i-motion with Playable count
  - Movie/i-motion data without video

* May be able to register depending on the data.

1 Play a movie.

2 Press [Function] ▶ Press 6 "Chapter" at the scene to register as a chapter.



Chapter-registered scenes are displayed with numbers (counter) and bar.

3 Select "Unreg." and press [Register].

- Select the registered chapter and press [Register], and the message is displayed to confirm that the chapter is overwritten. Press 1 "Yes" to overwrite.
- A new chapter cannot be registered on or nearby the chapter-registered scene.

Playing chapter

1 Press [Function] on Movie list screen ▶ Press 6 "Chapter".

2 Select a chapter and press .

Plays from the selected chapter.

Editing the title of the chapter

① Select a chapter and press [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Edit chapter title".
② Enter the title and press .

- Up to 7 two-byte (Full Mark)/14 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

Releasing the set chapters

① Select a chapter and press [Function] ▶ Press 2 "Release chapter".
② Press 1 "Release".

- Press 1 "Yes" when you press 2 "Release all".

Information

- Press [Function] ▶ Press 6 "Chapter" to play chapter on Movie play screen.

Setting movie/i-motion as Phone receive call etc.

- Following movie/i-motion cannot be set:
  - i-motion with Playable count
  - Movie/i-motion bigger than approximately 500 KB file size
- Following movie/i-motion cannot be set as Ring tone or the image set for Receive display:
  - Movie/i-motion with Ticker
  - Movie/i-motion that the retrieval source is displayed as "Data exchange" on File property
  - Movie/i-motion that is set as "NG" on the Ring tone setting or Received image setting of File property
- Sound-only movie/i-motion (i-motion without video, such as vocals of singers)

1 Press or [Stop] on Movie play screen.

2 Press [Set].

See next page

3 Select an item to set and press ●.

- Screen to set Display size or Volume are displayed depending on movies/i-motions. Press 1 "Large" or 2 "Normal" and set volume with ◇.
- Message is displayed to confirm that current setting of Ring tone or the image set for Receive display is changed, depending on the movie/i-motion to set.

Edit i-motion

Editing movies/i-motions

You can edit Movie/i-motion saved in i-motion folder, such as clipping out as still image or clipping specified area out etc.

- Following data cannot be edited:
  - Data not shot with FOMA terminal*
  - Data bigger than approximately 7.4 MB file size
  - Data set to file restriction (except being set with FOMA terminal)
  - Data set to restricted action by UIM (FOMA card)
  - Data that the retrieval source is displayed as "i-mode" on File property
  - i-motion with Playable count
  - Text-only i-motion

  * Some data may be edited.
- Keypad operation in playing movie/i-motion while editing →P367

1 Select a movie and press i [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Edit i-motion".

Edit i-motion Menu

Cut out still img : Clips out a still image from Movie/i-motion. →P371

Ticker : Adds Ticker to movie/i-motion. →P371

Dubbing : Adds Sound to movie/i-motion. →P373

Cut out movie img : Cuts out the specified duration of movie/i-motion. →P374

Cut movie img : Deletes specified duration of movie/i-motion. →P375

Information

- Press i [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Edit i-motion" to edit on Movie play screen.
- When there is no enough available storage space for a still image to save or number of images exceeds the allowable maximum number →P389
- When editing a movie/i-motion set as Stand-by display/Ring tone, the movie/i-motion cannot be overwritten.

Cutting out still image

Specified scene can be clipped out as a still image in playing movie/i-motion.

- Even if the movie/i-motion clipped out has Ticker, the clipped still image does not include Ticker.
- Still images cannot be clipped out from sound only movie/i-motion (i-motion without video such as vocals of singers).
- Still images are saved in JPEG format.

1 **Press 1 "Cut out still img" on Edit i-motion menu.**

2 **Press ● to play, and press ● at the point to clip out.**

- Press ✉ [Redo] to redo.
- Press ● to resume playing.

3 **Press i [Save] ▶ Press 1 "Yes".**

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

4 **Enter the title and press ●.**

Still images are saved into "Data box" → "My picture" → "Camera" folder.

- Up to 18 two-byte (Full Mark)/36 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

Editing Ticker

Ticker (displaying characters to run across the screen) can be added onto movie/i-motion.

- Up to 4 Tickers can be added.
- Phone number/E-mail address/URL entered as Ticker cannot be used in Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To function.
- Movies bigger than approximately 500 KB cannot be added with Ticker.
- Sound only movie/i-motion (i-motion without video such as vocals of singers) cannot be added with Ticker (including sound data with thumbnails).

1 **Press 2 "Ticker" on Edit i-motion menu.**

Ticker list screen

- Press ✉ [Play] to view the movie/i-motion.

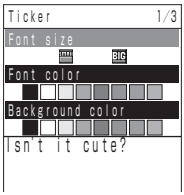
2 **Press one of 1 to 4 ▶ Press 1 "Start/End time".**

3 **Press i [Start] at the scene to start Ticker and i [End] at the scene to end Ticker.**

- Press ● to start to play and i [Start] or [End] to add Ticker in the middle of a movie/i-motion.
- Press ✉ [Redo] to redo.

See next page

4 Enter contents and press ●.



- Up to 20 two-byte (Full Mark)/40 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

5 Press ◎ to select the decoration of Ticker and ◎ to select the decoration description.

Decoration	Icon	Decoration description
Font size	small	Displays in small character.
	BIG	Displays in big character.
Font color		Can be selected from 8 colors.
Background color		Can be selected from 8 colors.
Text location		Displays in left aligned.
		Displays in center aligned.
		Displays in right aligned.
Scroll	IN	Characters appear from outside of the screen and stop at the preset position.
	OUT	Characters disappear from the preset position to outside of the screen.
	IN&OUT	Characters appear from outside of the screen and disappear to outside of the screen.
		Displays without scrolling.
Scroll direction		Scrolls from right to left.
		Scrolls from left to right.
		Scrolls upward.
		Scrolls downward.
Blink		Makes characters blinking.
		Makes characters not to blink.
Underline		Underlines the characters.
		Does not underline the characters.

- The appearance of the characters with selected decoration can be confirmed at the bottom of the screen. However, Scroll/Scroll direction/Blink cannot be confirmed on the screen.
- Scroll direction cannot be selected without setting Scroll.

6 Press ●.

Decoration description is displayed with icons when setting Scroll/Scroll direction/Blink.
Ticker to be set is displayed at the bottom of the screen.

- Repeat Step 2 to 6 to insert several Tickers.
- Press ✉ [Play] and confirm the screen with Ticker added. Press ✉ [Stop] ▶ Press ✉ [Return] to return back to Ticker list screen halfway.

7 Press i [Save].

8 Press 1 "Save new entry".

■ Overwriting edited data on original movie/i-motion

Press 2 "Overwrite" ▶ Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

9 Enter the title and press ●.

- Up to 18 two-byte (Full Mark)/36 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

Editing registered Ticker

1 Select Ticker from Ticker list screen and press ●.

2 Edit Ticker.

■ Editing Start/End time

Press 1 "Start/End time".

- Following operations : →P371 "Editing Ticker" Step 3 to 9

■ Editing Ticker

① Press 2 "Ticker entry".

② Enter contents and press ●.

- Following operations : →P371 "Editing Ticker "Step 7 to 9

■ Editing decoration of Ticker

Press 3 "Decoration".

- Following operations : →P371 "Editing Ticker" Step 5 to 9

■ Deleting Ticker

① Press 4 "Delete ticker".

② Press 1 "Delete".

- When pressing 2 "Delete all", enter the terminal security code and press ●.

③ Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.
- Following operations : →P371 "Editing Ticker" Step 7 to 9

Editing with Dubbing

Adds new sound to movie/i-motion. (Sounds that already exist are all deleted.)

- Sound cannot be dubbed to movie exceeding approximately 500 KB.
- Sound only movie/i-motion (i-motion without video such as vocals of singers) cannot be added with dubbed sound (including sound data with thumbnails).

1 Press 3 "Dubbing" on Edit i-motion menu.

2 Press ●.

- Press ✉ [Play] to view movie/i-motion.
- Press ● to stop dubbing halfway.
- Press ✉ [Cancel] to cancel editing with dubbing.

3 Press ●.

- Press ✉ [Play] to confirm dubbed sound.

See next page

4 Press 1 "Save new entry".

■ Overwriting edited data on original movie/i-motion

Press 2 "Overwrite" ▶ Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

5 Enter the title and press ●.

- Up to 18 two-byte (Full Mark)/36 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

Cutting out movie image

Cuts out the specified range of movie/i-motion.

- Even if the original movie/i-motion has Ticker, the movie clipped out does not include Ticker.
- More than one clip can be cut out of the same movie/i-motion.

1 Press 4 "Cut out movie img" on Edit i-motion menu.

2 Press one of 1 to 3.

Attach i-mode msg : Data attachable to i-mode mail (approximately 290 KB) can be clipped out from the specified scene.

Atch large vol.msg : Data attachable to i-mode mail as large volume message (approximately 490 KB) can be clipped out from the specified scene.

Unrestricted : Any range can be clipped out.

3 Specify the range to cut out.

■ When selecting "Attach i-mode msg" or "Atch large vol.msg"

Press i [Start] at starting point to cut out.

- Press ● to start the movie and press i [Start], to cut out from the middle of a movie.
- If the file size is smaller than approximately 290 KB (in selecting "Attach i-mode msg") or approximately 490 KB (in selecting "Atch large vol.msg"), i [Start] is not displayed. Press ● to start the movie and press i [Start].
- Press ✉ [Redo] to redo.
- Movie may not be able to cut out, depending on the specified starting point.

■ When selecting "Unrestricted"

Press i [Start] at the start point to cut out and i [End] at the end point.

- Press ● to start the movie and press i [Start] / [End], to cut out from the middle of the movie.
- Press ✉ [Redo] to redo.
- Movie may not be able to cut out, depending on specified starting/ending point.

4 Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" to redo the cutting out.

5 Press ●.

- Press ✉ [Play] to play and confirm the clipped movie.

6 Press 1 [Save new entry] ▶ Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

■ Overwriting edited data on original movie/i-motion

Press 2 "Overwrite" ▶ Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

7 Enter the title and press ●.

- Up to 18 two-byte (Full Mark)/36 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

Information

- File size of movie data that can be clipped out is up to approximately 1 MB when selecting "Unrestricted".

Cutting movie image

Deletes the specified range of movie/i-motion.

- Movie exceeding approximately the size of 1 MB cannot be cut.
- When you cut the specified area of movie, Ticker is deleted regardless of the cut area.

1 Press 5 "Cut movie img" on Edit i-motion menu.

2 Press i [Start] at the start point to cut and i [End] at the end point to cut.

- When you delete a part of movie/i-motion in the middle, press ● to start the movie and then press i [Start] / [End].
- Press ✉ [Redo] to redo.

3 Press 1 "Yes" ▶ Press ●.

- Press 2 "No" to redo the cutting.
- Press ✉ [Play] to play and confirm the part-deleted movie.

4 Enter the title and press ●.

The part-deleted movie is saved as a new movie file in the same folder.

- Up to 18 two-byte (Full Mark)/36 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

Chara-den

Chara-den is a substitutive image displayed on the screen instead of your self image when using video-phone. Can shoot and save as a still image/movie of Chara-den on the screen.

Displaying Chara-den

The following Chara-dens are preinstalled in the "Chara-den" folder by default.

ブンブン (Dimo)
(Boon Boon (Dimo))
©BVIG

ナオキ (Naoki)

ハルカ (Haruka)

See next page

1 Press ● ▶ Press Data box ▶ Press 4GHI.

©BVIG

Char-den list screen

Making video-phone calls using Chara-den

- Video-phone calls can also be made with the same operations on Chara-den display screen.

① **Select a Chara-den and press i [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Dial Chara-den".**
② **Enter the phone number.**
- The phone number can also be entered from Phonebook or Received calls etc. →P59

③ **Press ☎.**

Setting as Substitutive image of video-phone

① **Select a Chara-den and press i [Function] ▶ Press 3DEF "Substitutive image ".**
② **Press 1 "Yes".**
- Press 2ABC "No" to cancel.
- To set as Substitutive image on Chara-den display screen, press ✉[Set] ▶ Press 1 "Yes".

Switching display method

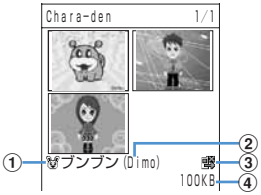
① **Press i [Function] ▶ Press 6MNO "Switch display".**
② **Press one of 1 to 3DEF.**

2 Select a Chara-den and press ●.

Chara-den display screen (Body action mode)

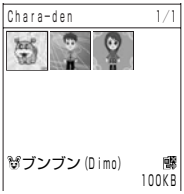
Reading Chara-den list screen

Chara-den is displayed as thumbnail or list.



©BVIG

4-for-1 split



©BVIG

12-for-1 split

List display

① **Data type**
② **Title**
③ **Data contents (Restrict file etc.)**
④ **File size**

- Thumbnail images may not be displayed correctly depending on Chara-den. In such cases, substitutive images as follows are displayed.
  - : Chara-den not capable of Thumbnail
  - : Chara-den set to restricted action by UIM (FOMA card)

Information

- If you delete Chara-den preinstalled by default, Chara-den can be downloaded from the site "どこでもSANYO (Dokodemo SANYO)". →P196
- The title of Chara-den set as Substitutive image is indicated in a different color.

Operating Chara-den

1 Operate Chara-den on Chara-den display screen.

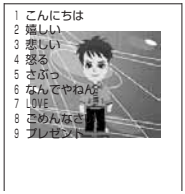
Pressing keys performs action in accordance with the number. Also, some Chara-den moves the lip in synchronization with the sound from the mouthpiece.

- Press 0わん to stop action.
- Press ● to display Chara-den in large view. Displayed in Normal view by pressing again.

<ex> Pressing 1 with Body action mode

<ex> Pressing 9WXYZ 9WXYZ with Body parts action mode

Confirming Action



Press ●.

The action list for current action mode is displayed. Chara-den moves with pressing keys.

- Alternatively, press i [Function] ▶ Press 5JKL "Action list", for the same operation.
- Press ● to return to operation screen.
- Actions displayed in the list differ depending on each Chara-den.

Switching Action mode

Body action is to express the full body action of Chara-den and Body parts action is to express the partial body movement of Chara-den.

Press ◀ to switch to Body action mode.

Press ▶ to switch to Body parts action mode.

- Alternatively, press i [Function] ▶ Press 6MNO "Change action", for the same operation.

See next page

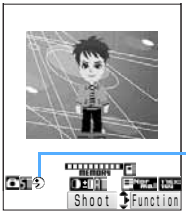
Information

- Chara-den cannot be edited or saved outside of FOMA terminal by mail attachment or infrared communication.

Shooting Chara-den

Shoot and save Chara-den as movies/still images.

- Shot still images and movies are saved in the same file format as shot with Camera.
- Image size is to be QCIF.
- While shooting, Chara-den does not move the lip in synchronization with the sound from the mouthpiece.



Chara-den shooting screen (Still image shooting)

- Icons on Shooting screen →P164

Action mode
- : Body action
- : Body parts action

Shooting still images

- Images cannot be attached to mails with recorded file restriction setting.

1 Select a Chara-den on Chara-den list screen and press [Function] ▶ Press "Shoot Chara-den".

2 Press "Snap photo".

Chara-den shooting screen is displayed.

- Chara-den can also be operated on Chara-den shooting screen. →P377

3 Press .

Switching to shooting movie

① Press [Function] ▶ Press "Camera-mode".
② Press "Shoot movie".

- Following operations : →P379 "Shooting movies" Step 3 to 5

Switching the quality of shooting image

① Press [Function] ▶ Press "Image quality".
② Press one of to .

Adding location information

Press [Function] ▶ Press "Add location info".

- Press also enable to add location information.
- Alternatively, press [Function] on Still image confirmation screen ▶ Press "Add location info", to add location information.
- Following operations: →P343 "Adding location information" Step 4

■ Setting Large view in displaying Chara-den

Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 4GHI "Large view".

- Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 4GHI "Normal view" to return.
- Alternatively, press (i) [Function] on Still image confirmation screen ▶ Press 3DEF "Large view", to set Large view.

■ Switching Chara-den

① Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 5JKL "Sw to Chara-den".

② Select a Chara-den and press (●).

- Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 1 "File property" to confirm detailed information of Chara-den.

■ Confirming Action

Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 6MNO "Action list".

- Alternatively, press (↕) to display Action list.

■ Switching Action mode

Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 7PQRS "Change action".

- Alternatively, press (↔) to switch action mode.

4 Confirming the image.

■ Composing message

Press (✉) [CompMsg].

Image is saved in Data box and Compose message screen with the image attached is displayed.

- Following operations : →P242 "Composing and sending i-mode mail" Step 2 to 6

■ Setting shot still image of Chara-den as Stand-by display

Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 2ABC "Image".

The image is saved in Data box.

- Following operations : →P360 "Setting images as Stand-by display etc." Step 2 to 4

■ Editing title

① Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 4GHI "Edit title".

② Enter the title and press (●).

- Up to 18 two-byte (Full Mark)/36 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

5 Press (●).

Image is saved into "Data box" → "My picture" → "Camera" folder.

Shooting movies

- Images cannot be attached to mails if file restriction is set after shooting.

1 Select a Chara-den on Chara-den list screen and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 2ABC "Shoot Chara-den".

2 Press 2ABC "Shoot movie".

Chara-den shooting screen is displayed.

3 Press (●).

"● REC" is displayed and shooting starts.

- Chara-den can also be operated in movie shooting on Chara-den shooting screen. →P377

See next page

■ Switching to shooting still image

① **Press** (i) **[Function] ▶ Press** 1 **"Camera-mode".**

② **Press** 1 **"Snap photo".**

• Following operations: →P378 "Shooting still images" Step 3 to 5

■ Restricting file size

① **Press** (i) **[Function] ▶ Press** 2 **"Restrict file size".**

② **Press one of** 1 **to** 3**.**

■ Switching Shooting mode

① **Press** (i) **[Function] ▶ Press** 3 **"Shooting mode".**

② **Press** 1 **"Normal" or** 3 **"Prefer img quality".**

■ Setting shooting type

① **Press** (i) **[Function] ▶ Press** 4 **"Shooting type".**

② **Press** 1 **"Video and sound" or** 2 **"Video only".**

■ Setting Microphone sensitivity

① **Press** (i) **[Function] ▶ Press** 5 **"Mic sensitivity".**

② **Press** 1 **"For conference" or** 2 **"For dictation".**

■ Setting Large view in displaying Chara-den

Press (i) **[Function] ▶ Press** 6 **"Large view".**

• Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 6 "Normal view" to return.

• Press (i) [Function] on Movie confirmation screen ▶ Press 3 "Large view".

■ Switching Chara-den

① **Press** (i) **[Function] ▶ Press** 7 **"Sw to Chara-den".**

② **Select a Chara-den and press** (●)**.**

• Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 1 "File property" to confirm detailed information of Chara-den.

■ Confirming Action

Press (i) **[Function] ▶ Press** (◎) **▶ Press** 1 **"Action list".**

• Alternatively, press (◎), to display Action list.

■ Switching Action mode

Press (i) **[Function] ▶ Press** (◎) **▶ Press** 2 **"Change action".**

• Alternatively, press (◎), to switch action mode.

4 Press (●).

■ Composing message

Press (✉) **[CompMsg].**

The image is saved in Data box and Compose message screen with the image attached is displayed.

• Following operations: →P242 "Composing and sending i-mode mail" Step 2 to 6

■ Playing Chara-den shot as a movie

Press (i) **[Function] ▶ Press** 1 **"Play".**

■ Setting shot Chara-den movie as Phone receive call etc.

Press (i) **[Function] ▶ Press** 2 **"i-motion setting".**

The movie is saved in Data box.

• Following operations: →P369 "Setting movie/i-motion as Phone receive call etc." Step 3

Editing title

① **Press** (i) **[Function]** ▶ **Press** 4GHI **"Edit title".**

② **Enter the title and press** ●**.**

- Up to 18 two-byte (Full Mark)/36 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

5 Press ●.

The saved image is stored in "Data box" → "i-motion" → "Camera" folder.

Information

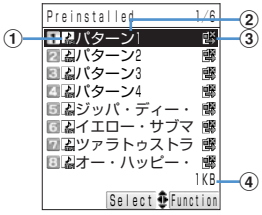
- Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 2ABC "Shoot Chara-den" to shoot on Chara-den display screen.
- Shutter sound or Start/End tone does not sound under Manner mode.
- Operation sound may be recorded if you operate Keypad while shooting movie.
- When there is not enough available storage space for data to be saved or the number of data is to exceed the maximum →P389

Playing melodies

Plays melody preinstalled in melody folder or downloaded melody.

1 Press ● ▶ Press Data box ▶ Press 3DEF.

2 Select a folder and press ●.



Melody list screen

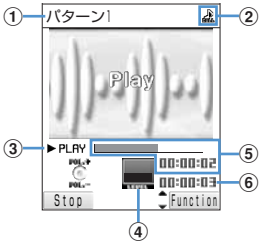
① **Data type**
② **Title**
③ **Data contents (Restrict file etc.)**
④ **File size**

Attaching melodies to i-mode mails

Select a melody and press (i) **[Function]** ▶ **Press** 1 **"Mail attachment".**

- Compose message screen with a melody attached is displayed.
- Melodies can also be attached by same operation on Melody play screen.
- Following operations : →P242 "Composing and sending i-mode mail" Step 2 to 6
- Melody which can be attached to Mails →P253

3 Select a melody and press ●.



Melody play screen

① **Title**
② **Play mode**
- : Play portion - :Play all

③ **Playing status**
④ **Play volume**
⑤ **Play duration**
Displays current playing duration with numbers (counter) and a bar.
⑥ **Total play duration**

- Following operations are available while playing.
  - (✉): Stop
  - (🔊): Adjust volume

See next page

■ Playing melody repeatedly

Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 4GHI "Repeat play ON".

- Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 4GHI "Repeat play OFF" to stop repeat playing.

Information

- Melodies saved in a folder can be played in a row (Play program). →P390
- Title of the melody set as Ring tone etc. is indicated in a different color.

Setting the melody as Ring tone etc.

1 Press (✉) [Stop] on Melody play screen.

2 Press (✉) [Set].

3 Select an item to set and press (●).

- When a movie/i-motion including video and sound is already set to the selected item, message is displayed to confirm that the image set for Receive display returns to the default.

Playing portion of a melody

From Melody folder, you can select "Play all" to play the whole file from the top to the end, or "Play portion" to play from the start point set in file.

- Melody in SMF format is played in full.
- Melody data that the starting point is not set is played in full.

1 Press (●) ▶ Press Data box ▶ Press ▶ 3DEF.

2 Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Play portion".

- Press 1 "Play all" to return to play full chorus.

Displaying/registering original data

You can display or register Menu icon/National holiday/Dictionary data/Category icon, downloaded from the site "どこでもSANYO (Dokodemo SANYO)".

- Only Set of icons of menu icons are saved by default.

Displaying/registering Menu icons

There are two types of Menu icon, "Set icon" for each menu screen as a whole and "Single icon" for each item of menu.

- You can create Set of icons or Single icon with the function of creating Menu icon (→P359), or download from the site "どこでもSANYO (Dokodemo SANYO)". (→P196)

1 Press (●) ▶ Press Tools ▶ Press 5JKL ▶ Press 1.

2 Select a Menu icon choice and press (●).

■ Editing title

① Select a Menu icon choice and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Edit title".

② Enter the title and press ●.

- Up to 18 two-byte (Full Mark)/36 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

3 Press ✉ [Set] ▶ Press one of 1 to 4.

- Menu icons cannot be set for some menu screens depending on the icon types.

4 Set Menu icons.

■ Setting Set icon

Press ●.

■ Setting Single icon

Select an item to set and press ●.

Displaying/registering National holidays

1 Press ● ▶ Press Tools ▶ Press 5 ▶ Press 2.

2 Select National holidays data and press ●.

3 Press ✉ [Set] ▶ Press 1 "Yes".

- When selected data is already set, confirming message is displayed.
- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Displaying/registering Dictionary data

- You can set Dictionary to use up to 5 or approximately 64 KB.
- Download dictionary →P502

1 Press ● ▶ Press Tools ▶ Press 5 ▶ Press 3.

2 Select Dictionary data and press ●.

3 Press ✉ [Set] ▶ Press 1 "Yes".

- Cannot be set if selected dictionary is 6th entry or exceeds approximately 64 KB in total. Release the Dictionary data. →P502
- Press ● to check the detail of Dictionary data.
- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Displaying Category icon of Schedule/ToDo

There are two types of Category icon, "Set icons" containing multiple icons and "Single icon".

- Category icon can be set when registering Schedule/ToDo. →P414, 419

1 Press ● ▶ Press Tools ▶ Press 5 ▶ Press 4.

- Select Set icons and press ● to confirm the contents.

Making full use of folders and data

You can create folders (User folder) within My picture, i-motion, or Melody folder, and created folders can be secured. i-motions/melodies in Data box can be registered in Program play list and can be played in a row.

Creating/editing/deleting folders

Create a folder within My picture/i-motion/melody folder.

- Up to 10 folders can be created in each preinstalled folder.
- Preinstalled folders by default cannot be edited/deleted.

Creating folders

1 **Press (i) [Function] on Folder list screen ▶ Select "Create folder" and press (●).**

2 **Enter a folder name and press (●).**

- Up to 8 two-byte (Full Mark)/16 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.
- Delete existing characters before entering new folder name.

■ **Editing the name of created folder**

① Select a folder and press (i) [Function] ▶ Select "Edit folder name" and press (●).
② Enter a folder name and press (●).

Deleting folders

1 **Select a folder and press (i) [Function] ▶ Select "Delete folder" and press (●).**

2 **Press 1 "Delete".**

■ **Deleting by option**

① Press 2 "Delete option".
② Select a folder and press (●).
- Press (●) to release.

③ Press (i) [Exec.]

■ **Deleting all**

Press 3 "Delete all".

3 **Enter the terminal security code and press (●).**

- If secured folders are contained, press 1 "Execute" and enter the terminal security code.

4 **Press 1 "Yes".**

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Sorting folders and data

You can sort User folders within My picture/i-motion/Melody folder or files within Data box.

Sorting folders

- Preinstalled folders by default cannot be sorted.

1 **Press (i) [Function] on Folder list screen ▶ Select "Sort folders" and press (●).**

2 **Select a folder and press (●).**

3 **Press ✣ to select destination to move and press (●).**

- When sorting other folders continuously, repeat the operation from Step 2 to 3.

4 **Press (i) [Complete].**

Sorting data

Sorts files in My picture/i-motion/Melody/Chara-den.

- Files in preinstalled folders by default cannot be sorted by Retrieval sources.

1 **Press (i) [Function] on Image/Movie/Melody/Chara-den list screen ▶ Select "Sort files" and press (●).**

2 **Press one of (1 .@ あ) to (7 PQRS さ).**

Date ord (new → old) : Sorts in date order from new to old.

Date ord (old → new) : Sorts in date order from old to new.

Title (asc.) : Sorts in order of Pictograms, two-byte (Full Mark) characters (Mark, Numeric, Capital letter, Small letter, Hiragana, Katakana, External character, Kanji), and one-byte (Half Mark) characters (Mark, Numeric, Capital letter, Small letter, Katakana).

Title (des.) : Sorts in reverse order of "Title (asc.)".

File size (asc.) : Sorts in file size from small file.

File size (des.) : Sorts in file size from large file.

Retrieval sources : Sorts in folder order of the retrieval sources (Camera/i-mode/Data exchange/Chara-den/Deco-mail picture).

Setting security on folders and data

You can set security on User folders in My picture/i-motion/Melody, or set restriction on the files in Data box not to be forwarded as attachment files from the sent addresses.

Setting security on folders

- Preinstalled folders by default cannot be set security.
- The terminal security code is required to enter for viewing folders set security.

1 Select a folder and press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Select "Set security" and press ●.

- Press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Select "Release security" and press ● to release the security setting.

2 Enter the terminal security code and press ●.

Setting file restriction on data

1 Select a file on Image/Movie/Melody list screen and press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Select "Restrict file" and press ●.

2 Press 1 "Restricted".

- Press 2 "Unrestricted" to release.

Information

- Data downloaded from sites/retrieved from Inbox/created with i-αppli may not be released the restriction when File restriction is set to "Restricted".

Changing title/file name of data for managing

You can edit the titles (titles displayed on FOMA terminal)/file names of the files in My picture/i-motion/ Melody/ Chara-den for management.

- The file name of data set file restriction (excluding the data that file restriction being set with FOMA terminal, or that retrieval source being displayed as "Camera" or "Data exchange" in File property) cannot be edited.

1 Select a file on Image/Movie/Melody/Chara-den list screen and press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Select "Edit title" and press ●.

■ Editing file name

Select a file on Image/Movie/Melody list screen and press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Select "Edit file name" and press ●.

2 Enter a title/file name and press ●.

- Without management title entered, the file name or the default title is saved. →P388
- Up to 18 two-byte (Full Mark)/36 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

Information

- Titles can be edited on Image display/Movie play/Melody play/Chara-den display screen with the same operation.

Moving data to other folders

Files in My picture/i-motion/Melody can be moved into User folder.

- Data cannot be moved among preinstalled folders by default.
- If data is transferred from user folder to i-mode/Camera/Deco-mail picture/Data exchange/Item folder, data type determines the destination folder.
- Preinstalled data by default or some Deco-mail pictures cannot be moved to other folders.

1 Select a file on Image/Movie/Melody list screen and press (i) [Function] ▶ Select "Move to folder" and press (●).

2 Press (1 @あ) "Move".

■ Moving files by option

① **Press (2 ABC カ) "Move option".**

② **Select a file and press (●).**

- Press (●) to release.

③ **Press (i) [Exec.]**

■ Moving all

Press (3 DEF さ) "Move all in folder".

3 Select a destination folder and press (●).

4 Press (1 @あ) "Yes".

- Press (2 ABC カ) "No" to cancel.

Deleting data

You can delete data in Data box and Original data.

- Data saved in "Preinstalled" folder of My picture/Melody cannot be deleted.
- Menu icon data registered by default in Original data cannot be deleted.
- If data set as Stand-by display or Ring tone is deleted, each setting returns to default.

1 Select data on each data list screen and press (i) [Function] ▶ Select "Delete" and press (●).

2 Press (1 @あ) "Delete".

■ Deleting by option

① **Press (2 ABC カ) "Delete option".**

② **Select data and press (●).**

- Press (●) to release.

③ **Press (i) [Exec.]**

■ Deleting all data in a folder

① **Press (3 DEF さ) "Delete all in fldr".**

② **Enter the terminal security code and press (●).**

See next page

3 Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.
- If deleting data including the data set as Stand-by display or Ring tone etc., the confirmation message is displayed. Press 1 "Yes" to delete, 3 "Delete unused data" to delete data not set as Ring tone etc., and 2 "No" to cancel.

Information

- Data can be deleted on Image display/Movie play/Melody play/Chara-den display screen/Data display screen of original data with the same operation.

Checking detail information of the data <File property>

Displays the information of files and original data in Data box.

1 Select a file and press i [Function] ▶ Select "File property" and press ●.

Information

- File property can be displayed on Image display screen/Movie play screen/Melody play screen/Chara-den display screen/Data display screen of original data with the same operation.

List of displayed items

Detailed information contents are as follows.

Item	Description
File name	File name of data
Title	Default title of data, displayed as "不明 (unknown)" for i-motion, and "No title" for Melody/Chara-den/Original data, when no default title exists
File type	File type
Creator	Creator's name etc. of movie/i-motion
Copyright	Name etc. of copyright holder of movie/i-motion
Description	Description of movie/i-motion
Display size	Display size of the data
File size	File size of the data
Sound	Data type of movie/i-motion
Ring tone	Indicates whether it is possible to set movie/i-motion as Ring tone.
Receive display	Indicates whether it is possible to set movie/i-motion as Receive image.
Restrict file	Indicates whether to restrict further transmission of the data from the received party, in sending mail to the received party with data attached. • i-motions, melodies, etc. downloaded from sites cannot be changed.
Playable count	Playable count of movie/i-motion
Rec.file restriction	Indicates whether the shot still image/movie of Chara-den is restricted not to be edited/attached to mails.
Location info	Indicates whether Location information is added to the still image.
Transfer for repair	Indicates whether user's data can be moved when repairing FOMA terminal at DoCoMo-specified repair shop.*
Retrieved from	Data source
Saved on:	Data saving date
Play duration	Duration to play data
No. of images	Number of menu icons

Item	Description
Set to:	File destination to be set

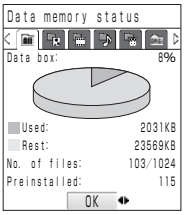
* If your data should be lost/changed, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of data.

Checking memory status

You can confirm free memory space in Data box by a circular chart.

1 Press ● ▶ Press Data box.

2 Press i [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Memory status".



Currently used/free data space is displayed in number and by a circular chart, and number of data saved in each folder is shown to be confirmed.

- Press ◎ to switch the display in Data box/My picture/i-motion/Melody/Chara-den/Original data.
- To confirm the data space of each folder etc., press i [Detail]. Press ◎ to switch the folder.

When memory is short or saved items are to exceed the maximum

When there is not enough free storage space or the number of item is to exceed the maximum savable number, a confirmation screen is displayed to ask whether to delete unnecessary data and save new data .

1 When Check screen is displayed, press 1 "Yes".

2 Press 1 "Data box" or 2 "Original data".

3 Select a folder and press ●.

4 Select data and press ●.

- Press ● to release.

5 Press i [Exec.]

- If deleting data including the data set as Stand-by display or Ring tone etc., the confirmation screen is displayed. Press 1 "Yes" to delete, 3 "Delete unused data" to delete data not set as Ring tone etc., and 2 "No" not to delete. Setting returns to default with deleting.
- Repeat Step 1 to 5 until savable space is secured.

Playing i-motion/Melody in any given order

Default	Random play OFF, Play count: 1 time

i-motions/melodies in Data box can be registered in Program play list and can be played in a row.

- Up to 8 movies/i-motions/melodies can be registered in Program play list.
- Following data cannot be registered in Program:
  - i-motion with Playable count
  - Data unable to be played
  - Data set to restricted action by UIM (FOMA card)
  - Preinstalled data by default
  - Data already registered to Program

Registering Program

1 Press ● ▶ Press Data box.

2 Press i [Function] ▶ Press 2ABC "Play program".

Program play list screen

Program play list screen is displayed.

3 Select [Unregistered] and press ●.

- Select data and press ● to change data already registered.

4 Press 1 "i-motion" or 2ABC "Melody".

5 Select a folder and press ●.

6 Select data and press ●.

- Repeat Step 3 to 6 to continue registering.
- Press ✉ [Play] to play and confirm movies/i-motion/Melody.

Playing Program

1 Press ✉ [Play] on Program play list screen.

- Press ▷ or ▷ to select previous/next data while playing.
- Press CLR to end playing in the middle of the program.

Operating Random play of Program

Press i [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Random play ON".

- Press i [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Random play OFF" to play in the registered order.

Changing Play count of Program

① Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 2ABC "Times played".

② Enter number and press ●.

- Up to 10 times can be set.

Releasing registered files

① Select a date and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 3DEF "Release reg.".

② Press 1 "Release".

- When you press 2ABC "Release all", press 1 "Yes".

Confirming the setting of Program

Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 4GHI "Check settings".

Information

- Continuous play cannot be operated if i-motion with link information is registered.

Infrared communication

You can send and receive Phonebook data or images to and from other FOMA terminals and mobile phones etc. equipped with Infrared communication function. Using Infrared communication with i-αppli allows to link to devices having the infrared communication function.

- Infrared communication cannot be executed under All lock/Close lock/Self mode.
- Location service client data cannot be received under Kids' mode.
- Under PIM lock, data related to the function being locked cannot be sent/received. Preventing displaying Phonebook or Schedule →P149
- Infrared communication is interrupted by using Burglar alarm.
- "Send/Receive all" may not be operated in Infrared communication started from i-αppli software.
- Since radio wave status in Infrared communication is same as status of out of service area, calls/i-mode/data communication cannot be operated.
- Multitask function cannot be used during Infrared communication.
- Infrared communication and data communication with USB cannot be made at the same time.
- Downloaded melody/image data may not be sent/received with Infrared communication.
- Image/i-motion bigger than approximately 300 KB cannot be sent/received. (Some images may not be sent/received even if the image is within approximately 300 KB. Also cannot send/receive the Melody bigger than approximately 100 KB.)
- When you send a message, attached images which cannot be sent/received may be omitted, and only Message may be sent. Also, when receiving, only Message may be received.
- A message is displayed if exceeding savable data size or data number of items. Savable data is saved in "Receive all".
- SA800i Infrared communication function is based on IrMC1.1. Infrared communication may not be made even though the other party's terminal is based on IrMS1.1.
- Data exchanged with the terminal other than SA800i with Infrared communication may not be sent or displayed correctly on the other party's terminal.
- Infrared communication may not be performed properly in areas exposed to direct sunlight or fluorescent lights.
- 2nd zip code and address registered in Profile are not sent with Infrared communication.
- When sending/receiving bookmark, setting of folder sorting is not transferred.

Data sent/received with Infrared communication

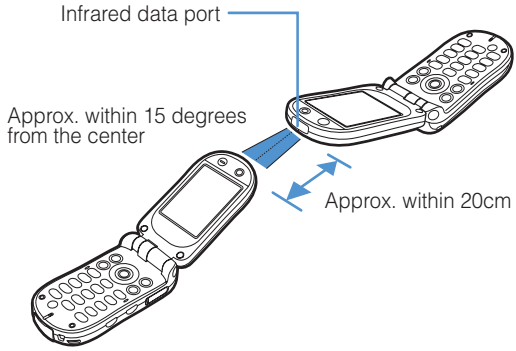
Data type	Saved to:	Priority to save on receiving
Phonebook, Profile	Phonebook*	Registered in order of the remaining memory number from smaller to larger.
Received mail (i-mode mail, SMS)	Inbox Main folder	Registered in order of received date.
Sent mail (i-mode mail, SMS)	Outbox Main folder	Registered in order of sent date.
Unsent message (i-mode mail, SMS)	Unsent message Main folder	Registered in order of saved data.
Schedule	Schedule list	Registered in order of the oldest starting date/the oldest ending date/the oldest alarm date.
ToDo	ToDo list	Registered in order of older expiration date.
Bookmark	Bookmark Main folder	Registered on the top of the list. The first data is registered from the bottom when receiving all.
Location service client	Service clients	Registered at the bottom of the list. The first data is registered from the top when receiving all.
Memo data	Text memo	Registered at the bottom of the list. The first data is registered from the top when receiving all.
Still image	My picture Data exchange folder	Registered according to the setting of sorting order in Data box.
Movie/i-motion	i-motion Data exchange folder	
Melody	Melody Data exchange folder	

* When all phonebook data is received, the first item is registered as Profile and the data other than phone number is overwritten on Profile.

- When all data from Phonebook is sent/received under PIM lock (Profile), the profile data is not sent/received.
- When sending/receiving Phonebook data etc. with images under PIM lock (Multimedia), the images are not sent/received.
- Still image/movie/i-motion/melody cannot be sent/received with "Send all" or "Receive all".
- Up to 9 two-byte (Full Mark) and 18 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be sent/received as the title of still image/movie/i-motion.
- Up to 18 two-byte (Full Mark) or 36 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be sent/received as the title of melody.
- When sending/receiving 1 entry of Phonebook, it is registered as Group 0.
- When Phonebook data is sent from FOMA terminal of other manufacturers, group numbers bigger than 20 are all registered as Group 0, on SA800i.

Operating Infrared communication

- Make the receiver side FOMA terminal ready to receive.
- Place two infrared data ports in face to face and make distance/angle between two ports within approximately 20 cm/approximately 15 degrees from the center. Keep the FOMA terminal pointing at the infrared data port and do not move FOMA terminal until all the data has been sent or received.
- Communicating screen is displayed during Infrared communication and the icon blinks. Do not put things between the FOMA terminals or do not move terminals until the sending/receiving is completed.



Information

- Location information registered in Phonebook/Schedule or inserted in the image acquired by infrared communication may not be displayed or used on the received terminal.

Send Infrared data

Sending data with Infrared communication

Can send Data, such as phonebook entries or your phone number, to other FOMA terminals or mobile phones with Infrared communication function. In Infrared communication, selected data can be sent individually or all files can be sorted by data type to send.

- Send data with the other party ready to receive.
- Link information is deleted if a sending mail has the link information starting i-αppli.

Sending single data item

Select the data to send with Infrared communication from any function and start Infrared communication from Function menu to send.

<ex> Informing the phone number or mail address to the other party with infrared communication

1 Press ● ▶ Press 0わをん.

2 Press i [Function] ▶ Press 6MNOは "Send infrared data".

- If data includes an image, the confirmation screen is displayed to confirm whether to send the image with the attached image. Select an item to operate and press ●.

3 Press 1@あ "Yes".

- Press 2ABCか "No" to cancel.
- Press ✉ [Suspend] to cancel the transmission.
- The message screen is displayed to confirm whether to continue connection, when the connection to the other party's terminal is failed. Check the position of infrared data port and press 1@あ "Yes" to resend.

Sending all data items

You can send all of the selected data, such as phonebook or schedule, via Infrared communication.

- If sending all of the items, the same authentication password (4-digit number) must be entered by the sender and receiver. Obtain same Authentication password in advance. (The password cannot be set in FOMA terminal.)

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Tools ▶ Press 6 ▶ Press 3.**

2 **Select data and press ●.**

■ **Selecting Phonebook/Inbox/Outbox/Unsent message**

Press 1 "Phone" or 2 "UIM".

- If data includes an image, the confirmation screen is displayed to confirm whether to send the data with the image attached.
- Only message is sent if mail data has image data that is impossible to send with Infrared communication.

3 **Enter the terminal security code and press ●.**

4 **Enter the authentication password (4 digits).**

- The entered authentication password is displayed as "✱✱✱✱ ".

5 **Press 1 "Yes".**

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.
- Press [Suspend] to cancel the transmission.
- The message screen is displayed to confirm whether to continue connection, when the connection to the other party's terminal is failed. Check the position of infrared data port and press 1 "Yes" to resend.

Information

- If sending all of the Phonebook data, data of Profile is sent as the first data.
- If Authentication password is different from receiver's, transmission is terminated and Infrared communication menu is displayed.
- The order of the data in sender side terminal may differ from that of receiver side terminals.

Receive infrared data

Receiving data with Infrared communication

You can receive data, such as Phonebook data or Mail messages, from other FOMA terminals or mobile phones equipped with Infrared communication function. On receiving with Infrared communication, data can be received with selecting one by one, or with each specified data type.

Receiving single data item

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Tools ▶ Press 6 ▶ Press 1.**

2 **Press 1 "Yes".**

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

3 Send one data item from sender side.

- Press ✉ [Suspend] to cancel the transmission.
- The message screen is displayed to confirm whether to continue connection, when the connection to the other party's terminal is failed. Check the position of infrared data port and press 1 "Yes" to restart receiving.

4 After receiving is completed, press 1 "Yes".

- Cannot save if exceeding the number of items and data capacity.
- Press 2 "No", and the data is not saved.

Information

- Message to check whether to overwrite is displayed, if the other party has already obtain the same data of Bookmark.

Receiving all data items

All data for each function, such as Phonebook or Schedule, can be transferred with Infrared communication.

- When receiving all of the items, the same authentication password (4-digit number) is required to be entered by the sender and receiver. Obtain same Authentication password in advance. (The password cannot be set in FOMA terminal.)

1 Press ● ▶ Press Tools ▶ Press 6 ▶ Press 2.

A message is displayed to notice that the data saved in your terminal is deleted by overwriting.

2 Press ●.

3 Enter the terminal security code and press ●.

4 Enter the authentication password (4 digits).

- The entered authentication password is displayed as "✱✱✱✱ ".

5 Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

6 Send the data from sender side.

- Press ✉ [Suspend] to cancel the transmission.
- The message screen is displayed to confirm whether to continue connection, when the connection to the other party's terminal is failed. Check the position of infrared data port and press 1 "Yes" to restart receiving.

7 Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 1 "Yes" to delete all of the data on receiver's terminal, and received data is saved. Press 2 "No" to end the transmission and the data of receiver's terminal is not erased.
- Displays a message to check whether to release 1-touch notify or Periodic notify when sending Location service client data. Press 2 "No" to end transmission.

8 The number of Saved/Failed items is displayed.

- Message is displayed if exceeding savable data number of items and only the savable data are saved.

Infrared communication mode

Activating Infrared data Exchange mode

When the data to activate i-αppli is received, you can start i-αppli software.

- Software specified by infrared communication devices is required to be downloaded in advance.

1 Press ● ▶ Press Tools ▶ Press 6 MNO は ▶ Press 1 あ.@.

2 Press 1 あ.@ "Yes".

- Press 2 ABC か "No" to cancel.

3 Receive the data to activate i-αppli from infrared communication devices.

- Press ✉ [Suspend] to cancel the transmission.

4 Press 1 あ.@ "Yes".

Software starts. After started, operations differ depending on software.

Using Infrared remote control function

Download i-αppli compatible with remote controlling, to use FOMA terminal as Infrared remote controller.

- When using remote control function, compatible software to the device is required to be downloaded.
- Key operations differ depending on software.
- Depending on the device to control, some functions or all of the functions may not be operated with Infrared remote control.
- Transmission may be effected by the compatible devices or brightness of environment.
- Infrared remote control function is not available under Self mode.

Remote control operation

Download i-αppli software compatible with Infrared remote control function (→P302) and operate by pointing FOMA terminal infrared data port to infrared data receiving port of a compatible device.

- Operatable angle for remote control is 15 degrees from the center and the distance is approximately 4 m.
- Operatable angle and distance may differ depending on compatible devices or brightness of environment.

Using as Voice recorder

Sound can be recorded with FOMA terminal. Recorded data can be saved in FOMA terminal, and be played, attached to E-mails, or edited.

Duration that can be recorded or saving format

Duration that can be recorded

- Approximately 85 minutes for each file can be recorded.
- It is recommended to charge the battery fully, when recording a file with long duration. Charge battery while recording.
- Recordable duration may differ depending on the data space in FOMA terminal.
- When attaching sound data to a mail, following durations are recordable (estimates).

When attaching to i-mode mail : Approximately 3 minutes

When attaching to large volume message : Approximately 5 minutes and 10 seconds

Saving destination

- Default setting is to save in " Data box" → "i-motion" → "Camera" folder. Saving destination can be changed in setting saving destination.

Saving format

File format : MP4
Encoding method : AMR
Extension : .3gp
File name/Title : Recorded time and date is saved as file name/title automatically.
<ex> When recording at 10:30 on 10th April, 2006
→2006-04-10_10-30

- File name/title can be changed after saving. →P386

Recording sound

- Sound is recorded from the mouthpiece.
- You cannot mute Start/End tone for recording, even under Manner mode, Public mode (Drive mode), or connected to Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with a switch (optional). Also you cannot change the volume of Start/End tone for recording.
- Reactions when receiving call/alarming/receiving mails etc. while recording →P173

1 Press ● ▶ Press Tools ▶ Press 4 GHI た ▶ Press 1 .@ あ.

- Alternatively, press i [Function] ▶ Press 5 JKL な "Shooting type" ▶ Press 3 DEF さ "Sound only", on Movie recording screen to record sound as Voice recorder. →P171

Setting Microphone sensitivity

Press i [Function] ▶ Press 2 ABC か "Mic sensitivity".

- Following operations: →P171 "Setting Microphone sensitivity" Step ②

Setting saving destination

① Press i [Function] ▶ Press 3 DEF さ "Save to:".
② Select a folder and press ●.

See next page

Setting file restriction

Press [Function] ▶ Press 5 "Restrict file ".

- Following operations: →P181 "Setting file restriction" Step ②

Shooting still image before recording

Shot still images are displayed as Thumbnail in Movie list screen.

Press .

- Press [Cam Sw] to switch Out-camera/In-camera.
- Press [Reshoot] to reshoot.
- Press to use Zoom. Zoom →P173
- Press or to set Brightness. Brightness →P174
- Press [Function] ▶ Press ▶ Press 1 "Operation guide" to display Operation guide.

Shooting still image with special effect

Press [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Special effect".

- Press 4 to set Special effect.
- Following operations: →P178 "Setting effects in shooting/recording" Step 2 to 3

Shooting still image in Large view

Press [Function] ▶ Press 4 "Large view".

- Press [Function] ▶ Press 4 "Normal view" to display in Normal view.
- Press to display in Large view/Normal view.

Shooting still image with light turned on

Press [Function] ▶ Press 6 "Light".

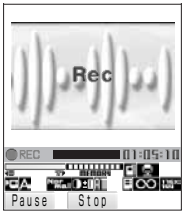
- Press # to turn the light on.
- Following operations: →P175 "Turn the Light on (Shooting movies)" Step 2

Reducing flicker on screen

① Press [Function] ▶ Press 7 "Reduce flicker".

② Press one of 1 to 3.

2 Press .



Start tone sounds and recording starts.

- Reading recording screen. →P164

Pausing recording

Press [Pause].

- Press [Resume] to restart recording.

3 Press .

Recording ends and is automatically saved.

- When exceeding the recordable duration, recording ends and the recorded data is saved automatically.

Playing sound

- Playing sound data from Data box →P366

1 Press ▶ Press Tools ▶ Press 4 ▶ Press 2.

2 Select a folder and press ●.

3 Select sound data and press ●.

Sound data playing screen

- Operations during playing →P367
- Shot still image is displayed if still image has been shot before recording sound.

Playing the sound from specified time point

- Shortcut to play cannot be operated when sound data is played from Data box.
- Also the same operation on Sound data play screen enables "Shortcut to play".

① Select sound data and press ● [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Shortcut to play".

② Enter the time point to start playing and press ●.

Sound data is played from specified time point.

- Displayed duration is the length of sound data. Enter time within the duration.
- Displayed in "hour:minute:second".

Changing title

- Changing title in Data box →P386
- Also the same operation on Sound data play screen enables "Edit title".

① Select sound data and press ● [Function] ▶ Press 2 "Edit title".

② Enter the title and press ●.

- Up to 18 two-byte (Full Mark)/36 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

Confirming detailed information

- Displaying detail information in Data box →P388
- Also the same operation on Sound data play screen enables "File property".

Select sound data and press ● [Function] ▶ Press 3 "File property".

Deleting characters

- Deleting sound data from Data box →P387
- Also the same operation on Sound data play screen enables "Delete".

① Select sound data and press ● [Function] ▶ Press 4 "Delete ".

② Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Other convenient functions

Multiaccess . . . . . <Multiaccess> 402
Multitask. . . . . <Multitask> 404
Turning the power ON/OFF automatically . . . . . <Auto power ON/OFF> 406
Notifying at specified time with Alarm . . . . . .<Alarm> 406
Displaying calendar . . . . . <Calendar> 411
Registering schedules 414
Registering ToDo 419
Registering frequently used functions . . . . . <Shortcut menu> 423
Registering your name, E-mail address, etc. . . . . <Profile> 424
Recording the other party's or your voice . . . <Stand-by/Calling voice memo> 426
Checking duration and call cost . . . . . .<Duration/Cost> 429
Setting Call duration display . . . . . .<Call duration> 430
Using Calculator . . . . . .<Calculator> 430
Entering Text memo . . . . . <Text memo> 431
Making calls automatically with earphone connected. . .<Earphone auto dial> 433
Answering calls automatically with earphone connected . . . .<Auto receive call> 434
Confirming current settings of functions . . . . . <Check setting status> 435
Resetting each setting to default. . . . . <Reset settings> 435
Deleting registered data collectively . . . . . .<Delete all data> 436
Using Jpn dictionary. . . . . <Jpn dictionary> 436
Notifying the current time or received call etc. with voice announcement
. . . . . <Voice notice> 437

Multiaccess

Multiaccess is the function that enables you to use 3 functions of Voice-call/Packet communication/ SMS at the same time. You can receive E-mails during voice-calls or make voice-calls during i-mode.

- The icon of currently activated function is displayed on Task bar.
- Multiaccess allows following 3 network transmissions to be operated simultaneously:

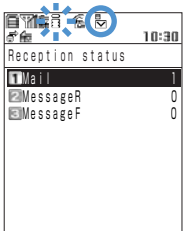
Voice-call	: 1 communication
i-mode, i-αppli, i-mode mail, Packet communication with PC, etc.	: 1 communication of these
SMS	: 1 communication

- Possible combinations of functions to use: →P525

Receiving i-mode mails or voice-calls during communication

<ex> Receiving an i-mode mail during a call

1 Receive i-mode mails.



and blink and "Receiving message" is displayed. blinks and lights up when completing receiving, and Reception status screen is displayed. Ring tone does not play.

- When Receive preference is set to "Prefer user operation", Reception status screen does not appear but reception is notified only by the icon.

<ex> Answering a voice-call during i-mode/packet communication

You can answer a voice-call even during i-mode connection, without terminating network transmission. Same operation can be made in packet transmission connected to PC.

1 Receive a call during i-mode/packet communication.

2 Press .

You can answer the call.

- Phone-calling/site-browsing screens can be switched to each other. →P405
- Press ▶ Press "Yes" on the site-browsing screen to end displaying the site.
- Press on the phone-calling screen to end the call.

Using other transmission during a transmission

Another transmission can be executed without disconnecting an active communication.

<ex> Connecting i-mode during a voice-call

1 Press (TASK) during a call.

2 Select "New task" and press ● ▶ Press 2ABC か "i-mode".

i-mode menu is displayed. Select an item to operate and press ●.

- Phone-calling/site-browsing screens can be switched to each other. →P405
- Press PWR ▶ Press 1 "Yes" on the site-browsing screen to end displaying the site.
- Press PWR on the phone-calling screen to end the call.

<ex> Sending an i-mode mail during a voice-call

1 Press (TASK) during a call.

2 Select "New task" and press ● ▶ Press 1 あ "Mail".

3 Press 4GHI た "Compose message".

4 Compose and send the i-mode mail.

The screen returns to the phone-calling screen after the i-mode mail has been sent.

<ex> Making a voice-call during i-mode transmission

1 Press (TASK) during i-mode.

2 Select "New task" and press ● ▶ Select "Dial input" and press ●.

3 Enter a phone number and press .

Phonebook/History can be operated on Phone number entering screen in the same way. →P58

- The screen returns to the i-mode site screen after ending the call.
- Phone-calling/site-browsing screens can be switched to each other. →P405
- Press PWR ▶ Press 1 "Yes" on the site-browsing screen to end displaying the site.
- Press PWR on the phone-calling screen to end the call.

Information

- Each communication is charged separately when using the Multiaccess function.
- During a video-phone call or 64K data transmission, an incoming call can be received after disconnecting 64K data transmission with subscription of Call waiting service. SMS is also receivable. In this case, not Ring tone but an icon or Reception status notifies the incoming SMS.
- During 64K data transmission, SMS can also be sent.

Multitask

Multitask allows you to activate several functions at the same time, and to perform operations by switching the screen. For example, schedule can be confirmed during a call, or E-mail can be composed with referring to a memo.

- Possible combinations of functions to activate →P526
- The icon of currently activated function is displayed on Task bar.
- Up to 2 functions can be executed at the same time. A call can be received or alarm can work without terminating the 2 functions that are currently operated.
- Only View profile/Positioning by GPS can be operated during a video-phone call.

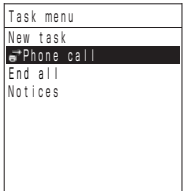
Executing another function

You can execute another function during a call, communication or operation.

- Some functions may be restricted or unable to execute simultaneously.

<ex> Checking Phonebook during a call

1 Press (TASK) during a call.



2 Select "New task" and press (●).

3 Press (6 MNO は) "Private" ▶ Press (1 @ あ) "Phonebook".

Phonebook search screen is displayed.

4 Select a Phonebook entry and press (●).

- Searching Phonebook →P107
- Phonebook detail screen and the phone-calling screen can be switched for operation. →P405
- Press (PWR) on Phonebook screen to end Phonebook.
- Press (PWR) on the phone-calling screen to end a call.

Information

- Functions available for Multitask may be restricted depending on the conditions of currently executed functions and lock settings, etc. Also, the operation by Multitask cannot be made while sending infrared data or updating software.
- When switching functions while executing a new task, some functions may cause delay in action.
- When images/i-motions are registered in Profile, Phonebook, etc., is displayed during phone/video-phone calls.

Switching functions to operate

Press (TASK) to display Task menu while executing functions. Functions can be switched for operation.

1 Press (TASK) while operating functions.

Currently executed functions can be confirmed in the list on Task menu.

2 Select a function and press ●.

Functions displayed on Task menu

- The name of the function on Task menu may differ from that on Menu.

Menu item	Corresponding function or screen
Dial input	Voice-call, Video-phone by entering a phone number etc.
Mail	Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages/Compose message, etc. of i-mode mails or SMS
i-mode	iMenu, Bookmark, Go to location, Screen memo, etc.
i-αppli	i-αppli
GPS	Position location, Location history, etc.
Data box	Data box View
Private	Phonebook, Calendar, Redial, Received calls, etc.
Camera	Snap photo, Shoot movie, Bar code reader
Tools	Calculator, Alarm, Jpn dictionary, etc.
Memo menu	Play record message, Rec./Play VoiceMemo-STBY, Play VoiceMemo-Call, etc.
Manner mode	Setting/releasing Manner mode
Direct call	Displaying Direct call screen
Profile	Displaying Profile
Switch	Switching a function to operate
Notices	Displaying Notices, such as Alarm, as list

Information

- You cannot confirm Notices, such as Alarm with more than 2 functions executed simultaneously during Multitask. Activate 1 function or less to confirm Notices.

Ending all of the operating functions

End all functions in Multitask with one operation.

1 Press (TASK) while operating functions.

2 Select "End all" and press ●.

3 Press (1 .@あ) "Yes".

- Press (2 ABC カ) "No" to cancel.

Information

- Functions that are not task switchable, such as Voice-call/send & receive SMS/Alarm (Snooze)/USB connection, cannot be ended by selecting "End all".
- "End all" is unavailable to be selected during a video-phone call.

Auto power ON/OFF

Turning the power ON/OFF automatically

Default	Auto power ON : OFF Auto power OFF: OFF

You can set the power of FOMA terminal to turn on/off automatically at a specified time.

- A same hour cannot be set for "Auto power ON" and "Auto power OFF".

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 5JKL な.

2 Press 3DEF さ "Auto power ON" or 4GHI た "Auto power OFF".

3 Press 1 あ "ON".

- Press 2ABC か "OFF" to release. No further operation is needed.

4 Enter time to set and press ●.

Information

- If both Alarm start setting (→P411) and Alarm are "ON", the power is automatically turned on at the set time regardless of Auto power "ON" setting.
- If Enter PIN code setting is "ON", Enter PIN code screen is displayed right after the power is turned on by Auto power ON. Enter PIN code, and Stand-by display appears.
- If the set time of Auto power ON comes while positioning of Location provide with the power off, positioning has priority. The power is turned off after ending positioning, then auto power ON is executed.
- FOMA terminal is turned off after executing the preset Auto power OFF/Alarm/Schedule alarm set to a same time. If a snooze operation is set as alarm, the power is turned off after releasing the snooze operation.
- If the preset time for Auto power OFF comes during a call/mailing/i-mode, power is to be OFF after ending each transmission and returning to Stand-by display.
- The power is not to be tuned off until the activated functions are ended, if preset time of Auto power OFF comes except in Stand-by display.
- Release Auto power ON setting as well as turning off the power at the place where mobile phone use is prohibited, such as hospitals and airplanes etc.

Alarm

Notifying at specified time with Alarm

Default	OFF

FOMA terminal notifies a specified time by tones or vibration. Alarm can be set to be not only Once but Daily/Weekly routine. Also, Voiced readout of the time or vibration can be set as Alarm.

- Up to 8 alarms can be registered.

Setting alarm

1 Press ● ▶ Press Tools ▶ Press 2ABC か.

2 Press one of 1 to 8.

Select an Alarm item.

- is displayed on the right side of name of Alarm items which are "ON".

3 Press 1 "ON".

Alarm setting list screen

- Press 2 "OFF" to release. No further operation is needed.

4 Set each item.

Setting Alarm name

①Select Name and press ●.

②Enter the Alarm name and press ●.

- Up to 6 two-byte (Full Mark)/12 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

Setting Alarm time

①Select and press ●.

②Enter time and press ●.

Setting Repeat

①Select and press ●.

②Press one of 1 to 6.

Daily	: Notifies by Alarm every day.
Monday - Friday	: Notifies by Alarm on Monday-Friday.
Monday - Saturday	: Notifies by Alarm on Monday-Saturday.
Non-holiday	: Notifies by Alarm on days not to be set as a holiday on the Calendar.
Day of week	: Specifies the day to set Alarm to be active. ① Select a day of the week and press ●. •Press ● to release. ② Press i [Complete].
No repeat	: Notifies by Alarm once.

See next page

Setting Alarm tone

①Select and press ●.
②Press one of 1 to 5.

i-motion : Notifies by the selected video/i-motion.
① Select a folder and press ●.
② Select data and press ●.

Melody : Notifies by the selected sound/melody.
① Select a folder and press ●.
② Select data and press ●.

Announce & i-motion : Notifies by the selected video/i-motion after the time is voice-announced.
① Select a folder and press ●.
② Select data and press ●.

Announce & melody : Notifies by the selected tone/melody after the time is voice-announced.
① Select a folder and press ●.
② Select data and press ●.

OFF : Does not sound Alarm.

- "Data title" is displayed with Time voice-readout setting.

Setting Snooze mode

①Select and press ●.
②Press one of 1 to 3.

ON fixed : Notifies by repeating a fixed Alarm tone
- Enter a Snooze time and press ●.
- 1 to 15 minutes of intervals can be set.

ON selected : Notifies by Alarm tones set as 1 to 6 times for each item.
① Select a Snooze sound and press ●.
② Press 1 "i-motion" or 2 "Melody".
•Press 3 "OFF" not to set a Snooze sound.
③ Select a folder and press ●.
④ Select data and press ●.
•Repeat the procedure ① to ④ to set a Snooze sound.
⑤ Press i [Define].
⑥ Enter Snooze time and press ●.
•1-15 minutes of intervals can be set.

OFF : Does not notify by Snooze.

Adjusting Alarm volume

①Select and press ●.
②Press to set Volume and press ●.
- Press ✉ [STEP ↓] to step down the volume、and press i [STEP ↑] to step up the volume.

Setting Alarm notice image

①Select and press ●.
②Press one of 1 to 3.

My picture : Displays a still image.
① Select a folder and press ●.
② Select data and press ●.
• Setting images →P129

i-motion : Displays a video/i-motion.
① Select a folder and press ●.
② Select data and press ●.
• Video-only movie/i-motion can be set.

OFF : Sets no Alarm notice image.

Setting vibrator

①Select and press ●.
②Press one of 1 to 7.
• Vibrator acts linking to a preset melody by setting 1 "Melody link".
• Press 8 "OFF" not to set.
• Press [Check] ▶ Press ● to confirm vibration.
③Press one of 1 to 3.
• Press [Check] ▶ Press ● to confirm vibration.

Setting the priority between Alarm or Manner mode

①Select and press ●.
②Press 1 "ON" or 2 "OFF".

ON : Notification by Alarm is executed according to the Alarm setting even under Manner mode.

OFF : Notification by Alarm is executed according to Manner mode setting.

5 Press [Register].

is displayed on Stand-by display.

Information

- Some types of i-motion cannot be set as Alarm sound or Alarm notifying image.
- Up to 10 two-byte (Full Mark)/21 one-byte (Half Mark) characters are displayed on Title on Alarm setting list screen, when setting an image/i-motion etc. with long file names.
- If you set i-motion including video and sound as Alarm tone, a message is displayed to confirm that Alarm notify image is changed to the same i-motion as Alarm tone. If either Alarm tone or Alarm notify image is changed, a message is displayed to confirm that the other setting is changed back to the default.

Returning all alarm settings to default

1 Press ● ▶ Press Tools ▶ Press 2.

2 Select an Alarm and press [Function] ▶ Press 2 "Reset".

3 Press 1 "Reset".

• When pressing 2 "Reset all", enter the terminal security code and press ●.

See next page

4 Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

When the specified time comes

- Alarm starts to sound at the specified time according to the setting.
- Press any key to stop Alarm sounding. Without any operation, Alarm stops approximately 1 minutes later. In this case, New notify icon is displayed on Stand-by display. Press ● to confirm Alarm detail.
- Under Snooze mode setting, Alarm sounds repeatedly at preset intervals. Hold down 2 for over a second to release Snooze. Hold down ▷ for over a second to release Snooze when FOMA terminal is folded. Snooze function is released after repeating 6 times.
- If other function, such as calls, is executed at a specified time, Alarm acts as follows:

Situation	Alarm action
During calls, and receiving/sending mails	Alarm starts after ending calls or receiving/sending mails.
When the power is off	Alarm does not start when alarm start setting is "OFF". The notify icon is displayed on Stand-by display when the power is turned on.
While shooting still/movie images, connecting to i-mode, starting i-αppli, playing VoiceMemo-STBY/VoiceMemo-Call/ Record message, recording VoiceMemo-STBY/Answer message, and editing texts such as Text memo	Alarm starts to ring. Under Snooze mode, display returns to each operation after releasing Snooze.
Under Close lock	Alarm starts to ring.
While GPS positioning	Alarm starts to ring at the end of positioning.
Under PIM lock (Alarm), All lock, Software update, and while Burglar alarm ringing	Alarm is not activated. The notify icon is displayed after lock is released, Software is updated, and Burglar alarm is stopped.

Priority within Alarms

If Alarm, Schedule alarm, or other alarms are set at a same time, priorities of Alarms are as follows;

① Periodic notify
Notifies all in registered order of 1 to 2.

② Alarm (prior until releasing Snooze mode, if Snooze is set)
Rings all in registered order of 1 to 8.

③ ToDo alarm
Rings only 1 Alarm with the earliest expiration date.

④ Schedule alarm
Rings only 1 Alarm with the earliest start date.

- Periodic notify is started with each alarm released, if the time to activate Periodic notify comes while Alarm/Schedule alarm/ToDo alarm is ringing.
- If ToDo alarms are set to the same expiration date and time, ToDo alarm saved at the last rings.
- If Start dates of Schedule alarms are set to start at the same date and time, the Alarm with the earliest ending date rings, and if the ending dates are also the same, Schedule alarm saved at the last rings.

Information

- Alarm stops if E-mail/voice-call is received while alarm ringing. However, by setting Receive preference of E-mail to "Prefer user operation", Alarm keeps ringing and the icon is displayed to indicate receiving E-mail.

Setting to sound Alarm when the power is turned off

Default	OFF

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Tools ▶ Press 2ABC.**

2 **Press i [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Alarm start: OFF".**

- "Alarm start: ON" is displayed when setting Alarm to ring with the power turned off.

3 **Press 1 "Yes".**

- Press 2ABC "No" not to set Alarm to ring with the power turned off.

Information

- When Enter PIN code is "ON", the power is turned on at a set time specified by Alarm, and then Enter PIN code screen is displayed after releasing Alarm (releasing Snooze). After entering the PIN code, Stand-by display appears.
- When setting Alarm to ring with the power turned off, each Alarm in the default setting rings, if Enter PIN code is set to "ON" and data downloaded through i-mode (including mail attachments) are set as Alarm tone or Alarm notice image. Also, each Alarm in the default setting rings regardless of Enter PIN code setting, even when data under UIM (FOMA card) operation restrictions are set as Alarm tone or Alarm notice image.
- Turn your mobile phone off and set the Alarm Start setting "OFF" at places where mobile phone use is prohibited, such as hospitals and airplanes etc.

Calendar

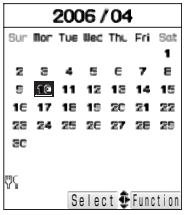
Displaying calendar

You can confirm Schedule on Monthly or Daily screen. Also used as your original calendar by setting your holiday.

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Private ▶ Press 2ABC.**

Calendar is displayed by month.

- A check screen is displayed under Transparent display ON.



Monthly schedule screen

See next page

Registering a new entry

①Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Register new entry".
②Press one of 1 to 5.

Schedule : Registers a Schedule.
- Following operations : →P414 "Registering schedules" Step 3 to 5

ToDo : Registers a ToDo (plans).
- Following operations : →P419 "Registering ToDo" Step 3 to 5

My picture : Select still images from " My picture" and register.
- Select data and press ●.

i-motion : Select movies/i-motions from "i-motion" and register.
- Select data and press ●.

Melody : Select melodies from "Melody" and register.
- Select data and press ●.

- New entries can be registered also from Daily schedule screen with the same operation.
- Up to 300 items in total, still images/movies/i-motions/melodies, can be registered in Calendar. The same data cannot be registered for several days.
- i-motions with frame/stamp/playable count, and preinstalled data, etc. cannot be registered in Calendar.
- New entries can be registered from January 1st, 2005 to December 31st, 2020. Days with registered entries are underlined in monthly calendar.

Moving date

①Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 4 "Move date".
②Select a date and press ●.
- Alternatively, press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 6 "Move date", on Daily schedule screen to move the date.

Setting holidays

①Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 5 "Holiday setting".
②Press one of 1 to 3.

One day only : Sets only the selected day as a holiday.

Weekly : Sets the same day of the week as the selected day as holidays.

Duration setting : Sets a specified period as holidays.
- Enter the start date and press ● and enter the end date and press ●.

- Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 7 "Holiday setting" to set the present day as Holiday, also on Daily schedule screen.
- Holidays can be registered from January 1st, 2005 to December 31st, 2020.

Releasing holidays

①Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 6 "Holiday release".
②Press one of 1 to 4.

One day only : Releases a holiday only on the selected day.

Weekly : Releases holidays on the same day of the week as the selected day.

Duration setting : Releases holidays of a specified period.
- Enter the start date and press ● and enter the ending date and press ●.

Reset : Returns all holiday settings back to default.
- Enter the terminal security code and press ● ▶ Press 1 "Yes".

- Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 7 "Holiday release" to release the present day from Holiday, also on Daily schedule screen.

Displaying an image on background

①**Press [Function] ▶ Press "Transparent disp."**
②**Press "ON".**
- Press "OFF" not to set Transparent display.

③**Select "Calendar regd. img" or "Camera shot image" and press ●.**

Calendar regd. img : Displays the registered image as the background image on selected day.

Camera shot image : Displays the image shot with Camera as the background image on the selected day. When several images (Still image/the first frame of moving image) have been shot with Camera, an image shot on the latest date is displayed.

- Both "Calendar regd. img" and "Camera shot image" can be set "ON". In this case, Calendar registered image is displayed prior to Camera shot image.

④**Press [Complete].**

Displaying registered data

①**Press [Function] ▶ Press ▶ Press "Display regd. data".**
②**Press "Icons" or "List".**
- An icon or a list of the registered data is displayed as the preview at the lower field on Monthly schedule screen of Calendar.

Icons : Displays an icon indicating the registered schedule/data on a selected day. Priority for displaying is as follows:
① Birthday data registered in Profile ( )
② Birthday data registered in Phonebook ( )
③ ToDo (in order of earlier expiration date)
④ Schedule (in order of earlier starting date)
⑤ Data such as images (in order of newer registration)

List : Displays an icon and a list of the registered schedule/data on a selected day. 2 items with the highest priority are displayed.

③**Press ●.**

Setting/releasing National holidays

- National holidays data is required to be downloaded in advance. National holidays →P382

①**Press [Function] ▶ Press ▶ Press "Set/Rel nat. hol".**
②**Select National holidays data and press ●.**
- Press ● to release.

③**Press [Exec.] ▶ Press "Yes".**
- Press "No" to cancel.

2 Select a date and press ●.

Daily schedule screen

The selected day is displayed. The list of registered data is displayed.
- The days before/after the displayed day can be viewed with .
- Select the Birthday data from Profile and press ● to display congratulation.
- Select the Birthday data from Phonebook and press ● to display Phonebook detail screen. Dialing and composing i-mode mail are enabled by using Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, and Web To function.

See next page

Attaching to E-mail

Attach registered still images/movies/i-motions/melodies to the E-mail and send it.

Select date and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 3 "Mail attachment".

Compose message screen with attached data is displayed.

- Following operations : →P242 "Composing and sending i-mode mail" Step 2 to 6
- Attaching files →P253

Deleting/releasing registered schedule and data

①Select data and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press ▶ Press 1 "Delete/Rel. reg."

②Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Information

- Calendar can display dates from November 1st, 1582 to December 31st, 9999.
- Holidays in 2006 are previously registered. Register the holidays in 2007 or later by holiday setting.
- National holidays are based on "The Article regarding National holidays or the amendments of old-age persons welfare law (Article 59 of the law, 2001)". The date of the Spring/Autumn Equinox Day may differ each year since the announcement is made in Gazette on 1st February one year before the year. (as of February, 2006)
- If Birthday data is registered/edited in Profile of Phonebook, Birthday data in Calendar is automatically registered/edited.
- If downloaded icons are set for Schedule or ToDo, " No category" is displayed on the screen under PIM lock (Multimedia) and under restricted action by UIM (FOMA card).

Registering schedules

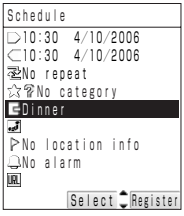
Schedules can be registered on Calendar. By setting Schedule alarm, schedules are notified with Alarm tones or images at specified time and date.

- Up to 100 schedules can be registered.
- Several schedules can be registered on the same day.

1 Press ● ▶ Press Private ▶ Press 2.

2 Select a day and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Register new entry" ▶ Press 1 "Schedule".

3 Enter contents and press ●.



Schedule registration screen

- Schedule without any content cannot be registered.
- Up to 100 two-byte (Full Mark)/200 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

4 Set each item.

Setting Start date

①**Select** ▷ **and press** ●.
②**Enter time and date to start and press** ●.
- Press ✉ [All day] to set Start/End date as all day.
- Start/End date are displayed as "All day", if 0:00 is set for Start date and 0:00 of the next day for End date.

Setting End date

①**Select** ◁ **and press** ●.
②**Enter time and date to end and press** ●.

Setting Repeat

①**Select** ⇄ **and press** ●.
②**Select the cycle to repeat by** ◎ **and press** ●.
- Select "No repeat" not to set Repeat, and go to Step ⑥.

③**Enter the period to repeat and press** ●.
④**Press** 1 **"Fixed" or** 2 **"None".**
- Press 2 "None" not to set Repeat exception. Returns back to Schedule registration screen.

⑤**Select Repeat exception of the week and press** ●.
- Press ● to release.
- Press ✉ [Rel All] to release all Repeat exceptions.
- ☝ is displayed in Repeat item after setting Repeat exception.

⑥**Press** i **[Complete].**

Setting Category

①**Select** ☆ **and press** ●.
②**Select a Category icon and press** ●.
- Set icons are displayed on Calendar.
- Category icons can be downloaded from the site "どこでもSANYO (Dokodemo SANYO)", other than preinstalled icons by default. →P196

Entering contents

①**Select** ⊏ **and press** ●.
②**Enter contents and press** ●.

Setting place

①**Select** ♪ **and press** ●.
②**Enter the place and press** ●.
- Up to 20 two-byte (Full Mark)/40 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

Adding location information

Select ▷ **and press** ●.
- Following operations: →P343 "Adding location information" Step 4

Setting Alarm

①**Select** 🔔 **and press** ●.
- Following operations: →P406 "Setting alarm" Step 3 to 4
- Alarm date cannot be set on a date and time after Start date.

②**Press** i **[Define].**

See next page

■ Setting URL

①**Select** URL **and press ●.**

②**Enter URL and press ●.**

- Up to 256 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

■ Setting Summary

①**Select** **and press ●.**

②**Enter Summary and press ●.**

- Up to 20 two-byte (Full Mark)/40 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

■ Secret setting

Secret setting can only be operated under Secret mode. →P153

①**Select** **and press ●.**

②**Press 1 "ON".**

- Press 2 "OFF" to release.

5 Press i [Register].

- Stand-by display shows when Schedule alarm is set on a date and time of the future.

Information

- Confirmation message is displayed when Schedule starting date has been set in the backward of the current time and date.
- If Start date is going to be changed after setting Repeat, a message is displayed to confirm whether Repeat is released.
- Contents registered in Schedule may be lost due to FOMA terminal malfunction, repairs, changes in the model or other reasons. DoCoMo recommends to make a copy of important schedule contents. If data should be erased, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data. The data can be stored in your PC using data link software and the FOMA USB connection cable (optional). →P528

Registering Schedule from other functions

You can register a new entry from i-αppli compatible with Schedule function. Following schedule items can be registered from i-αppli.

- Start date
- Repeat setting
- Contents*
- Alarm setting

* When characters of newly entered "Contents" of i-αppli exceed 100 two-byte (Full Mark)/200 one-byte (Half Mark), only top 100 or 200 letters are registered.

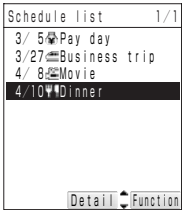
- i-αppli compatible with schedule function need to be downloaded. →P302
- When registering a new entry, i-αppli is suspended and Schedule function on FOMA terminal appears.

Confirming/editing schedule

Registered schedule details can be confirmed from Schedule list or Daily schedule screen. You can also edit or add Schedules.

Confirming from schedule list

1 Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 2ABC "Schedule list", on Monthly schedule screen.



Schedule list screen

All registered schedules are displayed in order of older date.

- Start date, Category icon, and Summary (Contents when summary is not entered), or ▷ when Location information is acquired, are displayed.
- Font color of Schedule is changed after the End date and time has passed.

Registering a new schedule

Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 1✱ "Register new entry".

- Following operations: →P414 "Registering schedules" Step 3 to 5

Using Location information

Select a schedule and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 2ABC "Location info".

- Following operations: →P344 "Using added Location information" Step 3

Using URL

①Select a schedule and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 3DEF "URL".
②Press 1✱ "Connect to site" or 2ABC "Register bookmark".

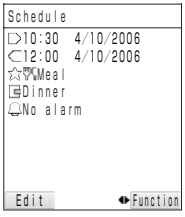
Connect to site : Connects to sites.
- Select a URL and press ● ▶ Press (i) [Connect].
- Press ✉ [Cancel] to cancel.

Register bookmark : Registers the site to Bookmark.
- Select a URL and press ●.
- Following operations : →P204 "Registering in Bookmark" Step 2 to 3

Confirming the number of registered Schedule

Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 6MNO "Memory status".

2 Select a schedule and press ●.



Schedule detail screen

Detail of Schedule is displayed.

- Press ◎ to display previous/next schedule.

Copying an item

①Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 2ABC "Copy item".
②Select an item and press ●.

- The data copied with Copy item can be pasted as text on character input screen of Message or Phonebook. Setting cannot be copied with this operation.

Sending Push tone during a call

- Displaying schedule during a call →P404

Select a phone number and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 4GHI "Send push tone".

Confirming from Daily calendar display screen

1 Select a schedule on Daily calendar display screen and press ●.

Information

- Press i [Function] ▶ Press 4 GHI "Schedule list" to display Schedule list from Daily schedule display screen .
- If phone number/E-mail address/URL is registered in contents or summary, Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/ and Web To functions are available by selecting each of them on Schedule detail screen and pressing ●.

Editing schedules

1 Press ✉ [Edit] on Schedule detail screen.

- Following operations: →P414 "Registering schedules" Step 4 to 5

If Schedule alarm is set

- Alarm starts to ring at a specified time.
- Refer to P410 for Sound actions when registered Schedule alarm and other alarms are set at a same time.
- Press any key to stop Alarm ringing. Schedule list screen is displayed when more than 2 Alarms are notified. If only 1 Alarm is notified, Schedule detail screen is displayed.
- Alarm stops approximately 1 minutes later without any operation while alarming, and New notify icon is displayed on Stand-by display. Press ● to confirm the schedule.
- If other function, such as calls, is executed at a specified time, Alarm acts as follows:

Situation	Alarm action
During calls, and receiving/sending mails	Schedule alarm starts to sound after ending calls or receiving/ sending mails.
When the power is off	Schedule alarm is not to be activated. The notify icon is displayed on Stand-by display when the power is turned on.
While shooting still/movie images, connecting to i-mode, starting i-αppli, playing VoiceMemo-STBY/VoiceMemo-Call/Record message, recording VoiceMemo-STBY/Answer message, and editing texts such as Text memo	Schedule alarm starts to ring.
Under Close lock	Schedule alarm starts to ring. Schedule contents cannot be viewed by stopping the alarm sound. In this case, unlock to check the schedule contents.
While GPS positioning	Alarm starts to ring after positioning.
Under PIM lock (Calendar), All lock, and Software update, while ringing Burglar alarm	Schedule alarm is not to be activated. Notify icon is displayed after lock is released or after stopping Burglar alarm.

Information

- Schedule alarm stops if E-mail/voice-call is received while Alarm is ringing. However, by setting Receive preference of E-mail to "Prefer user operation", Alarm keeps ringing and the icon is displayed to indicate receiving E-mail.
- Schedule alarm registered as Secret is activated even being out of Secret mode. However, it is not displayed in Schedule list.

Deleting Schedules

1 Select a schedule on Schedule list screen and press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press 5JKL "Delete".

2 Press 1@あ "Delete".

■ **Deleting by option**

①Press 2ABCか "Delete option".
②Select a schedule and press ●.
- Press ● to release.

③Press ⓘ [Exec.]

■ **Deleting all**

①Press 3DEFさ "Delete all".
②Enter the terminal security code and press ●.

3 Press 1@あ "Yes".
- Press 2ABCか "No" to cancel.

Information

- Press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press 3DEFさ "Delete", to delete Schedule on Schedule detail screen.
- If data with Secret setting is included in the list, a screen is displayed to select data to delete. Press ● to switch Select/Release. Select data and press ⓘ [Exec.]

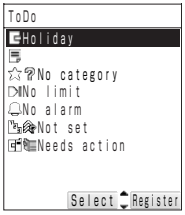
Registering ToDo

You can register an important event or a plan to do. It provides useful functions for time management, with Expiration date or Priority setting. ToDo alarm can be set to notify a specified time and date by Alarm tones or images.
- Up to 50 ToDo can be registered.
- You can register several ToDo on the same day.

1 Press ● ▶ Press Private ▶ Press 2ABCか.

2 Press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press 1@あ "Register new entry" ▶ Press 2ABCか "ToDo".

3 Enter contents and press ●.



ToDo registration screen

- Schedule without any content cannot be registered.
- Up to 100 two-byte (Full Mark)/200 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

See next page

4 Set each item.

Entering contents
①**Select** and press ●.
②**Enter contents and press** ●.

Setting Summary
①**Select** and press ●.
②**Enter Summary and press** ●.
- Up to 20 two-byte (Full Mark) and 40 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

Setting Category
①**Select** and press ●.
②**Select Category icon and press** ●.
- Category icons can be downloaded from the site "どこでもSANYO (Dokodemo SANYO)", other than preinstalled icons by default. →P196

Setting Expiration date
①**Select** and press ●.
②**Enter Expiration time and date and press** ●.
- If Expiration date is not set, the day set in Time and date setting is registered.

Setting Alarm
①**Select** and press ●.
- Following operations: →P406 "Setting alarm" Step 3 to 4
- Alarm date and time cannot be set to later than Expiration date and time.

②**Press** (i) **[Define].**

Setting Priority
①**Select** and press ●.
②**Press one of** 1 **to** 3**.**

High : Sets high priority to ToDo.
Low : Sets low priority to ToDo.
Not set : Sets no priority.

Setting Status
①**Select** and press ●.
②**Press one of** 1 **to** 8**.**
- Icon can be selected from 8 patterns. Set icons are displayed on Calendar.
- In the case of pressing 7 "Completed", enter End date and press ●.

Entering Completion date
- Completion date is not displayed when the status is "Need actions".

①**Select** and press ●.
②**Enter time and date to be completed and press** ●.

Secret setting
Secret setting can only be operated under Secret mode. →P153
①**Select** and press ●.
②**Press** 1 **"ON".**
- Press 2 "OFF" to release.

5 Press (i) [Register].
- appears on Stand-by display when ToDo alarm is set.

Information

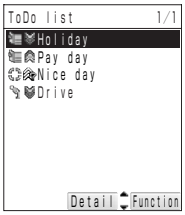
- ToDo alarm is not activated if End date of ToDo is set or Status is set as "Completed".
- Contents registered in ToDo may be lost due to FOMA terminal malfunction, repairs, changes in the model or other reasons. DoCoMo recommends to make a copy of important ToDo contents. If data should be erased, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data. The data can be stored in your PC using data link software and the FOMA USB connection cable (optional). →P528

Confirming/Editing ToDo

Registered ToDo details can be confirmed from ToDo list or Daily schedule screen. Schedules can also be edited or added.

Confirming on ToDo list

1 Press (i) [Function] on Monthly calendar screen ▶ Press 3DEF "ToDo list".



ToDo list screen

All ToDo are listed in order of the earlier expiration date.

- Status, Priority, and Summary (Contents if the summary is not entered) are displayed.
- Font color of ToDo without End date or ToDo that Status has not been set as "Completed", is changed after the expiration date has passed.

Registering a new ToDo

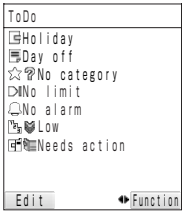
Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Register new entry".

- Following operations: →P419 "Registering ToDo" Step 3 to 5

Confirming the number of registered ToDo

Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 4GHI "Memory status".

2 Select a ToDo and press ●.



ToDo detail screen

ToDo detail is displayed.

- Press ◇ to display previous/next ToDo.

Copying an item

①Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 2ABC "Copy item".
②Select an item and press ●.

- The data copied with Copy item can be pasted as text, on character input screen of Message or Phonebook. Setting cannot be copied with this operation.

Sending Push tone during a call

- Displaying ToDo during a call →P404

Select a phone number and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 4GHI "Send push tone".

Confirming from Daily calendar display screen

1 Select a ToDo on Daily schedule display screen and press ●.

See next page

Information

- Press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press 5 "ToDo list", to display ToDo list on Daily schedule screen.
- If phone number/E-mail address/URL is registered in contents or summary, Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/ and Web To function is available by selecting each of them on ToDo detail screen and pressing ●.

Editing ToDo

1 Press ✉ [Edit] on ToDo detail screen.

- Following operations : →P419 "Registering ToDo" Step 4 to 5

If ToDo alarm is set

- ToDo alarm is activated and starts to ring at a specified time.
- Refer P410 for Sound actions when registered ToDo alarm and other alarms are set at a same time.
- Press any key to stop Alarm ringing. ToDo list screen is displayed when more than 2 ToDo are notified. If only 1 ToDo is notified, ToDo detail screen is displayed.
- Alarm stops approximately 1 minutes later without any operation while alarming, and New notify icon is displayed on Stand-by display. Press ● to confirm ToDo.
- If other function, such as calls, is executed at a specified time, Alarm acts as follows:

Situation	Alarm action
During calls, and receiving/sending mails	ToDo alarm starts after ending calls or receiving/sending mails.
When the power is off	ToDo alarm is not to be activated. The notify icon is displayed on Stand-by display when the power is turned on.
While shooting still/movie images, connecting to i-mode, starting i-αppli, playing VoiceMemo-STBY/VoiceMemo-Call/ Record message, recording VoiceMemo-STBY/Answer message, and editing texts such as Text memo	ToDo alarm starts to ring.
Under Close lock	ToDo alarm starts to ring. Schedule contents cannot be viewed by stopping the alarm sound. In this case, unlock to check the contents.
While GPS positioning	ToDo alarm starts to ring after positioning.
Under PIM lock (Calendar), All lock, and Software update, while ringing Burglar alarm	ToDo alarm is not to be activated. Notify icon is displayed after lock is released or after stopping Burglar alarm.

Information

- ToDo alarm stops if E-mail/voice-call is received while Alarm is ringing. However, by setting Receive preference of E-mail to "Prefer user operation", Alarm keeps ringing and the icon is displayed to indicate receiving E-mail.
- ToDo alarm registered as Secret is activated even being out of Secret mode. However, it is not displayed on ToDo list.

Deleting ToDo

1 Select a ToDo on ToDo list screen and press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press 3 "Delete".

2 Press 1 "Delete".

■ Deleting by option

①Press 2 "Delete option".
②Select a ToDo and press ●.
- Press ● to release.

③Press i [Exec.]

■ Deleting all

①Press 3 "Delete all".
②Enter the terminal security code and press ●.

3 Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Information

- Press i [Function] ▶ Press 3 "Delete", to delete ToDo on ToDo detail screen.
- If data with Secret setting is included in the list, a screen is displayed to select data to delete. Press ● to switch Select/Release. Select data and press i [Exec.]

Shortcut menu

Registering frequently used functions

Register frequently used functions as shortcut menus to execute them with minimum operations.

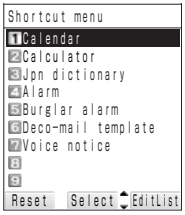
Registering Shortcut menu

Default	1: Calendar 2: Calculator 3: Jpn dictionary 4: Alarm 5: Burglar alarm 6: Deco-mail template 7: Voice notice

Shortcut menu can be registered/changed or sorted.

Registering/changing Shortcut menu

1 Press ● ▶ Press ✉ [Shortcut] .



Shortcut menu is displayed.

Shortcut menu

2 Press i [EditList].

3 Select an item to change or register and press ●.

4 Select a function and press ●.

- Function displayed with ● [Register] can be registered. Function displayed with ● [Select] can be registered from lower category.

Sorting Menu icons

1 From Shortcut menu screen, press (i) [EditList].

2 Select a function and press (i) [Move].

3 Select the destination to move to and press ●.

Executing Shortcut menu

1 From Shortcut menu, select the function and press ●.

Each function starts.

Releasing a function from Shortcut menu

1 From Shortcut menu, press (i) [EditList].

2 Select a function and press (✉) [Release].

3 Press 1 "Release".

■ Releasing all items

①Press 2 "Release all".
②Enter the terminal security code and press ●.
③Press 1 "Yes".
- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Resetting customized shortcut menu

Reset Shortcut menu settings back to default.

1 From Shortcut menu, press (✉) [Reset].
- Press CLR ▶ Press (✉) [Reset] when no function is registered.

2 Press 1 "Yes".
- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Profile

Registering your name, E-mail address, etc.

You can confirm your phone number of FOMA terminal, and register/edit your name, E-mail address, etc.
- Phone number of each FOMA terminal cannot be changed.

1 Press ● ▶ Press 0.

The given terminal phone number is displayed as its own number.

2 Press (✉) [Edit] ▶ Enter the terminal security code and press ●.

3 Set "Own #".

The following items can be set:

: My address : Name : Reading : Image

- Operation procedure →P99 "Registering entry in FOMA terminal phonebook" Step 3 to 5

■ Setting My address

①**Select and press ●.**

②**Enter the mail address and press ●.**

- Up to 50 one-byte alphanumeric characters and marks can be entered.

4 Press ▶ Set "POC".

The following items can be set: Up to 2 items can be set for each.

: Zip code : Address : Phone number : E-mail

- Operation procedure →P99 "Registering entry in FOMA terminal phonebook" Step 3 to 5

5 Press ▶ Set "Info".

The following items can be set:

: Location info : Internet site : Free memo : Blood type

: Birthday : Star sign : Hobby

- Operation procedure →P99 "Registering entry in FOMA terminal phonebook" Step 3 to 5

6 Press [Register].

Using registered items

You can use the registered phone number, E-mail address, and URL for some functions.

1 Press ▶ Press 0.

2 Press [Function] ▶ Select a function to use.

■ Making a voice call/video-phone call

①**Press 1 "Dial phone call" or 2 "Dial video-phone".**

②**Select a phone number and press ●.**

■ Composing message

①**Press 3 "Compose message".**

②**Select a mail address and press ●.**

- Following operations : →P242 "Composing and sending i-mode mail" Step 4 to 6

■ Using Location information

Press 4 "Location info".

- Following operations: →P344 "Using added Location information" Step 3

■ Using URL

Press 5 "URL".

- Following operations: →P417 "Using URL" Step ②

■ Sending Push tone during a call

- Displaying Profile during a call →P404

①**Press [Function] ▶ Press 7 "Send push tone".**

②**Select a phone number and press ●.**

See next page

Information

- Press ● ▶ Press Profile and Profile is also displayed.
- Your i-mode mail address cannot be changed even if E-mail address in Profile has been changed. Also, E-mail address in Profile is not changed automatically even if i-mode mail address has been changed.
  Changing E-mail address →P235
- Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To functions can be used from the registered phone number, E-mail address, etc.

Stand-by/Calling voice memo

Recording the other party's or your voice

2 types of voice memo are available: "Record Stand-by voice memo", to record voice memo in Stand-by, and "Record Calling voice memo", to record the other party's a voice memo during voice-call/video-phone.

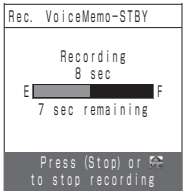
- Stand-by voice memos can be recorded for approximately 15 seconds. Up to 9 entries can be recorded.
- Calling voice memo can be recorded for a proximately 20 seconds. Up to 4 entries can be recorded.

Recording your own voice during Stand-by

1 Press ● ▶ Press Memo menu ▶ Press 3DEF.

- Recording is unavailable if 9 voice memos have already been recorded.

2 Press ● or ▲.



Recording starts with a beep. Start talking to the mouthpiece. Recording ends with a beep approximately 15 seconds later.

- Press ● or ▲ to stop recording halfway.

3 Press i [Save].

Voice memos are recorded with the title being the recorded date.

- Press ● to confirm the recorded voice memo.
- Press ✉ [Redo] to redo recording.

Information

- When Alarm notice starts to ring or a call is received while recording voice memo, recording is terminated and recorded data up to the point is saved.
- Voice memo information may be lost due to FOMA terminal malfunction, repairs, changes in the model or other reasons. Important contents of voice memos are recommended to be written down as memo. If data should be erased, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.

Recording the other party's voice while talking

You can record the other party's voice during a call by Record calling voice memo during a call.

- During a video-phone call, only the voice is recordable but not images.

1 Press (i) [Function] during a call ▶ Press 1 "Rec. VoiceMemoCall".

- Recording is unavailable if 4 voice memos has already been recorded.

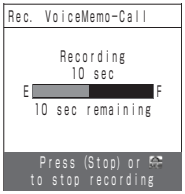
■ Recording the other party's voice during a video-phone call

Press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 5 "Rec. VoiceMemoCall".

Recording starts.

- Press ● to stop recording halfway.

2 Press ● or ▷.



Recording starts. Recording ends after a lapse of approximately 20 seconds. The phone-calling screen comes back after recording.

- Press ● or ▷ to stop recording halfway.

Playing voice memos

Playing Stand-by voice memos

1 Press ● ▶ Press Memo menu ▶ Press 4.

2 Select a voice memo and press ●.

Voice memo comes from the speaker.

- While playing, adjust the volume with ◇.
- Press ● to stop playing.

■ Editing titles of Stand-by voice memo

①Select a voice memo and press (i) [Edit].

②Enter the title and press ●.

- Up to 10 two-byte (Full Mark)/21 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

Playing Calling voice memos

1 Press ● ▶ Press Memo menu ▶ Press 5.

■ Making voice-calls to the caller of Calling voice memo

Select a voice memo and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Dial phone call".

- Following operations: →P215 "Functions available by selecting the phone number" Step 3
- Voice-calls can be made with the same operation on Play VoiceMemo-Call screen.

See next page

Making video-phone calls to the caller of Calling voice memo

Select a voice memo and press [Function] ▶ Press 2 "Dial video-phone".

- Following operations: →P215 "Functions available by selecting the phone number" Step 3
- Video-phone calls can be made with the same operation on Playing screen.

Making video-phone calls to the caller of Calling voice memo by selecting an image

Select a voice memo and press [Function] ▶ Press 3 "Video-phone image".

- Following operations: →P215 "Making video-phone calls by selecting an image" Step 2 to 3
- Video-phone call can be made by selecting a sending image with the same operation on Playing screen.

Registering the phone number of the caller of Calling voice memo to phonebook

Select a voice memo and press [Function] ▶ Press 4 "New to Phonebook".

- Following operations: →P99 "Registering entry in FOMA terminal phonebook" Step 2 to 6, P104 "Registering entry into UIM (FOMA card) Phonebook" Step 2 to 4
- Press 5 "Add to phonebook", select a phonebook and press ● to add an entry.
  Following operations: →P111 "Editing saved Phonebook entries" Step 2 to 4
- A phone number can be registered to Phonebook with the same operation on Playing screen.

Copying the phone number of Calling voice memo

Select a voice memo and press [Function] ▶ Press 6 "Copy phone number".

- A phone number can be registered to Phonebook with the same operation on Playing screen.

Sending i-mode mails to the source of Calling voice memo

You can compose and send mails when the phone number and E-mail address of voice memo are registered in Phonebook.

Select a voice memo and press [Function] ▶ Press 7 "Compose message".

- Select an E-mail address and press ●, when several E-mail addresses are registered in Phonebook.
- Following operations : →P242 "Composing and sending i-mode mail" Step 4 to 6
- Mails can be composed with the same operation on Playing screen.

2 Select a voice memo and press ●.

Voice memo is heard from Earpiece.

- While playing, the volume can be adjusted with ⚙.
- Press ● to stop playing.

Deleting Voice memo

Deleting Stand-by voice memo

1 Press ● ▶ Press Memo menu ▶ Press 4.

2 Select a voice memo and press ✉ [Delete].

3 Press 1 "Delete".

- When pressing 2 "Delete all", enter the terminal security code and press ●.

4 Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Deleting Calling voice memo

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Memo menu ▶ Press 5JKL な.**

2 **Select a voice memo and press i [Function] ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 1@ あ "Delete".**

- Following operations: →P428 "Deleting Stand-by voice memo" Step 3 to 4

Duration/Cost

Checking duration and call cost

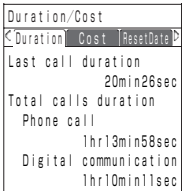
You can check the last and total duration and cost for voice and video-phone calls.

- Total calls duration for voice calls and for digital communication (video-phone calls + 64K data communication) are displayed separately, and both outgoing and incoming calls are counted.
- Total calls cost is only charged for outgoing calls. If the last call has been made to a toll-free service or number reference (104), Last call cost is displayed as "¥✱✱✱,✱✱✱,✱✱✱".
- As Call cost is stored in the UIM (FOMA card), the stored Total calls cost (since December, 2004) will be displayed when the UIM (FOMA card) is replaced.

*FOMA terminals released before 901i series cannot display the total cost information stored in UIM (FOMA card). (Data is saved in UIM (FOMA card))

- Call duration and call cost can be reset.
- Displayed call duration and call cost are estimated values and may differ from the actual call results. Note that displayed call cost does not include the consumption tax.

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 4GHI た ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 2ABC か.**



- Screen of "Duration", "Cost", and "ResetDate" can be switched by pressing ○.

Information

- When the last and the total duration of voice-calls or 64K data communication has exceeded 999 hours 59 minutes and 59 seconds, the count of duration is set back to 0 and restarted.
- If the power is turned off, "¥✱✱✱,✱✱✱,✱✱✱" is displayed as Last call cost.
- Duration of received calls, or time for dialing the other party are not counted.
- Time and cost for i-mode and packet communications are not counted. For the procedure to confirm i-mode cost, refer to "i-mode User's Manual" delivered at subscription to the i-mode service.

Resetting Total calls duration/cost

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 4GHI た ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 2ABC か.**

2 **Select "Duration" or "Cost" and press m [Reset].**

See next page

3 **Enter the terminal security code and press ●.**

- To reset Total calls cost, enter PIN2 code and press ●.

4 **Press 1 "Yes".**

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Call duration

Setting Call duration display

Default	ON

You can configure the setting whether to display Call duration during or after voice-calls/video-phones.

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 4 ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 1.**

2 **Press 1 "ON".**

- Press 2 "OFF" not to display.

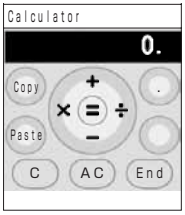
Calculator

Using Calculator

You can use Calculator to do Addition/Subtraction/Multiplication/Division, up to 10 digits. And you can copy the calculated result and paste the data onto other calculation.

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Tools ▶ Press 1.**

2 **Enter calculation formula.**



Operating keys	Operations
0 ～ 9	Enters numbers
○	+ (Addition)
○	− (Subtraction)
○	× (*: Multiplication)
○	÷ (/: Division)
C	C (Deletes entered numbers)
✉	Copies numbers displayed
i	Enters decimal point
✉	Pastes copied numbers*
●	= (calculation result)
CLR	Deletes the whole calculation process
PWR	Ends Calculator

* Displays only when there are data able to be pasted.

Information

- "E" is displayed if the calculation result is more than 10 digits. Press CLR to release. When the number including a decimal point exceeds 10 digits, the digit after decimal point that overflows in the display are cut off.
- "E" is displayed if divided by 0.
- Calculator is terminated when calls are received or Alarm is notified. And after ending each function, the screen returns to Calculator holding the previous calculation.
- Only pastable data is displayed in Paste data list.
- If you paste the data in the middle of entering a number, the entry is overwritten.

Text memo

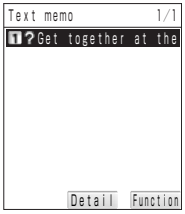
Entering Text memo

You can register simple text memos.

- Up to 50 Text memos can be registered.

1 Press ● ▶ Press Memo menu ▶ Press 6MNO.

Text memo list screen is displayed.



Text memo list screen

2 Press i [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Register new entry".

3 Enter a text memo and press ●.

- Up to 128 two-byte (Full Mark)/256 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

4 Select a category and press ●.

- Category can be selected from 6 patterns.

Confirming/editing Text memo

1 Press ● ▶ Press Memo menu ▶ Press 6MNO.

■ Confirming information

Select a text memo and press i [Function] ▶ Press 4GHI "Text memo info".

- Text memo information can be confirmed with the same operation on Text memo detail screen.

See next page

2 Select a text memo and press ●.

Text memo detail screen

Text memo detail screen is displayed.

- Press ◎ to display previous/next Text memo.

Editing Text memo

Press ✉ [Edit].

- Following operations: →P431 "Entering Text memo" Step 3 to 4

Sending Push tone during a call

- Displaying Text memo during a call. →P404

Select a phone number and press i [Function] ▶
Press 3 "Send push tone".

Information

- Register phone numbers/E-mail addresses/URL in Text memo, and Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To functions become available by selecting the item from Text memo list screen and pressing ●.
- Registered data in Text memo may be lost due to FOMA terminal malfunction, repairs, changes in the model or other reasons. DoCoMo recommends to make a copy of important Text memo. If data should be erased, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data. The data can be stored in your PC using data link software and the FOMA USB connection cable (optional). →P528

Deleting Text memo

1 Select a text memo from Text memo list screen and press i [Function] ▶ Press 3 "Delete".

2 Press 1 "Delete".

Deleting by option

①Press 2 "Delete option".
②Select a text memo and press ●.

- Press ● to release.

③Press i [Exec.]

Deleting all

①Press 3 "Delete all".
②Enter the terminal security code and press ●.

3 Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Information

- Press i [Function] ▶ Press 2 "Delete", to delete from Text memo detail screen.

Earphone auto dial

Making calls automatically with earphone connected

You can make/answer a call by switching on Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with a switch (optional).

- Connecting Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with a switch (optional) →P29
- In the default setting, auto dial destination is set to the party registered at no. 499 in Phonebook. The party to make auto dial call can be changed.
- Earphone auto dial is not available to be executed under All lock/Close lock/Self mode/PIM lock (Phonebook).
- Closing action setting is invalidated while Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with a switch (optional) is connected.

1 Hold down the switch of Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with a switch for over a second during Stand-by.

Dialing starts.

2 Hold down the switch of Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with a switch for over a second to disconnect the call.

Receiving calls with Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with a switch connected

1 Hold down the switch of Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with a switch for over a second while receiving a call.

2 Hold down the switch of Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with a switch for over a second to disconnect the call.

Information

- You can receive an incoming video-phone call, while Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with a switch is connected. When FOMA terminal is folded, a preset Substitutive image is sent.
- If Call waiting service is subscribed and is activated, you can receive another incoming call during a call, or your can switch the party to talk, by holding down the switch of Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with a switch.

Selecting a party to make a call with Earphone connected

Default	No setting (Phonebook number 499)

- Only 1 entry in Phonebook from FOMA terminal Phonebook can be set to Earphone auto dial destination. When several phone numbers are registered in Phonebook, the phone number registered as Normal use is set.

1 Select a Phonebook entry and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 3DEF "Set earph. AT dial".

■ Releasing Earphone auto dial destination

①Select a Phonebook entry and press (i) [Function] ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 3DEF "Rel earph. AT dial".

②Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2ABC "No" to cancel.

See next page

2 Press 1 "Yes".

appeears in Phonebook.

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.
- To change the destination when Phonebook is set as secret, enter the terminal security code and press ●, if releasing Secret mode.

Information

- If Phonebook set as Earphone auto dial destination has been deleted, the setting returns to default. However, even if all phone numbers registered in Phonebook of Earphone auto dial destination have been deleted, the setting doesn't return to default.
- Earphone auto dial destination is automatically changed into the search no., if changing Phonebook number in Phonebook set as Earphone auto dial destination.
- If Phonebook set as Earphone auto dial destination is overwritten by another Phonebook data, the setting returns to default.

Setting Earphone auto dial

Default	OFF

Sets Dial phone call to be made when the switch of Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with a switch is held down for over a second.

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 4 ▶ Press 9.

2 Press 1 "ON".

- Press 2 "OFF" not to set.

Auto receive call

Answering calls automatically with earphone connected

Default	OFF

Voice-calls/video-phone calls can be received automatically after the preset duration has passed, with Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with a switch (optional) connected.

- This function is not available in Public mode (Drive mode). Received calls are saved as Missed calls.
- If the received call number is set in Call rejection, this function is not available.
- The same duration cannot be set for Receive message answer time and Auto receive answer time.

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 4 ▶ Press 8.

2 Press 1 "ON".

- Press 2 "OFF" not to set. No further operation is needed.

3 Enter the duration until answering calls automatically, and press ●.

- 0 to 120 seconds can be set.

Information

- If a video-phone call has been answered with Auto receive call, the image set as Substitutive image is sent to the other party.
- If Voice mail service and Call forwarding are set at the same time, priority to activate functions differs according to set ringing time.

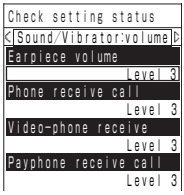
Check setting status

Confirming current settings of functions

This function confirms each setting and status of FOMA terminal.

- If UIM (FOMA card) is not inserted or cannot be recognized, enter PIN code status is displayed as "✱✱✱", and call cost is displayed as "¥✱✱✱,✱✱✱,✱✱✱".

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 9WXYZ ▶ Press 4GHI.



- Press ◆ to switch items and ↕ to scroll the display.

Information

- Under Kids' mode, items with restrictions in setting change is displayed in grey.

Reset settings

Resetting each setting to default

This function resets each function to its default setting.

- Default settings →P508

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 6MNO ▶ Press 3DEFさ.

2 Press 1@あ "Yes ".

- Press 2ABCか "No" to cancel.

3 Enter the terminal security code and press ●.

4 Press 1@あ "Yes ".

- Press 2ABCか "No" to cancel.

Information

- i-mode setting and Mail setting also return to default.
- "i-αppli" software act setting and Auto start setting cannot be reset. However, settings of the following functions returns to default.
  - Software property display: Not display
  - Stand-by display setting in Software act: Not set
- Other functions cannot be used while resetting.

Delete all data

Deleting registered data collectively

Data saved, registered and protected in FOMA terminal can be deleted collectively. The data saved in UIM (FOMA card) are deleted.

- Data to be deleted: →P508
- Following data is to be deleted together with default data. Deleted data can be redownloaded from the site "どこでもSANYO (Dokodemo SANYO)". →P196
  - Chara-den
  - i-αppli
  - Deco-mail picture

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 6MNO ▶ Press 2ABC.

2 Press 1 "Yes ".

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

3 Enter the terminal security code and press ●.

4 Press 1 "Yes ".

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Information

- Data communication settings set in PC cannot be reset.
- Settings and learned information are also reset.
- Unable to use other functions while deleting all data. Receiving calls and mails are not available.

Jpn dictionary

Using Jpn dictionary

You can use FOMA terminal as Japanese dictionary. Find out the reading and definition of entered words. Jpn dictionary is also available in entering text.

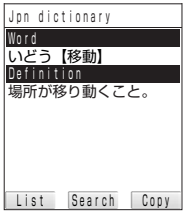
1 Press ● ▶ Press Tools ▶ Press 3DEF.

2 Enter a word and press ●.

List of search result is displayed.

- Hiragana, Kanji, and Katakana (two-byte) are available to enter.
- Up to 15 characters can be entered.

3 Select a word and press ●.



Search result detail screen

Definition of the word is displayed.

- Press ✉ [List] to return to the search result list.
- If there are more than one search result, press ◀▶ to display the previous/next word.

Copying search result

Reading and definition of the searched word can be copied and saved as Paste data.

①Press ⓘ [Copy].

②Press one of 1 to 4.

For further search from the search result

①Press ●.

②Press one of 1 to 4.

From word (reading) : Starts searching with the reading of the searched word.

From definition : Searches a word included in the definition.
① Press ● on the first character of the word, and ● on the last character.
② Select a word and press ●.

New entry : Enter a new word to search.

Look-up history : Shows search result history. Up to 9 latest search results are saved and displayed in the list.
- When the number of the remained results exceeds 9, the oldest searched result is deleted.
- Select a word and press ●.

Information

- When searching a Japanese word in Kanji (Chinese characters), only the pertinent word may be displayed as the search result. When searching a Japanese word in Hiragana or Katakana, or searching with no word entered, all words are displayed as the search result.
- Kana suffix to words with Kanji:
  Kana suffix to Kanji for this dictionary is based on "送り仮名の付け方 (The guideline for Kana suffix to Kanji)" released by the Japanese Cabinet. However, Kana suffix for synonyms or antonyms displayed with the definition of the word are omitted if possible, and may differ from the Kana suffix of the word.

Voice notice

Notifying the current time or received call etc. with voice announcement

Notifies the current time or contents of Notify icons with voice-announce in Stand-by.

- Voice notice is not notified while Side key operation is invalid (when FOMA terminal is folded), or under All lock/Close lock.
- Notifications regarding to locked functions are not notified in voice under PIM lock.
- Voice notice is executed whether FOMA terminal is opened or folded.
- Notify icons: →P36

1 Press ▷ (ボイス(Voice)) on Stand-by display.

- If several notices exist, press ▷ (ボイス(Voice)) several times to notify each item.

Setting Voice notice

Default	Time and notices

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 9 ▶ Press 7.

See next page

2 Press one of 1 to 4.

Time : Notifies time.
Notices : Notifies the contents of Notify icon.
Time and notices : Notifies time and the contents of Notify icon.
OFF : Does not notify by voice-announce is not made.

Information

- Contents of Notify icons are notified with vibration under Manner mode or Ring tone volume OFF. Vibrations differ depending on contents to notify.
- Volume in Voice notice follows the volume setting of Phone receive.

Network service

Network services available for FOMA terminal 440
Using Voice mail service .....<Voice mail> 441
Using Call waiting .....<Call waiting> 443
Using Call forwarding service .....<Call forwarding> 444
Using Nuisance call barring service .....<Nuisance call barring service> 446
Using Caller ID request service .....<Caller ID request service> 447
Using Dual network service ..... <Dual network> 447
Switching language for guidance .....<English guidance> 448
Using Service dialing number .....<Service dialing no.> 448
Selecting response action for incoming calls during a call ..<Arrival act> 448
Activating/deactivating Set arrival act .....<Set arrival act> 449
Setting Remote access.....<Remote access> 449
Using Multinumber .....<Multinumber> 449
Registering and using Extra services..... <Extra services> 451

- In this chapter, each network service is outlined by describing operation procedures using operation menus of FOMA terminal. Refer to "Network Services Operation Guide" for details of each service. For details of Multinumber, refer to " マルチナンバー操作ガイド (Multinumber Operation Guide, provided only in Japanese)".

Network services available for FOMA terminal

The following convenient network services are available:

Service	Description	Monthly fee	Application	Page
Voice mail service	When displaying "圏外 (Out of service area)" icon or turning the power off, the answer message is played to the caller and a message is recorded.	Charged	Required	P441
Call waiting	Receives an incoming call or makes a new call to the other party during a call.	Charged	Required	P443
Call forwarding service	When displaying "圏外 (Out of service area)" icon or turning the power off, forwards the incoming call to the preset forwarding address.	Free	Required	P444
Nuisance call barring service	Avoids receiving a call from the preset phone number.	Free	Required	P446
CallerID notification service	Notifies your phone number to the other party.	Free	Not required	P51
Caller ID request service	Plays the guidance to request Caller ID notification for the caller without notifying Caller ID, and disconnects the call automatically.	Free	Not required	P447
Public mode (Drive mode)	Plays the guidance automatically to notify that you are unable to answer incoming calls for driving or for being a place where you should refrain from talking on the mobile phone.	Free	Not required	P77
Public mode (Power OFF)	The guidance plays to notify that you are in a place that mobile phones should be turned off for the incoming calls, while turning the power off.	Free	Not required	P78
Dual network service	Allows to use the same phone number for both FOMA and mova terminals.	Charged	Required	P447
English guidance	Sets Voice guidance to English.	Free	Not required	P448
Multinumber	The service provides to use multiple phone numbers with 1 FOMA terminal.	Charged	required	P449
SMS (Short Message)	Exchanges text messages using phone numbers of FOMA terminals.	Free	Not required	P293 P294

- Contact "DoCoMo Information Center" on the back of this manual for applications and inquiries.
- In this chapter, each network service is outlined by describing operation procedures using operation menus of FOMA terminal. Refer to "Network Services Operation Guide" for details of each service. For details of Multinumber, refer to "マルチナンバー操作ガイド (Multinumber Operation Guide, provided only in Japanese)".
- When new network services are released from DoCoMo, register the service to menu of FOMA terminals and activate services. →P451
- "Deactivate service" does not mean the cancellation of the contract of Voice mail service or Call forwarding service, etc.

Using Voice mail service

When you cannot receive calls since being out of service area or turning the power off, the service answers incoming calls with the answering message and records messages that the caller left.

- You can check Voice message from anywhere in Japan.
- An additional application is required to use Voice mail service. Communication fees for playing voice messages is required, in addition to the monthly fee.
- Voice mail service cannot be accessed from the location where is out of service or under the poor radio wave condition. Operate FOMA terminal under the better radio wave condition.
  Previously activating remote access (→P449) allows you to operate Voice mail service using "Network security code" from fixed-line phones with push tone or public phones.

Voice mail service

- Up to 20 Voice messages of up to 3 minutes per each can be recorded.
- Recorded messages are saved up to 72 hours.
- When having incoming calls while activating Voice mail service, Ring tone sounds according to the period of time set in Ring time. If receiving the call within the Ring time, you can catch the call. If not receiving the call within Ring time, the call is forwarded to the Voice mail center automatically. The call is notified on Stand-by display or Received calls. However, if setting Ring time as "0 second", no record is saved in Received calls.
- Even activating Voice mail service, video-phone calls cannot be connected to Voice mail center and are disconnected after Ringing time previously set.
- Voice mail service and Call forwarding service cannot be used simultaneously. Even applying to both services, Voice mail service suspends when activating Call forwarding service. However, setting Call forwarding service to "OFF" cannot activate Voice mail service automatically.
- When setting Caller ID request service to "Activate", FOMA terminal answers with Caller ID request guidance to calls without Caller ID, and cannot record messages.
- When activating Voice mail service, you can make or receive voice phone calls as usual.
- The service also provides a function that only announces that you are unable to answer the call.
- Unanswered voice phone is to be connected to the Voice mail center. Received calls or informing icon notifies that you have the received calls.
- When a new call is incoming during a call, you can forward the new call to the Voice mail center.

Basic flow of Voice mail service

Activating the service

↓

Voice phone call is connected to Voice mail service.

↓

The other party leaves the voice message.*

↓

Notifies that the message is saved in Voice mail with icons.

↓

Play the voice message

* The caller in a hurry can skip hearing the response and proceed directly to recording mode by pressing #.

Activating/deactivating Voice mail service

1 Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press 1.

2 Press 1 "Activate service".

■ Deactivating Voice mail service

① Press 3 "Deactivate service".

② Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

3 Press 1 "Yes".

- Checks and activates Voice mail service. Press 1 "Yes", enter Ringing time and press ● to set ringing time. Press 2 "No" to activate the service with preset ringing time. (Default Ringing time is 10 seconds.)
- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Setting Ringing time of Voice mail service

1 Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press 1.

See next page

2 **Press 2 "Ringing time".**

3 **Press 1 "Yes".**
- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

4 **Enter Ringing time and press ●.**
- Ringing time can be set between 0 to 120 seconds.

Checking messages

is displayed on Stand-by display with a new message. The number in the icon indicates number of messages left.

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press 1.**

2 **Press 5 "Play message".**

3 **Press 1 "Yes".**
Makes a call to 1417. Operate following the voice guidance and check messages.
- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Using voice guidance to set up Voice mail service

Follow the voice guidance, and set Voice mail service, or to check messages.

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press 1.**

2 **Press 6 "Activate service".**

3 **Press 1 "Yes".**
Makes a call to 1416. Operate following the voice guidance.
- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Checking messages

Check whether new messages are left in Voice mail center.

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press 1.**

2 **Press 7 "Check message".**
Connecting to Voice mail center and a message notifying status is displayed.
The icon of Voice mail is displayed on Stand-by display with a new message. The number in the icon indicates the number of messages left.

Information

- New messages recorded after checking once may not be confirmed even you check again.

Confirming and editing the setting of Voice mail service

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press 1.**

2 **Press 4 "Status request".**
Connecting to Voice mail center and the current status is displayed.
- Press [Function] to set Activate/Deactivate/Ringing time of Voice mail service.
- Press ● to return to Voice mail menu screen.

Setting Ring tone to play with new message <Ring message notice>

Default	Melody: オルガン (Organ)

Notices that a new message is saved in Voice mail center with Melody and/or Vibrator.
- Operates LED/Vibrator/Volume/Notice time with settings of Receive message.

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press 1.**

2 **Press 8 "Ring message notice".**

3 **Press 1 "Melody".**
- Melody can be selected from the folder of "Melody" in "Data box".
- Press 2 "OFF" not to play Ring tone. No further operation is needed. Vibrator or other functions are not activated when setting "OFF".

4 **Select a folder and press ●.**

5 **Select a melody and press ●.**
- Press [Play] to check melody.

Information

- Notice tone sounds when a new message arrives on checking the message.
- Notice tone does not sound if no message remains, or the number of messages is unchanged or declined for the expired period of messages saved. However, the tone rings when the icon of Voice mail is not displayed on Stand-by display. (Unless the number of Voice message is decreased to 0.)

Removing Voice mail icon

Remove the icon of Voice mail displayed on Stand-by display.

- Voice mails are not deleted even removing the icon.

1 Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press 1.

2 Press 9 "Erase icon display".

3 Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Using Notify missed call function

When FOMA terminal is out of service area or powered OFF, the missed calls are to be notified with SMS when you turn the power ON or move into service area. Phone number of the other party, received date and time can be checked.

- Up to 5 notices are received with an SMS.
- Settings and notices (receiving SMS) are not charged.
- History is received even setting Reject all SMS.
- Displays the name of the caller if the number of the other party matches the phone number registered in Phonebook.

Activating/deactivating Notify missed call

1 Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press 1.

2 Press ○ ▶ Press 1 "Notify missed call".

3 Press 1 "Activate service".

■ Deactivating Notify missed call

Press 2 "Deactivate service".

4 Press 1 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.
- A message is displayed confirming whether to notify the calls without CallerID notification, when starting Notify missed call function.

Checking Notify missed call

Check whether Notify missed call is active.

1 Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press 1.

2 Press ○ ▶ Press 1 "Notify missed call".

3 Press 3 "Status request".

- Checks the status and displays whether Notify missed call is active.

Call waiting

Using Call waiting

You can answer another new call while talking on a line, also hold the current call and make a new call.

- Call waiting is the optional service that requires application. Monthly fee is charged for use.
- Notifies with beep sound if a new call is coming during a call.
- Call waiting is unavailable out of service area or under the poor radio wave condition.

Call waiting

- When setting Caller ID request service to "Activate", the service answers a call with a guidance to request Caller ID to the call without Caller ID, and the call is not notified.
- To use Call waiting, set Arrival act (→P448) to "Answer". Call waiting is available regardless of the setting status of Set arrival act (→P449)
- Call waiting is not activated under the following conditions:
  - When making a call to a 3-digit number such as 110, 119, 117*, 104 or 118
    * Cannot receive a call when a phone call is coming during a call to 117, although beep sound plays.
  - When dialing the other party
  - While connecting to Voice mail center to play messages etc., as a user of the service
  - When making a call to 4-digit phone number for setting the network services, such as 1411 (activating Voice mail service) and 1420 (deactivating Call forwarding service)
- The caller is charged for calls on hold.
- When a phone call is coming during a video-phone call, or a video-phone call is coming during a phone call, incoming call is notified but you cannot receive both calls simultaneously.
- When additional call is coming during Multi connecting, beep sound plays and a message is displayed to notify to hold or finish the call to answer. Press i [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Call rejection" to disconnect a new incoming call.
- If beep sound plays during a call, you cannot answer the incoming call as long as disconnecting the current phone-call without subscribing Call waiting service.
- When a phone call is coming while holding another phone call, on-hold is released back to online, and Call waiting is activated.

Activating/deactivating Call waiting

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press 2ABC.**

2 **Press 1 "Activate service".**

■ Deactivating Call waiting service

Press 2ABC "Deactivate service".

3 **Press 1 "Yes".**

- Press 2ABC "No" to cancel.

Confirming Call waiting settings

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press 2ABC.**

2 **Press 3DEF "Status request".**

Connects to the center and displays whether Call waiting is active.

Receiving an incoming call with holding a call on the line

1 **Press ☎ or ● when beep sound plays during a call.**

The current call is held and you can answer the second call.

■ Switching among calls

Press ☎.

- Press i [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Switch" to switch calls.

Information

- "Multi connecting" is displayed on the screen.
- Press ● [Hold] to hold both calls.

Disconnecting a call

■ Disconnecting a call on the line

Press PWR.

The call on the line is disconnected and Ring tone for the holding call plays according to the settings. Press ☎ or ● to talk.

■ Disconnecting a call on hold

Press i [Function] ▶ Press 2ABC "Disconnect holding".

Disconnects the holding line. The call on the line is still active.

Disconnecting the call on the line and receiving the incoming call

1 **Press PWR when beep sound plays during a call.**

The call on the line is disconnected and Ring tone for the incoming call plays. (When i-motion is set as Ring tone, default Ring tone rings.)

2 **Press ☎ or ●.**

You can receive the incoming call.

Holding a call on the line and making a new call

1 **Enter a phone number during a call ▶ Press ☎.**

The first call is held automatically.

- Make a call by selecting a phone number from Phonebook or Redial/Received history.

■ Switching among calls

Press ☎.

- Press i [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Switch" to switch calls.

Information

- "Multi connecting" is displayed on the screen.
- Press ● [Hold] to hold both calls.

Call forwarding

Using Call forwarding service

Forwards the calls on FOMA terminal to the preset forwarding destination, such as home, office, etc. when you cannot answer.

- Only one forwarding destination can be set.
- Call forwarding service requires optional application. No monthly charge is required.
- For some billing plans, the service is unavailable.
- Call forwarding service cannot be accessed out of service area or under poor radio wave condition. Operate FOMA terminal under the better radio wave condition.
  Previously activating remote access (→P449) allows to operate Call forwarding service using "Network security code" from fixed-line phones with push tones or public phones.

Call forwarding service

- When having incoming calls while activating Call forwarding service, Ring tone sounds according to the period of time set in Ring time. If receiving the call within the Ring time, you can answer the call. If not receiving the call within Ring time, the call is forwarded to the forwarding destination automatically. The call is notified on Stand-by display or Received calls. However, if setting Ring time as "0 second", no record is saved in Received calls.
- You can make or receive a call as usual even setting Call forwarding service on.
- Incoming video-phone calls can be forwarded only to terminals compatible with 3G-324M video-phone.
- Voice mail service and Call forwarding service cannot be used simultaneously. Even applying to both services, Call forwarding service suspends when activating Voice mail service. However, setting Voice mail service to "OFF" cannot activate Call forwarding service automatically.
- When setting Caller ID request service to "Activate", the service answers a call with a guidance to request Caller ID to calls without Caller ID, and the call is not forwarded.

Information

- Calls are automatically forwarded without playing Ring tone if the terminal is out of service area or turned the power off. Also in this case, Call forwarding service subscriber is charged for the call from the forwarding source to the destination.
- Forwarding may be suspended upon the request from forwarding destination, and if DoCoMo authorizes validity of the request.

Basic procedure of Call forwarding service

Set phone number of the forwarding destination

↓

Activating Call forwarding service

↓

A call is received at your FOMA terminal

↓

Automatically forwards the call to the preset destination number if not receiving.

Activating Call forwarding service

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press 3DEF.**

2 **Press 1 "Activate service" ▶ Press 1 "Yes".**
- Press 2ABC "No" to cancel.

3 **Press 3DEF "Activate".**
Connects to the center, and activates Call forwarding service with the preset Ringing time.

Setting Ringing time

① Press 2ABC "Ringing time".
② Enter Ringing time and press ●.
- Ringing time can be set between 0 to 120 seconds.

Changing forwarding destination

Press 1 "Change forwarding no. ".
- Following operations : →P445 "Changing forwarding destination" Step 2 to 3

Deactivating Call forwarding service

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press 3DEF.**

2 **Press 2ABC "Deactivate service" ▶ Press 1 "Yes".**
- Press 2ABC "No" to cancel.

Changing forwarding destination

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press 3DEF.**

2 **Press 3DEF "Change forwarding no.".**

3 **Press 1 "Direct input".**

Setting forwarding destination phone number by selecting from Phonebook entries

① Press 2ABC "Quote phonebook".
② Search Phonebook and press ●.
③ Select a phone number and press ●.
- Up to 26 digits can be registered as a phone number.

④ Press ●.
- Go to Step 5.

4 **Enter the phone number and press ●.**
- Up to 26 digits can be entered.

5 **Press 1 "Change only" or 2ABC "Change & activate".**
- Connects to the center, and change the forwarding destination. When pressing 2ABC "Change & activate", Call forwarding service is activated immediately after changing a forwarding destination.

See next page

Information

- Note that specifying a PBX, pager* or facsimile machine as the forwarding destination may cause the false impression to callers.
- When a new call is coming during a call (or under packet communication), the call can be forwarded to the forwarding destination.
- Refer to P68 to forward the incoming call by manual.
- Ringing time setting is saved after change of the forwarding destination or deactivation of the service.
- You cannot register 3-digit phone numbers such as toll-free phone numbers, Quick number or emergency calls as the forwarding destination.

Setting Voice mail service to answer calls when the forwarding destination is busy

When the forwarding destination is busy, forward the incoming call to Voice mail center.

- Subscribing Voice mail service is required.
- Incoming video-phones are not connected.

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press 3DEF.**

2 **4GHI "Forwarded number busy" ▶ Press 1 "Yes".**

- Press 2ABC "No" not to connect to Voice mail service.

Checking Call forwarding service setting

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press 3DEF.**

2 **Press 5JKL "Status request".**

Connects to the center, and displays whether Call forwarding service is active, forwarding destination, Ringing time and whether to connect to Voice mail center.

Setting forwarding guidance ON/OFF

1 **Press 1 4GHI 2ABC 9WXYZ ▶ Press ⊂D.**

2 **Set following the voice guidance.**

Nuisance call barring service

Using Nuisance call barring service

Reject calls from specific callers automatically. Calls from the registered phone number as the nuisance caller are rejected with the guidance of call rejection.

- Up to 30 nuisance calls can be registered.
- Nuisance call barring service is required to optional subscription. No monthly charge is required.
- Nuisance call barring service cannot be accessed out of service area or under the poor radio wave conditions. Operate FOMA terminal under the better radio wave condition.
- A call is disconnected with the video guidance indicating Call rejection, if receiving a video-phone from the registered phone number .
- When activating each service of Voice mail/Call waiting/Call forwarding/Caller ID request/Public mode (Drive mode), the call from registered phone number is disconnected after the guidance of Call rejection (video guidance for Video-phone). Also History such as Missed calls, or Notify icons are not displayed.

Registering the phone number received last as a nuisance caller

Registers the phone number of the last call as a nuisance caller.

- Missed calls or received calls connected to Voice mail center is not to be registered.

1 **After receiving a nuisance call, press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press 4GHI.**

2 **Press 1 "Register caller".**

- When 30 entries are already registered, the confirmation screen is displayed to select whether to delete the oldest entry and to register a new entry. Press 1 "Yes" to register newly.

3 **Press 1 "Yes".**

- Press 2ABC "No" to cancel.

Registering Reject call by specifying phone numbers

1 **Press 1 4GHI 4GHI ▶ Press ⊂D.**

2 **Register phone numbers, following the voice guidance.**

Information

- The phone number received before subscribing to Nuisance call barring service cannot be registered.
- International phone calls may not be registered to the nuisance call list.
- Phone calls without Caller ID can be registered as nuisance calls to reject.
- Phone numbers registered as nuisance calls cannot be confirmed or inquired. It is recommended to make a note of the phone numbers registered as nuisance calls to reject.

Deleting registered phone numbers

Phone numbers registered as nuisance calls can be deleted all at one, or only the last registered number can be deleted.

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press 4GHI.**

2 **Press 2 "Delete all entries".**

■ **Deleting the latest phone number registered**
Press 3 "Delete latest entry".

3 **Press 1 "Yes".**
• Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Caller ID request service

Using Caller ID request service

Answers the call without Caller ID with the guidance requesting to call again with Caller ID, and disconnects. Troubles caused by nuisance calls, etc. may be avoided so that you can use the terminal more safely.

- Caller ID request service is not required optional application. No monthly charge is required.
- Caller ID request service is applied only to the calls without Caller ID for the setting of caller. This service is not applied to international calls or calls from payphone.
- The caller is charged for calls while playing the guidance requesting Caller ID.
- Caller ID request service cannot be accessed out of service area or under the poor radio wave condition. Operate FOMA terminal under the better radio wave condition.
- User unset calls history and Notify icons answered by Caller ID request service are not displayed. Ring tone also does not play.
- When a video-phone call is coming, the video guidance of Caller ID request service answers and the call is disconnected.
- When activating each service of Voice mail/Call waiting/Call forwarding/Caller ID request/Public mode (Drive mode), the guidance requesting Caller ID (video guidance for video-phone) answers to the calls without Caller ID.

Activating/deactivating Caller ID request service

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press 6.**

2 **Press 1 "Activate service".**

■ **Deactivating Caller ID request service**
Press 2 "Deactivate service".

3 **Press 1 "Yes".**
Connects to the center and Caller ID request service is activated.
• Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Checking current status

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press 6.**

2 **Press 3 "Status request".**
Connects to the center and displays the status.

Dual network

Using Dual network service

1 phone number for FOMA terminal becomes available to use mova in subscribing to Dual network. The service provides to switch both service areas of FOMA and mova.

- FOMA terminal and mova terminal cannot be used simultaneously.
- Switching operation is executed from the terminal which is out of service.
- Dual network service is the optional service requires application. Monthly fee is charged for use.
- Switching terminals cannot be operated out of service area or under the poor radio wave condition. Operate FOMA terminal under the better radio wave condition.

Switching network

Switch Dual network service when FOMA or mova terminal is out of service. The procedure to switch network and activate FOMA terminal is described as follows.

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 1.**

2 **Press 1 "Dual NW switching" ▶ Press 1 "Yes".**
• Press 2 "No" to cancel.

3 **Enter the network security code and press ●.**
Connects to the center and switch network to activate FOMA terminal.

Checking current status

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 1.**

2 **Press 2 "Status request".**
Connects to the center and confirm the status whether FOMA terminal is available.

English guidance

Switching language for guidance

You can select the language of guidance between Japanese and English announced in making/ receiving calls or in network services, such as Voice mail service or Call forwarding service.

- No subscription is required for English guidance. No monthly charge is required.
- Guidance cannot be operated out of service area or under the poor radio wave condition. Operate FOMA terminal under the better radio wave condition.
- English guidance cannot be applied for video-phone calls.
- When the caller is using this service, the caller's settings will take priority over the receiver's.

Switching guidance

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 2ABC.**

2 **Press 1 "Guidance setting".**

3 **Press one of 1 to 3DEF.**

Dial & Receive call : Sets the guidance language for you to hear in making a call to the other party, and for the other party to hear in making a call to you.

Dial call only : Sets the guidance language for you to hear in making a call to the other party.

Receive call only : Sets the guidance language for the other party to hear in making a call to you.

4 **Select a language and press ●.**
Connects to the center and sets the guidance language.

Selecting the language for dialing

Japanese : Sets Japanese as voice guidance.
English : Sets English as voice guidance.

Selecting the language on receiving

Japanese : Sets Japanese as voice guidance.
Japanese & English : Plays guidance first in Japanese and later in English.
English & Japanese : Plays guidance first in English and later in Japanese.

Checking the current status

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 2ABC.**

2 **Press 2ABC "Status request".**
Connects to the center and displays the status.

Service dialing no.

Using Service dialing number

Make a call to DoCoMo Information Center for inquiries or for repairs.

- Service dialing number is not required application. Also, no monthly charge is required.
- Service dialing number cannot be accessed from the area out of service or under the poor radio wave condition. Operate FOMA terminal under the better radio wave condition.
- Service dialing number may not be available depending on UIM (FOMA card) you use.

Making a call to DoCoMo for inquiries

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 4GHI.**

2 **Press 2ABC "ドコモ総合案内・受付 (dial for inquiries)".**
#151 is displayed.

3 **Press ●.**
Makes a call.

Making a call to DoCoMo for repairs

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 4GHI.**

2 **Press 1 "ドコモ故障問合せ (dial for repairs)".**
#113 is displayed.

3 **Press ●.**
Makes a call.

Arrival act

Selecting response action for incoming calls during a call

Selects the response action when another call is coming during a call or 64K data communication.

- Set Arrival act to "Activate service" to activate the setting.
- Voice mail service and Call forwarding service are required previous subscription.

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press 8TUV.**

2 **Press one of 1 to 4GHI.**

Answer

- You can answer or forward the incoming call during a call or 64K data communication, to the Call waiting center or the registered forwarding address with Call forwarding service.

Voice mail

- Forwards incoming calls during a call or 64K data communication to Voice mail service.

Call forwarding

- The incoming call received during a call or 64K data communication is forwarded to the registered forwarding destination.

Call rejection

- The incoming call received during a call or 64K data communication is rejected and disconnected.

Information

- To enable the selected act in Arrival act, activate Arrival Act.
- Arrival act is to be activated regardless of the setting whether Arrival act is activated or deactivated, if Call waiting service is subscribed and activated.
- Even while deactivating the services of Voice mail/Call forwarding, the services are automatically activated by setting this function to "Voice mail" or "Call forwarding" and activating Set arrival act.

Set arrival act

Activating/deactivating Set arrival act

Applies the action registered in "Arrival act" for the incoming call during a call or 64K data communication.

- Voice mail service and Call forwarding service are required previous subscription.
- Set arrival act service cannot be accessed from the area out of service or under the poor radio wave condition. Operate FOMA terminal under the better radio wave condition.

Activating/deactivating Set arrival act

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press 7PQRS.**

2 **Press 1 "Activate service".**

■ Deactivating Arrival act

Press 2ABC "Deactivate service".

3 **Press 1 "Yes".**

Connects to the center and activates Set arrival act.

- Press 2ABC "No" to cancel.

Checking current status

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press 7PQRS.**

2 **Press 3DEF "Deactivate service".**

Connects to the center and displays the status.

Remote access

Setting Remote access

Allows to operate Voice mail service or Call forwarding service from a fixed-line phone with push tone or payphones.

- Remote access cannot be made from the area out of service or under the poor radio wave condition. Operate FOMA terminal in locations with the better radio wave condition.

Activating/deactivating Remote access

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press 9WXYZ.**

2 **Press 1 "Activate service".**

■ Deactivating Remote access

Press 2ABC "Deactivate service".

3 **Press 1 "Yes".**

Connects to the center and activates Remote access.

- Press 2ABC "No" to cancel.

Checking current status

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press 9WXYZ.**

2 **Press 3DEF "Status request".**

Connects to the center and displays the status.

Multinumber

Using Multinumber

Add the phone number for the use of "Business" or "Private" to switch with Multinumber.

- Multinumber is the optional service requiring additional application. Monthly fee is charged for use.
- Maximum 2 numbers of "付加番号1 (Additional number 1)" and "付加番号2 (Additional number 2)" are available other than Initial number.
- You can set Name and Ring tone on each additional number.

Setting Multinumber to use <Set multinumber>

Sets the phone number to use on dialing. The configured phone number is applied on dialing to any party.

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 5JKL.**

2 **Press 1 "Set multinumber".**

Multinumber status request screen is displayed.

3 **Press one of 1 to 3DEF.**

See next page

4 Press 1 "Yes".
The configured phone number becomes available on dialing.
- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Setting the phone number to use for each dialing

You can set the phone number to use when making each call, by executing Add number from Function menu.

1 Enter a phone number when Stand-by display is on the screen, and press ● [Function].

2 Press 2 "Add number" ▶ Press 3 "Multinumber".

3 Press one of 1 to 3.
The following numbers are added onto the phone number for the selected item.

Initial number	: ✳590#
付加番号1 (Additional number 1)	: ✳591#
付加番号2 (Additional number 2)	: ✳592#

* If a name has been registered for Multinumber, the registered name is displayed.

4 Press C.

Information

- When dialing from Redial, the call is made from the phone number set for the dialed phone number. If you dial with a new Additional number, the newly added number is invalid.
- When dialing from a history in Received calls, which has been received on an Additional number, the call is made from the phone number registered as the Additional number. If you dial with a new Additional number, the newly added number is invalid.
- When dialing from Redial, Additional number such as ✳591# cannot be deleted.

Checking the current status of Multinumber <Multinumber status request>

1 Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 5.

2 Press 2 "Status request".
- Connects to the center and displays the current Multinumber status.

Registering/editing Multinumber

- The Registered name is displayed on Multinumber status request screen or the message screen on checking the status.
- You cannot edit the setting "Initial number".

1 Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 5.

2 Press 1 "Set multinumber".

3 Select "付加番号1 (Additional number 1)" or "付加番号2 (Additional number 2)", and press i [Edit].

4 Set each item.

■ Setting name
① Select Name and press ●.
② Enter the name and press ●.
- Up to 10 two-byte (Full Mark)/20 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

■ Setting phone number
① Select and press ●.
② Enter the phone number and press ●.
- Up to 26 digits of a number can be entered.

■ Setting Ring tone
Select and press ●.
- Following operations : →P120 "Changing Ring tones or Chaku-motion" Step 3 to 4
- "イエロー・サブマリン (Yellow submarine)" is set as default.

5 Press i [Register].

Information

- Some i-motions, such as Video only i-motion containing no sound data, may be set as Ring tones.
- When setting an i-motion including image and sound as Ring tone, Receiving screen is changed to the i-motion automatically.
- When replacing UIM (FOMA card) to another, the name for Multinumber/phone number/Ring tone are required to be set again.
- While setting the phone number other than "Initial number", Ring tone set in Multinumber is applied to all incoming calls regardless of the setting in Individual ring tone/Group ring tone in Phonebook, or Sound setting. When Ring tone for Multinumber is set to "OFF", Ring tone follows the setting for each. Other settings than Ring tone follow the setting for each.

Registering and using Extra services

When DoCoMo releases new network services, register the service to the menu of FOMA terminals. The code for using the new network service is notified. Register the code and the service name.

- Up to 10 new services can be registered.

Registering services

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 3DEF.**

2 **Press 1 "Extra services" ▶ Press i [New].**

3 **Enter the service name and press ●.**
- Up to 10 two-byte (Full Mark)/20 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

4 **Enter the code and press ●.**
- Up to 26 digits of a number can be entered.

5 **Press i [Register].**
The new service is registered.
- To edit registered items, select an item and press ●.

Activating registered services

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 3DEF.**

2 **Press 1 "Extra services".**

3 **Select a service and press ● ▶ Press ✉ [Send].**
- Displays the connection screen, and activates the new service with USSD code (code for network service setting).
- When the code is the assigned number (the phone number such as 1417 etc.), dial the code directly.

Editing Answer message of registered service

Register Answer message for the replied command from the network, when executing the extra service with USSD code (the code to set network service). Answer message corresponding to the service is to be displayed on FOMA terminal.

- Up to 10 Answer messages can be registered.

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 3DEF.**

2 **Press 2ABC "Answer message" ▶ Press i [New].**

3 **Enter an Answer message and press ●.**
- Up to 10 two-byte (Full Mark)/20 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

4 **Enter a command and press ●.**
- Up to 26 digits of a number can be entered.

5 **Press i [Register].**
Answer message is registered.
- Press ● to edit the registered items. Editing registered network service

Editing registered network service

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 3DEF.**

2 **Press 1 "Extra services".**
- To edit Answer message, press 2ABC "Answer message".

3 **Select an item and press ●.**

4 **Select an item and press ●.**

5 **Edit contents and press ●.**

6 **Press i [Register].**

Deleting registered network service

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 3DEF.**

2 **Press 1 "Extra services".**
- To delete Answer message, press 2ABC "Answer message".

3 **Select an item and press ✉ [Delete].**

4 **Press 1 "Delete".**

■ Deleting by option

① **Press 2ABC "Delete option".**
② **Select an item, and press ●.**
- Press ● to release.

③ **Press i [Exec.]**

■ Deleting all

① **Press 3DEF "Delete all".**
② **Enter the terminal security code and press ●.**

5 **Press 1 "Yes".**
- Press 2ABC "No" to cancel.

Data communication

Data communication 454
Flow of the setup for data communication 455
Connecting PC to FOMA terminal 456
Installing communication configuration files 457
Setting up with using FOMA PC configuration software 459
Making communication settings without FOMA PC configuration software . . . 466
AT command 472

Data communication

Data communication available for FOMA terminal

FOMA terminal supports packet communication, 64K data communication and data transfer by connecting with PC.

- FOMA terminal does not support Remote Wakeup.
- FOMA terminal does not support facsimile transmission.
- When connecting FOMA terminals to DoCoMo's PDA "musea" or "sigmarion Ⅱ" for data communication, update "musea" or "sigmarion Ⅱ" before use. Refer to DoCoMo's Internet site for the details of the update procedure etc.

Packet communication

Packet communication is one of communication methods, which does not occupy the line, for the data is divided into small pieces (packets) to transfer. It is efficient for multiple terminals to use one line, and this method does not require cost except on sending/receiving data. FOMA terminal can be constantly connected to the network, and can send/receive data only when necessary. It is suitable to send/receive relatively small amount of data such as text of mails because the charge depends on sent/received data size instead of duration or distance of connection. Note that the communication fee becomes expensive to send/receive large amount of data (such as high quality images and melodies).

- High-speed packet communication (Maximum download speed: 384 kbps, maximum upload speed: 64 kbps) is available.

Establishing packet communication

- Connect within the FOMA service area.
- Install the communication configuration file or FOMA PC configuration software beforehand, make each setting, and connect. (→P457, 459) FOMA USB connection cable (optional) and PC equipped with USB port or PDA of DoCoMo are required.
- The access point is required to be compatible with FOMA packet communication of DoCoMo Internet service, "mopera U"/"mopera".

64K data communication

64K data communication is a data communication method which sends/receives data at 64 kbps baud rate. It is suitable to download relatively large amount of data such as high quality images or melodies, for the charge depends on communication duration instead of data volume.

Be aware that long hours of communication causes high communication fee.

Establishing 64K data communication

- Connect within the FOMA service area.
- Install the communication configuration file or FOMA PC configuration software beforehand, make each setting, and connect. (→P457, 459) FOMA USB connection cable (optional) and PC equipped with USB port or PDA of DoCoMo are required.
- Dialup connections are required to support FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN synchronized 64 kbps.

Data transmission

Data transmission is a transmission method which sends/receives data using FOMA USB connection cable (optional) or infrared data communication. No communication fee is charged. Various data such as Phonebook, Mails and Schedule data are transferred to PCs or other FOMA terminals/mobile phones with infrared communication function. Use the function to save or backup data.

Transferring data using FOMA USB connection cable (optional)

Install the communication configuration file beforehand, to transfer the data. (→P457) FOMA USB connection cable (optional) and PC equipped with USB port are required.

Making Infrared communication

FOMA terminal sends/receives data to the devices equipped with Infrared communication function, such as other FOMA terminals, mobile phones or PCs. Refer to P391 for the operation procedure of Infrared communication. Packet communication and 64K data communication cannot be established with Infrared communication function.

Information

- Packet communication or 64K data communication may be failed when the base station is busy or the radio wave is poor.
- PPP packet communication receiving function is not available.
- Note that communication fee may be expensive to download files or to display images of large size.

Usage precautions

Internet service provider connection charges

When using Internet from PC, usage charge to your Internet service providers (hereinafter referred to as providers) is required. This charge needs to be paid directly to providers, and is separated from FOMA service charge. For more information on usage charges, contact your provider.

Data communication

- We recommend you to subscribe to "mopera U", which is compatible with the broadband connection option and the international roaming service, for FOMA to use Internet with FOMA terminal. Also "mopera" is easy and convenient for users who wish to connect to Internet shortly. Application is required to use "mopera U" (charged). "mopera" does not require any applications or monthly charges.

Connection host (Internet service provider etc.)

Different connection hosts are required for packet communication and 64K data communication. When establishing packet communication, use the dialup connection for packet, and for 64K data communication, use the dialup connection for FOMA 64 kbps data communication or ISDN synchronized 64 kbps.

- FOMA terminal cannot connect to the access point of PHS64K/32K data communication such as PIAFS or DoPa.

User authentication during network access

Some dialup connection hosts may require the user authentication before connecting. If user authentication is required, enter your ID and password on the communication software or dialup network. ID and password will be assigned by your provider or the dialup connection's network administrator. For more information, contact your provider or company network administrator.

Access authentication using PC browser

If FirstPass (Client certificate) is required for the access authentication using PC browser, install FirstPass PC software from the provided CD-ROM and configure the settings. For more information, refer to "FirstPassManual" in the provided CD-ROM. Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later is recommended) is required to view "FirstPassManual" (PDF format). If Adobe Reader is not installed in your PC, the software can be downloaded from the Adobe Systems Incorporated Internet site. (Communication fees are separately required for downloading.) For more information, refer to the Adobe Systems Incorporated Internet site.

Operation environment for FirstPass PC software

Item	Requirements
PC	PC/AT compatible computer
OS (each Japanese version)	Windows 98SE, Me, 2000, XP
Memory requirements*	Windows 98SE, Me, 2000 : 32 MB or more Windows XP : 128 MB or more
Hard disk Capacity*	10 MB or more free disk space
Browser	Microsoft® Internet Explorer 5.5 or later versions

*May vary according to the PC system configurations.

Flow of the setup for data communication

Described here is the setup work required to connect FOMA terminal to PC to establish packet communication/64K data communication.

Provided CD-ROM (CD-ROM for FOMA SA800i)

The provided CD-ROM includes the communication configuration files (drivers), FOMA PC configuration software, and FirstPass PC software. Communication configuration file is the software required to communicate and connect FOMA terminal to PC with FOMA USB connection cable (optional). Also, FOMA PC configuration software is the software which allows to configure various settings required for data communication from PC.

Flow of data communication

Installing the communication configuration files (drivers) of SA800i →P457

▼

Connecting FOMA terminal to PC →P456

▼

Installing FOMA PC configuration software →P459

Setting up FOMA PC configuration software

Establishing packet communication

- mopera U/mopera →P460
- Other providers →P461

Establishing 64K data communication

- mopera U/mopera →P462
- Other providers →P463

▼

Connection/Disconnection →P463, 464

Communication configuration not using FOMA PC configuration software →P466

▼

Connection/Disconnection →P471

Operating environment

Refer to the following PC environments to operate the communication configuration files/FOMA PC configuration software.

Item	Requirements
PC	PC/AT compatible computer
	USB port (compatible with USB 1.1 and later)
OS (each Japanese version)	Windows 98, Me, 2000, XP
Memory requirements	Windows 98, Me : 32 MB or more Windows 2000 : 64 MB or more Windows XP : 128 MB or more
Hard disk Capacity	5 MB or more free disk space

- Installation may not be available depending on the settings of your PC environment.

Information

- Memory requirements and hard disk capacity may vary according to the PC system configurations.
- No responsibility is assumed in operation after upgrading.
- Note that the files/software cannot be used in some operating environments. Furthermore, operation will not be guaranteed without previously described environment, and DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for pertaining to operation out of the described conditions.

Connecting PC to FOMA terminal

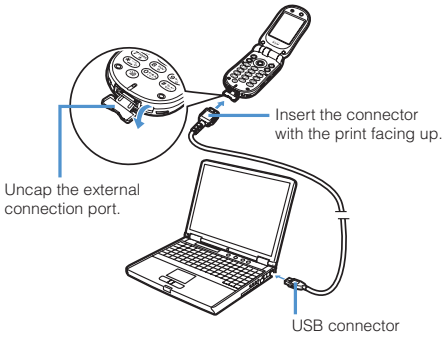
Connect PC to FOMA terminal.

- FOMA USB connection cable (optional) is required to connect.

1 Uncap the external connection port of FOMA terminal and insert an end of FOMA USB connection cable into the external connection port.

2 Insert the other end of FOMA USB connection cable into the PC USB connector.

- Wizard screen is displayed, when connecting to PC before installing the communication configuration files. In that case, remove FOMA terminal and click "Cancel".
- Procedure of installation
  Windows XP →P457
  Windows 2000 →P457
  Windows 98/Me →P457

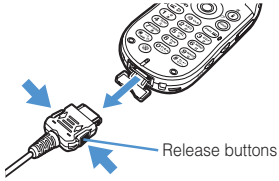


- appears on the screen of FOMA terminal when connected to PC.

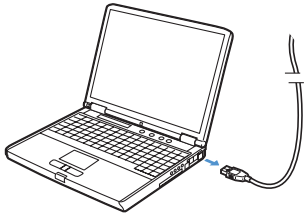
Removing FOMA USB connection cable

① Pull out FOMA USB connection cable horizontally with pressing the release buttons.

- Do not force to putt, or it may cause damage.



② Pull the FOMA USB connection cable out of PC.



Information

- Do not remove FOMA USB connection cable during data communication. Data corruption may occur.
- If PC does not recognize FOMA terminal any more, uninstall and reinstall the communication configuration files.

Installing communication configuration files

Install the communication configuration files to establish data communication with FOMA terminal and PC connected.

Installing SA800i communication configuration files (drivers)

The procedure of installation on Windows XP is described as an example.

- Install the files on Windows XP or Windows 2000 after logging on with the name having administrative right. Installing with any other names results in an error. For procedures to set administrative right of PC, contact the PC manufacturer or Microsoft Corporation.
- Before installation, make sure no other programs are activated. Save and exit all active programs and restart installation.

1 Insert the bundled CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive of PC.

2 Connect FOMA terminal to PC by using FOMA USB connection cable.

"新しいハードウェアの検出ウィザード (Found New Hardware Wizard)" screen is displayed.

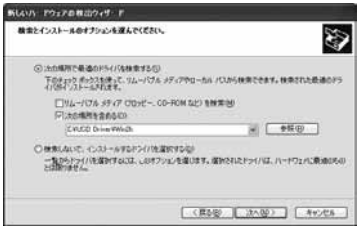
- Connection procedure→P456
- FOMA terminal has to be powered on when connecting.
- Select "いいえ、今回は接続しません。(Not connect for this time.)", and click "次へ (Next)" to install in Windows XP Service Pack 2.
- Installing on Windows 2000 Following operations: →P457
- Installing on Windows 98/Me Following operations: →P457

3 Select "一覧または特定の場所からインストールする（詳細）(Install from a list or specific location (Advanced))" and click "次へ (Next)".

4 Select "次の場所で最適のドライバを検索する (Search for the best driver in these locations)", uncheck "リムーバブル メディア（フロッピー、CD-ROMなど）を検索 (Search removable media (floppy disk, CD-ROM etc.))", and check "次の場所を含める (Include this location in the search)".

5 Click "参照 (Browse)", specify the folder in which the driver is saved, and click "OK".

- Folder is named as "<CD-ROM drive name>:¥USB Driver".



6 Click "次へ (Next)".

7 Click "完了 (Finish)" on the screen "新しいハードウェアの検索ウィザードの完了 (Found New Hardware Wizard is finished)".

8 Continue to install 3 remaining communication configuration files referring to Step 3 to 7.

Under Windows 2000

① After the connection is established (Step 2), click "次へ (Next)" when the screen "新しいハードウェアの検出ウィザード (Found New Hardware Wizard)" is displayed.

② Select "デバイスに最適なドライバを検索する（推奨）(Search for the best driver for the device (recommended))" and click "次へ (Next)".

③ Check on "場所を指定 (Specify the folder)" and click "次へ (Next)".

④ Specify the folder and click "OK".

- Folder is named as "<CD-ROM drive name>:¥USB Driver".

⑤ Confirm the driver name and click "次へ (Next)".

⑥ Click "完了 (Finish)".

- Install 3 remaining communication configuration files.

Under Windows 98/Me

① After the connection is established (Step 2), click "次へ (Next)" when the screen "新しいハードウェアの追加ウィザード (Add New Hardware Wizard)" is displayed.

② Select "ドライバの場所を指定する (Specify driver location)" and click "次へ (Next)".

- For Windows 98, Select "使用中のデバイスに最適なドライバを検索する（推奨）(Search the best drivers for the device in use (recommended))" and click "次へ (Next)".

See next page

③ **Select "使用中のデバイスに最適なドライバを検索する（推奨）(Search the best drivers for the device in use (recommended))", and check on "検索場所の指定 (Specify the place to search)", and click "参照 (Browse)", and specify the folder and click "次へ (Next)".**

- For Windows 98, check on "検索場所の指定 (Specify the location to search)",and select "更新されたドライバ（推奨）(Updated driver (recommended))", and click "次へ (Next)".
- Folder is named as "<CD-ROM Drive name>:¥USB Driver".

④ **Confirm the driver name and click "次へ (Next)".**

⑤ **Click "完了 (Finish)".**

- Install 4 remaining communication configuration files.

Confirming installed SA800i communication configuration files (drivers)

Confirm if installation of communication configuration files are executed properly.

- Describes the flow on Windows XP as an example.

1 Click "スタート (Start)" ▶ Click "コントロールパネル (Control Panel)".

2 Double-click "システム (System)".

3 Click "ハードウェア (Hardware)" tab and click "デバイスマネージャ (Device Manager)".

"Device manager" is displayed.

4 Click each device to confirm whether the driver is correctly installed.

Port (COM and LPT):

FOMA SA800i Command Port

FOMA SA800i OBEX Port

Modem:

FOMA SA800i

Universal Serial Bus (USB) controller or USB (Universal Serial Bus) controller:

FOMA SA800i

FOMA SA800i Command*

FOMA SA800i Modem*

FOMA SA800i OBEX Port*

* Displayed only on Windows 98/Me.

Under Windows 98/Me/2000

① **Click "スタート (Start)" ▶ Click "設定 (Settings)" ▶ Click "コントロールパネル (Control Panel)".**

② **Double-click "システム (System)".**

③ **Click "デバイスマネージャ (Device Manager)" tab.**

- For Windows 2000, click "ハードウェア (Hardware)" tab and click "デバイスマネージャ (Device manager)".

④ **Click each device to check whether the drivers are correctly installed.**

- Refer to Step 4 above for driver types.

Uninstalling SA800i communication configuration files (drivers)

Uninstall drivers in the following methods if needed.

- This section describes the uninstallation from Windows XP as an example.
- Before uninstallation, remove FOMA terminal from PC.
- Uninstall from Windows XP or Windows 2000 after logging on with the name having administrative right. Uninstalling with any other names results in an error. For procedures to set administrative right of PC, contact to the PC manufacturer or Microsoft Corporation.
- Before uninstallation, make sure no other programs are activated. Save and exit all active programs and restart uninstallation.

1 Insert provided CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive of PC.

2 Click "スタート (Start)" ▶ Click "マイコンピュータ (My Computer)" ▶ Right click "<CD-ROM drive name>" and select "開く (Open)".

3 Click "USB Driver" → Double-click "SA800i_u.exe".

- The file may be shown as "SA800i_u" according to PC you use.

4 Click "OK".

Uninstallation starts.

5 Click "OK" and reboot Windows.

Setting up with using FOMA PC configuration software

The FOMA PC configuration software allows you to perform the packet communication or 64K data communication with simple operation.

FOMA PC configuration software

The following settings are available for the FOMA PC configuration:

Easy setup

"FOMA データ通信用ダイヤルアップの作成 (Creating a dialup connection for FOMA data communication)" and "W-TCP の設定 (W-TCP setup)" can be performed easily by following the instructions of the guide.

W-TCP setup

This function optimizes the settings in the PC required for "FOMA (FOMA packet communication)".

Optimization of the communication settings using "W-TCP 設定 (W-TCP setup)" is required to make full use of communication performance.

Dialup connection (APN) setup

This function performs "Dialup connection (APN) setup" required for "Packet communication".

Unlike 64K data communication, phone numbers are not used for dialup connection for FOMA packet communication. Set a dialup connection name called APN (Access Point Name) in FOMA terminal for each dialup connection and enter the registration number (cid) in the phone number to connect field. APN "mopera.ne.jp" is registered to connect to mopera as cid #1, and APN "mopera.net" is registered to connect to mopera U as cid #3, by default. Additional settings are required to connect to other providers or Company LAN.

- cid (Context Identifier) is the number compatible with packet communication dialup connection (APN) and is required to set APN registration to FOMA terminal.

Installing FOMA PC configuration software

The procedure of installation on Windows XP is described as an example.

- Install on Windows XP or Windows 2000 after logging on with the name having administrative right. Installing with any other names results an error. For procedures to set administrative right of PC, contact to PC manufacturers or Microsoft Corporation.
- Before installation, make sure no other programs are activated. Save and exit all active programs and restart installation.

1 Insert provided CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive of PC.

2 Click "スタート (Start)" ▶ Click "ファイル名を指定して実行 (Run...)".

3 Enter "<CD drive name>:¥FOMA_PCSET¥setup.exe" and click "OK".

4 Click "次へ (Next)".

A confirmation screen of the product license agreement is displayed.

5 Read the content of the screen and click "はい (Yes)" if you agree.

- Click "いいえ (No)" to terminate the install procedure.

6 Click "タスクトレイに常駐する (Resident in Notification area)" and click "次へ (Next)".

"W-TCP 設定 (W-TCP setup)" is displayed on Notification area after installation is done.

- This function is to set or release for optimizing "W-TCP communication" and the residence is recommended. Can set to reside not only in this step but after installation.

7 Confirm the installation path and click "次へ (Next)".

- Click "参照 (Browse)" to change and specify the installation path, and then click "次へ (Next)".

8 Confirm the program folder name and click "次へ (Next)".

Installation starts.

- Enter a folder name and click "次へ (Next)" to change.

9 Click "完了 (Finish)".

"FOMA PC (The FOMA PC configuration software)" is started.

- Various settings can be started continuously.

See next page

Information

- When "W-TCP configuration software", "FOMA data communication configuration software" or "FOMA PC configuration software" is already installed, uninstall the software and install FOMA PC configuration software with the provided CD-ROM. →P464

Setup preparations

Starts FOMA PC configuration software to make various settings.

- Confirm that SA800i communication configuration files (drivers) are installed and FOMA terminal is connected to PC with FOMA USB connection cable properly.
- When a FOMA terminal is recognized as a bigger port number than COM20, APN information may not be retrieved/written on APN configuration.
- Describes the setting on Windows XP as an example. If using other OS, screens shown in this manual are different from actual ones.

1 Click "スタート (Start)" ▶ Click "すべてのプログラム (All programs)" ("プログラム (Programs)" for OS other than Windows XP) ▶ Click "FOMA PC 設定ソフト (FOMA PC configuration software)" ▶ Click "FOMA PC 設定ソフト (FOMA PC configuration software)" one more time.

Starts "FOMA PC 設定ソフト (The FOMA PC configuration software)".

Setup procedure

Communication configuration method using mopera U or mopera

Following method is for the setting when using mopera U or mopera, DoCoMo Internet service.

- Application is required to use mopera U (charged). mopera does not require any applications or monthly charges.
- Using providers other than mopera U/mopera →P461

1 Click "かんたん設定 (Easy settings)".

2 Select "パケット通信 (Packet communication)" and click "次へ (Next)".

3 Select "『mopera U』への接続 ("mopera U" connection)" or "『mopera』への接続 ("mopera" connection)" and click "次へ (Next)".

- Selecting 『mopera U』への接続 ("mopera U" connection)" displays a screen to confirm whether subscription is already made. If subscription has already been made, press "はい (Yes)"

4 Click "OK".

Retrieves "Set dialup connection (APN) information" from FOMA terminal connected to PC. Please wait for a while.

5 Enter a connection name and click "次へ (Next)".

Enter a connection name you like.

- Unable to enter the following one-byte (Half Mark) characters: "¥", "/", ":", "*", "?", "!", "<", ">", "|", " " ".

6 Select user(s) from the options and click "次へ (Next)".

- On Windows 98/Me, "使用可能ユーザーの選択 (Specify users)" is not displayed.
- For using mopera U/mopera, "ユーザー名 (User name)" and "パスワード (Password)" can be left as blank spaces.

7 Check on "最適化を行う (Optimize)" and click "次へ (Next)".

- This screen is not displayed if optimization has already been performed.

8 Check on "デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する (Create a shortcut of dial up on desktop)", confirm setting information, and click "完了 (Finish)".

9 Click "OK".

The PC must be restarted to enable the new settings. Click "はい (Yes)" when the confirmation screen to reboot is displayed.

Setting packet communication using other providers

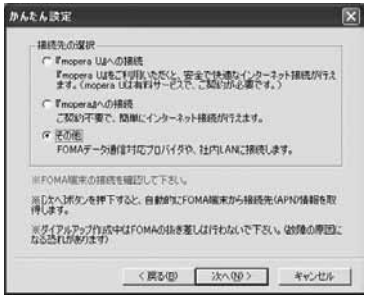
Following description is for configuration settings when using other providers than mopera U/mopera in packet communication.

1 Click "かんたん設定 (Easy settings)".

2 Select "パケット通信 (Packet communication)" and click "次へ (Next)".

3 Select "その他 (Other connection)" and click "次へ (Next)".

- Using mopera U/mopera →P460



4 Click "OK".

Retrieves "Set dialup connection (APN) information" from FOMA terminal connected to PC. Please wait for a while.

5 Enter a connection name and click "接続先 (APN) 設定 (Set dialup connection (APN))".

Enter a connection name you like.

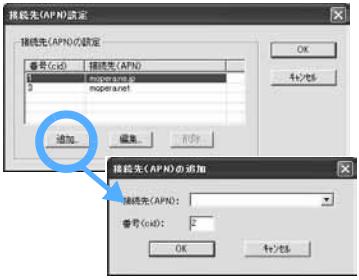
- Unable to enter the following one-byte (Half Mark) characters: "¥", "/", ":", "*", "?", "!", "<", ">", "|", " " ".
- APN "mopera.ne.jp" is registered in "接続先 (APN) の選択 (Select dialup connection (APN)" by default to connect to mopera.
- The Caller ID is sent to the other party each time the communication is established, when selecting "発信者番号通知を行う (Send Caller ID)".
- Entry of "IP アドレス (IP address)" and "ネームサーバー (Name server)" may be required when using company LAN or some providers. Click "詳細情報の設定 (Setting detailed information)" and set referring to the manuals that your provider or company network administrator prepared.

6 Set dialup connection (APN).

Click "追加 (Add)" and enter a dialup connection name (APN) which supports the FOMA packet communication of the provider properly in "接続先 (APN)(Dialup connection(APN))" and click "OK" to set another dialup connection (APN).

See next page

- "mopera.ne.jp", which is the APN for connection to "mopera" service, is registered in number (cid1), and APN "mopera.net" is registered in number (cid3) by default, to connect to mopera U.
- Registration of dialup connection (APN) can be set in number (cid) 2, or 4 to 16.
- Only one-byte (Half Mark) alphanumeric characters, hyphens (-), periods (.) can be entered in the "接続先(APN) (Dialup connection (APN))".



7 Click "OK".

8 Confirm the dialup connection name (APN), and click "次へ (Next)".

9 Select user(s) from the options, enter "ユーザー名 (User name)" and "パスワード (Password)" and click "次へ (Next)".

- On Windows 98/Me, "使用可能ユーザーの選択 (Specify users)" is not displayed.
- Enter proper "ユーザー名 (User name)" and "パスワード (Password)" based on information from the provider.

10 Check on "最適化を行う (Optimize)" and click "次へ (Next)".

- This screen is not displayed if optimization has already been performed.

11 Check on "デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する (Create a shortcut of dial up on desktop)", confirm setting information, and click "完了 (Finish)".

12 Click "OK".

The PC must be restarted to enable the new settings. Click "はい (Yes)" when the confirmation screen to reboot is displayed.

Setting 64K data communication using mopera U or mopera

Sets configuration for using mopera U/mopera, DoCoMo Internet service, in 64K data communication.

- Application is required to use mopera U (charged). mopera does not require any applications or monthly charges.
- Using the providers other than mopera U/mopera →P463.

1 Click "かんたん設定 (Easy settings)".

2 Select "64Kデータ通信 (64K data communication)" and click "次へ (Next)".

3 Select ""mopera U"への接続 ("mopera U" connection)" or ""mopera"への接続 ("mopera" connection) "and click "次へ (Next)".

- Selecting "mopera Uへの接続 ("mopera U" connection)" displays a screen to confirm whether subscription is already made. If subscription is already made, press "はい (Yes)"

4 Enter the connection name and confirm the modem selection ("FOMA SA800i" is set) and click "次へ (Next)".

Enter the connection name properly based on information from the provider.

- Unable to enter the following one-byte (Half Mark) characters:"¥", "/", ":", "*", "?", "!", "<", ">", "|", """.

5 Select user(s) from the options and click "次へ (Next)".

- On Windows 98/Me, "使用可能ユーザーの選択 (Specify users)"is not displayed.
- When using mopera U/mopera, "ユーザー名 (User name)" and "パスワード (Password)" can be left as blank spaces.

6 Confirm the settings and click "完了 (Finish)".

7 Click "OK".

Setting 64K data communication using other providers

Following description is for configuration settings using other providers than mopera U/mopera in 64K data communication.

1 Click "かんたん設定 (Easy settings)".

2 Select "64Kデータ通信 (64K data communication)" and click "次へ (Next)".

3 Select "その他 (Other connection)" and click "次へ (Next)".

- Using mopera U/mopera →P462

4 Enter the connection name and the phone number, confirm the modem selection ("FOMA SA800i" is set) and click "次へ (Next)".

Enter the connection name and phone number properly, based on information from the provider.

- Unable to enter the following one-byte (Half Mark) characters: "¥", "/", ":", "*", "?", "!", "<", ">", "|", " " ".
- Entry of "IPアドレス (IP address)" and "ネームサーバー (Name server)" may be required when using company LAN or some providers. Click "詳細情報の設定 (Setting detailed information)" and set referring to the manuals that your provider or company network administrator prepared.

5 Select user(s) from the options, enter "ユーザー名 (User name)" and "パスワード (Password)" and click "次へ (Next)".

- On Windows 98/Me, "使用可能ユーザーの選択 (Specify users)" is not displayed.
- Enter proper "ユーザー名 (User name)" and "パスワード (Password)" based on information from the provider.

6 Confirm the settings and click "完了 (Finish)".

7 Click "OK".

Performing the communication

Starting and disconnecting the communication set with the FOMA PC configuration software.

- Describes the setting on Windows XP as an example. If using other OS, screens shown in this manual are different from the actual ones.

1 Double-click the connection icon on the desktop.

Connection screen is displayed to start data communication.

Connecting to FOMA terminal from Start menu of Windows XP

Click "スタート (Start)" ▶ Click "すべてのプログラム (All Programs)" ▶ Click "アクセサリ (Accessories)" ▶ Click "通信 (Communications)" ▶ Click "ネットワーク接続 (Network Connections)". Then, double-click the connection icon.

Starting on Windows 2000/98/Me start menu

Click "スタート (Start)" ▶ Click "プログラム (Programs)" ▶ Click "アクセサリ (Accessories)" ▶ Click "通信 (Communications)" ▶ Click "ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 (ダイヤルアップネットワーク) (Network and dialup connection (Dialup Network))". Then, double-click the connection icon.

2 Click "ダイヤル (Dial)" to connect.

- When mopera U/mopera is selected, "ユーザー名 (User name)" and "パスワード (Password)" fields can be left as blank spaces.
- For dial-up connection through other providers, enter "ユーザー名 (User name)" and "パスワード (Password)" before clicking "ダイヤル (Dial)".
- Entering password is not required next time after selecting "パスワードを保存する (Save user name and password)".

- The message and the icon of "パケット通信中 (Connected packet)" or "64Kデータ通信中 (Connected 64K)" are displayed on FOMA terminal. Icons during packet communication and 64K data communication→P30

Disconnecting the communication

Closing the Internet browser alone may not disconnect the connection. To ensure disconnection, follow the operations:

- Describes the setting on Windows XP as an example. If using other OS, screens shown in this manual are different from the actual ones.

1 Double-click the icon of dialup connection.
The status screen is displayed.

2 Click "切断 (Disconnect)".

Information

- The transmission speed displayed on the PC may differ from the actual speed.
- Incoming voice-calls are receivable during packet communication. SMS is also receivable. During 64K data communication, terminate the connection to receive the incoming call with Call waiting service. SMS is also receivable. In this case, no sound plays (such as Ring tone etc.) but notifies only with icons or Receiving screen.
- Voice mail service or other network services are also available for incoming calls during packet communication/64K data communication.

Uninstalling FOMA PC configuration software

Uninstall FOMA PC configuration software in the following methods when needed.

- This section describes the uninstallation from Windows XP as an example. Refer to each manual in using other OS.
- Uninstall on Windows XP or Windows 2000 after logging on with the name having administrative right. Uninstalling with any other name results an error. For procedures to set administrative right of PC, contact to the PC manufacturer or Microsoft Corporation.
- Before uninstallation, make sure no other programs are activated. Save and exit all active programs and restart uninstallation.

1 Right-click W-TCP setup icon ( ) in Notify area and click "常駐させない (Not be resident)".

- The icon is not displayed when W-TCP configuration is set not to reside. Proceed the uninstallation.

2 Click "スタート (Start)" ▶ Click "コントロールパネル (Control Panel)" ▶ Double-click "プログラムの追加と削除 (Add or Remove Programs)".

3 Select "NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC 設定ソフト (FOMA PC Configuration Software)" and click "変更と削除 (Change/Remove)".

4 Confirm the program name and click "はい (Yes)".
Uninstallation starts.

5 Click "OK".

Information

- When W-TCP is optimized, the screen to release the optimization is displayed during uninstallation. Click "はい (Yes)" and reboot PC according to the instruction on the screen.

W-TCP setup

Set "W-TCP 設定 (W-TCP setup)" to optimize packet communication configuration on PC for FOMA network.

- "W-TCP 設定 (W-TCP setup)" is a "TCP parameter tuning tool" for optimizing TCP/IP transmission capacity during packet communication in FOMA network. This communication setup is required to make full use of the communication capability of FOMA terminal.

Activating and deactivating system optimization (Windows XP)

System optimization can be performed for each dialup connection in Windows XP.

1 Start "FOMA PC 設定ソフト (FOMA PC configuration software)", and click "W-TCP 設定 (W-TCP Setup)".

- Click FOMA PC configuration software on Start menu or click in Notify area to start FOMA PC configuration software.

2 Perform the following procedure.

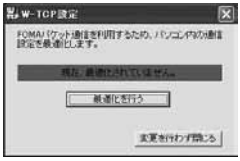
■ When the system has not been optimized

①Click "最適化を行う (Optimize)".

②Select the dialup connection to be optimized and click "実行 (Execute)".

Optimization of the system settings and dialup settings are performed respectively.

(Optimization of system settings becomes valid after rebooting PC.)



■ When the system settings has been optimized

The following screen is displayed.

Click the check box and then click "実行 (Execute)" to change the settings.

■ Deactivating optimization

①Click "システム設定 (System settings)" on "W-TCP設定（ダイヤルアップ）(W-TCP setup (Dialup))" screen.

②Click "最適化を解除する (Deactivate optimization)".

3 Reboot Windows.

- Deactivated settings become valid after rebooting PC.

Activating and deactivating system optimization (Windows 98/Me/2000)

1 Start "FOMA PC 設定ソフト (FOMA PC configuration software)" and click "W-TCP設定 (W-TCP setup)".

- Click FOMA PC configuration software on Start menu or click in Notify area to start FOMA PC configuration software.

2 Perform the following procedure.

■ When the system has not been optimized

Click "最適化を行う (Optimize)".

■ Deactivating optimization

Click "最適化を解除する (Deactivate optimization)".

3 Reboot Windows.

- Deactivated settings become valid after rebooting PC.

Dialup connection (APN) setup

Sets dialup connection (APN) during packet communication.

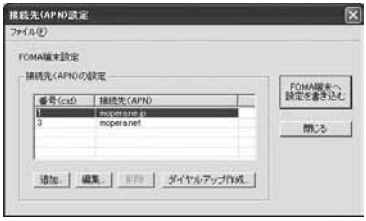
- Up to 16 connections can be set to the dialup connection (APN). Manage the dialup connection by assigning to the registration number (cid) 1 to 16. APN "mopera.ne.jp" to connect to mopera is set to cid1, and APN "mopera.net" to connect to mopera U is set to cid3 by default.
- Describes the setting on Windows XP as an example. If using other OS, screens shown in this manual are different from the actual ones.

1 Start "FOMA PC 設定ソフト (FOMA PC configuration software)", and Click "接続先 (APN) 設定 (Dialup connection (APN) setup)".

2 Click "OK".

Connected FOMA terminal is automatically accessed for reading the registered "dialup connection (APN) information".

3 Make the dialup connection (APN) settings.



■ Adding dialup connections (APN)

Click "追加 (Add)".

■ Editing/Correcting registered dialup connections (APN)

Select a dialup connection (APN) and click "編集 (Edit)".

■ Deleting registered dialup connections (APN)

Select a dialup connection (APN) and click "削除 (Delete)".

- The dialup connection (APN) registered in number (cid) 1 and 3 cannot be deleted. Even by selecting the number (cid) 3 and clicking "削除 (Delete)", APN is not actually deleted and returns to "mopera.net" setting.

■ Saving dialup connections (APN) to a file

From the toolbar, click "ファイル (File)" ▶ Click "名前を付けて保存 (Save as...)" or "上書き保存 (Overwrite)".

- The procedure is to save the settings as a file to back up dialup connection (APN) settings registered in FOMA terminal, or to save dialup connection (APN) settings halfway editing.

See next page

Importing dialup connection (APN) information from files

Click "ファイル (File)" from the toolbar ▶ Click "開く (Open)".

- Use saved dialup connection (APN) settings to re-edit or write onto FOMA terminal etc.

Importing dialup connection (APN) information from FOMA terminal

Click "ファイル (File)" from the toolbar ▶ Click "FOMA 端末から設定を取得 (Import setting from FOMA terminal)".

- Access manually to FOMA terminal to import the registered "dialup connection (APN) information".

Writing dialup connection (APN) information to FOMA terminal

① Click "FOMA 端末へ設定を書き込む (Write the setting to FOMA terminal)".

- The displayed dialup connection (APN) setting is written to FOMA terminal.

② Click "はい (Yes)".

Creating dialup connections

① Select an added/edited dialup connection (APN) and click "ダイヤルアップ作成 (Create dialup connection)".

- "パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成 (Create dialup connection for packet communication)" screen is displayed.

② Click "はい (Yes)".

- Registers dialup connection host to FOMA terminal.

③ Click "OK".

④ Enter a desired connection name and click "アカウント・パスワードの設定 (Set account and password)".

- The setting is an optional for mopera U/ mopera.

⑤ Select user(s) from the options, enter "ユーザー名 (User name)" and "パスワード (Password)" and click "OK".

- On Windows 98/Me, "使用可能ユーザーの選択 (Specify users)" is not displayed.
- When some providers require to enter IP and DNS information settings, click "詳細情報の設定 (Set detail info)" in "パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成 (Create dialup connection for packet communication)" screen, register the required information and click "OK".

⑥ Click "OK".

- Click "はい (Yes)" to overwrite.

Information

- For dialup connections (APN) other than mopera U/ mopera, contact your provider or company network administrator.

Making communication settings without FOMA PC configuration software

Dialup network setting

Describes the method of dialup connection setup for packet communication/64K data communication without the FOMA PC configuration software.

Flow of dialup network settings

Dialup connection (APN) setup

- This setup is necessary for packet communication using dialup connections other than mopera U/mopera.

↓

Making Caller ID notification settings →P467

↓

Dialup network setting

- Windows XP →P468
- Windows 2000 →P469
- Windows Me/ 98 →P470

Setting dialup connection (APN)

Default	cid1 mopera.ne.jp cid3 mopera.net cid2, 4 to 16 no setting

Communication software is required to input AT commands for making settings. Describes the method of setting using "ハイパーターミナル (HyperTerminal)" that comes with Windows.

- Dialup connections (APN) can be registered to registration number cid1 to cid16.
- APN "mopera.ne.jp" to connect to mopera is set to cid1, and APN "mopera.net" to connect to mopera U is set to cid3 by default. For connecting to other providers or company LAN, register APN on cid2, or 4 to 16.
- This section describes the setting on Windows XP as an example. When using other OS, screens shown in this manual are different from the actual ones.

1 Connect FOMA terminal to PC.

2 **Click "スタート (Start)" ▶ Click "すべてのプログラム (All Programs)" ▶ Click "アクセサリ (Accessories)" ▶ Click "通信 (Communications)" ▶ Click "ハイパーターミナル (Hyper Terminal)".**

- Then double-click "Hypertrm.exe" on Windows 98.
- On OS other than Windows XP, "すべてのプログラム (All programs)" is displayed as "プログラム (Programs)".

3 **Enter a desired dialup connection name in "名前 (Name)" and click "OK".**

- When the message ""規定のTelnet"プログラムにしますか？ (Set to the default telnet program?)" is displayed after activating Hyper Terminal, the setting is optional. Contact to the PC manufacturer or Microsoft Corporation, about setting information.

4 **Enter a temporary phone number (such as 0) for "電話番号 (Phone number)" and, select "FOMA SA800i" from "接続方法 (Connect using)" and click "OK".**

- Area code is not required to be set. (The above setting does not depend on dialup connection (APN) setup.)

5 **When the connection screen is displayed, click "キャンセル (Cancel)".**

6 **Enter the dialup connection (APN) and press [↵].**

Enter the setting in the format "AT+CGDCONT =<cid>, "PPP", "APN"".

- Note that cid settings are overwritten if the cid has already been set.

<cid> : Enter any number from 2, or 4 to 16.

"PPP" : Enter "PPP".

"APN" : Enter the dialup connection (APN) in " " (double quotation marks).

If "OK" is displayed, the dialup connection (APN) setup is completed.

7 **Confirm that "OK" is displayed and click "ファイル (File)" ▶ Click "ハイパーターミナルの終了 (Exit)".**

- When a message "現在接続されています。切断してよろしいですか？ (You are currently connected. Are you sure you want to disconnect now?)" is displayed, click "はい (Yes)".
- When ""XXX"と名前付けされた接続を保存しますか？ (Do you want to save the connection named "XXX"?)" is displayed, click "いいえ (No)".

■ **Resetting dialup connections (APN)**

AT+CGDCONT= [↵] :

Reset all cid.

- The setting for <cid>=1 is restored to "mopera.ne.jp", <cid>=3 is restored to "mopera.net", and settings for <cid>=2, and 4 to 16 are restored to be unregistered.

AT+CGDCONT=<cid> [↵] :

Reset specified cid.

■ **Confirming dialup connections (APN)**

AT+CGDCONT? [↵]

■ **When nothing appeared on the screen even if AT command is entered**

ATE1 [↵]

■ **The dialup connection (APN) and cid (registration number)**

Dialup connection (APN) setup is registered in the same manner as adding the other party's phone number to Phonebook. The differences between dialup connection setup and FOMA terminal phonebook is as follows:

Dialup connection settings	FOMA terminal phonebook entries
cid (registration number)	No. of entries (Phonebook number)
APN	The other party's phone number

Information

- For details of dialup connections (APN) other than mopera U/mopera, contact the provider or company network administrator.
- The registered cid becomes the dialup connection number.

Making Caller ID notification setting

Default	No setting

Caller ID notification can be set for packet communication. Be cautious when you send your Caller ID as it is important information.

- Setting "Activate" to CallerID notification is required for using mopera U or mopera.

1 **Start "ハイパーターミナル (Hyper Terminal)".**

See next page

2 **Set Caller ID notification function during packet communication to "Activate" (186) or "Deactivate" (184).**

Enter the setting in the format "AT*DGPIR=<n>".

AT*DGPIR=1 ↵:

Add "184" to establish dialup connection (APN).

AT*DGPIR=2 ↵:

Add "186" to establish dialup connection (APN).

AT*DGPIR=0 ↵:

Return to No setting.

3 **Confirm that "OK" is displayed and click "ファイル (File)" ▶ Click "ハイパーターミナルの終了 (Exit)".**

- When ""XXX" と名前付けされた接続を保存しますか？ (Save the connection named "XXX"?)" is displayed, click "いいえ (No)".

Making Caller ID notification setting by dialup network settings

In dialup network settings, you can also add "186 (Activate)" or "184 (Deactivate)" to the dialup connection number.

If "186 (Activate)" or "184 (Deactivate)" is set by both by the *DGPIR command and in dialup network settings, Caller ID notification (Activate/Deactivate) is as follows.

Dialup network setting (when <cid>=1)	*DGPIR Setting made by command	Caller ID notification
＊99＊＊＊1#	No setting	Activate
	Deactivate	Deactivate
	Activate	Activate
184＊99＊＊＊1#	No setting	Deactivate*1
	Deactivate	
	Activate	
186＊99＊＊＊1#	No setting	Activate*2
	Deactivate	
	Activate	

*1 Caller ID notification setting of dialup network (184) has the priority.

*2 Caller ID notification setting of dialup network (186) has the priority.

Setting Dialup Network

Setting in Windows XP

1 **Click "スタート (Start)" ▶ Click "すべてのプログラム (All Programs)" ▶ Click "アクセサリ (Accessories)" ▶ Click "通信 (Communications)" ▶ Click "新しい接続ウィザード (New Connection Wizard)".**

"新しい接続ウィザード (New Connection Wizard)" screen is displayed.

2 **Click "次へ (Next)".**

3 **Select "インターネットに接続する (Connect to the Internet)" and click "次へ (Next)".**

4 **Select "接続を手動でセットアップする (Set up my connection manually)" and click "次へ (Next)".**

5 **Select "ダイヤルアップモデムを使用して接続する (Connect using a dial-up modem)" and click "次へ (Next)".**

"デバイスの選択 (Device selection)" screen is displayed if multiple modems are installed. Since this screen is not displayed when only one modem is installed, proceed to Step 7.

6 **Select just "モデム－FOMA SA800i (COMx) (Modem: FOMA SA800i (COMx))" and click "次へ (Next)".**

- "x" of "COMx" is set as the number of port (numeric), that differs depending on PC you use.

7 **Enter any connection name in "ISP名 (ISP Name)" and click "次へ (Next)".**

8 **Enter the number of the dialup connection host in "電話番号 (Phone number)" with one-byte (Half Mark) and click "次へ (Next)".**

For packet communication

Enter *99***<cid>#.

- Enter the cid number, which is registered in "接続先 (APN) を設定する (Setting dialup connection (APN))" into <cid>. Enter *99***3# to connect to mopera U, *99***1# to connect to mopera.

For 64K data communication

Enter the dialup connection number.

- Enter *8701 for using mopera U, and *9601 for using mopera.

9 **Enter "ユーザー名 (User name)" / "パスワード (Password)" / "パスワードの確認入力 (Confirm password)". And set each item and click "次へ (Next)".**

- When the connection host is mopera U/mopera, you can leave blank on "ユーザー名 (User name)"/"パスワード (Password)"/"パスワードの確認入力 (Confirm password)".

10 **Click "完了 (Finish)".**
Dialup icon for dialup connection is created.

11 **Click "スタート (Start)" ▶ Click "すべてのプログラム (All Programs)" ▶ Click "アクセサリ (Accessories)" ▶ Click "通信 (Communications)" ▶ Click "ネットワーク接続 (Network Connections)".**

12 **Right-click the created dialup icon and click "プロパティ (Properties)".**

13 **Click "全般 (General)" tab to confirm the settings.**
If multiple modems are installed in the PC, select just "モデム－FOMA SA800i (modem: FOMA SA800i)" under "接続の方法 (Connection method)". Uncheck "ダイヤル情報を使う (Use dial information)".

14 **Click "ネットワーク (Networking)" tab and set each item.**
Set "呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類 (Type of dial-up server to I am calling)" to "PPP:Windows95/98/NT4/2000, Internet".
Select "インターネットプロトコル (TCP/IP) (Internet protocol (TCP/IP))" in "この接続は次の項目を使用します (This connection uses the following items)". Since "QoSパケットスケジューラ (QoS Packet Scheduler)" settings cannot be changed, leave it as it is.

- Your provider may require the settings of IP and DNS information. Make required settings based on information from the provider.

15 **Click "設定 (Settings)".**

16 **Uncheck all and click "OK".**

17 **Click "OK".**

Setting on Windows 2000

1 **Click "スタート (Start)" ▶ Click "プログラム (Programs)" ▶ Click "アクセサリ (Accessories)" ▶ Click "通信 (Communications)" ▶ Click "ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 (Network and dialup connection)".**
"ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 (New Connection Wizard)" screen is displayed.

2 **Double-click "新しい接続の作成 (Create new connection)".**
"所在地情報 (Location information)" screen is displayed when double-clicking "新しい接続の作成 (New Connection Wizard)" for the first time. Since this screen is not displayed from the second time, proceed to Step 5.

3 **Enter "市外局番 (Area code)" and click "OK".**
"電話とモデムのオプション (Phone and modem options)" screen is displayed.

4 **Click "OK".**
"ネットワークの接続ウィザード (Network Connections Wizard)" screen is displayed.

See next page

5 **Click "次へ (Next)".**

6 **Select "インターネットにダイヤルアップ接続する (Connect to the Internet via dial-up)" and click "次へ (Next)".**

7 **Select "インターネット接続を手動で設定するか、またはローカルエリアネットワーク (LAN) を使って接続します (Set Internet connection manually or connect using local area network (LAN))" and click "次へ (Next)".**

8 **Select "電話回線とモデムを使ってインターネットに接続します (Connect to Internet with dialup and modem)" and click "次へ (Next)".**

9 **Confirm that "インターネット接続に使うモデムを選択する (Select modem to use for connection to Internet)" is set to "FOMA SA800i" and click "次へ (Next)".**

10 **Enter dialup connection number in "電話番号 (Phone number)", uncheck "市外局番とダイアル情報を使う (Use the Properties of the Area Code and Dial)" and click "詳細設定 (Advanced settings)".**

11 **Click "接続 (Connection)" tab to set the item and then click "アドレス (Address)".**
Confirm that "接続の種類 (Connection Type)" is set to "PPP (Point to Point Protocol)" and "LCP 拡張を無効にする (Invalid extended LCP)" is checked. "ログオンの手続き (Log-on Procedure)" is set to "なし (No)".
- When connecting to the provider other than mopera U/mopera, make the setting based on the information from the provider.

12 **Set automatic assignment of IP address and DNS (Domain Name Service) address by ISP, and click "OK".**
Set each setting to "インターネットサービスプロバイダによる自動割り当て (Auto-assignment of IP address by Internet service provider)" and select "ISP による DNS（ドメインネームサービス）アドレスの自動割り当て (Auto-assignment of DNS (Domain Name Service) address by ISP)".
- When connecting to the provider other than mopera U/mopera, make the setting based on the information from the provider.

13 **Click "次へ (Next)".**

14 **Enter "ユーザー名 (User name)" and "パスワード (Password)", and Click "次へ (Next)".**
- "ユーザー名 (User name)"/ "パスワード (Password)" can be left as blank spaces to connect to mopera U/mopera. When the screen is displayed confirming not to be entered, click "はい (Yes)".
- When connecting to the provider other than mopera U/mopera, make the setting based on the information from the provider.

15 **Enter a desired connection name in "接続名 (Dialup connection name)" and click "次へ (Next)".**

16 **Select "いいえ (No)" and click "次へ (Next)".**

17 **Click "完了 (Finish)".**

18 **Right-click the created dialup icon and click "プロパティ (Property)".**

19 **Click "全般 (General)" tab to confirm the settings.**
If multiple modems are installed in the PC, select "モデム－FOMA SA800i (modem: FOMA SA800i)" under "接続の方法 (Connection method)". Uncheck "ダイヤル情報を使う (Use the property of Dial)".

20 **Click "ネットワーク (Networking)" tab and set each item.**
Set "呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類 (Type of dialup server I am calling)" to "PPP:Windows95/98/NT4/2000, Internet". Check on just "インターネットプロトコル (TCP/IP) (Internet protocol (TCP/IP))" for component.

21 **Click "設定 (Settings)".**

22 **Uncheck all and click "OK".**

23 **Click "OK".**

Setting on Windows 98/Me

1 **Click "スタート (Start)" ▶ Click "プログラム (Programs)" ▶ Click "アクセサリ (Accessories)" ▶ Click "通信 (Communications)" ▶ Click "ダイヤルアップネットワーク (Dialup Network)".**
"ダイヤルアップネットワークへようこそ (Welcome to Dialup Network)" screen is displayed when starting Dialup Network for the first time. Since this screen is not displayed from the second time, proceed to Step 3.

2 **Click "次へ (Next)".**

3 **Double-click "新しい接続 (New Connection)".**

4 **Enter a desired connection name in "接続名 (Connection name)" and click "次へ (Next)".**
- Set "モデムの選択 (Modem selection)" to "FOMA SA800i".

5 **Enter dialup connection number in "電話番号 (Phone number)" and click "次へ (Next)".**
- The area code is not required to be entered.

6 **Click "完了 (Finish)".**
- Confirm the connection name.

7 **Click "スタート (Start)" ▶ Click "プログラム (Programs)" ▶ Click "アクセサリ (Accessories)" ▶ Click "通信 (Communications)" ▶ Click "ダイヤルアップネットワーク (Dialup Network)".**

8 Right-click the created dialup icon and click "プロパティ (Property)".

9 Click "全般 (General)" tab to confirm the settings.

If multiple modems are installed in the PC, select "モデム－FOMA SA800i (modem: FOMA SA800i)" under "接続方法 (Connection method)". Uncheck "市外局番とダイヤルのプロパティを使う (Using the property of the area code and dial)".

10 Click "ネットワーク (Network)" tab and set each item.

"ダイヤルアップサーバーの種類 (Dialup server type)" is set to "PPP: インターネット、Windows 2000/NT, Windows Me (PPP: Internet, Windows 2000/NT, Windows Me)". Uncheck all of "詳細オプション (Detailed option)", and select only "TCP/IP" for available network Protocol.

Click "サーバーの種類 (Server Type)" tab and set "ダイヤルアップサーバーの種類 (Dialup server type)" to "PPP: インターネット、Windows NT Server, Windows 98 (PPP: Internet, Windows NT Server, Windows 98)", in Windows 98.

11 Click "OK".

- "ユーザー名 (User name)" and "パスワード (Password)" of "セキュリティ (Security)" tab can be left as blank spaces when connecting to mopera U/mopera on Windows Me.
- When connecting to the provider other than mopera U/mopera, make the setting based on the information from the provider.

Connecting through dial-up

This section describes the procedures of starting communication and disconnecting.

- Confirm that FOMA terminal is connected to PC with FOMA USB connection cable properly before making connection.
- This section describes the setting on Windows XP as an example. Refer to each manuals in using other OS.

1 Click "スタート (Start)" ▶ Click "すべてのプログラム (All Programs)" ▶ Click "アクセサリ (Accessories)" ▶ Click "通信 (Communications)" ▶ Click "ネットワーク接続 (Network Connections)".

2 Double-click the icon of the configured connection.

3 Confirm the settings and click "ダイヤル (Dial)".

- Click "接続 (Connect)" on Windows 98/Me.
- When mopera U/mopera is selected, "ユーザー名 (User name)" and "パスワード (Password)" can be left as blank spaces.
- For dial-up connection through other providers, enter "ユーザー名 (User name)" and "パスワード (Password)" before clicking "ダイヤル (Dial)".
- Entry of password is not required next time after selecting "次のユーザーが接続するとき使用するために、このユーザー名とパスワードを保存する (Save the user name and password for the next user to use)".

Disconnecting

Closing the Internet browser alone may not disconnect the connection. To ensure disconnection, perform the following operations:

- Describes the setting on Windows XP as an example. When using other OS, screens shown in this manual are different from the actual ones.

1 Double-click the icon of dialup connection.

The status screen is displayed.

2 Click "切断 (Disconnect)".

AT command

FOMA terminal supports AT commands, and accepts some extended commands and specified AT commands.

- AT commands are commands for setting FOMA terminal functions using PC. These commands are called "AT command", "AT" is added at the beginning of commands.
- AT commands are invalid while Burglar alarm is ringing.

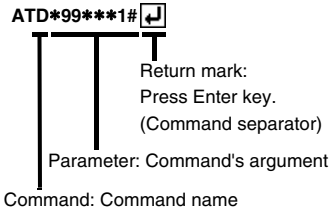
AT commands

AT command input format

When inputting AT commands, input within a single line by using one-byte (Half Mark) alphanumeric characters.

- AT commands and their parameters (numbers or symbols) must be entered on a single line.
- All characters from the first character to the character directly preceding ↵ are regarded as a single line.
- Up to 545 characters (including "AT") can be entered on each line.

Input example



AT command input mode

FOMA terminal can be operated using AT commands in the terminal mode on PC. (PC turns to terminal mode by starting "Hyper terminal" etc.) When PC is in terminal mode, the characters entered from the keyboard are sent directly to the communication port to operate FOMA terminal.

Offline mode

FOMA terminal is in stand-by. FOMA terminal must be in stand-by status to use AT commands to control FOMA terminal.

Online data mode

FOMA terminal is under communication. If AT commands are entered and sent, it may cause malfunction on the modem of the other party. Do not enter the AT commands during communication.

Online command mode

FOMA terminal can be operated using AT commands even when FOMA terminal is in communication mode. (Some operations are required, to input AT commands.)

Switching between online data mode and online command mode

To switch FOMA terminal from online data mode to online command mode, you can use either of the following procedures:

- **Enter a "+++" command or the code set in the "S2" register.**
- **Turn the RS-232C* ER signal OFF when "AT&D1" is set.**

To switch online command mode to online data mode, enter "ATO↵".

* USB interface emulates the RS-232C signal line, and the signal control of RS-232C is activated by the communication software.

AT command list

- The list below shows AT commands which are supported through FOMA SA800i Modem Port.
- When AT commands are input, entered "¥" may appear as "\", depending on the font setting of the PC or communication software in use.
- If the battery pack is removed from FOMA terminal before the terminal power is turned off, the set value may not be recorded.

AT command	Overview	Parameters/Description	Command examples
AT%V	Displays FOMA terminal version.	Displays FOMA terminal version in "VerX.XXX" format etc.	AT%V↵ Ver1.000 OK
AT&C<n>	Sets the operating conditions of the circuit CD (DCD) for DTE.*1	n=0:Always ON. n=1:Varies according to line connection status (default). When set to "&C1", the CD signal is set to ON immediately before sending "CONNECT" when ending connection. The CD signal is set to OFF immediately before the line is disconnected and "NO CARRIER" is sent.	AT&C1↵ OK
AT&D<n>	Sets the operation performed when circuit ER (DTR) signal received from DTE is switched from ON to OFF under online data mode.*1	n=0:Ignores status (status is always considered to be ON). n=1:Moves to online command mode when status changes from ON to OFF. n=2:Disconnects line and moves to offline mode when status changes from ON to OFF (default).	AT&D1↵ OK
AT&E<n>	Selects the type of speed display used when connection is made.*1	This command is valid only if "ATX<n>" (→P479) is other than n=0. n=0:Displays communication speed of wireless zone. n=1:Displays communication speed between PC and FOMA terminal (default).	AT&E1↵ OK
AT&F	Resets the AT command settings in FOMA terminal to the factory default. When this command is entered during communication, the terminal is reset after the line is disconnected.		AT&F↵ OK
AT&S<n>	Sets how to control the data set ready (DR) signal to be output to DTE.*1	n=0:Always ON (default). n=1:ON when the line is connected.	AT&S0↵ OK
AT&W	Register the current settings in FOMA terminal.		AT&W↵ OK

See next page

AT command	Overview	Parameters/Description	Command examples
AT∗DANTE	Indicates FOMA terminal reception level with the number.	When executing "AT∗DANTE", the level is shown in the "∗DANTE:<n>" format. n=0: (Out of service area) n=1: n=2: n=3:	AT∗DANTE↵ ∗DANTE:3 OK AT∗DANTE=?↵ ∗DANTE:(0-3) OK (Shows the range of values that can be displayed.)
AT∗DGANSM=<n>	Sets the reject/accept setting mode for incoming packet communications. The setting made by this command is only valid for the packet communication received after the command is entered.*2	n=0:Reject/accept settings are OFF (default). n=1:Accepts incoming packet communications. n=2:Rejects incoming packet communications.	AT∗DGANSM=0↵ OK AT∗DGANSM?↵ ∗DGANSM:0 OK
AT∗DGPIR=<n>	The setting made by this command is valid when a communication is sent or received. The dialup network settings can also be used to append "186" (Activate)/"184" (Deactivate) to the dialup connection number.*2	n=0:When packet communication connection is established, connects to APN directly (default). n=1:When packet communication connection is established, connects with "184" to APN. n=2:When packet communication connection is established, connects with "186" to APN. When "186" (Activate)/"184" (Deactivate) is specified both by the command and dialup network →P468	AT∗DGPIR=0↵ OK AT∗DGPIR?↵ ∗DGPIR:0 OK
AT∗DRPW	Indicates an index for the reception power of the radio signals received by FOMA terminal.	Setting "AT∗DRPW" shows the index in the "∗DRPW:<n>" format.	AT∗DRPW↵ ∗DRPW:0 OK AT∗DRPW=?↵ ∗DRPW:(0-75) OK (Shows the range of values that can be displayed.)
+++	This command switches the mode of FOMA terminal from online data mode to online command mode. The escape guard interval is "1 second" (fixed value).		
AT+CEER	Displays the reason for disconnection of the last communication.	See "Disconnection reason display" →P482	AT+CEER↵ +CEER:36 OK
AT+CGDCONT	Sets dialup connection (APN) when sending packet communication.*2	See "Supplement to AT command" →P482	See "Supplement to AT command" →P482

AT command	Overview	Parameters/Description	Command examples
AT+CGEQMIN	Registers the criteria for judging whether to permit QoS (quality of service) sent from network when PPP packet communication is established.*2	See "Supplement to AT command" →P482	See "Supplement to AT command" →P482
AT+CGEQREQ	Registers the criteria for judging whether to permit QoS (Quality of Service) requesting for network when packet communication is established.*2	See "Supplement to AT command" →P483	See "Supplement to AT command" →P483
AT+CGMR	Displays the FOMA terminal version.		AT+CGMR↵ 123456789 0123456 OK
AT+CGREG=<n>	Sets whether to report network service registration status. The status reported is "Within service area" or "Out of service area".*1	<n> 0:Not notified (default). 1:Notified. When "AT+CGREG=1" is set, when the terminal is moved from "Within service area" to "Out of service area" or vice versa, the status is reported in the format "+CGREG:<stat>". <stat> parameter supports "0, 1, 4". <stat> 0:Out of service area 1:Within service area (home) 4:Unknown When "AT+CGREG?" is set, "+CGREG:<n>, <stat>" is displayed.	AT+CGREG=1↵ OK (Set to "Notified".) AT+CGREG?↵ +CGREG:1, 0 OK (Means Notified, out of service area.)
AT+CGSN	Displays FOMA terminal serial No.		AT+CGSN↵ 123456789 012345 OK
AT+CLIP=<n>	Sets whether to display Caller ID of sender on PC when 64K data communication is to received.*1	<n> 0:Does not display the result (default). 1:Displays the result. When "AT+CLIR?" is set, "+CLIR:<n>, <m>" is displayed. <m> 0:Does not send Caller ID to remote device when sending communication. 1:Sends Caller ID to remote device when sending communication. 2:Unknown	AT+CLIP=0↵ OK

See next page

AT command	Overview	Parameters/Description	Command examples
AT+CLIR=<n>	Sets whether to send phone number to remote device when sending 64K data communication.*2	<n> 0:Follows the service agreement 1:Does not send 2:Sends (default) When "AT+CLIR?" is set, "+CLIR:<n>, <m>" is displayed. <m> 0:CLIR deactivated (always send) 1:CLIR always activated (never send) 2:Unknown 3:CLIR temporary mode (default=does not send) 4:CLIR temporary mode (default=send)	AT+CLIR=2↵ OK
AT+CMEE=<n>	Sets to show whether there is an error report at FOMA terminal.*1	Sets whether to display errors only as "ERROR", or to report reasons with numbers or characters. <n> 0:Displays "ERROR" without result code (default). 1:Uses the result code displaying the reason as numbers. 2:Uses the result code displaying the reason as characters. When error report display is set as n=1 or n=2, error reports are displayed as followings. "+CME ERROR:xxxx". (xxxx means numbers or characters. "Error messages list" →P482)	AT+CMEE=0↵ OK AT+CNUM↵ ERROR AT+CMEE=1↵ OK AT+CNUM↵ +CME ERROR:10 AT+CMEE? +CMEE:0 OK
AT+CNUM	Displays Own number of the FOMA terminal.	When "AT+CNUM" is executed, the information is reported in the format "+CNUM:<number>, <type>" <number> Phone number <type> 129:International access code, + not included 145:International access code, + included	ATcCNUM↵ +CNUM:,"+8190123 45678",145 OK
AT+CPIN	Enter the security code of UIM(FOMA card).	Enter PIN/PIN2 and PUK. Refer to "Result code" →P484	(Enter PIN/PIN2 code) AT+CPIN ="1234"↵ OK (Enter PUK and new PIN/PIN2 code) AT+CPIN="12345678", "1234"↵ OK AT+CPIN?↵ +CPIN:READY OK

AT command	Overview	Parameters/Description	Command examples
AT+CR=<mode>	Sets whether to display information indicating packet communication or 64K data communication before "CONNECT" result code is displayed during line connection.*1	<mode> 0:Does not display (default) 1:Displays "GPRS" is displayed for packet communication, and "SYNC" is displayed for 64K data communication.	AT+CR=1↵ OK ATD*99***1#↵ +CR:GPRS CONNECT AT+CR? +CR:0 OK
AT+CRC=<n>	Sets whether to use expanded result codes when communication is received.*1	n=0:Does not use the code (default) n=1:Uses the code	AT+CRC=0↵ OK AT+CRC? +CRC:0 OK
AT+CREG=<n>	Sets whether to display if being "Within service area"/"Out of service area" of network.*1	<n> 0:Not notified (default) 1:Notified When "AT+CREG=1" is set, when the terminal is moved from "Within service area" to "Out of service area" or vice versa, the status is reported in the format "+CREG:<stat>". <stat> parameter supports "0, 1, 4". <stat> 0:Out of service area 1:Within service area 4:Unknown When "AT+CREG?" is set, "+CREG:<n>, <stat>" is displayed.	AT+CREG=1↵ OK (Set to "Notified".) AT+CREG?↵ +CREG:1, 0 OK (Means Notified, out of service area.)
AT+CUSD=<n>	Sets network setup of optional services etc.	<n> 0:Interim result+CUSD: <m>[,<str>,<dcs>] is not transmitted. 1:Interim result+CUSD: <m>[,<str>,<dcs>] is transmitted. <str> only allows 0 to 9, # or *. <str> parameter is quoted by "" because it is string parameter.	AT+CUSD=0, "xxxxxxxxx"↵ OK AT+CUSD=1,"*148*1*0000#",0↵ +CUSD:0,"148*7#",0 OK
AT+GMI	Displays the manufacturer name of the FOMA terminal in one-byte alphanumeric characters.		AT+GMI↵ SANYO OK
AT+GMM	Displays the product name of the FOMA terminal in one-byte alphanumeric characters.		AT+GMM↵ FOMA SA800i OK
AT+GMR	Displays FOMA terminal version.	Displays FOMA terminal version in "VerX.XXX" format.	AT+GMR↵ Ver1.000 OK

See next page

AT command	Overview	Parameters/Description	Command examples
AT+IFC=<n,m>	Sets how to control local flow between PC and FOMA terminal.*1	DCE by DTE(<n>) 0:Performs no flow control 1:Performs XON/XOFF flow control. 2:Performs RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control (default). DTE by DCE(<m>) 0:Performs no flow control 1:Performs XON/XOFF flow control. 2:Performs RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control (default).	AT+IFC=2,2↵ OK
AT+WS46=<n>	Sets wireless network used when sending communication. Does not affect receiving operation.	n=22:FOMA network (fixed value)	AT+WS46=22↵ OK
ATA	Performs the receiving process when entered during 64K data communication.		RING ATA↵ CONNECT
A/	Used to execute the previously executed command again.	When previous response is "ERROR", "ERROR" is returned.	A/ OK
ATD	Performs sending process.*3	Packet communication: "ATD*99***<cid>#↵" When "ATD*99#" is entered: "<cid>=1" is used (If <cid> is omitted from input, "<cid>=1" is set). When the format beginning with "ATD184*99" is entered: "184" is added to the APN set for <cid> specified (The same operation can be performed using "186", to notify Caller ID). 64K data communication: "ATD [parameter] [phone number]↵" Call process is not performed if the phone number contains characters other than 0 to 9,*,#,A,a,B,b,C,c, D,d,-(Hyphen), space, T,t,P,p,!,W,w,@,,(comma) Highlighted ( ) characters can be entered but are not recognized in dialing.	ATD*99***1#↵ CONNECT
ATE<n>	Sets whether FOMA terminal will return echo for the command sent from PC.*1	n=0:Echo "OFF" n=1:Echo "ON" (default) Set "n=1" for general use. If the PC has an echo function, setting this command to "n=0" prevents double display of characters.	ATE1↵ OK

AT command	Overview	Parameters/Description	Command examples
ATH	Disconnects line when entered during packet communication or 64K data communication.		(Communicating) +++ OK ATH↵ NO CARRIER
ATI<n>	Displays the confirmation code.	n=0:NTT DoCoMo n=1:Displays abbreviated product name (FOMA SA800i). n=2:Displays product version in "VerX.XXX" format.	AT10↵ NTT DoCoMo OK
ATO	Returns from online command mode to online data mode during communication.		ATO↵ CONNECT
ATQ<n>	Sets whether to display result code.*1	n=0:Displays (default). n=1:Does not display.	ATQ0↵ OK
ATV<n>	Sets result code display method.*1	Displays all result codes as numeric or alphabetical characters. n=0:Displays numerically. n=1:Displays in alphabetic characters (default).	ATV1↵ OK
ATX<n>	Sets whether to set speed display in the "CONNECT" display for the connection. It also detects busy or dial tones.*1 Busy tone detection: Sends "BUSY" response when dialup connection is busy. Dial tone detection: Detects whether FOMA terminal is connected. Speed display: Sets whether to display speed on the "CONNECT" display when connecting.	n=0:No busy tone, no dial tone detected, and no speed is displayed. n=1:No busy tone, no dial tone detected, and speed is displayed. n=2:No busy tone detected, dial tone detected, and speed is displayed. n=3:Busy tone detected, no dial tone detected, and speed is displayed. n=4:Busy tone detected, dial tone detected, and speed is displayed (default).	ATX1↵ OK
ATZ	Resets FOMA terminal AT command settings.*4	FOMA terminal AT command settings is reset to the status of nonvolatile memory. When this command is entered during communication, the terminal is reset after the line is disconnected.	(In online mode) ATZ↵ NO CARRIER (In offline mode) ATZ↵ OK
ATS0=<n>	Sets the number of rings until FOMA terminal receives communication automatically.*1	n=0:Does not receive automatically (default). n=1 to 255:Receives automatically after specified number of rings.	ATS0=0↵ OK

See next page

AT command	Overview	Parameters/Description	Command examples
ATS2=<n>	Sets the escape character.	n=0 to 127 (default: n=43) When n=127 is set, escape is invalid.	ATS2=43↵ OK ATS2?↵ 043 OK
ATS3=<n>	Sets the carriage return (CR) character.	Defines the character used to identify the end of AT command character strings. Appended to the end of echoed command character strings and result codes. The set value cannot be changed. (default: n=13)	ATS3=13↵ OK ATS3?↵ 013 OK
ATS4=<n>	Sets the line feed (LF) character.	When result code is displayed in alphabetical characters, appended after [CR] character. The set value cannot be changed. (default: n=10)	ATS4=10↵ OK ATS4?↵ 010 OK
ATS5=<n>	Sets the back space (BS) character.	When this character is detected during AT command input, the last character in the input buffer is deleted. The set value cannot be changed. (default: n=8)	ATS5=8↵ OK ATS5?↵ 008 OK
ATS6=<n>	Sets the duration of pause (in seconds) until dialing starts.	The Register is set by this command, but performs no operation. n:2 to 10 (default: n=5)	ATS6=10↵ OK
ATS7=<n>	Sets waiting time (in seconds) until connection completion.*1	n:1 to 255 (default: n=60) When sending 64K data communication or packet communication, if the set number of seconds after FOMA terminal receives "ATD" input from PC has elapsed but the terminal cannot send "CONNECT" to PC, the "NO CARRIER" result is returned, and the disconnection process is performed next. If the value is set between "121 and 255", "OK" result is returned, but the value is set to "120".	ATS7=60↵ OK
ATS8=<n>	Sets pause time (in seconds) when commas are dialed.	This command sets the Register but does not affect the pause time (3 sec). n=0:Not paused n:1 to 255 (default: n=3)	ATS8=3↵ OK
ATS10=<n>	Sets the delay time (in seconds) for automatic disconnection (1/10 second).*1	The Register is set by this command, but performs no operation. n:1 to 255 (default: n=1)	ATS10=1↵ OK
ATS30=<n>	Terminal is disconnected if no data is sent or received for longer than the time set here.	The setting made by this command is valid only during 64K data communication. <n> is set in minute. n:0 to 255 (default: n=0) With n=0, inactive timer is set to "OFF".	ATS30=3↵ OK

AT command	Overview	Parameters/Description	Command examples
ATS103=<n>	Sets the separator used when appending received sub addresses to send.	The setting of this command is valid only during 64K data communication. n=0:＊asterisk n=1:/ slash (default) n=2:¥mark or backslash	ATS103=0↵ OK
ATS104=<n>	Sets the separator used when appending outgoing sub addresses to send.	The setting of this command is valid only during 64K data communication. n=0:# pound symbol n=1:% percent symbol (default) n=2:& ampersand	ATS104=0↵ OK
AT¥S	Displays the currently set commands and S register settings.		AT¥S↵ E1Q0V1X4 &C1&D2&S0&E1 ¥V0 S000=000 S002=043 S003=013 S004=010 S005=008 S006=005 S007=060 S008=003 S010=001 S030=000 S103=001 S104=001 OK
AT¥V<n>	Selects type of response codes used when connection is made.*1	This command is valid only when "ATX<n>" command is set other than n=0. →P479 n=0:Does not use communication protocol result codes (default) n=1:Uses communication protocol result codes	AT¥V0↵ OK

*1 The settings are registered in FOMA terminal by "&W" command.
*2 Resetting is not available with "&F" or "Z" commands.
*3 "ATDN↵" and "ATDL↵" can be used for redial calling.
*4 When the "Z" command is executed before the "&W" command, the terminal is reset to the last status registered in memory, and prior changes are erased.

Disconnection reason list

Packet communication

Value	Description
27	APN is not present or is incorrect.
30	Disconnected by network.
33	Terminal is not subscribed to packet communication.
36	Disconnected normally.

64K data communication

Value	Description
1	Specified number does not exist.
16	Disconnected normally.
17	Communication is failed because the line of the other party is busy.
18	You made a call but had no response within the specified time.
19	Communication is failed because the other party is dialing.
21	The other party rejected incoming calls.
63	The service and option of the network are not valid.
65	Unavailable processing speed was specified.
88	A call to a terminal with different terminal properties is made or a call from a terminal with different terminal properties is received.

Error messages list

No.	Text display	Description
10	SIM not inserted	No UIM (FOMA Card)
15	SIM wrong	SIM, other than DoCoMo's (IC card equivalent to UIM) is inserted.
16	incorrect password	Incorrect password
100	unknown	Unknown error

Supplement to AT command

Command name:+CGDCONT=[parameter]

- **Outline**

  Sets the dialup connection (APN) for packet communication.

- **Format**

  +CGDCONT=[<cid>[,"PPP"[,"<APN>"]]] ↵

- **Parameter description**

  <cid>:1 to 16

  <APN>:Optional

  * <cid> is the number used to control dialup connection (APN) for packet communication to be registered in FOMA terminal. "1 to 16" can be registered in FOMA terminal. By default, APN ("mopera.ne.jp") for connecting to "mopera" is set for <cid>=1, and APN ("mopera.net") for mopera U is set for <cid>=3. <APN> is an optional character string for each connection to indicate the dialup connection.

- **Example of execution**

  The command used to register an APN named "abc" (when <cid>=3).

  AT+CGDCONT=3, "PPP", "abc"↵

  OK

- **Operation performed when parameter is omitted**

  AT+CGDCONT=

  Clears all <cid> settings. Setting for "<cid>=1" and "<cid>=3" is restored to the default setting.

  AT+CGDCONT=<cid>

  Clears specified <cid> settings. Setting for "<cid>=1" and "<cid>=3" is restored to the default setting.

  AT+CGDCONT=?

  Displays a list of assignable value.

  AT+CGDCONT?

  Displays the current set value.

Command name:+CGEQMIN=[parameter]

- **Outline**

  Registers the criteria for judging whether to approve QoS (Quality of Service) provided by the network when PPP packet communication is established.

- **Format**

  AT+CGEQMIN=[<cid>[,,<Maximum bitrate UL>[,<Maximum bitrate DL>]]]↵

- **Parameter description**

  <cid> :1 to 16

  <Maximum bitrate UL>

  :None (Default) or 64

  <Maximum bitrate DL>

  :None (Default) or 384

  * <cid> is the number used to control dialup connection (APN) for packet communication to be registered in FOMA terminal. "1 to 16" can be registered in FOMA terminal. By default, APN ("mopera.ne.jp") for connecting to "mopera" is set for <cid>=1, and APN ("mopera.net") for mopera U is set for <cid>=3. For "Maximum bitrate UL" and "Maximum bitrate DL", the minimum communication speed (in kbps) is set for both upload and download traffic between FOMA terminal and the base station. If set to "None (default)", all speeds are permitted. Note that packet communication may not be connected if the parameter is set to "64" and "384", since any connection at a speed less than the above limit is not permitted.

- **Example of execution**

  ① Command used to permit all speeds both upload and download (In the case of <cid>=2)

  AT+CGEQMIN=2↵
  OK

  ② Command used to permit only 64 kbps upload and 384 kbps download (In the case of <cid>=3)

  AT+CGEQMIN=3,,64,384↵
  OK

  ③ Command used to permit 64 kbps upload and all speeds download (In the case of <cid>=4)

  AT+CGEQMIN=4,,64↵
  OK

  ④ Command used to permit all speeds upload and only 384 kbps download (In the case of <cid>=5)

  AT+CGEQMIN=5,,,384↵
  OK

- **Operation performed when parameter is omitted**

  AT+CGEQMIN=

  Clears all <cid> settings.

  AT+CGEQMIN=<cid>

  Returns the specified <cid> to the setting by default.

  AT+CGEQMIN=?

  Displays a list of assignable value.

  AT+CGEQMIN?

  Displays the current settings.

Command name:+CGEQREQ=[parameter]

- **Outline**

  Sets QoS (Quality of Service) requested to the network when transmission is performed during PPP packet communication.

- **Format**

  AT+CGEQREQ=[<cid>]↵

- **Parameter description**

  Only commands that require connection at 64 kbps upload/384 kbps download can be set. The contents are set by default for each cid.
  <cid>:1 to 16

  * <cid> is the number used to control dialup connection (APN) for packet communication to be registered in FOMA terminal. "1 to 16" can be registered in FOMA terminal. By default, APN ("mopera.ne.jp") for connecting to "mopera" is set for <cid>=1, and APN ("mopera.net") for mopera U is set for <cid>=3.

- **Example of execution**

  (when <cid>=3)

  AT+CGEQREQ=3↵
  OK

- **Operation performed when parameter is omitted**

  AT+CGEQREQ=

  Returns all <cid> to the setting by default.

  AT+CGEQREQ=<cid>

  Returns the specified <cid> to the setting by default.

  AT+CGEQREQ=?

  Displays a list of assignable value.

  AT+CGEQREQ?

  Displays the current settings.

Result codes

Result codes

No.	Text display	Meaning
0	OK	Operation performed normally.
1	CONNECT	Terminal connected to the other party.
2	RING	Incoming call
3	NO CARRIER	Line is disconnected.
4	ERROR	Unable to accept command.
6	NO DIALTONE	Unable to detect dial tone.
7	BUSY	Detecting the busy tone.
8	NO ANSWER	Completed/Connection Time-out
100*	RESTRICTION*	Network restricted
101	DELAYED	Redial call restricted

* When "RESTRICTION" (Number: 100) is displayed, the communication network is busy. Please wait for a while and retry.

Extended result code

No.	Text display	Meaning
5	CONNECT 1200	Connected at 1,200 bps between FOMA terminal and PC
10	CONNECT 2400	Connected at 2,400 bps between FOMA terminal and PC
11	CONNECT 4800	Connected at 4,800 bps between FOMA terminal and PC
13	CONNECT 7200	Connected at 7,200 bps between FOMA terminal and PC
12	CONNECT 9600	Connected at 9,600 bps between FOMA terminal and PC
15	CONNECT 14400	Connected at 14,400 bps between FOMA terminal and PC
16	CONNECT 19200	Connected at 19,200 bps between FOMA terminal and PC
17	CONNECT 38400	Connected at 38,400 bps between FOMA terminal and PC
18	CONNECT 57600	Connected at 57,600 bps between FOMA terminal and PC
19	CONNECT 115200	Connected at 115,200 bps between FOMA terminal and PC
20	CONNECT 230400	Connected at 230,400 bps between FOMA terminal and PC
21	CONNECT 460800	Connected at 460,800 bps between FOMA terminal and PC

AT+CPIN? result code

PIN2 Status / PIN Status	Authorized	Waiting for input	Waiting for PUK release code input	PUK blocked
Authorized	READY	SIM PIN2	SIM PUK2	READY
Waiting for input	SIM PIN	SIM PIN	SIM PIN	SIM PIN
Waiting for PUK input	SIM PUK1	SIM PUK1	SIM PUK1	SIM PUK1
PUK blocked	ERROR	ERROR	ERROR	ERROR

Information

- When ATV <n> command (→P479) is set to n=1, the result code is displayed in the alphabetical display format (default). When the command is set to n=0, the result code is displayed in the numerical display format.
- To retain compatibility with a modem connected via conventional RS-232C, communication speed is displayed, but it differs from the actual connection speed because FOMA terminal is connected to PC with FOMA USB connection cable.

Communication protocol result code

No.	Text display	Meaning
1	PPPoverUD	Connect via PPPoverUD (BC=UDI, +CBST=116,1,0)
5	PACKET	Connected with packet transmission

Display example of result code display

When ATX0 is set:

Regardless of the settings of AT=V command (→P481), only CONNECT is displayed upon completion of connection.

Example of character displayed : ATD*99***1#
CONNECT

Example of numerical displayed : ATD*99***1#
1

When ATX4 is set:

- When ATX4, AT¥V0 is set (default):
  Upon completion of connection, the result code is displayed in the format, CONNECT<speed between FOMA terminal and PC>".

  Example of character displayed : ATD*99***1#
  CONNECT 460800

  Example of numerical displayed : ATD*99***1#
  121

- When ATX4, AT¥V1 is set:
  The code is displayed upon completion of connection in the following format, CONNECT<speed between FOMA terminal and PC><Communication protocol><dialup connection APN>/<upstream maximum speed (from FOMA terminal to radio base station)>/<downstream maximum speed (from radio base station to FOMA terminal)>.*

  Example of character displayed : ATD*99***1#
  CONNECT 460800 PACKET mopera.ne.jp/64/384
  (indicates the terminal is connected to mopera.ne.jp, providing a maximum upload speed of 64 kbps and a maximum download speed of 384 kbps.)

  Example of numerical displayed : ATD*99***1#
  1215

* When AT¥V1 is set, <Dialup connection APN> and later are displayed only when packet transmission is used for connection.

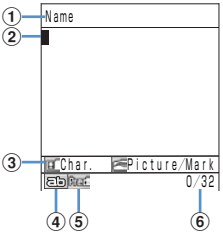
Character input

Character input 488
Entering characters using 5-touch input method . . . . . <5-touch> 489
Editing/registering Common phrases . . . . . .<Edit Common phrases> 496
Editing/registering Emoticons . . . . . .<Edit Emoticons> 496
Copying/cutting/pasting characters . . . . . .<Copy characters> 497
Entering characters using Input code. . . . . .<Input code> 500
Registering frequently used words . . . . . <Reg. to user dict.> 500
Initializing learned information . . . . . <Reset learned info> 502
Using downloaded dictionary . . . . . .<Download dictionary> 502
Setting input prediction . . . . . <Input prediction> 502
Entering characters using 2-touch input method . . . . . <2-touch> 503
Entering characters using Keyboard input method. . . . . <Keyboard> 504

Character input

This chapter describes how to enter characters for the name entry of Phonebook or composing messages.

Input screen



Character input screen

① Screen title
② Cursor
③ Guide
④ Current input mode
⑤ Setting of Input prediction
⑥ Displays "Number of entered characters/Maximum characters to input" or "Remaining number of characters available to enter"

"Undo" function

Press ✉ [Undo] to undo the last operation. When you made an unintended operation in converting/deleting/pasting characters, press to return to undefined/undeleted status.

- Only the latest operation is canceled.
- ✉ [Undo] cannot be used if the next operation is done after a character conversion is defined or a character is deleted.

Setting Input method

Default: 5-touch

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 9WXYZ ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press 5JKL.

2 Press one of 1 to 3DEF.

5-touch : Multiple characters are allocated for one key, and characters switch each time pressing the key.

2-touch : Press 2 of keys and enter characters with combination of the keys.

Keyboard : Select and enter the character on the keyboard, displayed on the screen.

Switching in entering characters

1 Press i [Function] ▶ Select "Input method" and press ●, on Character input screen.

2 Press one of 1 to 4GHI.

Input code : 4-digit Input code to enter characters corresponding to the code.

Entering characters using 5-touch input method

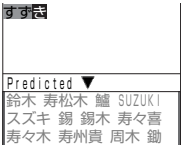
This section describes the character input method of 5-touch.

- "5-touch" is set for Character input, and "ON" is set for Input prediction by default.
  Input method setting →P488, Input prediction setting →P502

Entering Kanji/Hiragana

<ex> Entering "鈴木"

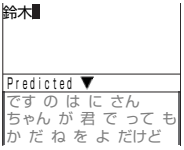
1 Enter "すずき" on Character input screen.



① **Press 3DEF さ 3 times** : "す" is entered.
② **Press ○** : The cursor moves one position to the right.
③ **Press 3DEF さ 3 times** : "す" is entered.
④ **Press *小゛゜ た** : Voiced sound mark is added.
⑤ **Press 2ABC か twice** : "き" is entered.

- Characters assigned to keys →P517
- Press C クリア to delete 1 character.
- Hold down C クリア for over a second to delete all undefined characters.
- *小゛゜ た key contains the function to add "voiced sound mark", "semi-voiced sound mark" or to decapitalize, depending on the character entered.
  - ex : To enter "ぱ" → Enter "は", then press *小゛゜ た twice.
  - ex : To enter "っ" → Enter "つ", then press *小゛゜ た twice.

2 Press ⊛ ▶ Select "鈴木" with ⊛, and press ●.



"すずき" is converted to "鈴木".

- Press ● instead of ⊛ to define as Hiragana.
- You cannot convert the characters entered except in Kanji/Hiragana mode.
- Repeat Step 2 for each segment when the sentence is not converted at one time.
- Up to 20 characters can be entered at one time without defining.

■ Adding line feed

Move the cursor to the position to enter a line feed, and press #改ﾍﾟｰｼﾞ.

- Some input screen may not permit the entry of a line feed.

■ Entering a space

Press ○.

Define the characters and press ○, when entering characters.
Insert a space as a Mark, to insert within a sentence. →P493

■ Changing the segment to convert

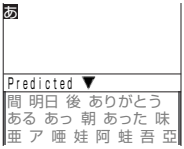
Move the cursor with ⊛, and change the segment, while converting characters.

Entering characters with Input prediction (Predict ON)

Input prediction allows to enter words by selecting from the predicted words without entering the whole. You can input characters quicker, since once entered words are registered as learned information automatically and listed in the predicted words to convert.

- Reset learned information →P502

1 Enter "あ" on Character input screen.



Predicts words starting with "あ", and displays the predicted words.

- Press ● to define "あ" as Hiragana.

2 Press ▶ Select "明日" with ◆, and press ●.

Words to follow the entry is predicted, and displayed as the prediction list.

- Press ▷ or ▷ to check the next/previous pages of predicted words list.

Entering characters without Input prediction (Predict OFF)

- Predicted words are not displayed.

<ex> Entering "鈴木"

1 Enter "すずき" on Character input screen.

2 Press ▶ Press ●.

"すずき" is converted to "鈴木".

- When the first operation results in unintended conversion, press ◆ again. List of word choices to convert is displayed.
- Press ◆ to see the next/previous pages of word list to convert.

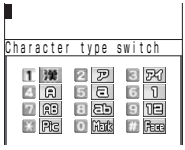
Information

- Press i [Function] during entry of characters, to change the input method and Input prediction setting from Function menu.
  - Input method →P503
  - Input prediction →P502
- Press ✉ [Convert] or ✉ [Predict] to switch Input prediction ON/OFF temporarily, while entering/converting characters with Input prediction "ON". If the first operation results in unintended conversion when switching input prediction from ON to OFF, press ◆ again. List of word choices to convert is displayed.

Changing input modes (Character type to enter)

- The available input modes differ depending on the input screen.

1 Press ⓒ "Char." on Character input screen.



2 Select input mode and press ●.

Icon	Mode	Icon	Mode
漢	Kanji/Hiragana mode	ア	Katakana (two-byte) mode
ｱｲ	Katakana (one-byte) mode	A	Alphabet (capital letter/two-byte) mode
a	Alphabet (small letter/two-byte) mode	1	Numeric (two-byte) mode
AB	Alphabet (capital letter/one-byte) mode	ab	Alphabet (small letter/one-byte) mode
12	Numeric (one-byte) mode	Pic	Pictogram mode
Mark	Mark mode	Face	Emoticon mode
ｶﾅ	Kana mode		

- You can select input modes by pressing numbers preceding the character icon.
- Alternatively, press ◀▶ "Picture/Mark" to enter Pictures/Marks/Emoticons, on Character input screen.
- Kana mode is only available on input screen of "Reading" when registering User dictionary.

Editing texts

Defined characters can be edited.

Inserting characters

1 Move the cursor to the point to insert with ✣, and enter a character.

The character is inserted to the left of the cursor.

- Space can also be inserted as a mark.

Deleting characters

1 Move the cursor onto the character to be deleted with ✣, and press CLR.

■ When the cursor is within a sentence

Press CLR.

The character specified by the cursor is deleted.

Hold down CLR for over a second.

The character specified by the cursor and all the following characters are deleted.

■ When the cursor is at the end of a sentence

Press CLR.

The character left to the cursor is deleted.

Hold down CLR for over a second.

All the characters entered are deleted.

Adding voiced sound mark/semi-voiced sound mark/changing to small letters

1 Select the character with ✣, and press ＊.

Voiced/semi-voiced sound mark is added to a character specified by the cursor. Or the character is changed to a small letter. (The change added differs, depending on the character.) Press ＊ until you find the characters to enter.

Entering Katakana

You can enter Katakana in Katakana mode, or enter in Kanji/Hiragana mode and convert the entry to Katakana.

Entering in Katakana mode

1 **Press (i) "Char." on Character input screen ▶ Select [ア] / [アイ], and press (●).**

2 **Enter characters.**

- Characters entered in Katakana mode cannot be converted.

Converting characters from Hiragana to Katakana

1 **Enter characters in Kanji/Hiragana mode, and press (i) [E/1/Kana].**

- Alternatively, press (↕) to select from word list to convert.

2 **Select the proper word and press (●).**

Enter alphanumeric characters

You can enter alphanumeric characters in Alphabet/Numeric mode, or enter in Kanji/Hiragana mode and convert the entry to alphanumeric characters.

Entering characters in Alphabet/Numeric mode

1 **Press (i) "Char." on Character input screen ▶ Select [A] / [a] / [1] / [AB] / [ab] / [12], and press (●).**

2 **Enter characters.**

Converting characters from Hiragana to alphanumeric characters

<ex> Entering "SANYO" in two-byte/Full Mark

1 **In Kanji/Hiragana mode, press (7PQRS) 4 times ▶ Press (2ABC) once ▶ Press (6MNO) twice ▶ Press (9WXYZ) 3 times ▶ Press (6MNO) 3 times.**

- "めかひるふ" is displayed on the screen.
- Characters assigned to keys →P517

2 **Press (i) [E/1/Kana].**

Entered characters are shown in the word list to convert, in Alphabet (two-byte/Full Mark, capital letter)/(one-byte/Half Mark, capital letter)/(two-byte/Full Mark, small letter)/(one-byte/Half Mark, small letter), Numeric (two-byte/Full Mark)/(one-byte/ Half Mark), Katakana (two-byte/ Full Mark)/(one-byte/Half Mark).

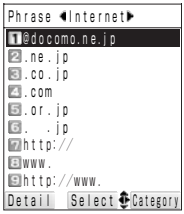
3 **Press (1.@あ) "SANYO".**

Entering Common phrases

Enter common phrases from the list.

- Common phrases list →P520
- Editing/registering Common phrases →P496

1 Press (i) [Function] on Character input screen ▶ Select "Common phrases", and press ●.



Common phrases are listed by each category.

- Press (i) [Category] or ◎ to switch the category of common phrases.
- Select a phrase and press (✉) [Detail] to display the whole part of the phrase. Press (✉) [List] to return to the list.

2 Press one of (1あ) to (9WXYZ).

The Common phrase is inserted at the cursor position.

Information

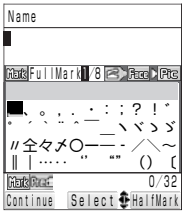
- When inserting a Common phrase exceeding maximum number of characters, or when inserting the phrase containing characters not allowed to be entered, one of the following occurs:
  - An error message is displayed and the characters are not inserted.
  - Characters up to maximum number are inserted.
  - Characters not allowed to be entered are replaced by spaces to insert the phrase. (Converted spaces are to be deleted if spaces are unable to be inserted.)

Entering Marks

Enter marks by selecting from the list.

- Mark list →P519
- Lists marks that are able to be entered only.

1 Press (m) "Char." on Character input screen ▶ Select Mark, and press ●.



Mark list is displayed.

- Also press (C) "Picture/Mark" twice (once when Pictures are not available) on Character input screen to display the list.
- Marks previously used are displayed on the first line of the list.
- Press (i) [HalfMark] to display the list of Marks (one-byte/Half Mark).

2 Select a mark, and press ●.

■ Entering marks continuously

① Select a mark, and press (✉) [Continue].
② Repeat Step ①.
③ Press ●.

See next page

Information

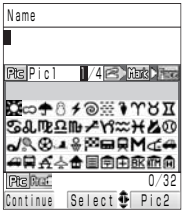
• Alternatively, enter "きごう" in Kanji/Hiragana mode and convert, to input marks.

Entering Pictograms

Enter Pictograms by selecting from the list.

• Pictogram list →P519

1 Press (Menu) "Char." on Character input screen ▶ Select Pic, and press (●).



Pictogram list is displayed.

• Also press (Picture/Mark) "Picture/Mark" once on Character input screen, to display the list. (Not displayed on input screens where Pictures are not available.)

• Pictograms previously used are displayed on the first line of the list.

• Press (i) [Pic2] to display the list of Pictogram 2.

2 Select a pictogram, and press (●).

The pictogram is entered.

■ Entering pictograms continuously

① **Select a pictogram, and press (Mail) [Continue].**

② **Repeat Step ①.**

③ **Press (●).**

Information

• Some words entered in Kanji/Hiragana mode can be converted to pictograms. (ex : "はれ" → ☀)

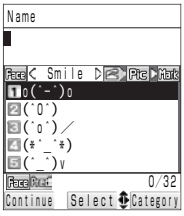
Entering Emoticons

Enter Emoticons by selecting from the list.

• Emoticon list →P520

• Editing/registering Emoticons →P496

1 Press (Menu) "Char." on Character input screen ▶ Select Face, and press (●).



Emoticons list is displayed.

• Also press (Picture/Mark) "Picture/Mark" 3 times (twice on input screens where Pictures are not available) on Character input screen to display the list. (Not displayed on input screens where Emoticons are not available.)

• Press (i) [Category] or (Navigation) to switch the category of Emoticon.

2 Press one of (1 あ) to (5 な).

The Emoticon is entered.

• Entry mode may be limited and some Emoticons cannot be entered on some Character input screen.

■ Entering Emoticons continuously

① **Select an Emoticon, and press ✉ [Continue].**
② **Repeat Step ①.**
③ **Press ●.**

Information

• Alternatively, enter "かお" or "かおもじ" in Kanji/Hiragana mode and convert, to input Emoticons.

Entering characters by quoting various functions

Enter character data by quoting from Phonebook, Received/Sent history, registered Profile or Text memo, etc.

- Quotable functions differ depending on the input screen.
- Quoting from the same function is not available. (ex : Unable to quote from Phonebook when registering Phonebook entries.)

1 Press i [Function] on Character input screen.

2 Select a function to quote, and press ●.

Quote phonebook : Quotes the data registered in Phonebook.
- Search Phonebook, and press ● ▶ Select an entry and press ●.

Quote history : Quotes Redial, Received calls, Sent addresses or Received addresses.
- Press one of 1 to 4 ▶ Select a history, and press ● ▶ Press ●.

Quote schedule : Quotes the data registered in Schedule.
- Select a schedule, and press ● ▶ Select an item and press ●.

Quote text memo : Quotes Text memo.
- Select a text memo, and press ●.

Quote bookmark : Quotes URL of sites registered in Bookmark.
- Select a folder and press ● ▶ Select a Bookmark, and press ●.

Quote profile : Quotes data registered in Profile.
- Select an item, and press ●.

Quote loc. info : Quotes the location information and location history positioned by Position location, or location information registered to Phonebook etc.
- Following operations: →P243 "Pasting Location information URL" Step ② to ③

Entering characters using Bar code

You can activate Bar code reader from Character input screen to enter characters.

1 Select i [Function] on Character input screen ▶ Select "Bar code reader", and press ●.

- Following operations: →P182 "Scanning codes" Step 4 to 5
- Bar code reader is not available on some Character input screen.

Edit Common phrases

Editing/registering Common phrases

You can edit preset Common phrases, or compose and register new fixed phrases.

Editing preset Common phrases to register

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 9WXYZ ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press 1.**

2 **Select an item, and press ●.**

- Select 6MNO "Free phrase" to compose and register a new phrase.

3 **Select a Common phrase, and press ●.**

4 **Edit the phrase, and press ●.**

The common phrase is registered.

- Up to 32 two-byte (Full Mark)/64 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be registered.
- If you delete all characters and press ●, the original Common phrase is registered.

Information

- No one-byte (Half Mark) space can be entered at the end of the sentence of Common phrases. One-byte (Half Mark) spaces at the top or within the sentence are valid.

Initializing common phrases

You can initialize common phrases to default.

- Common phrases registered in Free phrase are deleted.

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 9WXYZ ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press 1.**

2 **Select an item, and press ✉ [Reset].**

3 **Press 1 "Reset" or 2ABC "Reset all".**

4 **Enter the terminal security code, and press ●.**

5 **Press 1 "Yes".**

- Press 2ABC "No" to cancel.

Edit Emoticons

Editing/registering Emoticons

You can edit and register preset Emoticons.

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 9WXYZ ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press 2ABC.**

2 **Select an item, and press ●.**

3 **Select an Emoticon, and press ●.**

4 **Edit the Emoticon, and press ●.**

The Emoticon is registered.

- Up to 7 two-byte (Full Mark)/14 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be registered.
- If you delete all characters and press ●, the original Emoticons are registered.

Information

- No one-byte (Half Mark) space can be entered at the end of the sentence of Emoticons. One-byte (Half Mark) spaces at the top or within the sentence are valid.

Initializing Emoticons

You can initialize Emoticons to default.

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 9WXYZ ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press 2ABC.**

2 **Select an item, and press ✉ [Reset].**

3 **Press 1 "Reset" or 2ABC "Reset all".**

4 **Enter the terminal security code, and press ●.**

5 **Press 1 "Yes".**

- Press 2ABC "No" to cancel.

Copy characters

Copying/cutting/pasting characters

You can copy/cut entered characters by specifying the range. Copied/cut characters are saved as Paste data available anytime.

- Up to 18 Paste data or 5,000 two-byte (Full Mark)/10,000 one-byte (Half Mark) characters in total can be saved.
- When 18 Paste data are saved or total number of characters exceeds 5,000 with two-byte (Full Mark)/10,000 with one-byte (Half Mark) characters, copy/cut in addition results deletion of oldest data.

Copying/cutting characters

1 **Press i [Function] on Character input screen ▶ Select "Copy" and press ●.**

- For cutting, select "Cut" and press ●.
- "Cut" deletes the highlighted characters from the original screen and saves it as Paste data.

2 **Move the cursor to the start point, and press ●.**

3 **Move the cursor to the end point, and press ●.**

Specifying the range to copy/cut characters

Specify the range to copy/cut first.

- ✉ [Range] is displayed only when the cursor is on defined characters.

1 Move the cursor to the start point, and press ✉ [Range.].

2 Move the cursor to the end point, and press ●.

3 Press 1 "Copy" or 2 "Cut".

■ Registering to User dictionary

Registers the specified characters to User dictionary. (→P500)

- Up to 20 two-byte (Full Mark)/40 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be specified.

① Press 3 "Reg. to user dict.".

② Enter "Reading" and press ●.

■ Using Jpn dictionary

You can look up the meaning/reading of the specified word, to enter on the screen or save as Paste data.

- Up to 15 characters can be specified.

① Press 4 "Jpn dictionary".

② Select a word, and press ●.

③ Press ●.

- Press i [Search] to search further, based on the search result. Following operations: →P437 "For further search from the search result" Step ②

④ Press one of 1 to 3.

Replace : Replaces the specified characters by the search result.

Insert : Inserts the search result into right before the specified area.

Copy : Copies the search result as Paste data.

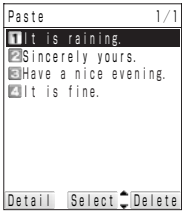
⑤ Press one of 1 to 4.

- Select a part to execute the operation described in Step ④ from the search result.

Pasting characters

You can select copied/cut characters from Paste data, and paste in Character input screen.
On some Character input screens, a part of Paste data can be specified for pasting.

1 Move the cursor to the point to paste on Character input screen, and press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Select "Paste" and press ●.



Paste data list screen

- Data not available to paste may not be displayed on the list screen.

2 Select data and press ●.

■ Pasting a part of Paste data

① Select the data and press ✉ [Detail].
② Press ⓘ [Portion].
③ Place the cursor at the start point of the range to be pasted, and press ●.
④ Place the cursor at the end point of the range to be pasted, and press ●.

Deleting Paste data

1 Select data on Paste data list screen, and press ⓘ [Delete].

2 Press 1@あ "Delete".

- When press 2ABCか "Delete all", enter the terminal security code, and press ●.

3 Press 1@あ "Yes".

- Press 2ABCか "No" to cancel.

Information

- When the data to be pasted exceeds the maximum character numbers, or when inserting data containing characters not allowed to be entered, one of the following occurs:
  - An error message is displayed and the characters are not inserted.
  - Characters up to maximum number are inserted.
  - Characters not allowed to be entered are replaced by spaces to insert the phrase. (Converted spaces are to be deleted if spaces are unable to be inserted.)

Input code

Entering characters using Input code

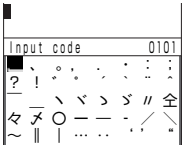
Enter 4-digit Input code to enter characters corresponding to the code.

- List of Input code →P521

<ex> Entering "洋" (Input code : 4546)

1 Press [Function] on Character input screen ▶ Select "Input method", and press ●.

2 Press 4GHI "Input code".



3 Enter the code (4GHI 5JKL 4GHI 6MNO), and press ●.

"洋" is entered.

- Alternatively, select from the list with ✣ and press ●, to enter the code. Press ▷ or ▷ to see the next/previous page.
- Invalid Input code cannot be entered.
- When entering the code, press CLR to delete 1 digit, and hold down CLR for over a second to delete all of the 4 digits.

■ Entering the character using Input code continuously

① Input the code and press [Continue].
② Repeat Step ①.
③ Press ●.

Reg. to user dict.

Registering frequently used words

You can register phrases or words for frequent use, to be shown on the list of word choices when converting. Registering long phrases for a short reading simplifies character input.

- Up to 100 entries can be registered.

Registering new words

- Up to 20 characters with two-byte (Full Mark) Hiragana as "Reading", and up to 20 two-byte (Full Mark)/ 40 one-byte (Half Mark) characters as "Word" can be registered.

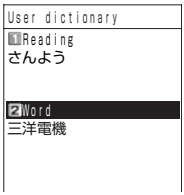
<ex> Registering "さんよう" to convert to "三洋電機"

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 9WXYZ ▶ Press 1@あ ▶ Press 3DEFさ.

2 Press [New].

3 Enter "さんよう" and press ●.

4 Enter "三洋電機" and press ●.



5 Press i [Register].

Information

• User dictionary list is displayed by Japanese syllabary of "Reading".

Editing registered words

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 9WXYZ ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press 3DEF.

2 Select data to edit, and press ●.

3 Press 1 "Reading" or 2ABC "Word".

4 Edit contents, and press ●.

5 Press i [Register].

Deleting registered words

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 9WXYZ ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press 3DEF.

2 Select data and press ✉ [Delete].

3 Press 1 "Delete".

■ Deleting by option

① Press 2ABC "Delete option".
② Select data and press ●.
• Press ● to release.
③ Press i [Exec.]

■ Deleting all

① Press 3DEF "Delete all".
② Enter the terminal security code, and press ●.

See next page

4 **Press 1 "Yes".**

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Reset learned info

Initializing learned information

Resets information learned in Character input. Input history of Pictogram/Mark is to be deleted.

- Initialized learned information cannot be restored.

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 6 ▶ Press 1.**

2 **Press 1 "Yes" ▶ Enter the terminal security code, and press ●.**

3 **Press 1 "Yes".**

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Download dictionary

Using downloaded dictionary

Set downloaded dictionary to be displayed on Character input screen as the predicted words.

- Dictionary can be set up to approximately 64 KB or 5 entries.
- Dictionary data must be downloaded in advance.

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 9 ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press 4.**

2 **Select a dictionary, and press ●.**

- Dictionary currently set is displayed with ■. Select the dictionary and press ● to release.
- Press ✉ [Check] to check the contents. Select the word and press ● on each dictionary screen to confirm "Reading".

3 **Press i [Exec.] ▶ Press 1 "Yes".**

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Input prediction

Setting input prediction

Default	ON

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 9 ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press 6.**

2 **Press 1 "ON" or 2 "OFF".**

Switching ON/OFF while entering characters

Default	Predict ON

1 **Press (i) [Function] on Character input screen.**

2 **Select "Predict ON" or "Predict OFF", and press ●.**

Information

- Press ✉ [Convert] or ✉ [Predict] to switch Input prediction ON/OFF temporarily while entering/converting characters under "Input prediction ON". If the first operation results in unintended conversion when switching input prediction from ON to OFF, press 0 again. List of word choices to convert is displayed.

2-touch

Entering characters using 2-touch input method

Press 2 of keys and enter characters with combination of the keys.

- The procedure to input in Numeric, Pictogram, Mark and Emoticon mode is the same as 5-touch method.
- Setting Input method →P488

Switching input modes

Under 2-touch method, icons are switched as follows, in Kanji/Hiragana mode, Katakana in two-byte (Full Mark)/one-byte (Half Mark) mode, Alphabet mode in one-byte (Half Mark), Kana mode.

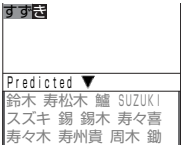
- 漢ぁ : Kanji/Hiragana mode
- ア : Katakana (two-byte) mode
- ｱ : Katakana (one-byte) mode
- Aa : Alphabet mode (one-byte)
- かな : Kana mode

- Operation to switch input methods is the same as that of 5-touch method. →P490
- You can enter alphabets in any input modes except Kana mode.

Entering characters

<ex> Entering "鈴木"

1 **Enter "すずき" on Character input screen.**



① **Press** 3 **▶ Press** 3 : "す" is entered.
② **Press** 3 **▶ Press** 3 : "す" is entered.
③ **Press** * : Voiced sound mark is added.
④ **Press** 2 **▶ Press** 2 : "き" is entered.

- The following operations are the same as that of 5-touch method. →P489
- Characters assigned to keys →P518

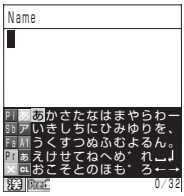
Entering characters using Keyboard input method

Select characters displayed on the screen with cursor and enter.
Setting Input method →P488

Entering characters

<ex> Entering "鈴木"

1 Press (メール) on Character input screen.



Keyboard is displayed.
- Alternatively, press one of (0わ゛ん゜) to (9WXYZ), to display the keyboard.

2 Enter "すずき" with the keyboard on Character input screen.

- Press (●) to move the cursor on the keyboard.
- To move the cursor on Character input screen when the keyboard is displayed, select "←" or "→" on the keyboard and press (●).

① Select "す", and press (●).
② Press (●) one more time.
③ Select "゛", and press (●).
④ Select "き", and press (●).

3 Press (メール) [Predict].

Hides the keyboard and displays the predicted words.
- Press (メール) [Convert] ▶ Press (●) to display word choices to convert, when Input prediction is "OFF".
  Setting Input prediction →P502
- Press (i) [Define] to define as Hiragana.

4 Select "鈴木" with (●), and press (●).

■ Adding line feed

- Some input screen may not permit a line feed.

① Move the cursor to the position to enter a line feed.
② Select "↵" on the keyboard, and press (●).
- Move the cursor to the position to enter a line feed and press (#).

■ Entering a space

① Move the cursor to the position to enter a space.
② Select "␣" on the keyboard, and press (●).

■ Deleting characters

① Move the cursor on a character to be deleted.
② Select CL on the keyboard, and press (●).
- Alternatively, move the cursor on the character to delete, then press (クリア) to delete.

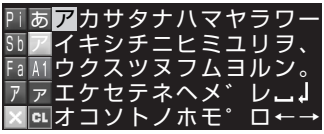
5 Press (end).

The keyboard is hidden.

- Alternatively, select ✕ on the keyboard and press ●, to hide the keyboard.

Switching Input mode

1 Select an icon on the keyboard, and press ●.



ex: Katakana (two-byte) mode

ex: Alphabet (one-byte/Half Mark in small letter) mode/Numeric (one-byte/Half Mark) mode

Icon	input mode
あ	Kanji/Hiragana mode*
ア + ア	Katakana (two-byte) mode*
ア + ｱ	Katakana (one-byte) mode*
A1 + a + A	Alphabet (two-byte/Full Mark, capital letter) mode/Numeric (two-byte/Full Mark) mode
A1 + A + a	Alphabet (two-byte/Full Mark, small letter) mode/Numeric (two-byte/Full Mark) mode
A1 + a + A	Alphabet (one-byte/Half Mark, small letter) mode/Numeric (one-byte/Half Mark) mode
A1 + A + a	Alphabet (one-byte/Half Mark, small letter) mode/Numeric (one-byte/Half Mark) mode
Pi	Pictogram mode
Sb	Mark mode
Fa	Emoticon mode

* Press "ぁ" to change "あ" "い" "う" "え" "お" "つ" "や" "ゆ" "よ" "わ" to small letters. However, "ワ" in Katakana (one-byte) mode is not changed to a small letter.

- Select A / a, and press ● to change to A / A.
- Input mode available differ depending on Character input screen. Icons of unavailable input mode cannot be selected on the keyboard.
- Also press (mail) or (C) on Character input screen, to switch input mode. →P490

Information

- When entering characters in Kanji/Hiragana mode, A / a on the keyboard is replaced by Pr / Ch to indicate the status whether Input prediction is ON or OFF.

Appendix/External devices linkage/Troubleshooting

Menu list 508
List of characters assigned to keys (5-touch) 517
List of characters assigned to keys (2-touch) 518
List of Marks/Pictograms/Emoticons 519
List of Common phrases 520
List of Input code 521
Combination of Multiaccess functions 525
Combination of Multitask functions 526
Services available with FOMA terminal 527
Optional and related devices 528

External devices linkage

Introducing Data link software 528
Movie player software 529

Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting 529
Error messages . . . . . <List of Error Messages> 531
Warranty and After-Sales Service 535
Updating software . . . . . <Software update> 537
Protecting FOMA terminal from data having potential risks of system failure . . . . . <Scanning function> 542
SAR certification information 544

Menu list

○: Returns all settings to default. is the menu displayed when pressing [Function].
Changing the settings under Kids' mode:
A=Permitted, B=Password(number) (under Kids' mode) or Terminal security code (under normal mode) is required,
C=Terminal security code is required, D=Not permitted

Menu item	Reset Setting	Delete all data	Change settings under Kids' mode	Default setting	Page
Mail					
Mail setting					
Check new message	○	○	A	All selected	P284
Receive attachment	○	○	A	Image and melody	P286
Receive option	○	○	A	OFF	P284
Melody auto play	○	○	A	Auto play	P286
Receive preference	○	○	A	Prefer receive notice	P287
Signature	○	○	A	OFF	P283
Edit quotation mark	○	○	A	> (one-byte (Half Mark))	P284
Font size	○	○	A	Standard	P287
Scroll	○	○	A	1-line	P287
Auto learn reply	○	○	A	ON	P286
Reg. sending group	○	○	A	None registered	P285
SMS report request	○	○	A	OFF	P296
SMS message validity	–	–	A	For 3 days*3	P296
SMS input char. type	–	–	A	Japanese*3	P296
SMS Center	–	–	D	DoCoMo*3	P297
Mail status request	–	–	A	–	P288
Reset mail	–	–	D	–	P288
Search personal	–	–	A	–	P280
Compose SMS message	–	–	A	–	P293
Check new message	–	–	A	–	P260
Inbox	–	○*1	A	None	P266
Compose message	–	–	A	–	P242
Receive option	–	–	A	–	P259
Outbox	–	○*1	A	None	P266
Chat mail	–	○	A	None	P288
Check SMS	–	–	A	–	P295
Unsent messages	–	○*1	A	None	P266
Deco-mail template	–	Delete*2	A	Preinstalled data	P250
i-mode					
i-mode setting					
Font size	○	○	A	All: Standard	P221
Scroll	○	○	A	1-line	P221
Image display	○	○	A	Display	P220
Message auto-display	○	○	A	MessageR preferred	P223
Melody att. message	○	○	A	Auto play melody	P223
i-motion auto play	○	○	A	Auto play	P232
Use registered data	○	○	A	Use	P220
Sound effect	○	○	A	Play	P220
Check new message	○	○	A	All selected	P284

○: Returns all settings to default. is the menu displayed when pressing ⓘ [Function].
Changing the settings under Kids' mode:
A=Permitted, B=Password(number) (under Kids' mode) or Terminal security code (under normal mode) is required,
C=Terminal security code is required, D=Not permitted

Menu item	Reset Setting	Delete all data	Change settings under Kids' mode	Default setting	Page
Connection timeout	○	○	A	60 seconds	P218
Host setting	○	○	D	i-mode (UIM)	P219
Certif. Center host	○	○	D	DoCoMo	P229
Certificate	○	○	C	All selected	P227
Client certificate	—	—	C	—	P228
Check i-mode setting	—	—	A	—	P221
Reset i-mode	—	—	D	—	P221
MessageR	—	○	A	None	P224
MessageF	—	○	A	None	P224
Screen memo	—	○	A	None	P208
iMenu	—	—	A	—	P195
Bookmark	—	○	A	None	P205
Last URL	—	○	A	None	P198
Go to location	—	○	A	URL history: None URL entry: http://	P203
Check new message	—	—	A	—	P224
i-αppli					
i-αppli box					
Main folder	—	Delete*2	A	Preinstalled data	P304
View history	—	○	A	None	P318
Software property	○	○	A	Not display	P303
GPS					
Notify/Provide menu					
Notify location	—	—	A	—	P335
Location notify menu					
Service clients	—	○	C	None	P334
1-touch notify	○	○	C	None	P336
Positioning mode	○	○	A	Standard mode	P335
Periodic notification	○	○	C	Invalid	P336
Location provide menu					
Loc. provide ON/OFF	○	○	C	Loc. provide ON	P328
Positioning mode	○	○	A	Standard mode	P332
Host setting	○	○	C	Initial host	P333
Service settings	○	○	C	—	P331
Power off act	○	○	C	Power off act: ON Notification interval: 15 min	P331
Location history	—	○	A	None	P341
Position loc. settings					
GPS key	○	○	A	Read a map	P326
Positioning mode	○	○	A	Standard mode	P326
GPS software	—	○	A	None	P327
Position location	—	—	A	—	P324

See next page

○: Returns all settings to default. is the menu displayed when pressing (i) [Function].
Changing the settings under Kids' mode:
A=Permitted, B=Password(number) (under Kids' mode) or Terminal security code (under normal mode) is required,
C=Terminal security code is required, D=Not permitted

Menu item	Reset Setting	Delete all data	Change settings under Kids' mode	Default setting	Page
Data box					
(on Folder/Data list screen)					
Play program	○	○	A	Random play OFF, Play count: Once	P390
Switch display	○	○	A	12-for-1 split	P356, 366, 376
Sort files	○	○	A	Date ord (new → old)	P385
Set security	–	○	B	No setting	P386
Play portion	○	○	A	Play all	P382
My picture					
i-mode	–	○	A	None	P356
Camera	–	○	A	None	
Deco-mail picture	–	Delete*2	A	Preinstalled data	
Preinstalled	–	○	A	Preinstalled data	
Data exchange	–	○	A	None	
Items	–	○	A	None	
User folder	–	○	A	No folder exists	
i-motion					
i-mode	–	○	A	None	P366
Camera	–	○	A	None	
Data exchange	–	○	A	None	
User folder	–	○	A	No folder exists	
Melody					
i-mode	–	○	A	None	P381
Preinstalled	–	○	A	Preinstalled data	
Data exchange	–	○	A	None	
User folder	–	○	A	No folder exists	
Chara-den	–	Delete*2	A	Preinstalled data	P375
Camera					
Snap photo	–	–	A	–	P166
Shoot movie	–	–	A	–	P171
Bar code reader (Saved data)	–	○	A	None	P183
Memo menu					
Set record message	○	○	A	OFF	P81
Play record message (Saved data)	–	○	A	None	P84
Rec. VoiceMemo-STBY	–	–	A	–	P426
Play VoiceMemo-STBY (Saved data)	–	○	A	None	P427
Play VoiceMemo-Call (Saved data)	–	○	A	None	P427
Text memo (Saved data)	–	○	A	None	P431
Dial memo (Saved data)	–	○	A	None	P73
Tools					
Calculator	–	–	A	–	P430
Alarm	○	○	A	OFF	P406
Jpn dictionary	–	○	A	No Look-up history	P436
Voice recorder					
Record	–	–	A	–	P397

○: Returns all settings to default. is the menu displayed when pressing ⓘ [Function].
Changing the settings under Kids' mode:
A=Permitted, B=Password(number) (under Kids' mode) or Terminal security code (under normal mode) is required,
C=Terminal security code is required, D=Not permitted

Menu item	Reset Setting	Delete all data	Change settings under Kids' mode	Default setting	Page
Play	−	−	A	−	P398
Original data					
Menu icon	−	○	A	Preinstalled data	P382
National holidays	−	○	A	None	P383
Dictionary	−	○	A	None	P383
Category icon	−	○	A	None	P383
Infrared	−	−	A	−	P391
Bar code reader (Saved data)	−	○	A	None	P183
Settings					
Sound/Vibrator					
Volume	○	○	A	All tones: LEVEL3	P123
Sound					
Phone receive call	○	○	A	ジッパ・ディー・ドゥー・ダー (Zip-A-Dee-Doo-Dah)	P120
Video-phone receive	○	○	A	ジッパ・ディー・ドゥー・ダー (Zip-A-Dee-Doo-Dah)	
Payphone receive call	○	○	A	パターン4 (Pattern 4)	
User unset receive	○	○	A	パターン4 (Pattern 4)	
Not support receive	○	○	A	パターン4 (Pattern 4)	
Receive message	○	○	A	クリスタル (Crystal)	
Receive Chat mail	○	○	A	木琴 (Xylophone)	
Receive messageR	○	○	A	クリスタル (Crystal)	
Receive messageF	○	○	A	クリスタル (Crystal)	
Keypad sound	○	○	A	Sol-fa	P124
Opening tone	○	○	A	オープントーン1 (Opening tone 1)	P121
Closing tone	○	○	A	クローズトーン1 (Closing tone 1)	
OK tone	○	○	A	ON	P125
NG tone	○	○	A	ON	
Charging tone	○	○	A	Charging tone 1	P125
On-hold tone	○	○	A	On-hold tone 1	P75
Call-on-hold tone	○	○	A	Call-on-hold tone 1	P76
Position location	○	○	A	ハープ (Harp)	P121
Notify location	○	○	A	モールス信号 (Morse)	
Periodic notify	○	○	A	モールス信号 (Morse)	
Loc. provide/notify	○	○	A	モールス信号 (Morse)	
Loc. provide/check	○	○	A	ファンファーレ (Fanfare)	
Vibrator	○	○	A	All: OFF	P123
LED	○	○	A	Notice LED/Call illumination: OFF Position location, Notify location, Periodic notify, Loc. provide/notify, Loc. provide/check: Pattern: Pattern 1, Color: Color 7 All others: Pattern: Melody link, Color: Color 7	P137
Notice time	○	○	A	All: 5 seconds	P126

See next page

○: Returns all settings to default. is the menu displayed when pressing [Function].
Changing the settings under Kids' mode:
A=Permitted, B=Password(number) (under Kids' mode) or Terminal security code (under normal mode) is required,
C=Terminal security code is required, D=Not permitted

Menu item	Reset Setting	Delete all data	Change settings under Kids' mode	Default setting	Page
Manner	○	○	A	Silent vibrator Continuous mode	P127
Connection vibrator	○	○	A	OFF	P124
Display					
Stand-by display					
Wallpaper	○	○	A	ながれ星 (Shooting stars)	P129
i-αppli stand-by	○	○	A	No setting	P312
Clock/Calendar	○	○	A	Digital clock (L)	P130
Call/receive display					
Phone dial call	○	○	A	発信（音声）(Dial (voice-call))	P132
Phone receive call	○	○	A	着信（音声）(Receive (voice-call))	
Video-phone dial	○	○	A	発信（テレビ電話）(Dial (video-phone))	
Video-phone receive	○	○	A	着信（テレビ電話）(Receive (video-phone))	
Payphone receive call	○	○	A	着信（番号表示なし）(Receive (ID unsent))	
User unset receive	○	○	A	着信（番号表示なし）(Receive (ID unsent))	
Not support receive	○	○	A	着信（番号表示なし）(Receive (ID unsent))	
Backside clock	○	○	A	Clock (S)	P133
Backside notify	○	○	A	ON	P133
Backside light color	○	○	A	Body color "trico" : color 4 Body color "mint" : color 5 Body color "aqua" : color 6	P133
Backside display	○	○	A	OFF as time's passed	P133
Lighting					
Display light					
Screen/Key light	○	○	A	ON	P134
Lighting time	○	○	A	10s	
Continuous lighting					
Charger connected	○	○	A	OFF	P134
Video-phone	○	○	A	ON	
i-mode	○	○	A	OFF	
Mail	○	○	A	OFF	
i-αppli	○	○	A	OFF	
Power saver	○	○	A	30 sec	P135
Taste	○	○	A	Standard	P135
Security					
Burglar alarm	○	○	C	Alarm only	P348
Change security code					
Terminal sec. code	−	○	C	0000	P144
Password(number)	−	○	B	1111	P56
Secret mode	○	○	D	OFF	P153
Self mode	○	○	D	OFF	P149
All lock	−	−	D	OFF	P147
Remote all lock	○	○	C	OFF	P147
Close lock	○	○	B	OFF	P152
Keypad dial lock	○	○	C	OFF	P151

○: Returns all settings to default. is the menu displayed when pressing ⓘ [Function].
Changing the settings under Kids' mode:
A=Permitted, B=Password(number) (under Kids' mode) or Terminal security code (under normal mode) is required,
C=Terminal security code is required, D=Not permitted

Menu item			Reset Setting	Delete all data	Change settings under Kids' mode	Default setting	Page
UIM							
	Change PIN code		—	—	D	0000*3	P145
	Change PIN2 code		—	—	C	0000*3	
	Enter PIN code		—	—	D	OFF	P144
View dialed/received			○	○	C	ON	P153
PIM lock			○	○	C	OFF	P149
Call rejection							
	Registered no.		○	○	C	OFF	P153, 154
	Unregistered no.		○	○	C	OFF	P157
	User unset		○	○	C	OFF	P155
	Payphone		○	○	C	OFF	
	Not support		○	○	C	OFF	
Call/Transmission							
Any key answer			○	○	A	ON	P68
Open/Close action							
	Open to talk		○	○	A	OFF	P69
	Closing action						
		Phone call	○	○	A	Disconnect	P69
		Video-phone call	○	○	A	Disconnect	
Quality call							
	Quality alarm		○	○	A	High alarm	P125
	Reconnect control		○	○	A	High alarm	P66
	Noise reduction		○	○	A	ON	P66
Output ring tone to:			○	○	A	Earphone & speaker	P126
Set mute seconds							
	Mute seconds		○	○	A	OFF	P156
	View calls w/o sound		○	○	A	ON	P156
Prefix			—	○	C	None	P65
Sub-address			○	○	C	ON	P65
Auto receive call			○	○	A	OFF	P434
Earphone auto dial			○	○	A	OFF	P434
Call duration			○	○	A	ON	P430
Duration /Cost	Duration		—	○	—	Last call duration: 0 sec Total calls duration Phone call: 0 sec Digital communication: 0 sec	P429
	Cost		—	○*4	—	Last call cost: ¥¥¥¥,¥¥¥,¥¥¥ Total calls cost Phone call/digit.comm: ¥0	
	ResetDate		—	○	—	Last reset dates Total calls duration: __:__ ____/__/__ Total calls cost : __:__ ____/__/__	

See next page

○: Returns all settings to default. is the menu displayed when pressing [Function].
Changing the settings under Kids' mode:
A=Permitted, B=Password(number) (under Kids' mode) or Terminal security code (under normal mode) is required,
C=Terminal security code is required, D=Not permitted

Menu item	Reset Setting	Delete all data	Change settings under Kids' mode	Default setting	Page
International dial					
Auto assist	○	○	C	ON	P64
IDD prefix	○	○	C	Prefix name: WORLD CALL Prefix code: 009130010	P64
Time					
Time and date setting	—	—	A	None registered	P50
GPS time setting	○	○	A	OFF	P51
Auto power ON	○	○	D	OFF	P406
Auto power OFF	○	○	D	OFF	
Reset					
Reset learned info	—	—	B	—	P502
Delete all data	—	—	D	—	P436
Reset settings	—	—	D	—	P435
Video-phone					
Camera image sending	○	○	A	ON	P96
Voice call auto sw	○	○	A	OFF	
Video-phone display	○	○	A	Both	
Display screen size	○	○	A	Large view	
Sending image quality	○	○	A	Normal	
Video-phone image					
Substitutive image	○*5	カメラオフ（テレビ電話）(Camera off (Video-phone))	A	ブンブン (Dimo) (Boon Boon (Dimo))	P90
Record message image	○	○	A	伝言メモ（テレビ電話）(Record message (Video-phone))	P94
On-hold image	○	○	A	応答保留（テレビ電話）(On-hold (Video-phone))	
Call-on-hold image	○	○	A	通話中保留 (Call-on-hold (Video-phone))	
Kids' mode settings					
Kids' mode	○	○	C	ON	P54
Keypad dial lock	○	○	C	OFF	P151
Burglar alarm	○	○	C	Alarm only	P348
Power off act	○	○	C	Power off act: ON Notification interval: 15 min	P331
表示言語選択 (Select language)	—	—	A	日本語 (Japanese)	P49
Network settings	—	—	C	—	P55
Help					
Character input					
Edit common phrases	—	○	A	List of common phrases	P496
Edit emoticons	—	○	A	Emoticon list	P496
User dictionary	—	○	A	None	P500
Download dictionary	○*6	○	A	None	P502
Input method	○	○	A	5-touch	P488
Input prediction	○	○	A	ON	P502
Software update	—	○*7	C	—	P537
Scanning function	○	○	C	Set scan: Enable	P542
Check setting status	—	—	—	—	P435
Battery level	—	—	—	—	P47

○: Returns all settings to default. is the menu displayed when pressing ⓘ [Function].
Changing the settings under Kids' mode:
A=Permitted, B=Password(number) (under Kids' mode) or Terminal security code (under normal mode) is required,
C=Terminal security code is required, D=Not permitted

Menu item	Reset Setting	Delete all data	Change settings under Kids' mode	Default setting	Page
表示言語選択 (Select language)	−	−	A	日本語 (Japanese)*3	P49
Voice notice	○	○	A	Time and notices	P437
Functions guide	−	−	−	−	P38
Profile (Saved data)	−	○	B	None	P424
Private					
Phonebook					
Edit group	−	○*1	A	Group name: Group 0-19 Icon group: Group 0-19 Other settings regarding receive action: OFF	P105
Font size	○	○	A	Standard	P110
Photo display	○	○	A	Photo display ON	P110
Phonebook data	○*8	○*1	A	None Search: Search column	P98
Quick search	○	○	A	Count	P110
Accept/Reject call	−	○	C	Not set	P153, 154
Add to Direct Call	−	○	A	None	P115
Set earph. AT dial	○	○	A	No setting (Phonebook number 499)	P433
Calendar					
Schedule list	−	○	A	None	P417
ToDo list	−	○	A	None	P421
Holiday setting	○	○	A	Sunday, National holidays in 2006	P412
Transparent disp.	○	○	A	ON	P413
Display regd. data	○	○	A	Icons	P413
Redial	−	○	A	None	P60
Photo display/Transp display	○	○	A	Photo display ON/Transp display ON	
Received calls	−	○	A	None	P70
Photo display/Transp display	○	○	A	Photo display ON/Transp display ON	
Sent addresses	−	○	A	None	P281
Photo display/Transp display	○	○	A	Photo display ON/Transp display ON	
Received addresses	−	○	A	None	P281
Photo display/Transp display	○	○	A	Photo display ON/Transp display ON	
Network services					
Voice mail	−	−	C*9	−	P441
Ring message notice	○	○	A	Melody: オルガン (Organ)	P442
Call waiting	−	−	C	−	P443
Call forwarding	−	−	C	−	P444
Nuisance call barring	−	−	C	−	P446
CallerID notification	−	−	C	−	P51
Caller ID request	−	−	C	−	P447
Set arrival act	−	−	C	−	P449
Arrival act	○	○	C	Answer	P448
Remote access	−	−	C	−	P449
Dual network	−	−	D	−	P447
English guidance	−	−	A	−	P448

See next page

○: Returns all settings to default. is the menu displayed when pressing [Function].
Changing the settings under Kids' mode:
A=Permitted, B=Password(number) (under Kids' mode) or Terminal security code (under normal mode) is required,
C=Terminal security code is required, D=Not permitted

Menu item	Reset Setting	Delete all data	Change settings under Kids' mode	Default setting	Page
Extra services					
Extra services	−	○	C	None	P451
Answer message	−	○	C	None	P451
Service dialing no.	−	−	A	−	P448
Multinumber					
Set multinumber	−	−	C	−	P449
Initial number	−	−	C	−	
付加番号1 (Additional number 1)	○	○	C	Phone number name: 付加番号1 (Additional number 1), Phone number: None Ring tone: イエロー・サブマリン (Yellow Submarine)	
付加番号2 (Additional number 2)	○	○	C	Phone number name: 付加番号2 (Additional number 2), Phone number: None Ring tone: イエロー・サブマリン (Yellow Submarine)	
Status request	−	−	C	−	
Main menu, Mail menu, i-mode menu, GPS menu					
Sort icons	○	○	A	−	P135
Menu icon	○	○	A	シンプル (Simple) (Main menu, Mail menu, i-mode menu, GPS menu)	P136
Define menu	○	○	A	Define menu ON	P137
Shortcut menu	○	○	A	Calendar, Calculator, Jpn dictionary, Alarm, Burglar alarm, Deco-mail template, Voice notice	P423
Manner mode	○	○	A	OFF	P127
Public mode (Drive mode)	○	○	D	OFF	P77
Side key operation	○	○	A	Valid	P152
Paste list	−	○	A	None	P499
Character input					
Learned info	−	○	A	None	P502
Picture/Mark list history	−	○	A	None	P493, 494
During a Video-phone call					
Disp position chg	○	○	A	Main screen: The other party's image Sub screen: Self image	P95
Direct Call	−	○	A	None	P115

*1 The data saved in UIM (FOMA card) cannot be deleted.
*2 Preinstalled files by default are also deleted.
*3 The setting may be different according to the setting on UIM (FOMA card), when using UIM other than the one bundled with newly purchased FOMA terminal.
*4 Total calls cost cannot be returned to default.
*5 "カメラオフ(テレビ電話) (Camera off (Video-phone))" is set, if "ブンブン (Dimo) (Boon Boon (Dimo))" is deleted.
*6 Only the setting is reset.
*7 Setting of Reserved update is released.
*8 Only Search method is reset. Individual receive settings and image settings are not reset.
*9 Play message/Check message/Erase icon display is A.

List of characters assigned to keys (5-touch)

You can enter characters by pressing keys several times.
In Katakana, Alphabet and Numeric modes, one-byte or two-byte characters are entered according to the selected input mode.

Key	Input mode				
	Kanji/Hiragana	Katakana	Alphabet (Capital)	Alphabet (Small letter)	Number
1	あいうえお ぁぃぅぇぉ	アイウエオ ｱｲｳｴｵ	．@－__／：～1 .@-_/:~1	．@－__／：～1 .@-_/:~1	1
2 ABC	かきくけこ	カキクケコ	ABC2	abc2	2
3 DEF	さしすせそ	サシスセソ	DEF3	def3	3
4 GHI	たちつてとっ	タチツテトッ	GHI4	ghi4	4
5 JKL	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ	JKL5	jkl5	5
6 MNO	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ	MNO6	mno6	6
7 PQRS	まみむめも	マミムメモ	PQRS7	pqrs7	7
8 TUV	やゆよゃゅょ	ヤユヨャュョ	TUV8	tuv8	8
9 WXYZ	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ	WXYZ9	wxyz9	9
0 わをん	わをんゎ、。ー・～！？□	ワヲンヮ、。ー・～！？□ ワヲン、。ー・・~！？□	0	0	0
＊	゛(voiced sound symbol) ゜(semi voiced sound symbol) Switch capital/small letter		Switch capital/small letter		
#	Before fixing characters: Displays the previous character assigned to each dial key. After fixing characters: Line feed*1				Line feed*1
D	Picture/Mark/Emoticon				

- □ is a space. Spaces cannot be entered/on some input screen.
- Some characters and marks are not displayed when they are not available for the input screen.
- ＊ and # are entered as " ＊" and "＃" on Phone number input screen.
- ▒ is the characters when entering in one-byte mode.

*1 Line feed cannot be made on some input screens.

List of characters assigned to keys (2-touch)

■ Kanji/Hiragana mode, Kana mode (when displaying 漢字 ひな *3)

First byte \ Second byte	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
1	あ	い	う	え	お	A	B	C	D	E
2	か	き	く	け	こ	F	G	H	I	J
3	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K	L	M	N	O
4	た	ち	つ	て	と	P	Q	R	S	T
5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U	V	W	X	Y
6	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	Z	?	!	ー	／
7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&		☎	
8	や	(	ゆ	)	よ	＊	#		♥	*1
9	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5
0	わ	を	ん	゛ *2	゜ *2	6	7	8	9	0

• Blank fields are spaces.

*1 Press 8 TUV ▶ Press 0 わをん to switch capital/small letter. Characters in can also be entered in small letter. Alternatively, press ＊ after entering a character, to switch capital/small letter.(valid only for the character)
ex: Entering "あ" → Press 8 TUV ▶ Press 0 わをん ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press 1, or press 1 ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press ＊.

*2 "゛" or "゜" can be entered by pressing ", " or "。" in one-byte mode.

*3 Entry other than Hiragana is invalid when displaying ひな.

■ Two-byte/one-byte Katakana mode, one-byte alphabet mode (when displaying ア全 ア半 Aa半 *3)

First byte \ Second byte	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
1	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	A	B	C	D	E
2	カ	キ	ク	ケ	コ	F	G	H	I	J
3	サ	シ	ス	セ	ソ	K	L	M	N	O
4	タ	チ	ツ	テ	ト	P	Q	R	S	T
5	ナ	ニ	ヌ	ネ	ノ	U	V	W	X	Y
6	ハ	ヒ	フ	ヘ	ホ	Z	?	!	ー	／
7	マ	ミ	ム	メ	モ	¥	&		☎	
8	ヤ	(	ユ	)	ヨ	＊	#		♥	*1
9	ラ	リ	ル	レ	ロ	1	2	3	4	5
0	ワ	ヲ	ン	゛ *2	゜ *2	6	7	8	9	0

• Blank fields are spaces.

*1 Press 8 TUV ▶ Press 0 わをん to switch capital/small letter. Characters in can also be entered in small letter. Alternatively, press ＊ after entering characters, to switch capital/small letter.(valid only for the character)
ex: Entering "ア"→ Press 8 TUV ▶ Press 0 わをん ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press 1, or Press 1 ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press ＊.

*2 "゛" or "゜" can be entered by pressing, "、" or "。" in one-byte mode.

*3 Entry other than alphabets, numbers and marks is invalid when displaying Aa半.

Information

• Some characters cannot be entered on some input screen.
• "゛" or "゜" alone cannot be entered besides in one-byte Katakana mode.

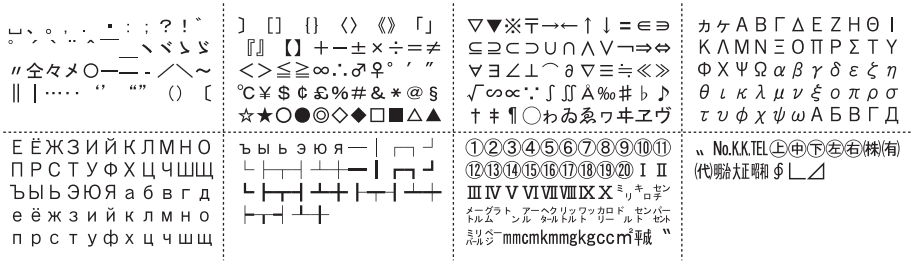
List of Marks/Pictograms/Emoticons

Mark list

One-byte (Half Mark)

␣ ! ” # $ % & ’ ( ) * + , − . / : ; < = > ? @ [¥] ^ _ ` { | } ~ 。「 」 、 ・ ゛ ゜

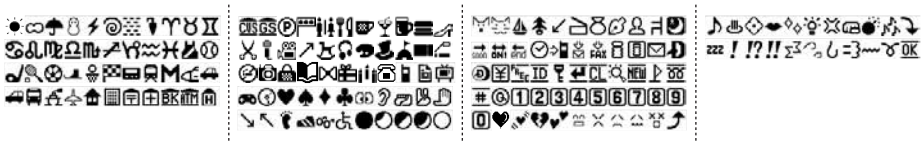
Two-byte (Full Mark)



• ␣ is a space.

Pictogram list

Pictogram 1



Pictogram 2

Information

- "Pictogram" characters may not be displayed on the other party's PC or mobile phone other than i-mode terminal. Some characters may not be displayed correctly depending on the other party's model, even with i-mode terminal.

See next page

Emoticon list

Category	Description	Category	Description	Category	Description
Smile	o(^−^)o (^0^) (^o^) ／ (*^_^*) (^_^)v	Greetings	(−^○^−) (*^o^*) (‘o ‘) ノ (・o・) ノ (~つ~) ／	Others	(−. −) zzZ m(_ _)m ZZzz。。.. V(^−^)V (^ з ^)−☆Chu!!
Cry	(T_T) (ToT) (>_<) (;_;) (∋_∈)	Sweat	(^_^;) (−. −;) (^。^;) (−o−;) f^_^;		
Angry	(`ε´) (`へ´) (−_−#) (−″−;) (`o´)	What?	(・_・) エッ..? (・_・;) (*_*) (?_?) (￣○￣;)		

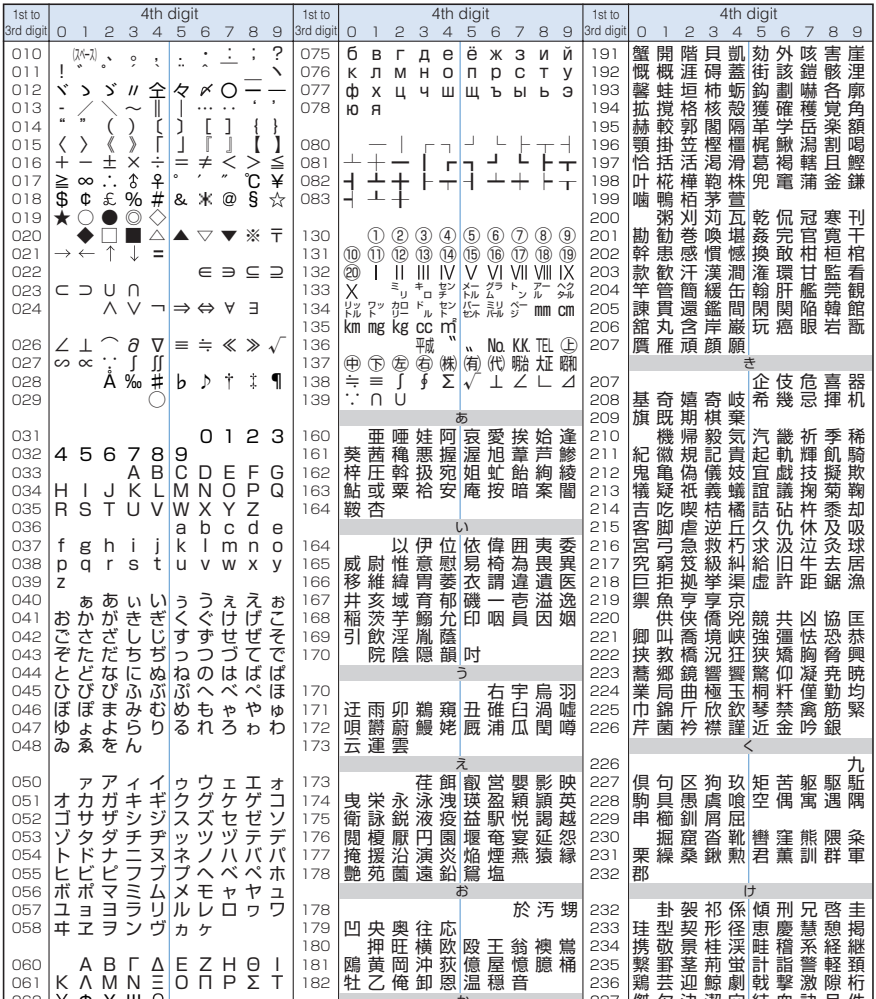
List of Common phrases

Category	Description
Internet	@docomo.ne.jp
	.ne.jp
	.co.jp
	.com
	.or.jp
	.ac.jp
	http://
	www.
	http://www.
Greetings	ありがとうございました (Thank you very much.)
	おはようございます (Good morning.)
	お疲れ様です (Appreciation for someone's labor)
	こんにちは (Good afternoon.)
	こんばんは (Good evening.)
	おやすみなさい (Good night.)
	Happy birthday!
	A HAPPY NEW YEAR!
	Merry Christmas!
Messages	連絡ください (Get in touch with me.)
	携帯に電話して (Call me on my mobile phone.)
	メールして (E-mail me.)
	あとで電話するね (Call you later.)
	またメールするね (Will e-mail you soon.)

Category	Description
Messages	遅れます (Will be late.)
	すぐ行きます (Will be right up.)
	迎えにきて！ (Come to pick me.)
	がんばって！！ (Good luck!!)
Answer	Thank you!
	ありがとう (Thank you.)
	ごめんなさい (I'm sorry.)
	OK!
	NG!
	了解！ (Got it!)
	ゴメン (Sorry!)
	大丈夫！ (Fine!)
	今電話できない (Can't call you now.)
Business	いつもお世話になっております。 (Appreciation for business matter.)
	至急電話ください。(Call me ASAP.)
	電車遅延のため、遅れます。(I will be late due to train delay.)
	申し訳ありません。(I apologize.)
	よろしくお願いいたします。 (Thank you for your help.)
	後ほどご連絡いたします。 (I will contact you later.)
	変更します。(Will change.)
	中止します。(Will be canceled.)
	延期します。(Will be postponed.)
Free phrase	

List of Input code

- Note that the characters in Input code list may look different from the characters on the screen.
- If entering the Input code which is not existed in Input code list, a space may be substituted or in other case, no entry is available.



See next page

1st to 3rd digit	4th digit 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
245	雇	後	醐	功						
246	鈷	娯	護	公	逢	再	歳	菜	坂	作
247	股	五	梧	交	厚	喉	幸	攻	浩	絞
248	袴	鼓	悟	鯉	勾	后	巷	控	拙	荒
249	誇	呉	語	倖	孔	弘	杭	皇	肯	購
250	虎	午	碁	候	好	康	更	甲	考	貢
251	胡	互	檎	佼	口	坑	広	昂	港	綱
252	菰	伍	瑚	侯	向	垢	庚	晃	溝	耕
253	紅	航	砿	号	告	忽	生	坤	痕	
254	航	航	荒	鋼	合	国	獄	墾	紺	
255	航	砿	号	告	忽	此	昆			
256	糊	顧	御	乞	効	巧	拘	江	紅	航
257	砿	号	告	忽	昏					
258										
259										
260										
261										
262										
263										
264										
265										
266										
267										
268										
269										
270										
271										
272										
273										
274										
275										
276										
277										
278										
279										
280										
281										
282										
283										
284										
285										
286										
287										
288										
289										
290										
291										
292										
293										
294										
295										
296										
297										
298										
299										
300										
301										
302										
303										
304										
305										
306										
307										
308										
309										
310										
311										
312										
313										
314										
315										

1st to 3rd digit	4th digit 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
	す									
315								筒	推	錘
316								帥	錐	雛
317								垂	酔	趨
318								吹	遂	枢
319										
320										
	せ									
320								世	成	生
321								性	誠	逝
322								征	清	誓
323								姓	正	誠
324								勢	栖	西
325								接	蝉	籍
326								選	全	
327										
328										
329										
330										
331										
332										
	そ									
332										
333										
334										
335										
336										
337										
338										
339										
340										
341										
342										
	た									
343										
344										
345										
346										
347										
348										
349										
350										
351										
352										
353										
354										
	ち									
354										
355										
356										
357										
358										
359										
360										
361										
362										
363										
	つ									
363										
364										
365										
366										
	て									
366										
367										
368										
369										
370										
371										
372										
373										
	と									
373										
374										
375										
376										

1st to 3rd digit	4th digit 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
377										
378										
379										
380										
381										
382										
383										
384										
385										
386										
	な									
386					奈	楢				
387										
388										
	に									
388					尼	入	任			
389					二	乳	韮			
390										
	ぬ〜の									
390										
391										
392										
393										
	は									
393					巴					
394										
395										
396										
397										
398										
399										
400										
401										
402										
403										
404										
405										
	ひ									
405										
406										
407										
408										
409										
410										
411										
412										
413										
414										
415										
	ふ									
415										
416										
417										
418										
419										
420										
421										
422										
	へ									
422										
423										
424										
425										
426										
	ほ									
426										
427										
428										
429										
430										
431										
432										
433										
434										
435										
436										

1st to 3rd digit	4th digit 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
436			摩						埋	妹
437			槙						鮪	柾
438			又						迄	侭
439			満						麻	
440									枕	
			み						沫	
440									魔	密
441									膜	
									末	
									磨	
									幕	
									抹	
									岬	眠
									箕	
									民	
									耗	
									巳	
									婿	
									棕	
									娘	
									鵡	
									霧	
									矛	
									牧	
									甥	
									姪	
									鳴	
									棺	
									茂	滅
									木	妄
									問	悶
									模	
									儲	
									貰	
									摸	
									蒙	
									籾	
									耗	
									戻	
									野	数
									柳	
									耶	
									靖	
									爺	
									羅	
									夜	
									訳	
									冶	
									薬	
									癒	
									佑	
									柚	
									邑	
									優	
									湧	
									郵	
									雄	
									宥	幽
									獣	由
									夕	
									友	
									猶	
									融	
									勇	
									涌	
									雄	
									油	
									唯	
									盲	
									遊	
									愈	
									揖	
									諭	
									憂	
									裕	
									悠	
									祐	

1st to 3rd digit	4th digit 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
488										
489										
490										
491										
492										
493										
494										
495										
496										
497										
498										
499										
500										
501										
502										
503										
504										
505										
506										
507										
508										
509										
510										
511										
512										
513										
514										
515										
516										
517										
518										
519										
520										
521										
522										
523										
524										
525										
526										
527										
528										
529										
530										
531										
532										
533										
534										
535										
536										
537										
538										
539										
540										
541										
542										
543										
544										
545										
546										
547										
548										
549										
550										
551										
552										
553										
554										
555										
556										
557										
558										
559										
560										
561										
562										
563										

1st to 3rd digit	4th digit 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
564										
565										
566										
567										
568										
569										
570										
571										
572										
573										
574										
575										
576										
577										
578										
579										
580										
581										
582										
583										
584										
585										
586										
587										
588										
589										
590										
591										
592										
593										
594										
595										
596										
597										
598										
599										
600										
601										
602										
603										
604										
605										
606										
607										
608										
609										
610										
611										
612										
613										
614										
615										
616										
617										
618										
619										
620										
621										
622										
623										
624										
625										
626										
627										
628										
629										
630										
631										
632										
633										
634										
635										
636										
637										
638										
639										

See next page

1st to 3rd digit	4th digit 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
640	爨	燹	爻	犁	狄	猟	獏	獗	獗	獗
641	爲	犂	狆	狄	猟	獏	獗	獗	獗	獗
642	狆	狄	猟	獏	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
643	狄	猟	獏	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
644	猟	獏	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
645	獏	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
646	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
647	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
648	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
649	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
650	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
651	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
652	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
653	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
654	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
655	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
656	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
657	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
658	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
659	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
660	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
661	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
662	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
663	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
664	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
665	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
666	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
667	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
668	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
669	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
670	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
671	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
672	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
673	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
674	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
675	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
676	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
677	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
678	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
679	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
680	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
681	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
682	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
683	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
684	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
685	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
686	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
687	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
688	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
689	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
690	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
691	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
692	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
693	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
694	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
695	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
696	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
697	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
698	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
699	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
700	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
701	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
702	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
703	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
704	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
705	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
706	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
707	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
708	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
709	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
710	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
711	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
712	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
713	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
714	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗
715	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗	獗

1st to 3rd digit	4th digit 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
716	饐	鱚	鱈	鱈	鱈	鱈	鱈	鱈	鱈	鱈
717	饑	鱚	鱈	鱈	鱈	鱈	鱈	鱈	鱈	鱈
718	芭	苞	鱈	鱈	鱈	鱈	鱈	鱈	鱈	鱈
719	苞	茯	莫	幕	蒜	鱈	鱈	鱈	鱈	鱈
720	鱈	艸	苟	苑	茵	茫	泥	彷	徨	鱈
721	艾	再	苜	苗	茗	荔	莊	董	菲	萼
722	萇	莘	莟	萱	波	科	葆	座	番	尊
723	蕚	薔	薇	蕨	葦	蓑	蓙	蓽	蔓	蔔
724	蔣	蔦	蔽	蔕	蔗	蔟	蔡	蔭	蔚	蔓
725	蔕	蔦	蔽	蔕	蔗	蔟	蔡	蔭	蔚	蔓
726	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
727	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
728	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
729	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
730	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
731	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
732	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
733	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
734	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
735	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
736	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
737	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
738	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
739	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
740	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
741	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
742	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
743	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
744	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
745	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
746	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
747	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
748	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
749	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
750	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
751	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
752	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
753	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
754	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
755	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
756	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
757	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
758	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
759	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
760	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
761	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
762	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
763	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
764	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
765	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
766	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
767	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
768	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
769	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
770	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
771	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
772	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
773	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
774	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
775	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
776	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
777	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
778	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
779	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
780	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
781	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
782	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
783	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
784	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
785	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
786	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
787	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
788	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
789	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
790	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇
791	蘢	蘭	蘰	蘯	蘚	蘞	蘗	蘖	蘓	蘇

1st to 3rd digit	4th digit 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
792	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
793	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
794	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
795	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
796	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
797	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
798	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
799	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
800	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
801	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
802	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
803	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
804	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
805	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
806	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
807	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
808	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
809	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
810	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
811	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
812	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
813	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
814	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
815	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
816	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
817	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
818	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
819	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
820	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
821	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
822	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
823	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
824	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
825	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
826	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
827	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
828	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
829	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
830	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
831	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
832	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
833	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
834	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
835	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
836	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
837	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
838	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
839	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁
840	鑓	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁	鑁

Combination of Multiaccess functions

Following combinations of Multiaccess functions are available.

○: Currently activated functions do not need to be terminated.

×: Cannot be executed.

			Currently activated functions				
			During a voice-call	During a video-phone call	During packet communication	During 64K data transmission	During i-mode connection
New data transmission	Voice-call	Dial	× *1	×	○	×	○
		Receive	× *2	× *3	○	× *3	○
	Video-phone	Dial	×	×	×	×	○ *8
		Receive	× *3	× *4	× *4	× *4	× *4
	Packet communication	Send	○	×	×	×	×
	Connect 64K	Send	×	×	×	×	×
		Receive	× *3	× *4	× *4	× *4	× *4
	i-mode connection		○	×	×	×	×
	i-mode mail	Send	○	×	×	×	○ *7
		Receive*5	○ *6	×	×	×	○ *7
	SMS	Send	○	×	○	○	○
		Receive	○ *6	○ *6	○	○ *6	○

*1 Subscribers to Call waiting can hold the current call and make another call.

*2 Subscribers to Call waiting can receive a call from another party during a call. Also Voice mail/Call forwarding service subscribers can respond to the call with each service by setting Arrival act.

*3 Subscribers to Call waiting can answer a newly incoming call by ending a current call/transmission. Also Call forwarding service subscribers can respond to the call with the service by setting Arrival act.

*4 Calls are saved as Missed calls.

*5 Includes MessageR/F.

*6 Ring tone does not sound and receiving is informed only by Reception status screen and Notify icon.

*7 While User certificate of i-mode setting is activated, i-mode mail/MessageR/F cannot be received/sent, and Check new message cannot be executed.

*8 i-mode connection is terminated if a Video-phone call is made. i-mode screen returns after the call is ended.

Combination of Multitask functions

The following table shows whether possible or impossible to select Task menu that can be newly started for each currently running/setting function.

○: Can be started/switched. ×: Cannot be started.

Starting task menu \ Operating function	During Dial input	During Voice-call	During Video-phone	During i-mode	Using i-αppli	Composing messages *5	Viewing messages *5	Receiving messages *5	Check new messages	Sending messages *5	Chat mail	Tools (1)	Camera *7	Data box	Direct Call	Tools (2)	Private	Memo menu	Profile	GPS (1)	GPS (2)
Dial input	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○			○	○			○				○	○	○
Mail*5(1)	○	○	×	×	×	○	×	○			×	○			○				○	○	×
i-mode (1)	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○			○	○			○				○	○	×
Mail*5(2) / i-mode (2)	○	○	×	○	○	○	×	○			×	○			○				○	○	○
Mail*5(3) / i-mode (3)	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	×			×	○			○				○	○	○
Mail*5(4)	○	○	×	○	○	×*9	○	○*1			×	○			○				○	○	○
i-αppli	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○			○	○			○				○	○	×
Chat mail	○	○	×	○	○	×	×	○*1			×	○			○				○	○	○
Data box / Camera / Tools (1)	○	○*2	×	○	○	○	○	○			○	×			○				○	○	○
Memo menu / Private / Tools (2) / Direct Call	○	○*3	×	○	○	○	○	○			○	○			×				○	○	○
Profile	○	○	○*6	○	○	○	○	○			○	○			○				×	○	○
GPS (1)	○	○	○*4	○	○	○	○	○			○	○			○				○	○*4	○*4
GPS (2)	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○*8			○	○			○				○	×	×

Mail (1) : Receive option
Mail (2) : Inbox, Outbox, Unsent messages, Search personal
Mail (3) : Check new message, Check SMS
Mail (4) : Compose message, Deco-mail template
i-mode (1) : iMenu, Bookmark, Go to location, Screen memo, Last URL
i-mode (2) : MessageR, MessageF
i-mode (3) : Check new message
Camera : Snap photo, Shoot movie, Bar code reader
Tools(1) : Jpn dictionary, Voice recorder, Bar code reader
Tools (2) : Calculator, Alarm
Memo menu : Play record msg, Rec. VoiceMemo-STBY, Play VoiceMemo-STBY, Play VoiceMemo-Call, Text memo, Dial memo
Private : Phonebook, Calendar, Redial, Received calls, Sent addresses, Received addresses
GPS (1) : Position location, Location history, Notify location, Service clients
GPS (2) : GPS software, Service settings

*1 Cannot be activated while sending Mails.
*2 Data box, Shoot movie, Voice recorder cannot be activated.
*3 Play record message, Rec. VoiceMemo-STBY, Play VoiceMemo-STBY, Play VoiceMemo-Call cannot be activated.
*4 Only Notify location can be activated.
*5 i-mode mail and SMS are included.
*6 Cannot be edited.
*7 New task cannot be started while shooting still images in continuous mode or shooting movie.
*8 Service settings cannot be activated.
*9 Deco-mail template can be activated.

Services available with FOMA terminal

Available services	Phone number
Collect calls (cost charged on receiver)	106 (no area code)
Fixed-line phone number-reference guide and DoCoMo mobile phone number-reference guide (charged service) (Numbers not opened to public are not available.)	104 (no area code)
Sending telegrams (charged service) From 8 am to 10 pm	115 (no area code)
Time (charged service)	117 (no area code)
Weather (charged service)	Area code of the region to check + 177
Police emergencies	110 (no area code)
Fire and ambulance emergencies	119 (no area code)
Marine emergencies and accident reports	118 (no area code)
Emergency message service (charged service)	171 (no area code)

Information

- When using Collect calls (106), Call cost and 90 yen (94.5 yen including tax) of handling fee for each call are charged to the receiver (as of February, 2006).
- When using number reference service (104), Call cost and 100 yen (105 yen including tax) of reference fee are charged. (→P429) This service is free for the blind or disabled. Call 116 (NTT sales center) from fixed-line phone for details (as of February, 2006).
- Note that a call to 110, 119, or 118 from FOMA terminal cannot be specified the location from receiver. Since the police or fire department authorities may call you back for confirmation, inform them that you are calling from a mobile phone, give your phone number and detailed information of your present location. When making an emergency call, stay at one place not to be interrupted in the connection, and keep the power on after calling about 10 minutes to be able to receive any calls.
- Depending on the area you are calling from, you may not be connected to the local police or fire department. Use a public payphone or fixed-line phone if you cannot connect to the local authorities.
- When a call is made to a receiver who uses Call forwarding from a fixed-line phone and sets the forwarding destination to a mobile phone, the caller may hear Ring tone even when the mobile phone is busy, out of service area or powered off, depending on the setting of the fixed-line phone/the mobile phone.
- Services such as 116 (NTT sales center), Dial Q2, Message Dial, credit calls are not available. (However, credit calls to FOMA terminal can be made from a fixed-line phone or a pay phone.)

Optional and related devices

Combining FOMA terminal with optional devices provides you with a wide variety of uses from personal to business use. Note that some devices are not sold in some areas. For details, contact sales outlets such as DoCoMo shop. For details about the optional devices, refer to the instruction manual for each device.

- Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with a switch P01/P02
- Flat-plug Stereo earphone set P01
- Earphone/microphone with a switch P001*1/P002*1
- Stereo earphone set P001*1
- Earphone terminal P001*1
- Earphone jack convert adapter P001
- In-car hands free kit 01*2
- FOMA in-car hands free connection cable 01
- FOMA domestic/overseas AC adapter 01
- FOMA internal assist antenna
- FOMA USB connection cable
- Battery pack SA02
- Desktop holder SA02
- Rear cover SA02
- FOMA AC adapter 01
- FOMA DC adapter 01
- In-car holder 01

*1 Earphone jack convert adapter P001 is required to connect to SA800i.
*2 FOMA in-car hands free connection cable 01 is required to connect to SA800i.

Introducing Data link software

You can exchange data of Phonebook/Schedule/Mail/Melody/Still image/Movie between FOMA terminal and PC using Data link software.
You can download Data link software from Internet sites. (Cannot be downloaded with Internet function of FOMA terminal. Use a PC. Communication fee is required for downloading separately.)

- FOMA USB connection cable (optional) is required to be connected between FOMA terminal and PC, for data transmission. Cannot be used in Infrared communication. Data cannot be transmitted while playing Flash movies, movies/i-motions etc. on FOMA terminal.
- Information downloaded in forms of i-mode/i-αppli and Still images/Movies/i-motions/Melodies prohibited to send outside of FOMA terminal by the copyright law cannot be forwarded to PC.

Refer to the following Internet site or Help of the data link software, for details of downloading method/ transferable data/operation environment/operation/restriction.

SANYO Electric Co., Ltd. Telecom company: http://www.sanyo-keitai.com

Compatible OS

Windows 98SE, Windows Me, Windows 2000, Windows XP (Japanese version)

Before using

SANYO Electric Co., Ltd. assumes no warranty for any operation, performance, and quality of this software or for inability to use for particular purposes, and also assumes no legal liability for any defect whatsoever. SANYO shall not be liable for any compensation or damages of any kind whatsoever, including direct, incidental, or consequential damages, incurred by use or inability to use of this software.

Inquiries about Data link software

SANYO Electric Co., Ltd. Data link software support center

0120-70-2534

Office hours: 9:00 am to 5:00 pm (excluding Saturdays, Sundays, National holidays and holidays prescribed by our company)

- You can call also from mobile phone or PHS.

● To avoid misdial, please double-check the number before dialing.

Movie player software

QuickTime™ Player (Free) ver. 6.4 (or ver.6.3 + 3GPP) or later released version, from Apple Computer, Inc., is required, to play movies (MP4 format files) on PC. Download QuickTime™ Player from following Internet site:

http://www.apple.com/jp/quicktime/download/

- To download, PC connected to Internet is required. Also connection fee is required to download separately.
- Refer to the Internet site above for more detailed information, such as operating environment, download method, and operations, etc.

Troubleshooting

- First of all, check whether Software update is needed. Update the software if needed. (Software update →P537)

Problems	Check points	Page
FOMA terminal cannot be powered ON. (FOMA terminal cannot be used.)	• Is the battery pack attached properly? • Is the battery run out?	P41 P47
FOMA terminal cannot be charged.	• Is the battery pack attached properly? • Is the charger terminals dirty? Clean the terminals with dry cotton swab etc.	P41 P21
Terminal requires to be recharged soon.	• Is FOMA terminal correctly mounted on Desktop holder (optional)? • Is the battery run out? • Is the charger terminals dirty? Clean the terminals with dry cotton swab etc. • Battery life differs depending on the manipulation of FOMA terminal.	P46 P42 P21 P43
FOMA terminal sounds beep.	• The battery level becomes low. Charge the battery.	P42
Key operation cannot be made.	• Is FOMA terminal powered ON? • Is All lock ON? • Is Close lock ON? • Hold down (PWR) for over 11 seconds. FOMA terminal is turned off. Then, turn the power on again.	P48 P147 P152 –
Calls cannot be made by pressing keys.	• Is Keypad dial lock ON? • Is All lock ON? • Is Self mode ON? • Is Close lock ON?	P151 P147 P149 P152
Calls cannot be made using Phonebook.	• Is PIM lock (Phonebook) ON? • Is All lock ON? • Is Self mode ON? • Is Close lock ON?	P149 P147 P149 P152

See next page

Problems	Check points	Page
Busy signal tone is heard even after you have dialed.	• Did you dial area code? • Did you dial before hearing dial tone? • Is "圏外 (Out of service)" displayed?	P58 P58 P48
"圏外 (Out of service)" is displayed and busy signal tone is heard.	• Is present place outside the service area or under poor radio wave condition?	P48
Calls are broken or disconnected.	• Are you in the area with poor radio wave condition? • Is the battery run out?	P48 P47
Unable to make/receive calls, send/ receive mails, and use i-mode.	• Is the battery run out? • Is "圏外 (Out of service)" displayed? • Is Self mode ON?	P47 P48 P149
The ring tone does not sound.	• Is Ring tone volume "OFF"? • Is Ring tone "OFF"? • Is the battery run out? • Is FOMA terminal powered ON? • Is a call terminated? Does a call remain on-hold? • Are the following functions set? - Set mute seconds - Call rejection • Is Manner mode ON? • Is Public mode (Drive mode) ON? • Is Self mode ON? • Is the ringing time for Voice mail service or Call forwarding service "0 second"?	P123 P120 P47 P48 P59 P156 P154, 155 , 157 P127 P77 P149 P441, 444
During a voice-call, the other party's voice is far or too loud.	• Did you change Earpiece volume? Adjust Earpiece volume.	P72, 123
Receiving acts (Ring tone, Vibrator, LED) are not operated as you set when receiving a call.	• If Receiving act is set in several functions, operation priority is as follows: ① Individual settings of FOMA terminal phonebook ② Group settings of FOMA terminal phonebook ③ Sound/Vibrator/LED • If you subscribe to Multinumber and set prefix numbers, the setting follows the Ring tone setting of Prefix.	— P449
Receiving acts (Mail ring tone, Vibration, LED) are not operated as you set when receiving a mail.	• If Receiving act is set in several functions, operation priority is as follows: ① Individual settings of FOMA terminal phonebook ② Group settings of FOMA terminal phonebook ③ Sound/Vibrator/LED • When several messages are received at once, the operation follows the setting of the last received message. • Is the mail address of the sender registered in the phonebook correctly with the setting of Individual mail ring tone?	— — P102
Screen is dark and nothing is displayed.	• Power saver is ON. Display returns by pressing the key.	P135
Side key operation is invalid when FOMA terminal is folded.	• Is Side key operation "Invalid"?	P152
Operation sound not be heard even with pressing key.	• Is Keypad sound "OFF"? • Is Manner mode ON?	P124 P127
The date appears in Japanese.	• Is Select language set to "Japanese"?	P49
Present location cannot be confirmed.	• Subscription to i-mode is required.	P322
Notify location/Periodic notify (location notify) /Location provide cannot be used.	• Is Location provide setting set to "Location provide OFF"? • Subscription to i-mode may be required. • Is settings necessary for providing location set in GPS Service settings?	P328 P323 P331

Problems	Check points	Page
"Please wait" is displayed and stays on the screen.	• Phone lines are busy, so call back later after a while. Calls to 110, 119, and 118 can be made anytime. However, may not be connected due to the conditions.	—
Call cost is not totalized.	• The call cost totalized on the UIM (FOMA card) may have reached the upper limit (approximately 16,770,000 yen). It can be reset to 0 yen.	P429
Burglar alarm is not activated.	• Is the battery run out? • Is Software being under update?	P47 P537

Error messages

Major error messages displayed on FOMA terminal are shown below, in the English alphabetical order .

- The "(number)" or "XXX" in error messages are the codes used to distinguish the error type sent from the i-mode Center.

Error messages	Description and approach	Page
Address is not valid (451)	i-mode mail cannot be sent. Check if the address is correct.	—
All folders are full	Mail/MessageR/F cannot be received due to the shortage of savable space. Read unread Mail/MessageR/F, release the protection of Mail/MessageR/F, or delete Mail/MessageR/F.	P225, 226, 266, 278
An error occurred. Play terminated. Released this data	As an error has occurred in playing an attached file, playing is terminated.	—
Authentication type is not supported (401)	Authentication type is not supported, and the connection cannot be made to specified i-mode/Internet sites.	—
Card error	UIM (FOMA card) is not inserted correctly or malfunction occurs in UIM (FOMA card). Insert UIM (FOMA card).	P39
Certificate is rejected (tampered)	Site certificate is overwritten. This sites cannot be accessed.	—
Check receiver	SMS destination is wrong and failed to send. Confirm destination.	—
Check SMS center settings	Mail setting of "SMS Center" is wrong. Confirm the setting.	P297
Connection failed	Connection to the i-mode Center is failed. Try to reconnect where the radio wave condition is good.	—
Connection failed (403)	Servers of the specified sites rejects connection.	—
Connection failed (562)	Connection to the i-mode Center is failed. Try to reconnect where the radio wave condition is good.	—
Connection interrupted	Try to reconnect where the radio wave condition is good. If this message is displayed even when the radio wave condition is good, the other party you tried to connect is busy. Try to connect later.	—
Content length exceeds playable size for i-motion	Displayed when trying to download i-motion data over approximately 500 KB.	—
Enter correct network security code	Displayed when wrong Network security code is entered for the function that requires to enter Network security code. Enter the correct Network security code. In case you forgot your Network security code, visit DoCoMo shop with your FOMA terminal and ID (ex. driver's license etc.) for identification.	P142
Error in image. Does not work correctly	Displayed when image data has errors and Flash movies cannot be played correctly.	—
Error in URL	Entered URL is wrong. Confirm the URL.	—
Failed to check	Retry to operation where the radio wave condition is good. If the same error occurs, try to operate after a while.	—
Folder is full	MessageR/F cannot be received due to the shortage of savable space. Read unread MessageR/F, release MessageR/F protection, or delete MessageR/F.	P225, 226
i-αppli stand-by display terminated due to security error	i-αppli stand-by display is terminated due to unaccepted operation.	—

See next page

Error messages	Description and approach	Page
If using Chara-den, changes the display to substitutive image for Notify location	Displayed when calling with Chara-den in notifying location. The screen is switched to an image to indicate being in a process.	—
i-mode mail service is busy. Please try again later (555)	The i-mode Center is busy. Try to connect later.	—
Inbox is full	New mails cannot be received since Inbox is full. Delete mails and check new message to receive new mails.	—
Input error (205)	Data entered on i-mode/Internet site has an error. Confirm entered data.	—
Invalid data. Connection cannot be established (400)	Cannot be connected due to the error in i-mode/Internet site. URL may be wrong. Check if the URL is correct.	—
Invalid data (XXX)	Specified sites/Internet sites are not compatible with i-mode. URL may be wrong. Check if the URL is correct. Cannot be displayed due to the error in received data.	—
Invalid UIM, requested service not available	Displayed when executing attached files from Data box or starting i-αppli from i-αppli list, with inserting different UIM (FOMA card) from the one when saved the attachment files of mails or downloaded data from sites. Insert the proper UIM (FOMA card) used when downloaded or saved.	—
Invalid UIM, requested software can't start	This message is displayed when you insert a different UIM (FOMA card) from the one used in downloading from sites and try to start i-αppli from i-mode, i-mode mails, etc. Insert the proper UIM (FOMA card) used when downloaded or saved.	—
Keypad dial is locked	Cannot operate prohibited function during Keypad dial locked.	P151
Memory shortage. i-mode ended	Connection is canceled due to the memory shortage.	—
Message already received	SMS is already sent.	—
No content is available (204)	Connected site does not obtain any data to display.	—
No requested file (492)	Specified file cannot be found while downloading large-size still image.	—
No requested software	Displayed when starting deleted i-αppli software with i-αppli To function from mails or optional devices.	—
No response. Reconnect?	Destination to connect in Infrared communication cannot be found/ recognized. Press 1 "Yes" to continue connection, or 2 "No" to cancel.	—
No response (408)	No response within specified duration, Connection is interrupted. Try to connect later.	—
No. of digits exceeds limit. Unable to make auto assist	Up to 80 bytes can be entered when making calls. This message is displayed when more than 80 bytes are entered with Auto assist "ON" in International dial.	P64
Number of seconds is same as the one for auto receive setting Unable to set	The same duration time cannot be set for the Answer time of both Record message and Auto receive call. Change either of the Answer time.	P82, 434
Out of service area	Radio wave is out of reach or you are out of FOMA service area.	—
Page is not found (404)	Specified site cannot be found. Check if the URL is correct.	—
Password is not correct (401)	User name or password entered on Basic authentication screen of an i-mode/ Internet site has an error. Reenter the password.	—
PIM is locked	Displayed when prohibited operation is tried to be executed under PIM lock.	P149
PIN code is blocked	Displayed when the power is turned on when PIN code is locked. Enter correct PUK and release PIN lock.	P146
Play period has not yet started	Displayed when you try to play i-motion before the preset play period. Try to play during play period.	—
Positioning failed	Positioning is failed. Retry positioning where the radio wave condition is good.	—
PUK is blocked	Contact a sales outlet such as DoCoMo shop.	P143
Receiving data exceeds playable size for i-motion	Stops to receive since the data exceeds approximately 500 KB, while unknown size i-motion data is downloaded.	—
Reception rejected	A mail could not be sent due to rejection of receiving SMS by SMS center.	—
Registration is in progress (554)	Registering the user to i-mode. Try to operate later.	—

Error messages	Description and approach	Page
Requested software unavailable	Displayed when the error occurs and i-αppli cannot be started. Also the software cannot be started when software act setting or starting condition has problems.	–
Root certificate has expired. Do you connect?	Certificate of FOMA terminal passed expiring date. Press 1 "Yes" to connect, or 2 "No" to cancel connection. This message is also displayed when the time/date is unset or wrong. Correct time and date.	P50
Root certificate is not valid	FOMA terminal Certificate is set to "Invalid". Confirm the certificate and change the setting.	P227
Same time as auto power OFF time/Same time as auto power ON time	The same time cannot be set for both Auto power OFF time and Auto power ON time. Change either of the time.	P406
Scanning failed	Bar code cannot be read.	–
Service currently inactive	Displayed when Dual network is impossible to use. Subscription is required to use Dual network.	–
Service is not provided	SMS is not provided.	–
Service is not registered	i-mode is not subscribed. Application is required to use i-mode. When having just subscribed i-mode, turn the power of your FOMA terminal off and turn on again.	P48
Setting size exceeds limit. Unable to select	The size of the selected dictionary exceeds approximately 64 KB in total. Select again.	–
Size of this page is not supported	Since data of the i-mode/Internet site exceeds the maximum size for 1 page, receiving stops. Displays only the portion that are received correctly.	–
Software terminated due to security error	i-αppli is terminated due to trying an unaccepted operation.	–
SSL session cannot be established	SSL session is failed or connection is terminated due to Authentication error of server managing client authentication.	–
SSL session failed	Problem is detected during authentication of SSL session. Connection is canceled.	–
SSL session was terminated	Error has occurred in SSL session site certificate. This message is displayed when selecting 2 "No" on Connection confirmation screen, and SSL session is disconnected.	–
This certificate has expired. Do you connect?	Sites certificate has already passed validated date. Press 1 "Yes" to connect, or 2 "No" to cancel connection.	–
This certificate is not valid for this URL. Do you connect?	CN name (server name) of sites certificate and an actual server name are different. Press 1 "Yes" to connect, or 2 "No" to cancel connection.	–
This service client ID not available	Entered numbers are not valid as Service client ID. Confirm the entered numbers.	P334
This site is not certified. Do you connect?	Sites certificate is not supported by FOMA terminal. Press 1 "Yes" to connect, or 2 "No" to cancel connection.	–
This software contains an error	Software cannot be downloaded due to software error.	–
This software contains an error. Unable to download	Software cannot be downloaded due to software error.	–
This title is now used	The title already registered cannot be registered. Change the title.	–
This UIM cannot be recognized	UIM (FOMA card) that cannot be used is installed in this FOMA terminal or UIM (FOMA card) is incorrectly inserted or has trouble. Check UIM (FOMA card) installation.	P39
Time out	No response is received from the server within a set time. Try to connect again.	–

See next page

Error messages	Description and approach	Page
Too much data was entered	The number of the entered characters in entry field of i-mode/Internet site are too many to be sent. Resend after cutting down some characters.	–
Total calls cost exceeds limit	Using UIM (FOMA card) that maximum of Total calls cost is set. Reset the counter and call again.	P429
Transmission failed (552)	Error of the i-mode Center/SMS Center caused the failure to send i-mode mail/SMS. Try to send later.	–
Transmission rejected	Denied to send SMS.	–
UIM not inserted, requested service not available	UIM (FOMA card) is not inserted. Insert UIM (FOMA card) and start using.	P39
Unable to download data due to play restriction data error	Data cannot be retrieved, since playable count data is wrong or Play period/ validity is expired.	–
Unable to download. Data exceeds maximum size (452)	Cannot receive the data since the size of the sites, Internet site is larger than maximum size.	–
Unable to retrieve the requested URL (504)	Failed to connect to the specified site. Try to connect again.	–
Unable to set same time as the one for record message	The same duration cannot be set for both Answer time of Auto receive call and Receive message. Change Answer time.	P82, 434
Unable to view file. Access to URL is limited (491)	Displayed when downloading more than accessible times prescripted in large-volume still image.	–
URL address changed (301)	URL of the i-mode/Internet site has been changed. Confirm correct URL.	–
URL is too long to register	Entered URL for registering a Bookmark exceeds 256 characters.	P204
You have no certificate. Do you connect?	Client certificate is not downloaded. Press 1 "Yes" to continue connection, and 2 "No" to cancel.	–
Your certificate has expired. Do you connect?	Your certificate has expired. Press 1 "Yes" to continue connection and 2 "No" to cancel.	–

Warranty and After-Sales Service

Warranty

- A written warranty is provided with every FOMA terminal. Be sure to receive it. Keep the written warranty after checking the contents and "shop name/date" where you purchased. If it does not contain the necessary information, contact the shop where you bought. The warranty is valid for one year from the day of purchase.
- This product and all accessories are subject to change, in part or whole, for the sake of improvement without prior notice.
- Since troubles, repair or other handlings of FOMA terminal may cause data in Phonebook etc. to be changed or deleted, DoCoMo recommends to make a copy of the Phonebook data etc. And PC (Windows 98SE/Me/2000/XP) can be used to transfer/store the Phonebook data etc. in PC that is using the dedicated data link software and FOMA USB connection cable (optional). When repairing FOMA terminal etc., information downloaded through i-mode or i-αppli will not be transferred to new FOMA terminal etc. in accordance with the copyright laws with some exceptions.

After-Sales service

When problems occur

Before requesting service, read the section "Troubleshooting". (→P529) Call the number of "For inquiries" on the back of this manual for details, if problems are still not solved.

If the result of inquiries indicates that a repair is required

Take your FOMA terminal to a service center designated by DoCoMo. Be sure to check the open hours of the service center before you go. Note that you must present the warranty.

In the warranty period

- FOMA terminal will be repaired at no charge subject to the conditions of the warranty.
- The warranty must be presented to receive warranty service. The subscriber will be charged for the repair of items not covered in the warranty, or repairs of defects resulting from misuse, accident or neglect even during the warranty period.
- The subscriber is charged even in the warranty period, for the repair of failures caused by the use of devices or consumable items that are not DoCoMo-specified.

Notices about repair

Repair is not possible when corrosion due to exposure to moisture, condensation or perspiration is detected in a moisture seal reaction or test, or if any of the internal boards are damaged or deformed. Since these conditions are outside the scope of the warranty, a repair, if at all possible, will be charged.

After expiration of the warranty

All charged repairs are available by request.

Replacement parts

Replacement parts (parts required to maintain product function) will be kept in stock for at least 6 years after the termination of production. The product can be repaired during this period. Depending on the nature of the required repair, it may still be possible to repair your phone even after this period. Contact the service center listed on the back of this manual.

Notes

- Do not modify FOMA terminal, UIM (FOMA card) or its accessories.
  - That may cause fire, injury or damage.
  - In order to prevent interference of radio waves or network breakdown, FOMA terminal and UIM (FOMA card) are manufactured according to technical standards stipulated by law. Do not use FOMA terminals or UIMs (FOMA card) that do not meet these standards.
  - If FOMA terminal is modified (part replaced, modified, painted, etc.), it will be repaired only after the modified parts have been restored to the condition at the time of purchase. However, repair may be refused depending on the modification.
  - Repair of failures or damage caused by modification are charged even during the warranty period.
- Do not remove the inscription sticker attached to FOMA terminal.
  The inscription sticker certify that FOMA terminal satisfies specific technical standards. Note that if stickers are removed intentionally or are reattached in such a way that confirmation of the sticker's contents is impossible, repair or service may be refused because whether or not the terminal conforms to relevant technical standards are unrecognizable.
  * The inscription sticker is pasted on the position where the battery pack is attached. Remove the battery pack, to check the inscription sticker.
- Stored data, such as settings or the information of total call duration, may be cleared (reset) by failure, repair or handling processes of FOMA terminal. In this case, set up the functions again.
- Magnetic components are used in the earpiece and the speaker of FOMA terminal. Do not allow cash cards or other devices that are vulnerable to magnetism to come close to the phone, or they might be damaged.
- If the terminal becomes wet or moist, turn the power off and remove the battery pack immediately and bring the terminal to our repair office as soon as possible. However, repair may not be possible depending on the condition of the terminal.

Phonebook number (Phonebook data) and downloaded information

- Keep a separate record of the data you register in your FOMA terminal. DoCoMo will not accept any liability and responsibility whatsoever for changes of information or loss of information.
- Data created, imported or downloaded by the subscriber may be lost or become corrupted when changing the model or repairing mobile phone. DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss. DoCoMo may, at its option, replace the terminal instead of repairing it. In such an event, it will not be possible to transfer the data (except some data) to the new terminal. In SA800i FOMA terminal, Images or received melodies downloaded from i-mode official site can be transferred when repairing. (Some contents cannot be transferred. Or some may not be transferred depending on the damage level.)

Updating software

Check the necessity of updating software in FOMA terminal and download some software as required through packet transmission* to update the software.
When Software update is required, the information will be posted in "Notice & Help" on DoCoMo Internet site or iMenu.

* Packet transmission for Software update is free of charge.

- Software may be updated in the following two methods:
  - Update immediately : Updates on the spot as desired.
  - Reserved update : Specifies the day and time for automatic update of the software.
- Software update is available even when the Host selection setting is other than i-mode.
- Software update should be done with battery fully charged.
- Software cannot be updated in the following cases:
  - When out of service area
  - When the battery is not fully charged
  - When UIM (FOMA card) is not inserted
  - When PIN is completely locked
  - Under Self mode
  - When the time is not set
  - When the power is OFF
  - While using other functions
  - When UIM (FOMA card) cannot be recognized
  - Under PIM lock (i-mode)
  - Under All lock
  - When an external device is connected
- Software update (downloading or rewriting) may take time.
- If Software update is executed when "ON" is set for PIN code ON/OFF, the PIN code entry screen will be displayed at the time of automatic reload after completion of software updating. You cannot make/receive calls and operate communication functions if an incorrect PIN code is entered.
- Other functions are not available while software is being updated. However while downloading, only incoming voice-calls can be answered, and also forwarding calls or receive message can be operated.
- For Software update, SSL session is established to the server (our site). Set SSL certificate to valid in "Certificate". It is configured as valid by default. →P227
- It is recommended that Software update be executed when good signal quality is obtained, three bars of the antenna icon are displayed and the terminal is not being moved. If radio wave signals become weaker during software downloading or downloading has stopped, retry Software update in a place under good radio wave condition.
- If the software has already been updated, the message "No update is needed. Please continue to use as before" is displayed when checking Software update.
- In updating software, the information (such as model and serial number) of your terminal will be automatically sent to the server (or the server for Software update operated by the company). DoCoMo will not use the sent information for any other purpose than Software update.
- Displayed icons indicating that mails are held in the i-mode Center disappears after Software update. Also if Receive option is set to "ON" and an E-mail arrives during Software update, the screen that notifies an arrival of E-mail in the i-mode Center may not appear after Software update being completed. →P258

See next page

Information

- Software can be updated, maintaining various data, such as a phonebook, camera images, downloaded data, saved in the terminal. However, note that data protection sometimes cannot be secured according to the conditions of your FOMA terminal (such as malfunction, damage, or water leak). DoCoMo recommends you to back up your important data. (Note that some data such as downloaded data may not be backed up.)
- Never remove the battery pack while updating software. Update may be failed. When Software update has failed, "Rewrite failed" is displayed and all operation becomes unavailable. In that case, please bring FOMA terminal to a DoCoMo specified service center.

Starting Software update

1 **Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 9WXYZ ▶ Press 2ABC.**

2 **Enter the terminal security code, and press ●.**

3 **Confirm the displayed notice to check if Software update is required.**

Press 1 "OK". **Press 1 "OK".** **Press 1 "OK".**

Terminal starts SSL session and check if Software update is required.

4 **Confirm the check result.**

■ **When "Update is needed" is displayed**

Software can be updated.

Update immediately : Starts updating right away. →P539

Reserve : Updates later at the time and on the day you set. →P540

Cancel : Does not update.

■ **When "No update is needed. Please continue to use as before" is displayed**

Software update is not required, and use FOMA terminal as it is.

■ **When "Server is busy" is displayed**

Update cannot be done immediately. Retry the update after a while.

Updating software immediately <Update immediately>

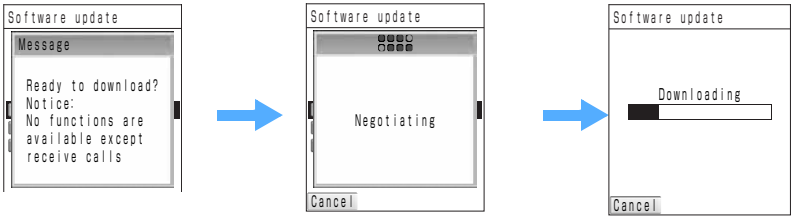
- Software cannot be updated immediately when the server is busy.

1 Display Check result screen of Software update.

- Check result →P538

2 Press 1 "Update immediately".

Message is displayed and download starts.



- Press [Cancel] to stop downloading. If downloading is canceled halfway, the data downloaded up to that point is deleted.
- Once download has started, update process will be executed without any operations such as selections from menus.
- When "Server is busy" is displayed, update cannot be done immediately. Press 1 "Reserve" or 2 "Cancel".
  Reserved update :→P540 "Updating software at scheduled time and date" Step 3

3 Press ● after download.

- Rewriting is executed automatically without pressing ●.
- All key operations are invalid while software is being rewritten. Updating operation cannot be canceled.

4 FOMA terminal is restarted automatically after rewriting is completed.

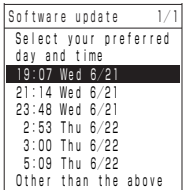
After reload, connects to the server automatically and checks updating to be completed.
After Update has finished, "Your update is complete" is displayed, and then Stand-by is displayed.

Updating software at scheduled time and date <Reserved update>

When downloading takes time or the server is busy, you can set the time to start Software update in advance by communicating with the server.

1 Display Software update screen.

2 Press 2ABC "Reserve".



Connects to the server and the screen displays the time that can be reserved.
Displayed time is the server time.

3 Select the time and date you like, and press ● ▶ Press 1 "Yes".

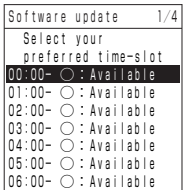
Software update is reserved.

■ Selecting from the time options other than displayed

① Select "Other than the above", and press ●.

② Press ●.

③ Select the date you like, and press ●.



Displays the reservation status of each time-slot.
○ : Available
△ : Almost full
× : Full

④ Select the time-slot, and press ●.
Connection is made to the server and the options close to preferred day and time-slot are displayed.

⑤ Select the time and date you like, and press ●.
The confirmation screen of the time and date is displayed.

⑥ Press 1 "Yes".
Displays loading screen, reservation is finished, and then Stand-by display is displayed.

Information

- Reserved setting is deleted by operating "Delete all data" after Software update.

At the reserved time

The screen shown on the left is displayed and FOMA terminal starts Software update automatically. The battery is required to be fully charged by the reserved time and FOMA terminal is required to be at the place where the radio wave condition is good. Operations after this point are the same as that of Update immediately.

Information

- When PIN code enter screen is "ON", PIN code entry screen is displayed in reloading. Note that making/receiving calls or sending/receiving mails cannot be done on PIN code entry screen. Alarm is operated even on PIN code entry screen.
- When Software update reservation and alarm are set at the same time and date, Alarm has the priority, and FOMA terminal displays the icon on Stand-by display to notify the failure of Software update after stopping Alarm.
- Software update may not be started at the reserved time due to the condition of FOMA terminal. →P537

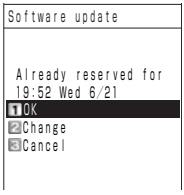
Confirming/changing/canceling reservation

The day and time reserved for Software update can be confirmed.

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 9WXYZ ▶ Press 2ABC.

2 Enter the terminal security code, and press ●.

3 Confirm the contents.



Press 1 "OK", if reserved date is OK.

- Starts checking if Software update is necessary, when Software update is not reserved. →P538

Changing reservation

Press 2ABC "Change" ▶ Press 1 "Yes".

Connects to the server and setting screen of reservation time and date is displayed.

- Following operations: →P540 "Updating software at scheduled time and date" Step 3

Canceling reservation

Press 3DEF "Cancel" ▶ Press 1 "Yes" ▶ Press 1 "Yes".

Connects to the server and reservation is canceled.

Protecting FOMA terminal from data having potential risks of system failure

Update pattern definitions first to make sure that the pattern definitions are up-to-date.

Detects data or programs loaded into FOMA terminal by downloading from sites or receiving i-mode mail, to delete data that possibly causes trouble, or terminate the activation of problematic applications.

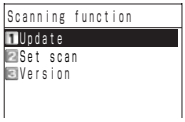
- Uses the pattern definitions for checking. The pattern definitions are immediately upgraded as a new factor that causes trouble is discovered, so pattern definition is required to be updated.
- Scanning function provides you with a certain level of security, for filtering out the data that causes troubles to mobile phones when browsing sites or receiving mails. Note that this function does not prevent troubles unless the pattern definition for each trouble exists and is downloaded to your mobile phone.
- The pattern definition varies depending on the model of mobile phone. Therefore, DoCoMo may discontinue offering pattern definitions for the models which has been on the market for three years or more.

Setting scanning function <Set scanning function>

Default	Enable

Set "Enable" to Set scan, and data or program is automatically checked when you activate it.

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 9WXYZ ▶ Press 3DEF.



2 Press 2ABC "Set scan".

3 Press 1 "Enable".

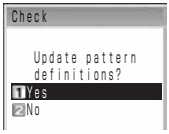
- Press 2ABC "Disable" to release.

4 Press 1 "Yes".

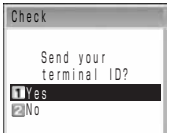
- Press 2ABC "No" to cancel.

Updating pattern definitions <Update pattern definitions>

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 9WXYZ ▶ Press 3DEF ▶ Press 1.



2 Press 1 "Yes".



- Press 2 "No" to cancel.

3 Press 1 "Yes".

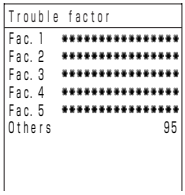
- Press 2 "No" to cancel.
- The message "Pattern definitions are up-to-date" is displayed if there is no need to update. Use your FOMA terminal as it is.

Information

- In updating pattern definitions, the information (such as model or serial number) of your terminal will be automatically sent to the server (or our server for scanning functions). DoCoMo will not use the sent information for any other purpose than scanning function.
- Set the date (Year/Month/Date) of FOMA terminal correctly.
- Updating is terminated in following cases:
  - When UIM (FOMA card) is not inserted
  - When UIM (FOMA card) cannot be recognized
  - Out of service area
  - When PUK is completely locked
  - Under Self mode
  - Under PIM lock (i-mode)
  - When receiving a phone-call
  - When the alarm rings
  - When almost running out of battery
  - When activating Periodic notify
  - When activating Location provide

Displaying scanned results

Displaying scanned Trouble factor

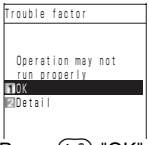
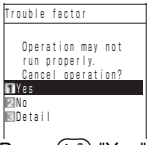
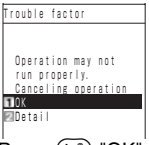
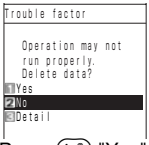
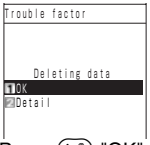


Trouble factor screen

The name of Trouble factor is listed in order of seriousness of the trouble.

- If more than 6 factors are detected, names of the factors are omitted, except for the first 5.

Displaying scanned results

Alert level 0	Alert level 1	Alert level 2	Alert level 3	Alert level 4
				
Press 1 "OK" to continue the operation.	Press 1 "Yes" to terminate and to end the operation. Press 2 "No" to continue the operation.	Press 1 "OK" to terminate and to end the operation.	Press 1 "Yes" to delete the data and to end the operation. Press 1 "No" to terminate and to end the operation.	Press 1 "OK" to delete the data and to end the operation.

- Select "Detail" on each screen and press ●, to display Trouble factor screen.

Confirming the version of the pattern definition <Version>

1 Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 9WXYZ ▶ Press 3DEF ▶ Press 3DEF.

Version is displayed.

- The screen shown is an example.

SAR certification information

This mobile phone terminal, FOMA SA800i, meets the MIC's technical regulation governing exposure to radio waves.

The technical regulation established permitted levels of radio wave energy, based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and through evaluation of scientific studies. The regulation employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit is 2 watts/kilogram (W/kg)* averaged over ten grams of tissue. The limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The value of the limit is equal to the international guidelines recommended by WHO and ICNIRP.

All phone models should be confirmed to comply with the regulation, before they are available for sale to the public. The highest SAR value for this mobile phone, FOMA SA800i, is 0.953 W/kg. It was taken by the Telecom Engineering Center (TELEC). This test for SAR was conducted in accordance with the MIC testing procedure using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level in all tested frequency bands. While there may be differences in the SAR levels between various phones and at various positions, they all meet the MIC's technical regulation. Moreover, transmission power of mobile phone is designed to be the minimum level necessary to communicate with mobile phone base station, so the actual SAR of the phone during operation can be well below the maximum value.

For further information about SAR, please refer to the following websites.

Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications	http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/j/ele/index.htm
Association of Radio Industries and Businesses	http://www.arib-emf.org/index.html
DoCoMo	http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/product/
SANYO Electric Co., Ltd.	http://www.sanyo-keitai.com

* The technical regulation is provided in Article 14-2 of the Ministry Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment.

Index/Quick reference manual

Index 546
Quick reference manual 556

Index

A

AC adapter 44
Accept call for specified phonebook 153
Adding Receiver 243
After-Sales Service 535
Alarm 406
  Start 411
All lock 147
Answer message 83
Any key answer 68
Arrival act 448
AT command 472
  Disconnection reason list 482
  Error messages list 482
  Input format 472
  Input mode 472
  List 473
  Result codes 484
  Supplementary information 482
Attachment file
  Attachment 253
  Deleting 262, 264
  Playing/changing/displaying file property/releasing 255
  Receive attachment setting 286
  Receiving mail with image 263
  Saving (Melody) 263
  Saving (Still image) 264
Authentication password 143
Auto assist 64
Auto learn reply 286
Auto play
  Attached melody 286
Auto power ON/OFF 406
Auto receive
  i-mode mail 256
  MessageR/F 222
  SMS 294
Auto receive call 434
Auto sort 271
Auto timer 177
Available services 527
AV Phone To 215

B

Backside clock 133
Backside light color 133
Backside notify 133
Backside-display 29, 132
  Icon list 33
  Reading 33
Backside-display setting 133
Bar code reader
  Scanning 182
  Using 183
Basic package 26
Battery
  Charging time 43
  Checking level 47
Bookmark
  Creating folder 206
  Delete 207
  Displaying 205
  Edit folder name 207
  Edit title 207
  Moving to folders 206
  Registering (Internet site/i-mode site) 204
  Registering (mail) 280
Burglar alarm 347
Burglar alarm lever 29
Burglar alarm strap hole 29

C

Cache 200
Calculator 430
Calendar 411
Call cost 429
Call duration 429
Call forwarding service 444
  Activate 445
Call waiting 443
CallerID request service 447
  Activate 447
Calling voice memo 426
  Delete 429
  Play 427
  Record 427
Call-on-hold 59
Call-on-hold tone 76
Calls
  Any key answer 68
  Call-on-hold 59
  Call waiting Ring tone 68
  Making calls 58
  Operations while receiving calls 68
  Receiving calls 67
  Sub-address 65
Call/receive display 132
Camera
  Shooting movies 171
  Shooting still image 166
Category icon
  Download 214
Certificate 227
Certif. Center host 229
Change i-mode password 202
Change PIN code 145
Change PIN2 code 145
Chapter 368
Character input 488
  Copy 497
  Cut 497
  Editing Common phrases 496
  Editing Emoticons 496
  Entering Common phrases 493
  Entering Emoticons 494
  Entering Marks 493
  Entering Pictograms 494
  Input code 500
  Input prediction 502
  List of characters assigned to Keys 517, 518
  Pasting 499
Chara-den 90, 375
  Action 377
  Download 214
  Reading Chara-den list screen 376
  Shooting movies 379
  Shooting still image 378
  Shooting/recording screen 378
  Video-phone 90
Charging tone 125
Charging
  AC adapter 44
  DC adapter 44
  Desktop holder 46
Charging terminals 29
Charging time 43
Chat mail 288
  Composing 290
  Delete 292
  End 292
  Receive 291
  Registering Chat member 289
  Send 290
Check address 236, 275
Check box 199
Check mail setting status 236
Check new message
  i-mode mail 260
  MessageR/F 224
Check setting status 435
Client certificate 228
Close lock 152
Close-up switch lever 29
Closing action 69
Closing tone 121
Common phrases
  Editing 496
  Entry 493
  List 520
Communication configuration files
  Installation 457
Complete power OFF 48
Compose message 242
Connecting to Internet
  Convert char. code 204
  Enter URL 203
  URL history 203
Connecting PC to FOMA terminal 456
  Connecting with FOMA USB connection cable 456
Connecting with FOMA USB connection cable 456
Connection timeout 218
Connection vibrator 124
Continuous lighting 134
Convert char. code 204
Copying characters 497
Copying URL 201

D

Data box 354
Confirming free memory space 389
Creating folder 384
Delete 387
Deleting folder 384
Edit folder name 384
Edit title 386
File property 388
Moving to folders 387
Restrict file 386
Set security 386
Sort files 385
Sorting folders 385
Data communication 454
Operating environment 456
Data link software 528
DC adapter 44
Deco-mail
Compose 245
Deco-mail template 250
Compose 251
Select 251
Delete all data 436
Deleting mail history 282
Desktop holder 46
Dial memo 73
Dialup network 466
Dictionary data
Download 214
Register 383, 502
Direct Call 115
Direct Call box 116
Direct Call icon 117
Display 28
Reading 30
Stand-by display 129
Display call duration 430
Display light 134
Display name 99
Download
Category icon 214
Chara-den 214
Dictionary data 214
i-αppli 302
Images 212
Melody 213
Menu icon 214
National holidays 214
Dual network service 447

E

Earphone auto dial 433
Earphone/Microphone jack 29
Earpiece 28
Earpiece volume 72
Echo 73
Edit Group 105
Edit quotation mark 284
E-mail address 235
Changing 235
Check 236
Reset 236
Emoticon
Editing 496
List 520
English guidance 448
Enter PIN code 144
Enter URL 203
Error message list 531
External connection port 29
Extra services (Register USSD) 451
Register 450

F

File property 388
FirstPass 197, 228
Client certificate 228
FirstPass PC software 455
Flash 29
Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with a switch 433, 434
Folder
Composing 384
Play program 390
Folder file log 274
FOMA PC configuration software 459
Font size setting
i-mode setting 221
Mail setting 287
Phonebook 110
Frames
Compose 358
Pasting 363
Shooting 170
Functions guide 38

G

GPS 322
Applicable i-αppli 301
Software 327
Time setting 51

H

Handling instructions 21
Hands free 58, 87
Hold
Call-on-hold 59
On-hold 74
Host setting
ISP connection communication 219

I

i-αppli 300
Auto start 310
Delete 316
Download 302
Network transmission 305
Refer to phonebook/history 306
Register Auto start 310
Set auto start 310
Set icons 305
Ring tone/Image 306
Software property 318
Software prop. set 303
Sort 317
Starting 304
System property 318
Upgrade 314
Using camera 319
Using infrared connection 319
Using location info 306
View history 318
i-αppli stand-by display 312
i-αppli stand-by display transmission 313
i-αppli To function 311
i-αppli To setting 312
i-αppliDX 300
IDD prefix 64
Image
Attaching to i-mode mail 356
Create item 358
Displaying 356
Displaying/Saving (i-mode mail) 263
Editing 360
Enlarge/Reduce 361
Pasting frames 363
Pasting stamp 362
Pasting text 364
Resize/Clip 362
Rotate/Reverse 364
Slideshow 356
Special effect 365
Stamp list 363
i-melody 213
i-mode 188
i-mode mail 234
Adding Receiver 243
Address history 281
Attachment file 253
Auto sort 271
Check 260
Check address 275
Compose 242
Copy 279
Creating folder 270
Deco-mail 245
Deleting all mails 279
Deleting attachment 262, 264
Deleting folder 270
Deleting history 282
Deleting mail 278
Displaying new message 257
Displaying/saving image 263
Editing 255
Folder file log 274
Font size setting 287
Forwarding 261
Inbox 266
Inserting Signature 243
Moving to folders 276
Number of characters to send/receive 236
Outbox 266
Protect mails 278
Reading folder list screen 267
Reading list screen/message screen 268
Receive option 258
Receive preference 287
Receive 256
Reg. sending group 285
Reply 260
Saving 255
Saving melody 262
Search Personal 280

Searching mail..... 277
Send..... 242
Sending group..... 242, 271
Sort..... 277
Storage period..... 237
Switching display..... 276
Template..... 250
Two-touch mail..... 256
Unsent messages..... 266
i-mode Menu..... 195
i-mode password..... 143
i-mode setting..... 217
Check new message..... 284
Connection timeout..... 218
Font size setting..... 221
Host setting..... 219
Image display..... 220
i-mode setting..... 221
Registered data setting..... 220
Reset i-mode setting..... 221
Scroll setting..... 221
Sound effect..... 220
i-motion..... 230
Auto play..... 232
Downloading..... 231
Editing..... 370
Playing..... 231, 366
Saving..... 231
Settings..... 369
i-motion mail..... 238
Composing..... 253
Playing/Saving..... 265
In-camera..... 28
In-car hands-free..... 67
Infrared..... 391
Receive..... 394
Remote control function..... 396
Send..... 393
Infrared communication mode..... 396
Infrared data port..... 28
Initial setting..... 49
Input code..... 500
Input prediction..... 502
Inserting/removing battery pack..... 41
Intellectual property rights..... 24
i-shot..... 238
ISP connection communication..... 219

J

JAN Code..... 181
Jpn dictionary..... 436

K

Keyboard..... 504
Keypad dial lock..... 151
Keypad sound..... 124
Kids' mode..... 54

L

Last URL..... 198
LED..... 137
Light..... 29
Linked pages..... 199
List of characters assigned to Keys..... 517, 518
List of Error Messages..... 531
List of input code..... 521
List of preinstalled melody..... 122
Location history..... 341
Location info..... 343
Location provide..... 327
GPS service setting..... 331
Host number..... 333
Loc. provide ON/OFF..... 328
Positioning mode..... 332
Power off act..... 331

M

Mail..... 234
Mail auto receive..... 256
Mail link type i-αppli..... 301
Mail menu..... 241
Mail setting..... 235, 282
Mail status request..... 288
Mail To..... 215
Main menu
Changing Menu icons..... 136
Define menu..... 137
Sort icons..... 135
Making calls using phonebook..... 107
Manner mode..... 127
Mark list..... 519
Melody
Attaching to i-mode mail..... 381
Operation during play..... 381
Play..... 381
Play program..... 390
Playing portion..... 382
Setting..... 382
Melody auto play..... 286
Memory status..... 114
Menu
List..... 508
Selecting from Function menu..... 36
Menu icon
Register..... 382
Download..... 214
Message auto-display..... 223
MessageR/F..... 222
Check..... 224
Delete..... 226
Displaying..... 224
Displaying new message..... 223
Melody att. message..... 223
Message auto-display..... 223
Protecting..... 225
Reading list screen/message screen..... 225
Receive preference..... 287
Receive..... 222
Reload images..... 225
Search..... 226
Sort..... 226
Missed calls..... 80
mopera U/mopera..... 455
Mouthpiece..... 29
Movie/i-motion
Chapter..... 368
Cutting movie image..... 375
Cutting out movie image..... 374
Cutting out still image..... 371
Editing..... 370
Editing Ticker..... 371
Editing with Dubbing..... 373
Play program..... 390
Playing..... 366
Reading Movie list screen..... 368
Multiaccess..... 402
Combination of functions..... 525
Multinumber..... 449
Multinumber status request..... 450
Multiple addresses..... 243
Multitask..... 404
Combination of functions..... 526
Executing another function..... 404
Switching functions..... 405
My Menu..... 201
My picture..... 356

N

Names and functions of parts..... 28
National holidays
Download..... 214
Register..... 383
Network security code..... 142
NG tone..... 125
Noise reduction..... 66
Notice time..... 126
Notify icon..... 36
Notify location..... 333
Notify location menu
Periodic notification..... 336
Positioning mode..... 335
Register Location service client..... 334
1-touch notify..... 336
Nuisance call barring service..... 446
Call rejection..... 446
Deleting registered phone number..... 446

O

OK tone..... 125
On-hold..... 74
On-hold tone..... 75
Open to talk..... 69
Opening tone..... 121
Optional/related devices..... 528
Original data..... 382
Original manner mode..... 127
Out-camera..... 29
Output ring tone to:..... 126
Out of service area..... 48

P

Packet communication..... 454
Dialup connection (APN) setup..... 465
Optimization..... 464
Password
Authentication..... 143
i-mode..... 143
Password(number)..... 142
Change..... 56
Pasting
Characters..... 499
Stamp..... 362
Text..... 364

Pause 62
Phonebook 98
Compose SMS 109
Copy 111
Delete 113
Display name 99
Edit Group 105
Editing 111
Font size setting 110
Number of registered phonebook 114
Photo display ON/OFF 110
Register 99, 104
Search 107
Secret 113
UIM (FOMA card) 104
Phone To 215
Pictogram list 519
PIM lock 149
PIN unlock code (PUK) 143
Play program 390
Position location 324
Displaying map 325
Paste to mail 325
Register to Phonebook 325
Register to Schedule 325
Position loc. settings 326
GPS key setting 326
Positioning mode 326
Power ON/OFF 48
Power saver 135
Prefix
Settings 65
Profile
Check 52
Register 424
Public mode (Drive mode) 77
Public mode (Power OFF) 78
Pulldown menu 199

Q

QR Code 181
Quality alarm 125

R

Radio button 199
Rear cover 29
Receive attachment 286
Receive option 258
Receive option setting 284
Receive preference 287
Receive mail from specified domains 236
Received calls 70
Delete 71
Receiving/Rejecting mail 236
Receiving/Rejecting mails from specified address 236
Receiving/rejecting only i-mode mail 236
Reconnect control 66
Record message 80
Answer message 83
Answer time 82
Delete 84
Play 84
Settings 81
Redial 60
Delete 61
Reg. sending group 285
Register to Phonebook 99
Register to UIM (FOMA card) Phonebook 104
Registering Secret code 235
Reg. to user dict. 500
Reject call for specified phonebook 154
Reject calls by reasons for User unset 155
Reject calls from unregistered numbers 157
Reject Unsolicited Ad mail 236
Rejected calls 71
Remote access 449
Remote all lock 147
Remote control function 396
Reserved update 540
Reset
Delete all data 436
Reset learned info 502
Reset mail address 236
Reset settings 435
Shortcut menu 424
Reset mail address 236
Reset learned info 502
Reset mail 288
Reset settings 435
Restrict mail size 236
Restrict the number of mails from mass i-mode mail senders 236
Ring message notice 442
Ring tone
List of Preinstalled melody 122

S

SAR 544
Save image 212
Scanning function 542
Schedule 414
Screen memo
Creating folder 209
Delete 211
Displaying 208
Edit folder name 210
Edit title 210
Moving to folders 210
Protecting 211
Saving 208
Sort 212
Scroll 200
Scroll setting 221, 287
Secret mode 153
Secret setting 113
Security code
Authentication password 143
i-mode password 143
Network security code 142
Password(number) 142
PIN code 143
PIN2 code 143
PIN unlock code (PUK) 143
Terminal security code 142
Select language 49
Selecting from Function menu 36
Self mode 149
Sending group 242, 271
Service dialing no. 448
Set mute seconds 156
Setting Multinumber 449
Shooting movies 171
Auto save ON/OFF 179
Auto timer 177
Brightness 174
Close-up 177
Image size/quality 175
Light 175
Recordable video/sound duration 163
Reduce flicker 181
Restrict file size 176
Save to: 179
Special effect 178
White balance 178
Zoom 173
Shooting still image 166
Auto save ON/OFF 179
Auto timer 177
Brightness 174
Close-up 177
Continuous mode 168
Image size/quality 175
Light/Flash 174
Reduce flicker 181
Savable number of images 162
Save to: 179
Scene select 176
Shoot with frame 170
Special effect 178
White balance 178
Zoom 173
Shortcut menu 423
Moving 424
Register 423
Reset 424
Side key
Main operations 30
Operation set to Valid/Invalid 152
Signature
Inserting (i-mode mail) 243
Setting 283
Site
Displaying 195
Last URL 198
Moving to the next page 200
Moving to the previous page 200
Operation 198
Reload 201
Scrolling screen 200
SSL page connection 197
View URL 201
SMS
Auto sort 271
Check 295
Composing 293
Deleting all mails 279
Deleting mail 278
Displaying 266
Displaying new message 295
Editing 294
Input character type setting 296
Message validity 296

Moving/Copying (to FOMA terminal) 298
Moving/copying (to UIM (FOMA card)) 297
Number of characters to send/receive 240
Reading folder list screen 267
Reading list screen/message screen 268
Receive 294
Receive preference 287
Reject setting 236
Send 293
Setting 296
SMS Center setting 297
SMS report request 296
Storage period 240
SMS report request 296
Software update 537
Reserved update 540
Start 538
Update immediately 539
Sound 120
Speaker 29
SSL certificate 227
SSL communication 192
SSL page connection 197
Stamp list 363
Stand-by display 48
Stand-by display setting 129
Clock/Calendar 130
i-αppli stand-by display 312
Wallpaper 129
Stand-by voice memo 426
Delete 428
Play 427
Record 426
Starting i-αppli automatically
Register Auto start 310
Set auto start 310
Strap hole 29
Sub-address 65
Substitutive image 90
Suspend mail service 236
Switching display 276

T

Task icon 32
Taste 135
Template
Composing Deco-mail 250
Terminal security code 142
Changing 144
Text memo
Confirming/editing 431
Delete 432
Entry 431
Time and date setting 50
ToDo 419
Troubleshooting 529
Two-touch dial 114
Two-touch mail 256

U

UIM (FOMA card)
Functional differences 40
Operation restrictions 40
Security code 40
UIM (FOMA card) for SMS
Moving/copying to FOMA terminal 298
Moving/copying to UIM (FOMA card) 297
Unlocking PIN code (PUK) 146
Update immediately 539
Upgrade 314
URL history 203

V

Vibrator 123
Video-phone 86
Call-on-hold 88
Chara-den 90
Making calls 87
Operations while receiving calls 89
Reading screen 86
Receiving calls 89
Sending image quality 91
Substitutive image 90
Zoom 93
Video-phone display 95
Video-phone image 94
View dialed/received 153
View URL 201
Voice mail service 441
Activate 441
Guidance setting 442
Ring message notice 442
Voice notice 437
Voice recorder 397
Delete 399
Play 398
Record 397
Shortcut to play 399
Volume 123
Volume control
Earpiece volume 72

W

Warranty 535
Web To 215
Whisper 73
WORLD CALL 63
Auto assist 64
IDD prefix 64

Numerics

2-touch 503, 518
5-touch 489
Characters assigned 517
Enter common phrases 493
64K data communication 454
184 62
186 62

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

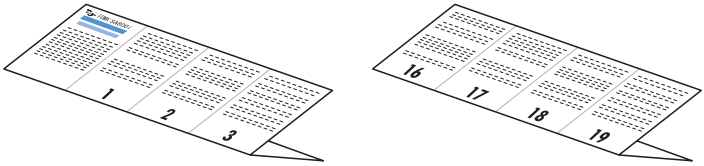
Quick reference manual

Using Quick reference manual

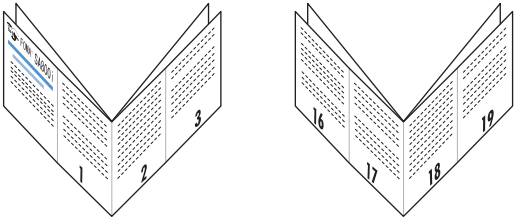
1 **Cut along the dotted line. (Two sheets)**

Note: Take care not to hurt yourself when cutting.

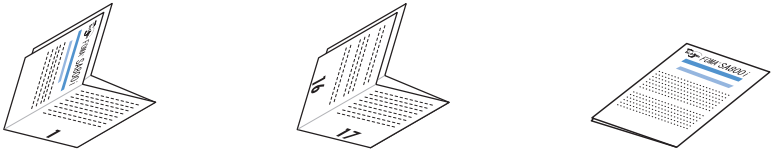
2 **Fold once vertically.**



3 **Fold once horizontally.**



4 **Fold once horizontally again.**



Contents of Quick reference manual

Registering entry to Phonebook 1
Searching Phonebook 2
Editing Phonebook 3
Entering characters 4
Deleting characters 7
Copying/cutting/pasting 7
Using Camera 8
Video-phone call 10
GPS function 12
i-mode mail 13
Menu list 16
Network service 23
Reading display 28

NTT DoCoMo

FOMA® SA800i

Quick reference manual

For inquiries <DoCoMo Information Center>

For more detailed information about the manual, contact the followings:

<In English> From fixed-line phones (toll-free) **0120-005-250** *Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHSs.

<In Japanese> No prefix 151 (toll-free) *Cannot be called from fixed-line phones.

From fixed-line phones (toll-free) **0120-800-000** *Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHSs.

- To avoid misdial, please double-check the number before dialing.

For Inquiries (concerning malfunctions)

For any problems, contact the followings:

<in Japanese> No prefix 113 (toll-free) *Cannot be called from fixed-line phones.

From fixed-line phones (toll-free) **0120-800-000** *Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHSs.

- To avoid misdial, please double-check the number before dialing.

Registering to Phonebook

Registering new entry to Phonebook

1. **Hold down ● for over a second.**
2. **Press 1 "Phone".**
   - Press 2 "UIM", and the entry is registered to UIM (FOMA card) Phonebook.
3. **Set each fields and press i [Register].**

Registering from Redial or Received calls

1. **Press ↔.**
   - Redial list screen or Received calls list screen is displayed.
2. **Select a phone number to register and press ●.**
3. **Press ● ▶ Press 4 "New to phonebook".**
   - To add to a Phonebook entry, press 5 "Add to phonebook".
4. **Press 1 "Phone" or 2 "UIM".**
5. **Register the entry to Phonebook.**

Searching Phonebook

1. **Press ○.**
2. **Search a Phonebook entry.**

Search column
Press ↔ and select from ア - ワ (A-Wa) line, Alphabet, Number, and None line, and select the Phonebook entry with ✕.

Search name
Enter the name and press ●.

Search reading
Enter the reading and press ●.

Search phonebook no.
Enter Phonebook number.

Search group
Select the group with ✣, and Press ● ▶ Select the Phonebook entry with ✕.

Search phone no.
Enter the phone number and press ●.

Search E-mail
Enter the E-mail address and press ●.

Search number type
Select the phone number type with ↔, and select the Phonebook entry with ✕.

Quick search

1. **Hold down keys for over a second on Stand-by display.**

Switching Search method

<From Search screen>

1. **Press i [Function] ▶ Select "Switch search", and press ●.**
2. **Select the search method and press ●.**

<From Search result screen>

1. **Press ✉ [Search] ▶ Select the search method, and press ●.**

Editing Phonebook

1. **Select a Phonebook entry and press ●.**
2. **Press ✉ [Edit].**
3. **Edit each Phonebook data item.**
4. **Press i [Register].**
5. **Press 1 "Yes".**

Entering characters

<ex>Entering " 鈴木 " in 5-touch

1. **Enter characters in Kanji/Hiragana mode.**
   " す ": Press 3 3 times ▶ Press → (move the cursor one position to the right)
   " ず ": Press 3 3 times ▶ Press ✱
   " き ": Press 2 twice
2. **Press ✕.**
3. **Select " 鈴木 " with ✣, and press ●.**

<ex>Entering " 鈴木 " in 2-touch

1. **Enter characters in Kanji/Hiragana mode.**
   " す ": Press 3 ▶ Press 3
   " ず ": Press 3 ▶ Press 3 ▶ Press ✱
   " き ": Press 2 ▶ Press 2
2. **Press ✕.**
3. **Select " 鈴木 " with ✣, and press ●.**

Setting Input prediction

Switching on character input screen

1. **Press i [Function] on character input screen ▶ Select "Predict OFF" or "Predict ON", and press ●.**

Switching from Stand-by display

1. **Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 9 "Help" ▶ Press 1 "Character input" ▶ Press 6 "Input prediction" ▶ Press 1 "ON" or 2 "OFF".**

Switching Input method

Switching on character input screen

1. **Press i [Function] on Character input screen ▶ Select "Input method" and press ●.**
2. **Press one of 1 to 4.**

Switching from Stand-by display

1. **Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 9 "Help" ▶ Press 1 "Character input" ▶ Press 5 "Input method".**
2. **Press one of 1 to 3.**

Switching Input mode

1. **Press # "Char." on Character input screen.**
2. **Select Character type and press ●.**

Entering Pictogram/Mark/Emoticon

1. **Press ⇔ on Character input screen.**
   - Press ⇔ "Picture/Mark" each time to switch Pictogram → Mark → Emoticon.
2. **Select Pictogram/Mark/Emoticon and press ●.**
   - Press ✉ "Continue" to enter continuously.

Entering common phrases

1. **Press i [Function] on Character input screen ▶ Select "Common phrases" and press ●.**
2. **Select the common phrase and press ●.**

Entering characters using code

1. **Press i [Function] on Character input screen ▶ Select "Input method" and press ●.**
2. **Press 4 "Input code".**
3. **Enter Input codes and press ●.**

Deleting characters

When the cursor is within a sentence

0 : Deletes a character at the cursor point
0 for over a second : Delete all characters at/after the cursor point.

When the cursor is in the end of a sentence

0 : Deletes a character on the left of the cursor point
0 for over a second : Delete all characters (Delete all undefined characters when undefined.)

Copying/cutting/pasting

Copying/cutting

1. **Press i [Function] on Character input screen ▶ Select "Copy" and press ●.**
   - For cutting, select "Cut" and press ●.
2. **Move the cursor to the start point, and press ●.**
3. **Move the cursor to the end point, and press ●.**

Pasting

1. **Move the cursor to the point to paste on Character input screen, and press i [Function] ▶ Select "Paste" and press ●.**
2. **Select data to paste and press ●.**

Cutoff line

Using Camera

Shooting still images

1. **Hold down ⓘ for over a second.**
2. **Point the camera at the object and press ●.**
3. **Press ●.**

Shooting movie images

1. **Hold down ⓘ for over a second.**
2. **Press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Camera-mode" ▶ Press 2 "Shoot movie".**
3. **Point the camera at the object and press ●.**
   - Starts shooting.
4. **Press ●.**
   - Stops shooting.
5. **Press ●.**

Viewing shot still images/movies

Viewing still images

1. **Press ● ▶ Press Data box ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press 2.**
2. **Select a still image and press ●.**

Viewing movie images

1. **Press ● ▶ Press Data box ▶ Press 2 ▶ Press 2.**
2. **Select a movie image and press ●.**
   Operation while playing:
   - ●: Pause/Resume
   - ✉: Stop
   - ▷: Fast forward (continuous fast forwarding by holding down for over a second)
   - ◁: Rewind (continuous rewinding by holding down for over a second)
   - ↕: Adjust volume

   Operation during pause*:
   - ▷: Frame by frame forward (continuous frame by frame forwarding by holding down for over a second)
   - ◁: Frame by frame rewind (continuous frame by frame rewinding by holding down for over a second)

   * The function is unavailable when playing Sound only data.

Video-phone

Making video-phone calls

1. **Enter the phone number and press ⓘ.**
   - Enter the phone number including the area code.
2. **After connecting video-phone, press ⊂ to switch the mode to Hands free.**
   Operation during a call:
   - ⓘ: Switch substitutive image and camera image
   - ✉: Switch In-camera and Out-camera
   - ●: Hold/Release
3. **Press ⏻ to end a call.**

Answering video-phone calls

1. **Press ⓘ when receiving a video-phone call.**
   - Press ⏻ to hold a call.
2. **After connecting video-phone, press ⊂ to switch the mode to Hands free.**
   Operation during a call:
   - ⓘ: Switch substitutive image and camera image
   - ✉: Switch In-camera and Out-camera
   - ●: Hold/Release
3. **Press ⏻ to end a call.**

Using Chara-den

Switching Substitutive image and camera image

1. **During a video-phone call, press ⓘ.**

Setting Chara-den to Substitutive image

1. **Press ● ▶ Press Settings ▶ Press 7 ▶ Press 6 ▶ Press 1 ▶ Press 2.**
2. **Select a Chara-den and press ●.**

GPS function

Positioning present location

1. **Press ⊛ ▶ Press Position location.**
   - After completing Position location, press ● and you can display a map, attach to a mail, or register to a schedule.

Notifying present location

1. **Press ⊛ ▶ Press Notify present location ▶ Press 1.**
2. **Select a service client, and press ●.**
   - Service Client is required to be registered for Notify location.

i-mode mail

Composing and sending i-mode mail

1. **Hold down ✉ for over a second.**
2. **Select To and press ● ▶ Select Input method and press ● ▶ Enter an address and press ●.**
3. **Select Sb and press ● ▶ Enter a subject and press ●.**
4. **Select 📎 and press ● ▶ Select a file to attach and press ●.**
5. **Select ✎ and press ● ▶ Enter messages and press ●.**
6. **Press ✉ [Send].**
   - Press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Save" ▶ Press 1 "Yes" to save mails to Unsent messages.

Composing Deco-mail

1. **Press ✉ on Message input screen.**
   - Press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press 2 "Template" to compose from templates.
   - Press ⓘ [Close] to close pallet.
2. **Decorate messages.**
   - Press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press ▷ ▶ Press ▷ ▶ Press 5 "Preview" to confirm Deco-mail.

3. **Press ●.**
4. **Press ✉ [Send].**

Editing and sending saved mail

1. **Press ✉ ▶ Press Outbox or Unsent messages.**
2. **Select a folder and press ● ▶ Select a mail and press ●.**
3. **Edit and send the mail.**

Receiving i-mode mails

Checking incoming mails

1. **Press ✉ ▶ Press Check new messages.**

Displaying received i-mode mail

1. **Receive a mail.**
   - Notifies incoming mails with Mail ring tone or icon.
2. **Press 1 "Mail" on Reception status screen.**
   - Press ◁ ▶ Press ● ▶ Press ●, when displaying notify icon on Stand-by display.
3. **Select a folder and press ● ▶ Select a mail and press ●.**

Displaying i-mode mail in Inbox

1. **Press ✉ ▶ Press Inbox.**
2. **Select a folder and press ● ▶ Select a mail and press ●.**

Replying/forwarding mails

1. **Select a mail on Mail list screen and press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press 1 "Reply".**
   - Press ⓘ [Function] ▶ Press 3 "Forward" to forward.

Cutoff line

Menu list

Mail	Mail setting	
	Search personal	
	Compose SMS message	
	Check new message	
	Inbox	
	Compose message	
	Receive option	
	Outbox	
	Chat mail	
	Check SMS	
	Unsent messages	
	Deco-mail template	
i-mode	i-mode Setting	
	MessageR	
	MessageF	
	Screen memo	
	iMenu	
	Bookmark	
	Last URL	
	Go to location	
	Check new message	
i-αppli		

GPS	Location history	
	Notify/Provide menu	
	Position location	
	Position loc. settings	
	GPS software	
Data box	My picture	
	i-motion	
	Melody	
	Chara-den	
Camera	Snap photo	
	Shoot movie	
	Bar code reader	
Memo menu	Set record message	
	Play record message	
	Rec. VoiceMemo-STBY	
	Play VoiceMemo-STBY	
	Play VoiceMemo-Call	
	Text memo	
	Dial memo	
Tools	Calculator	
	Alarm	
	Jpn dictionary	
	Voice recorder	
	Original data	
	Infrared	

	Bar code reader	
Settings	Sound/Vibrator	Volume
		Sound
		Vibrator
		LED
		Notice time
		Manner
		Connection vibrator
	Display	Stand-by display
		Call/receive display
		Backside clock
		Backside notify
		Backside light color
		Backside display
		Lighting
		Taste
	Security	Burglar alarm
		Change security code
		Secret mode
		Self mode
		All lock
		Remote all lock
		Close lock
		Keypad dial lock
		UIM

		View dialed/received
		PIM lock
		Call rejection
	Call/Transmission	Any key answer
		Open/Close action
		Quality call
		Output ring tone to:
		Set mute seconds
		Prefix
		Sub-address
		Auto receive call
		Earphone auto dial
		Call duration
		Duration/Cost
		International dial
	Time	Time and date setting
		GPS time setting
		Auto power ON
		Auto power OFF
	Reset	Reset learned info
		Delete all data
		Reset settings
	Video-phone	Camera image sending
		Voice call auto sw
		Video-phone display

		Display screen size
		Sending image quality
		Video-phone image
	Kids' mode settings	
	Help	Character input
		Software update
		Scanning function
		Check setting status
		Battery level
		表示言語選択 (Select language)
		Voice notice
		Functions guide
Profile		
Private	Phonebook	
	Calendar	
	Redial	
	Received calls	
	Sent addresses	
	Received addresses	
Network services	Voice mail	
	Call waiting	
	Call forwarding	
	Nuisance call barring	
	CallerID notification	
	Caller ID request	

	Set arrival act	
	Arrival act	
	Remote access	
	Dual network	
	English guidance	
	Extra services	
	Service dialing no.	
	Multinumber	

Other functions

Function	Operation procedure
Turning the power ON/OFF	Press (pwr) for over 2 seconds.
Setting Side key operation to valid/invalid	Press (●) for over a second.
Setting/releasing Public mode (Drive mode)	Press (*) for over a second.
Displaying i-mode Menu	Press (i).
Displaying i-αppli folder list	Press (i) for over a second.
Displaying Received calls	Press ().
Displaying Received addresses	Press () for over a second.
Displaying Redial	Press ().
Displaying Sent addresses	Press () for over a second.
Setting/canceling Manner mode	Press (#) for over a second.
Displaying GPS menu	Press ().

Network service

Voice mail service

Optional (charged) service, requiring subscription.

Activating the service

1. **Press (●) ▶ Press (Network services) ▶ Press (1).**
2. **Press (1) "Activate service" ▶ Press (1) "Yes".**

Deactivating the service

1. **Press (●) ▶ Press (Network services) ▶ Press (1).**
2. **Press (3) "Deactivate service" ▶ Press (1) "Yes".**

Playing the voice message

1. **Press (●) ▶ Press (Network services) ▶ Press (1).**
2. **Press (5) "Play message" ▶ Press (1) "Yes".**
3. **Follow the voice guidance.**

Cutoff line

Call waiting

Optional (charged) service, requiring subscription.

Activating the service

1. Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press 2abc.
2. Press 1 "Activate service" ▶ Press 1 "Yes".

Deactivating the service

1. Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press 2abc.
2. Press 2abc "Deactivate service" ▶ Press 1 "Yes".

Answering another call

Press ⌐/¬ during a call

- Switching the other party to call: Press ⌐/¬.

Making another call

Dial phone number during a call ▶ Press ⌐/¬.

- Switching the other party to call: Press ⌐/¬.

Ending a call

Press ⏻/CLR during a call

- Resuming on-hold call: Press ⌐/¬.

Call forwarding service

Optional free service, requiring subscription.

Activating the service

1. Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press 3def.
2. Press 1 "Activate service" ▶ Press 1 "Yes".
3. Press 3def "Activate".

Deactivating the service

1. Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press 3def.
2. Press 2abc "Deactivate service" ▶ Press 1 "Yes".

Caller ID request service

Optional free service, requiring no subscription.

Activating the service

1. Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press 6mno.
2. Press 1 "Activate service" ▶ Press 1 "Yes".

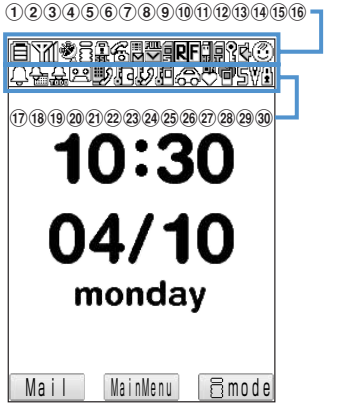
Deactivating the service

1. Press ● ▶ Press Network services ▶ Press 6mno.
2. Press 2abc "Deactivate service" ▶ Press 1 "Yes".

Services available

Available services	Phone number
Collect calls (charged calls by collect)	106 (no area code)
Directory assistance for general fixed-line phones and for DoCoMo mobile phones (charged service) (Numbers not opened to public are not available.)	104 (no area code)
Sending telegrams (charged service) From 8:00 a.m. to 10 p.m.	115 (no area code)
Time (charged service)	117 (no area code)
Weather (charged service)	Desired area code and 177
Police emergencies	110 (no area code)
Fire and ambulance emergencies	119 (no area code)
Marine emergencies and accident reports	118 (no area code)
Emergency message service (charged service)	171 (no area code)

Reading display



① : Battery level
② : Radio wave condition level
: Out of service area/Under poor radio wave condition
: Under Self mode
③ : Positioning/providing/notifying location
④ : Connecting i-mode
⑤ : Displaying SSL page
⑥ : During a voice-call
⑦ : Mails saved in the i-mode Center
⑧ : Inbox full
⑨ : UIM (FOMA card) full with SMS
⑩ : Unread MessageR
⑪ : Unread MessageF
⑫ : USB operating with hands free
⑬ : Terminal link
⑭ : Under Secret mode
⑮ : Missed calls
⑯ : Under Kids' mode
⑰ : Alarm is set.
⑱ : Schedule alarm is set.
⑲ : ToDo alarm is set.

⑳ : Record message is set.
㉑ : Voice mail message in the Center
㉒ : Under PIM lock
㉓ : Under Keypad dial lock
㉔ : Under All lock
㉕ : Under Public mode (Drive mode)
㉖ / : Under Manner mode (OFF as time's passed/Duration mode)
㉗ : Under Manner mode
㉘ : Volume is set to OFF for Phone receive call.
㉙ : Vibrator is set for Phone receive call.
㉚ : Side key operation invalid

For inquiries <DoCoMo Information Center>

For more detailed information about the manual, contact the followings:

<In English> From fixed-line phones (toll-free) **0120-005-250** *Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHSs.

<In Japanese> No prefix 151 (toll-free) *Cannot be called from fixed-line phones.

From fixed-line phones (toll-free) **0120-800-000** *Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHSs.

- To avoid misdial, please double-check the number before dialing.

For Inquiries (concerning malfunctions)

For any problems, contact the followings:

<in Japanese> No prefix 113 (toll-free) *Cannot be called from fixed-line phones.

From fixed-line phones (toll-free) **0120-800-000** *Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHSs.

- To avoid misdial, please double-check the number before dialing.

Cutoff line

About proper telephone etiquette

Do not disturb people around you when using FOMA terminal.

Always turn off the power of FOMA terminal in the following situations.

■ **In a place where use of a mobile terminal is prohibited**

There are place where you are not allowed to use a mobile phone. Always turn off the power of your FOMA terminal when:

- In an aircraft
- In a hospital

* Be aware of people using electronic medical equipment anywhere in a hospital. FOMA terminal must be powered off even in lobbies or waiting rooms.

■ **While driving**

Using FOMA terminal while driving is dangerous and hinders safe driving.

* Park the vehicle in a safe place before using the mobile phone, or use Public mode (Drive mode).

■ **In a place such as a crowded train, where there may be someone using pacemakers or defibrillators near by.**

The signal of FOMA terminal may negatively affect the operation of implanted pacemakers and defibrillators.

■ **In a public place such as a concert hall, movie theater or art museum**

Using FOMA terminal in quiet public places will likely bother other people.

Be cautious of the location, and the volume of your voice, ring tone, etc.

■ **In a quiet place like a restaurant or hotel lobby, be cautious of the volume of your voice, Ring tones, etc. when using FOMA terminal.**

■ **When using your FOMA terminal on a street, be sure not to block foot or vehicular traffic.**

Consider privacy.

Please be considerate of the privacy of other individuals when taking and sending images using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Manner functions designed for public use

FOMA terminal has useful manner functions for not answering incoming calls or muting all kinds of sounds of the terminal.

- **Manner mode/Original manner mode →P127**
- **Public mode (Drive mode) →P77**
- **Vibrate alert →P123**
- **Record message →P80**

Don't forget your mobile phone
··· or your manners!

When using your mobile phone in a public place, don't forget to show common courtesy and consideration for others around you.

You can access "ドコモeサイト (DoCoMo e-site)", to change address, change billing plan, request for information materials, etc.

From i-mode **Packet communication charge free**

iMenu ⇒ 料金＆お申込 (Charge & Subscription) ⇒ドコモｅサイト (DoCoMo e-site)

From PCs

My DoCoMo (https://www.mydocomo.com/) ⇒ 各種手続き(ドコモeサイト) (Various application (DoCoMo e-site))

*You need "Network security code" to apply from i-mode.
*To apply from i-mode, Packet communication fee is free. If you access from overseas, the service will be charged.
*You need "My DoCoMo ID/Password" to apply from PC.
*Contact DoCoMo Information Center if you don't have or forget your "Network security code" or "My DoCoMo ID/Password".
*You may not be able to use the service depending on your contracts.
*You may not be able to use the service due to the system maintenance or any other reason.

For Inquiries <DoCoMo Information Center>

■(in English)

0120-005-250 (toll-free)
*Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phones, PHSs or fixed-line phones.

■(in Japanese only)

No prefix 151 (toll-free)
*Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHSs.

0120-800-000 (toll-free)
*Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phones, PHSs or fixed-line phones.

●Please check on the number before dialing.

For Inquiries (concerning malfunctions)

■(in Japanese only)

No prefix 113 (toll-free)
*Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHSs.

0120-800-000 (toll-free)
*Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phones, PHSs or fixed-line phones.

●Please check on the number before dialing.
●For further information, please refer to the list of service stations provided with your FOMA terminal.

あんしん DoCoMo

DoCoMo "ANSHIN" Mission
"Safe and secure world for all with mobile"

Retailer NTT DoCoMo Group

NTT DoCoMo Hokkaido, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Tohoku, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Tokai, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Hokuriku, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Kansai, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Chugoku, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Shikoku, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Kyushu, Inc.

Manufacturer: SANYO Electric Co., Ltd.

R100
100% recycled-content level

PRINTED WITH SOY INK
Trademark of American Soybean Association
This manual is printed with soy based ink.

'06.2 (Issue 1)

Li-ion
To promote environmental conservation, be sure to return your used battery pack to NTT DoCoMo's sales outlets, our cooperate agencies or the shops that collect used battery in your community.

1AH6P1P0419--